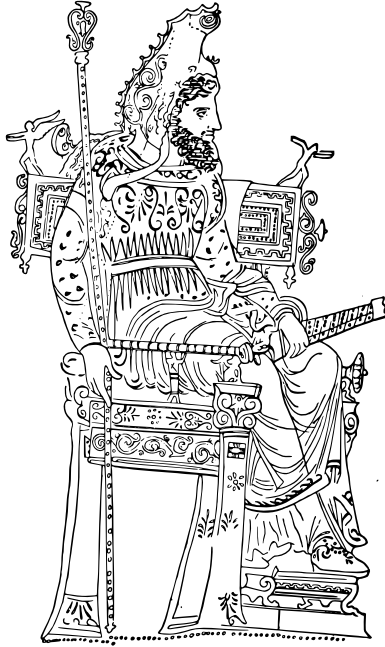


# ΞΕΝΟΦΩΝΤΟΣ ΚΥΡΟΥ ΑΝΑΒΑΣΙΣ



3-5

This book is a presentation of a bilingual text with student aids, built using open-source software. For information about how the book is intended to be used and why it's designed the way it is, see:

<https://bitbucket.org/ben-crowell/ransom/src/master/README.md>

rev. December 24, 2025

The Greek text of the Anabasis is based on the edition by Marchant, 1904. The English translation is by Dakyns, 1901.

Text I've written, such as notes and glosses, is CC-BY-SA 4.0. Glosses taken verbatim from Cunliffe or White and Morgan are in the public domain, as are the LSJ dictionary entries. Glosses taken verbatim from Wiktionary are CC-BY-SA 3.0. US law does not allow copyrighting of grammatical facts such as part-of-speech tagging and does not give any additional protection to databases beyond the normal protection of copyright.

Text I've written, such as notes and glosses, is (c) 2025 Benjamin Crowell and CC-BY-SA 4.0. Glosses taken verbatim from Cunliffe or White and Morgan are in the public domain, as are the LSJ dictionary entries. Glosses taken verbatim from Wiktionary are CC-BY-SA 3.0. US law does not allow copyrighting of grammatical facts such as part-of-speech tagging and does not give any additional protection to databases beyond the normal protection of copyright.

*vocabulary*

**ἀδιάβατος** impassable

**ἀνάβασις** -τος (f) going up, mounting, going inland

**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some distance

**ἀπορία** difficulty, bottleneck ~pierce

**βάρβαρος** non-Greek

**δηλώω** show, disclose

**διείργω** keep apart

**Ἑλλήν** Greek

**ἐννοέω** consider

**εὐδηλος** very clear

**ἡγεμών** -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide, chief ~hegemony

**καταλείβω** drip

**καταλείπω** leave behind, abandon  
~eclipse

**κύκλος** circle, wheel ~cycle

**λοχαγέω** (ᾱ) lead a company

**λοχαγός** (ᾱ) captain

**μείων** less, smaller

**μέχρι** as far as, until

**μυρίος** (οῦ) 10,000 ~myriad

**οἴκαδε** homeward ~economics

**πάντη** everywhere

**σπονδή** libation, treaty ~spontaneous

**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)

**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm;  
(pl noun) 200 meters

**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier, mercenary ~strategy

**συλλαμβάνω** seize, capture;  
understand ~epilepsy

**συνέπομαι** go along with ~sequel

**τελευτάω** bring about, finish ~apostle

## 3

## 3.1

Ὅσα μὲν δὴ ἐν τῇ Κύρου ἀναβάσει οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔπραξαν μέχρι τῆς μάχης, καὶ ὅσα ἐπεὶ Κῦρος ἐτελεύτησεν ἐγένετο ἀπιόντων τῶν Ἑλλήνων σὺν Τισσαφέρνει ἐν ταῖς σπονδαῖς, ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ δεδήλωται.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ στρατηγοὶ συνειλημμένοι ἦσαν καὶ τῶν λοχαγῶν καὶ τῶν στρατιωτῶν οἱ συνεπόμενοι ἀπωλώλεσαν, ἐν πολλῇ δὴ ἀπορίᾳ ἦσαν οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἐννοοῦμενοι ὅτι ἐπὶ ταῖς βασιλέως θύραις ἦσαν, κύκλῳ δὲ αὐτοῖς πάντῃ πολλὰ καὶ ἔθνη καὶ πόλεις πολέμαιοι ἦσαν, ἀγορὰν δὲ οὐδεὶς ἔτι παρέξειν ἔμελλεν, ἀπείχον δὲ τῆς Ἑλλάδος οὐ μείον ἢ μύρια στάδια, ἡγεμῶν δ' οὐδεὶς τῆς ὁδοῦ ἦν, ποταμοὶ δὲ διείργον ἀδιάβατοι ἐν μέσῳ τῆς οἴκαδε ὁδοῦ, προυδεδώκεσαν δὲ αὐτοὺς καὶ οἱ σὺν Κύρῳ ἀναβάντες βάρβαροι, μόνοι δὲ καταλελειμμένοι ἦσαν οὐδὲ ἰππέα οὐδένα σύμμαχον ἔχοντες, ὥστε εὖδηλον ἦν

3

3.1

Ὅσα μὲν δὴ ἐν τῇ Κύρου |going up|Greek ἔπραξαν  
 |as far as, until, |ἀχῆς, καὶ ὅσα ἐπεὶ Κῦρος |bring about, finish  
 ἐγένετο ἀπιόντων τῶν |Greek σὺν Τισσαφέρνει ἐν ταῖς  
 |liberation, |, ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ |show, |disclose  
 |treaty  
 Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ στρατηγοὶ |seize, capture; ἦσαν καὶ τῶν  
 |understand  
 λοχαγῶν καὶ τῶν |soldier, οἱ |go along with  
 |mercenary  
 ἀπωλώλεσαν, ἐν πολλῇ δὴ |difficulty, ἦσαν οἱ |Greek  
 |bottleneck  
 |consider ὅτι ἐπὶ ταῖς βασιλέως θύραις ἦσαν, |circle, |wheel  
 δὲ αὐτοῖς |everywhere ἅλα καὶ ἔθνη καὶ πόλεις πολέμῳ  
 ἦσαν, ἀγορὰν δὲ οὐδεὶς ἔτι παρέξεν ἔμελλεν, |ward off, drive off, re-  
 |frain, be at some distance  
 τῆς Ἑλλάδος οὐ |less, ἢ, μύρια στάδια, |leader δ' οὐδεὶς  
 |smaller  
 τῆς ὁδοῦ ἦν, ποταμοὶ δὲ |keep apart|impassable ἐν μέσῳ τῆς  
 |homeward ἡ, πρὸς δεξιὰς δὲ αὐτοὺς καὶ οἱ σὺν Κύρῳ  
 ἀναβάντες |non-Greek, μόνοι δὲ καταλελειμμένοι ἦσαν  
 οὐδὲ ἱππέα οὐδένα σύμμαχον ἔχοντες, ὥστε |very clear ἦν

### 3

#### 3.1

An account, not only of the doings of the Hellenes during the advance of Cyrus till the date of the battle, but of the incidents which befell them after Cyrus' death at the commencement of the retreat, while in company with Tissaphernes during the truce.

After the generals had been seized, and the captains and soldiers who formed their escort had been killed, the Hellenes lay in deep perplexity — a prey to painful reflections. Here were they at the king's gates, and on every side environing them were many hostile cities and tribes of men. Who was there now to furnish them with a market? Separated from Hellas by more than a thousand miles, they had not even a guide to point the way. Impassable rivers lay athwart their homeward route, and hemmed them in. Betrayed even by the Asiatics, at whose side they had marched with Cyrus to the attack, they were left in isolation. Without a single mounted trooper to aid them in pursuit: was it not perfectly plain

*vocabulary*

**ἄθυμος** (ῥ) having low morale ~fume  
**ἀναγιγνώσκω** recognize, read, understand, persuade  
**ἀνακαίω** light (a fire) ~caustic  
**ἀνακοινῶ** communicate, impart  
**ἀναπαύω** cause to cease ~pause  
**ἀρχαῖος** ancient, from the beginning ~oligarch  
**γεύω** taste ~gusto  
**γονεύς** -ος (m) parent  
**διάκειμαι** be in a condition  
**ἐννοέω** consider  
**ἐπιστολή** message, letter  
**ἐσπέρα** evening, west  
**ἡσάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be overcome; (active) defeat  
**καθεύδω** lie down  
**κατακαίνω** kill

**κρείσσων** more powerful; better  
**λοχαγός** (ᾱ) captain  
**λύπη** distress  
**μεταπέμπω** send; (mid) summon ~pomp  
**οἴκοθεν** from home, from one's own resources ~economics  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle ~hoplite  
**ὅπου** where  
**πόθος** longing, regret ~bid  
**πορεία** gait, march  
**σίτος** grain, bread, food ~parasite  
**στρατιά** army ~strategy  
**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier, mercenary ~strategy  
**συνακολουθέω** follow with, be related  
**ὑπισχνέομαι** promise, agree to do ~ischemia

ὅτι νικῶντες μὲν οὐδένα ἂν κατακάνοιεν, ἡττηθέντων δὲ αὐτῶν οὐδεὶς ἂν λειφθείη·

Ταῦτ' ἐννοούμενοι καὶ ἀθύμως ἔχοντες ὀλίγοι μὲν αὐτῶν εἰς τὴν ἐσπέραν σίτου ἐγέυσαντο, ὀλίγοι δὲ πῦρ ἀνέκαυσαν, ἐπὶ δὲ τὰ ὄπλα πολλοὶ οὐκ ἦλθον ταύτην τὴν νύκτα, ἀνεπαύοντο δὲ ὅπου ἐτύγχανον ἕκαστος, οὐ δυνάμενοι καθεύδειν ὑπὸ λύπης καὶ πόθου πατρίδων, γονέων, γυναικῶν, παιδῶν, οὓς οὔποτ' ἐνόμιζον ἔτι ὄψεσθαι. οὕτω μὲν δὴ διακείμενοι πάντες ἀνεπαύοντο.

Ἦν δέ τις ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος, ὃς οὔτε στρατηγὸς οὔτε λοχαγὸς οὔτε στρατιώτης ὢν συνηκολούθει, ἀλλὰ Πρόξενος αὐτὸν μετεπέμψατο οἴκοθεν ξένος ὢν ἀρχαῖος· ὑπισχνεῖτο δὲ αὐτῷ, εἰ ἔλθοι, φίλον αὐτὸν Κύρῳ ποιήσειν, ὃν αὐτὸς ἔφη κρείττω ἑαυτῷ νομίζειν τῆς πατρίδος.

Ὁ μέντοι Ξενοφῶν ἀναγνοὺς τὴν ἐπιστολὴν ἀνακοινοῦται Σωκράτει τῷ Ἀθηναίῳ περὶ τῆς πορείας. καὶ



ὅτι νικῶντες μὲν οὐδένα ἂν |kill , |(pass) be weaker, be over-  
 αὐτῶν οὐδεὶς ἂν λειφθείη· |come; (active) defeat

Ταῦτ' |consider καὶ |having low morale ὀλίγοι μὲν  
 αὐτῶν εἰς τὴν |evening, |grain, ἐγέυσαντο, ὀλίγοι δὲ πῦρ  
 |west |bread,  
 |light (a fire) , ἐπὶ δὲ τὰ |food πολλοὶ οὐκ ἤλθον ταύτην  
 |tool  
 τὴν νύκτα, |cause to cease δὲ |where ἐτύγχανον ἕκαστος, οὐ  
 δυνάμενοι |lie down ὑπὸ |distress καὶ |longing, πατρίδων,  
 |regret  
 |parent , γυναικῶν, παιδῶν, οὓς οὐποτ' ἐνόμιζον ἔτι  
 ὄψεσθαι. οὕτω μὲν δὲ |be in a condition' τες |cause to cease

Ἦν δέ τις ἐν τῇ |army Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος, ὃς  
 οὔτε στρατηγὸς οὔτε |captain οὔτε |soldier, ὢν  
 |mercenary  
 |follow with, be, ἀλλὰ Πρόξενος αὐτὸν |send; (mid)|from home  
 |related |summon  
 ξένος ὢν |ancient, |promise, δὲ αὐτῷ, εἰ ἔλθοι, φίλον  
 |from the|agree  
 αὐτὸν |beginning Κυρᾶ ποιήσειν, ὃν αὐτὸς ἔφη κρείττω ἑαυτῷ  
 νομίζειν τῆς πατρίδος.

Ὁ μέντοι Ξενοφῶν |read τὴν |message, |communicate,  
 |letter |impart  
 Σωκράτει τῷ Ἀθηναίῳ περὶ τῆς |gait, καὶ  
 |march

that if they won a battle, their enemies would escape to a man, but if they were beaten themselves, not one soul of them would survive?

Haunted by such thoughts, and with hearts full of despair, but few of them tasted food that evening; but few of them kindled even a fire, and many never came into camp at all that night, but took their rest where each chanced to be. They could not close their eyes for very pain and yearning after their fatherlands or their parents, the wife or child whom they never expected to look upon again. Such was the plight in which each and all tried to seek repose.

Now there was in that host a certain man, an Athenian, Xenophon, who had accompanied Cyrus, neither as a general, nor as an officer, nor yet as a private soldier, but simply on the invitation of an old friend, Proxenus. This old friend had sent to fetch him from home, promising, if he would come, to introduce him to Cyrus, «whom,” said Proxenus, «I consider to be worth my fatherland and more to me.”

Xenophon having read the letter, consulted Socrates the Athenian, whether he should accept or refuse the invitation. Socrates, who had

*vocabulary*

αἰτιάζομαι blame ~etiology  
 ἀναιρέω take up ~heresy  
 ἀνακοινώ communicate, impart  
 ἄνω (ᾱ) accomplish, pass, waste;  
 upwards, out to sea  
 ἄρnuμαι get, win  
 ἄρόω plow ~arable  
 ἐκπλέω sail away ~float  
 ἐπέρομαι ask as well; ask then  
 ἐπινοέω intend  
 ἔρομαι ask a question, ask about, go  
 searching through  
 ἐρωτάω ask about something  
 θύον kind of tree  
 θύω (ϑ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω  
 καταλαμβάνω seize, understand, catch,

overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy  
 λωίων more desirable  
 μαντεία oracular power  
 πορεία gait, march  
 πότερος which, whichever of two  
 προθυμέομαι (ϑ) be eager  
 πρόθυμος (ϑ) willing, eager ~fume  
 προσδοκάω expect  
 συμβουλεύω give advice; (mid) consult  
 ~volunteer  
 συμπολεμέω join in war  
 συνίστημι unite; confront in battle  
 ~station  
 ὑπαίτιος accused, guilty  
 ὑποπτεύω guess, observe, be  
 suspicious of

ὁ Σωκράτης ὑποπτεύσας μή τι πρὸς τῆς πόλεως  
 ὑπαίτιον εἴη Κύρῳ φίλον γενέσθαι, ὅτι ἔδοκει ὁ  
 Κῦρος προθύμως τοῖς Λακεδαιμονίοις ἐπὶ τὰς Ἀθήνας  
 συμπολεμῆσαι, συμβουλεύει τῷ Ξενοφῶντι ἐλθόντα εἰς  
 Δελφοὺς ἀνακοινῶσαι τῷ θεῷ περὶ τῆς πορείας. ἐλθὼν  
 δ' ὁ Ξενοφὼν ἐπήρετο τὸν Ἀπόλλω τίνι ἂν θεῶν θύων  
 καὶ εὐχόμενος κάλλιστα καὶ ἄριστα ἔλθοι τὴν ὁδὸν ἣν  
 ἐπινοεῖ καὶ καλῶς πράξας σωθείη. καὶ ἀνείλεν αὐτῷ  
 ὁ Ἀπόλλων θεοῖς οἷς ἔδει θύειν. ἐπεὶ δὲ πάλιν ἦλθε,  
 λέγει τὴν μαντείαν τῷ Σωκράτει. ὁ δ' ἀκούσας ἡτιᾶτο  
 αὐτὸν ὅτι οὐ τοῦτο πρῶτον ἡρώτα πότερον λῶον εἴη  
 αὐτῷ πορεύεσθαι ἢ μένειν, ἀλλ' αὐτὸς κρίνας ἰτέον εἶναι  
 τοῦτ' ἐπυνθάνετο ὅπως ἂν κάλλιστα πορευθείη. «ἐπεὶ  
 μέντοι οὕτως ἤρου, ταῦτ',» ἔφη, «χρὴ ποιεῖν ὅσα ὁ  
 θεὸς ἐκέλευσεν.» ὁ μὲν δὴ Ξενοφὼν οὕτω θυσάμενος  
 οἷς ἀνείλεν ὁ θεὸς ἐξέπλει, καὶ καταλαμβάνει ἐν Σάρδεσι  
 Πρόξενον καὶ Κῦρον μέλλοντας ἤδη ὁρμᾶν τὴν ἄνω ὁδόν,  
 καὶ συνεστάθη Κύρῳ. προθυμουμένου δὲ τοῦ Προξένου

ὁ Σωκράτης |guess, observe, |μή τι πρὸς τῆς πόλεως  
 |be suspicious of  
 |accused, εἶη Κύρω φίλον γενέσθαι, ὅτι ἐδόκει ὁ  
 |guilty  
 Κῦρος |willing, τοῖς Λακεδαιμονίοις ἐπὶ τὰς Ἀθήνας  
 |eager  
 |συμπολεμέω?: |give advice; τῷ Ξενοφῶντι ἐλθόντα εἰς  
 |join in war; or (mid) consult  
 |συμπολεμέω?: join  
 |in war |communicate, τῷ θεῷ περὶ τῆς |gait, ἐλθὼν  
 |impart |march  
 δ' ὁ Ξενοφῶν |ask as well; ὃν Ἀπόλλω τίνι ἂν θεῶν θύων  
 |ask then  
 καὶ εὐχόμενος κάλλιστα καὶ ἄριστα ἔλθοι τὴν ὁδὸν ἣν  
 |intend καὶ καλῶς πράξας σωθείη. καὶ |take up αὐτῷ  
 ὁ Ἀπόλλων θεοῖς οἷς ἔδει |rush; sacrifice ἔδὲ πάλιν ἦλθε,  
 λέγει τὴν |oracular τῷ Σωκράτει. ὁ δ' ἀκούσας |blame  
 |power  
 αὐτὸν ὅτι οὐ τοῦτο πρῶτον |ask |which, |more desirable  
 |whichever  
 αὐτῷ πορεύεσθαι ἢ μένειν, ἀλλ' αὐτὸς κρίνας ἰτέον εἶναι  
 τοῦτ' ἐπυνθάνετο ὅπως ἂν κάλλιστα πορευθείη. «ἐπεὶ  
 μέντοι οὕτως ἦρου, ταῦτ',» ἔφη, «χρὴ ποιεῖν ὅσα ὁ  
 θεὸς ἐκέλευσεν.» ὁ μὲν δὴ Ξενοφῶν οὕτω |rush; sacrifice  
 οἷς |take up ὁ θεὸς |sail away καὶ |seize, understand, catch, δεσι  
 |overtake; (mp) happen  
 Πρόξενον καὶ Κῦρον μέλλοντας ἤδη ὁρμᾶν τὴν ἄνω ὁδόν,  
 καὶ |unite; confront ἴρω. |be eager δὲ τοῦ Προξένου  
 |in battle

a suspicion that the State of Athens might in some way look askance at my friendship with Cyrus, whose zealous co-operation with the Lacedaemonians against Athens in the war was not forgotten, advised Xenophon to go to Delphi and there to consult the god as to the desirability of such a journey. Xenophon went and put the question to Apollo, to which of the gods he must pray and do sacrifice, so that he might best accomplish his intended journey and return in safety, with good fortune. Then Apollo answered him: «To such and such gods must thou do sacrifice,” and when he had returned home he reported to Socrates the oracle. But he, when he heard, blamed Xenophon that he had not, in the first instance, inquired of the god, whether it were better for him to go or to stay, but had taken on himself to settle that point affirmatively, by inquiring straightway, how he might best perform the journey. «Since, however,” continued Socrates, «you did so put the question, you should do what the god enjoined.” Thus, and without further ado, Xenophon offered sacrifice to those whom the god had named, and set sail on his voyage. He overtook Proxenus and Cyrus at Sardis, when they were just ready to start on the march up country, and was at once introduced to Cyrus. Proxenus eagerly pressed him to

*vocabulary*

**ἀέκων** unwilling  
**αἰσχύνῃ** (ἴ) shame, dishonor  
**ἄκων** javelin; unwilling ~acme  
**ἀνεγείρω** awaken  
**ἀποπέμπω** send away ~pomp  
**ἀπορία** difficulty, bottleneck ~pierce  
**βροντή** thunder ~brontosaurus  
**Ἑλλῆν** Greek  
**ἐξαπατάω** trick, cheat ~apatosaurus  
**ἐπειδάν** when, after  
**καθεύδω** lie down  
**κύκλος** circle, wheel ~cycle  
**λαγχάνω** be allotted; (esp. λελα-  
 forms) allot; receive  
**λάμπω** shine ~lamp  
**λάσκω** cry, crack, ring  
**λήγω** cease, (+gen+ppl) cause to cease  
 ~lax  
**λυπέω** (ἴ) annoy, distress  
**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless  
**ὄναρ** -τος (n) dream

**ὀρμή** pressure, assault, order  
 ~hormone  
**πατρῷος** of the father(s), ancestral  
 ~paternal  
**πατρῶος** of the father(s), ancestral  
**περίφοβος** in great fear  
**πόνος** toil, suffering ~osteopenia  
**σαφής** clear, understandable  
**σκηπτός** thunderbolt  
**στόλος** expedition, equipment, forces  
 ~apostle  
**στρατεία** expedition, campaign  
**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war,  
 campaign ~strategy  
**συμπροθυμέομαι** (υἱ) share in  
 eagerness with  
**συνακολουθέω** follow with, be related  
**ὕπνον** a sleep  
**ὕπνος** a sleep  
**φάος** φῶς (n, 3) light; salvation; (pl)  
 eyes ~photon

καὶ ὁ Κῦρος συμπrouθυμεῖτο μεῖναι αὐτόν, εἶπε δὲ ὅτι ἐπειδὰν τάχιστα ἡ στρατεία λήξῃ, εὐθὺς ἀποπέμψει αὐτόν. ἐλέγετο δὲ ὁ στόλος εἶναι εἰς Πισίδας. ἐστρατεύετο μὲν δὴ οὕτως ἐξαπατηθεῖς— οὐχ ὑπὸ Προξένου· οὐ γὰρ ᾔδει τὴν ἐπὶ βασιλέα ὁρμὴν οὐδὲ ἄλλος οὐδεὶς τῶν Ἑλλήνων πλὴν Κλεάρχου· ἐπεὶ μέντοι εἰς Κιλικίαν ἦλθον, σαφὲς πᾶσιν ἤδη ἐδόκει εἶναι ὅτι ὁ στόλος εἴη ἐπὶ βασιλέα. φοβούμενοι δὲ τὴν ὁδὸν καὶ ἄκοντες ὅμως οἱ πολλοὶ δι' αἰσχύνην καὶ ἀλλήλων καὶ Κύρου συνηκολούθησαν· ὧν εἷς καὶ Ξενοφῶν ἦν.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀπορία ἦν, ἐλυπεῖτο μὲν σὺν τοῖς ἄλλοις καὶ οὐκ ἐδύνατο καθεύδειν· μικρὸν δ' ὕπνου λαχὼν εἶδεν ὄναρ. ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ βροντῆς γενομένης σκηπτὸς πεσεῖν εἰς τὴν πατρώαν οἰκίαν, καὶ ἐκ τούτου λάμπεσθαι πᾶσα. περίφοβος δ' εὐθὺς ἀνηγέρθη, καὶ τὸ ὄναρ τῇ μὲν ἔκρινεν ἀγαθόν, ὅτι ἐν πόνοις ὧν καὶ κινδύνοις φῶς μέγα ἐκ Διὸς ἰδεῖν ἔδοξε· τῇ δὲ καὶ ἐφοβείτο, ὅτι ἀπὸ Διὸς μὲν βασιλέως τὸ ὄναρ ἐδόκει αὐτῷ εἶναι, κύκλῳ δὲ ἐδόκει λάμπεσθαι τὸ



καὶ ὁ Κῦρος |share in eagerness μείναι αὐτόν, εἶπε δὲ ὅτι  
 with  
 |when, τάχιστα ἢ |expedition, ἡξή, εὐθὺς ἀποπέμψει αὐτόν.  
 after |campaign  
 ἐλέγετο δὲ ὁ |expedition, equip- Πισίδας. |make an expedition, ἡ  
 |ment, forces |war, campaign  
 οὕτως |trick, cheat — οὐχ ὑπὸ Προξένου· οὐ γὰρ ᾗδει τὴν  
 ἐπὶ βασιλέα |pressure, ᾗς- ἄλλος οὐδεὶς τῶν |Greek πλὴν  
 |sault, order  
 Κλεάρχου· ἐπεὶ μέντοι εἰς Κιλικίαν ἦλθον, |clear, under- ν  
 |standable  
 ἥδη ἐδόκει εἶναι ὅτι ὁ |expedition, equip- ασιλέα. φοβούμενοι  
 |ment, forces  
 δὲ τὴν ὁδὸν καὶ ἄκοντες |anyway, nevertheless ᾗ |shame, καὶ  
 |dishonor  
 ἀλλήλων καὶ Κύρου |follow with, be re- ὦν εἰς καὶ Ξενοφῶν  
 |lated  
 ἦν.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ |difficulty, ᾗbot- |annoy, μέν σὺν τοῖς ἄλλοις καὶ  
 |tleneck |distress  
 οὐκ ἐδύνατο |lie down μικρὸν δ' ὕπνου |be allotted; (esp. λαλα-  
 |forms) allot; receive  
 |dream ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ |thunder γενομένης |thunderbolt εσεῖν  
 εἰς τὴν πατρίαν οἰκίαν, καὶ ἐκ τούτου |shine πᾶσα.  
 |in great fear δ' εὐθὺς |awaken , καὶ τὸ |dream ἥ μὲν ἔκρινεν  
 ἀγαθόν, ὅτι ἐν |toil, suffering καὶ κινδύνοις φῶς μέγα ἐκ Διὸς  
 ἰδεῖν ἔδοξε· τῇ δὲ καὶ ἐφοβείτο, ὅτι ἀπὸ Διὸς μὲν βασιλέως  
 τὸ |dream ἐδόκει αὐτῷ εἶναι, |circle, δὲ ἐδόκει |shine τὸ  
 |wheel

stop—a request which Cyrus with like ardour supported, adding that as soon as the campaign was over he would send him home. The campaign referred to was understood to be against the Pisidians. That is how Xenophon came to join the expedition, deceived indeed, though not by Proxenus, who was equally in the dark with the rest of the Hellenes, not counting Clearchus, as to the intended attack upon the king. Then, though the majority were in apprehension of the journey, which was not at all to their minds, yet, for very shame of one another and Cyrus, they continued to follow him, and with the rest went Xenophon.

And now in this season of perplexity, he too, with the rest, was in sore distress, and could not sleep; but anon, getting a snatch of sleep, he had a dream. It seemed to him in a vision that there was a storm of thunder and lightning, and a bolt fell on his father's house, and thereupon the house was all in a blaze. He sprung up in terror, and pondering the matter, decided that in part the dream was good: in that he had seen a great light from Zeus, whilst in the midst of toil and danger. But partly too he feared it, for evidently it had come from Zeus the king. And the fire kindled all around—what

*vocabulary*

**ἀναμένω** wait for ~remain  
**ἀνεγείρω** awaken  
**ἀπορία** difficulty, bottleneck ~pierce  
**εἰκός** likely  
**ἐμπίπτω** fall into; attack ~petal  
**ἐμποδών** getting in the way  
**ἐννοια** thought  
**ἐξιμι** go forth; is possible ~ion  
**ἐπιδίδωμι** give, give with, give  
 reciprocally ~donate  
**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee  
**ἐργω** bound, fend off; do ~ergonomics  
**ἐφοράω** look upon ~panorama  
**ἡλικία** time of life, contemporaries  
**ἡσυχία** peace and quiet  
**καθεύδω** lie down

**κατάκειμαι** lie down  
**λοχαγός** (ᾱ) captain  
**ὄναρ** -τος (n) dream  
**ὅποῖος** whatever kind  
**πάντοθεν** from all directions  
**ποίη** grass  
**ποῖος** what kind  
**προβαίνω** surpass, continue ~basis  
**προδίδωμι** betray  
**προσδοκάω** expect  
**προσδοκέω** be thought besides  
**σκοπάω** watch, observe  
**σκοπέω** behold, consider  
**συγκαλέω** call together ~gallo  
**συνέρχομαι** come together  
**τήμερον** today  
**ὕβριζω** insult, treat outrageously

πῦρ, μὴ οὐ δύναίτο ἐκ τῆς χώρας ἐξελθεῖν τῆς βασιλείας,  
ἀλλ' εἵργοιτο πάντοθεν ὑπὸ τινων ἀποριῶν. ὁποῖόν τι  
μὲν δὴ ἐστὶ τὸ τοιοῦτον ὄναρ ἰδεῖν ἔξεστι σκοπεῖν ἐκ τῶν  
συμβάντων μετὰ τὸ ὄναρ.

Γίνεται γὰρ τάδε. εὐθὺς ἐπειδὴ ἀνηγέρθη πρῶτον μὲν  
ἐννοια αὐτῷ ἐμπίπτει· τί κατάκειμαι; ἡ δὲ νύξ προβαίνει·  
ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ εἰκὸς τοὺς πολεμίους ἦξιν. εἰ δὲ  
γενησόμεθα ἐπὶ βασιλεῖ, τί ἐμποδὼν μὴ οὐχὶ πάντα μὲν τὰ  
χαλεπώτατα ἐπιδόντας, πάντα δὲ τὰ δεινότατα παθόντας  
ὑβριζομένους ἀποθανεῖν; ὅπως δ' ἀμυνούμεθα οὐδεὶς  
παρασκευάζεται οὐδὲ ἐπιμελείται, ἀλλὰ κατακέιμεθα  
ὥσπερ ἐξὸν ἡσυχίαν ἄγειν. ἐγὼ οὖν τὸν ἐκ ποίας πόλεως  
στρατηγὸν προσδοκῶ ταῦτα πράξειν; ποῖαν δ' ἡλικίαν  
ἐμαυτῷ ἐλθεῖν ἀναμείνω; οὐ γὰρ ἔγωγ' ἔτι πρεσβύτερος  
ἔσομαι, ἐὰν τήμερον προδῶ ἐμαυτὸν τοῖς πολεμίους.

Ἐκ τούτου ἀνίσταται καὶ συγκαλεῖ τοὺς Προξένου πρῶτον  
λοχαγούς. ἐπεὶ δὲ συνήλθον, ἔλεξεν· Ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες  
λοχαγοί, οὔτε καθεύδειν δύναμαι, ὥσπερ οἶμαι οὐδ'

πῦρ, μὴ οὐ δύναίτο ἐκ τῆς χώρας ἐξελθεῖν τῆς βασιλέως,

ἀλλ' |bound, |from all directions .νων |difficulty, |whatever kind  
|fend off; |bottleneck

μὲν δὴ <sup>do</sup> ἐστὶ τὸ τοιοῦτον |dream ἵδῃν ἔξῃστι σκοπεῖν ἐκ τῶν

συμβάντων μετὰ τὸ |dream

Γίγνεται γὰρ τάδε. εὐθὺς ἐπειδὴ |awaken πρῶτον μὲν

|thought ὑπὼ ἐμπίπτει· τί |lie down , ἡ δὲ νύξ |surpass

ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ |likely τοὺς πολεμίους ἥξιν. εἰ δὲ

γενησόμεθα ἐπὶ βασιλεῖ, τί |getting in the way, πάντα μὲν τὰ

χαλεπώτατα ἐπιδόντας, πάντα δὲ τὰ δεινότατα παθόντας

|insult ἀποθανεῖν; ὅπως δ' ἀμυνόμεθα οὐδεῖς

παρασκευάζεται οὐδὲ |take care of, ἀλλὰ |lie down  
|oversee

ὥσπερ |go |peace and quiet . ἐγὼ οὖν τὸν ἐκ ποίας πόλεως  
|forth;

στρατηγὸν <sup>is</sup> προσδοκῶ ταῦτα πράξιν; |what kind |time of life, contem-  
|pos- |poraries  
|sible

ἐμαντῶ ἐλθεῖν |wait for , οὐ γὰρ ἔγωγ' ἔτι πρεσβύτερος

ἔσομαι, ἐὰν |today προδῶ ἐμαντὸν τοῖς πολεμίοις.

Ἐκ τούτου ἀνίσταται καὶ |call together ὅς Προξένου πρῶτον

|captain ἐπεὶ δὲ |come together ἔξεν· Ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες

|captain , οὔτε |lie down δύναμαι, ὥσπερ οἶμαι οὐδ'

could that mean but that he was hemmed in by various perplexities, and so could not escape from the country of the king? The full meaning, however, is to be discovered from what happened after the dream.

This is what took place. As soon as he was fully awake, the first clear thought which came into his head was, Why am I lying here? The night advances; with the day, it is like enough, the enemy will be upon us. If we are to fall into the hands of the king, what is left us but to face the most horrible of sights, and to suffer the most fearful pains, and then to die, insulted, an ignominious death? To defend ourselves—to ward off that fate—not a hand stirs: no one is preparing, none cares; but here we lie, as though it were time to rest and take our ease. I too! what am I waiting for? a general to undertake the work? and from what city? am I waiting till I am older myself and of riper age? older I shall never be, if to-day I betray myself to my enemies.

Thereupon he got up, and called together first Proxenus's officers; and when they were met, he said: «Sleep, sirs, I cannot, nor can you, I fancy, nor lie here longer, when I

*vocabulary*

**ἀγωνίζομαι** contend, exert oneself  
**ἀκίζω** disrespect, mutilate  
**ἀνασταυρόω** impale  
**ἀποτέμνω** cut off, sever ~tonsure  
**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous  
**διαθεάομαι** check out, examine  
**ἐκφαίνω** bring to light ~photon  
**ἔσχατος** farthest, last  
**κατάκειμαι** lie down

**κηδεμών** -όνος (m, 3) mourner  
 ~heinous  
**μακαρίζω** congratulate ~macarism  
**οἰκτείρω** pity  
**ὁμομήτριος** with the same mother  
**πότε** when?  
**σπονδή** libation, treaty ~spontaneous  
**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war,  
 campaign ~strategy  
**ὠφάω** weave

ὕμεις, οὔτε κατακεῖσθαι ἔτι, ὁρῶν ἐν οἷσις ἐσμέν. οἱ μὲν γὰρ πολέμοι δηλον ὅτι οὐ πρότερον πρὸς ἡμᾶς τὸν πόλεμον ἐξέφηναν πρὶν ἐνόμισαν καλῶς τὰ ἑαυτῶν παρασκευάσασθαι, ἡμῶν δ' οὐδεὶς οὐδὲν ἀντεπιμελείται ὅπως ὡς κάλλιστα ἀγωνιούμεθα.

«Καὶ μὴν εἰ ὑψησόμεθα καὶ ἐπὶ βασιλεῖ γενησόμεθα, τί οἰόμεθα πείσεσθαι; ὃς καὶ τοῦ ὁμομητρίου ἀδελφοῦ καὶ τεθνηκότος ἤδη ἀποτεμὼν τὴν κεφαλὴν καὶ τὴν χεῖρα ἀνεσταύρωσεν· ἡμᾶς δέ, οἷς κηδεμῶν μὲν οὐδεὶς πάρεστιν, ἐστρατεύσαμεν δὲ ἐπ' αὐτὸν ὡς δοῦλον ἀντὶ βασιλέως ποιήσοντες καὶ ἀποκτενοῦντες εἰ δυναίμεθα, τί ἂν οἰόμεθα παθεῖν; ἂρ' οὐκ ἂν ἐπὶ πᾶν ἔλθοι ὡς ἡμᾶς τὰ ἔσχατα αἰκισάμενος πᾶσιν ἀνθρώποις φόβον παράσχοι τοῦ στρατεῦσαί ποτε ἐπ' αὐτόν; ἀλλ' ὅπως τοι μὴ ἐπ' ἐκείνῳ γενησόμεθα πάντα ποιητέον.

«Ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν ἔστε μὲν αἱ σπονδαὶ ἦσαν οὔποτε ἐπανόμην ἡμᾶς μὲν οἰκτίρων, βασιλέα δὲ καὶ τοὺς σὺν αὐτῷ μακαρίζων, διαθεώμενος αὐτῶν ὅσῃν μὲν χώραν καὶ



ὑμεῖς, οὔτε |lie down ἔτι, ὁρῶν ἐν οἷοις ἐσμέν. οἱ  
 μὲν γὰρ πολέμοι |visible, "... οὐ πρότερον πρὸς ἡμᾶς  
 |conspicuous  
 τὸν πόλεμον |bring to light, μὲν ἐνόμισαν καλῶς τὰ ἑαυτῶν  
 παρασκευάσασθαι, ἡμῶν δ' οὐδεὶς οὐδὲν ἀντεπιμελείται  
 ὅπως ὡς κάλλιστα |contend, exert  
 |oneself  
 «Καὶ μὴν εἰ ὑψησόμεθα καὶ ἐπὶ βασιλεῖ γενησόμεθα,  
 τί οἰόμεθα πείσεσθαι; ὅς καὶ τοῦ |with the same mother' ...  
 καὶ τεθνηκός ἤδη |cut off, sever τὴν κεφαλὴν καὶ τὴν  
 χεῖρα |impale ἡμᾶς δέ, οἷς |mourner μὲν οὐδεὶς  
 πάρεστιν, |make an expedition, ἐπ' αὐτὸν ὡς δοῦλον ἀντὶ  
 |war, campaign  
 βασιλέως ποιήσοντες καὶ ἀποκτενοῦντες εἰ δυναίμεθα, τί  
 ἂν οἰόμεθα παθεῖν; ἂρ' οὐκ ἂν ἐπὶ πᾶν ἔλθοι ὡς ἡμᾶς τὰ  
 |farthest |disrespect, πᾶσιν ἀνθρώποις φόβον παράσχοι  
 |mutilate  
 τοῦ |make an expedition, ἐπ' αὐτόν; ἀλλ' ὅπως τοι μὴ ἐπ'  
 |war, campaign  
 ἐκείνῳ γενησόμεθα πάντα ποιητέον.

«Ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν ἔστε μὲν αἱ |libation, ἦσαν οὐποτε ἐπανόμην  
 |treaty  
 ἡμᾶς μὲν οἰκτίρων, βασιλέα δὲ καὶ τοὺς σὺν αὐτῷ  
 |congratulate , διαθεώμενος αὐτῶν ὅσῃ μὲν χώραν καὶ

see in what straits we are. Our enemy, we may be sure, did not open war upon us till he felt he had everything amply ready; yet none of us shows a corresponding anxiety to enter the lists of battle in the bravest style.

«And yet, if we yield ourselves and fall into the king's power, need we ask what our fate will be? This man, who, when his own brother, the son of the same parents, was dead, was not content with that, but severed head and hand from the body, and nailed them to a cross. We, then, who have not even the tie of blood in our favour, but who marched against him, meaning to make a slave of him instead of a king—and to slay him if we could: what is likely to be our fate at his hands? Will he not go all lengths so that, by inflicting on us the extreme of ignominy and torture, he may rouse in the rest of mankind a terror of ever marching against him any more? There is no question but that our business is to avoid by all means getting into his clutches.

«For my part, all the while the truce lasted, I never ceased pitying ourselves and congratulating the king and those with him, as, like a helpless spectator, I surveyed the extent and quality of

*vocabulary*

**ἄγων** -ος (m, 3) gathering place

~agony

**ἄγωνοθέτης** -ου (m, 1) referee

**ἄθλον** ἄεθλου prize ~athlete

**ἄμεινων** comparative of ἀγαθός, noble

**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some distance

**ἄφθονος** ungrudging, plentiful

**εἰκός** likely

**ἐνθυμέομαι** (ὑ) take to heart

**ἐνίοτε** sometimes

**ἔξιμι** go forth; is possible ~ion

**ἔξεστι** it is allowed/possible

**ἐξίημι** send forth, allow forth ~jet

**ἐπιορκέω** swear falsely ~oath

**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable

**ἐσθής** clothes ~vest

**θεράπων** -οντος (m, 3) helper,

henchman, servant ~therapy

**κτῆνος** -ους (n, 3) herd animal

**λογίζομαι** reckon, consider

**μεθίημι** let go, cease; (mid) speed off  
~jet

**μέτεμι** be among, go, follow ~ion

**ὀνέω** help, please, be available

**ὄνομαι** blame ~name

**ὁπότερος** which of two, either of two

**ὄρκος** what is sworn by, witness, oath  
~orc

**πόνος** toil, suffering ~osteopenia

**πορίζω** bring about, provide

**πρίαμαι** buy

**σπονδή** libation, treaty ~spontaneous

**στερρός** solid, firm ~stereo

**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,

mercenary ~strategy

**ὑβρις** -εως (f) pride, insolence, outrage

**ὑποψία** suspicion ~panorama

**φρόνημα** -τος (n, 3) mind, spirit

**χρυσός** (ὑ) gold

**ψυχός** -εος (n, 3) coolness ~psychology

**ὠνέομαι** buy

οἶαν ἔχοιεν, ὥς δὲ ἄφθονα τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ὅσους δὲ  
 θεράποντας, ὅσα δὲ κτήνη, χρυσὸν δέ, ἐσθῆτα δέ· τὰ  
 δ' αὖ τῶν στρατιωτῶν ὁπότε ἐνθυμοίμην, ὅτι τῶν μὲν  
 ἀγαθῶν τούτων οὐδενὸς ἡμῖν μετείη, εἰ μὴ πριαίμεθα,  
 ὅτου δ' ὠνησόμεθα ἥδιν ἔτι ὀλίγους ἔχοντας, ἄλλως  
 δέ πως πορίζεσθαι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἢ ὠνουμένους ὄρκους  
 ἤδη κατέχοντας ἡμᾶς· ταῦτ' οὖν λογιζόμενος ἐνίοτε τὰς  
 σπονδὰς μᾶλλον ἐφοβούμην ἢ νῦν τὸν πόλεμον.

«Ἐπεὶ μέντοι ἐκείνοι ἔλυσαν τὰς σπονδὰς, λελίσθαι μοι  
 δοκεῖ καὶ ἡ ἐκείνων ὕβρις καὶ ἡ ἡμετέρα ὑποψία. ἐν  
 μέσῳ γὰρ ἤδη κείται ταῦτα τὰ ἀγαθὰ ἄθλα ὁπότεροι  
 ἂν ἡμῶν ἄνδρες ἀμείνονες ᾧσιν, ἀγωνοθέται δ' οἱ θεοί  
 εἰσιν, οἳ σὺν ἡμῖν, ὥς τὸ εἰκός, ἔσονται. οὗτοι μὲν γὰρ  
 αὐτοὺς ἐπιωρκήκασιν· ἡμεῖς δὲ πολλὰ ὁρῶντες ἀγαθὰ  
 στερρῶς αὐτῶν ἀπειχόμεθα διὰ τοὺς τῶν θεῶν ὄρκους·  
 ὥστε ἐξεῖναί μοι δοκεῖ ἵεναι ἐπὶ τὸν ἀγῶνα πολὺ σὺν  
 φρονήματι μείζονι ἢ τούτοις. ἔτι δ' ἔχομεν σώματα  
 ἱκανώτερα τούτων καὶ ψύχη καὶ θάληνη καὶ πόνους φέρειν·

οἶαν ἔχοιεν, ὥς δὲ |ungrudging,` |fit, suitable, ὅσους δὲ  
|plentiful  
|companion, ὅσα δὲ |herd ani-|gold δέ, |clothes δέ· τὰ  
|mal  
δ' αὖ τῶν στρατιωτῶν ὁπότε |take to heart, ὅτι τῶν μὲν  
ἀγαθῶν τούτων οὐδενὸς ἡμῖν μετεῖη, εἰ μὴ πριαίμεθα,  
ὅτου δ' ὠνησόμεθα ἥδειν ἔτι ὀλίγους ἔχοντας, ἄλλως  
δέ πως |bring about, τὰ |fit, suitable ᾗ, |buy ὅρκους  
|provide  
ἥδη κατέχοντας ἡμᾶς· ταῦτ' οὖν |reckon, |sometimes·  
|consider  
|libation, μᾶλλον ἐφοβούμεν ἢ νῦν τὸν πόλεμον.  
|treaty  
«Ἐπεὶ μέντοι ἐκεῖνοι ἔλυσαν τὰς |libation, , λελύσθαι μοι  
|treaty  
δοκεῖ καὶ ἡ ἐκείνων |hubris καὶ ἡ ἡμετέρα |suspicion ἐν  
μέσῳ γὰρ ἥδη κεῖται ταῦτα τὰ ἀγαθὰ |prize |which of two, either of  
|two  
ἂν ἡμῶν ἄνδρες |better ὦσιν, |referee δ' οἱ θεοί  
εἰσιν, οἳ σὺν ἡμῖν, ὥς τὸ |likely, ἔσονται. οὗτοι μὲν γὰρ  
αὐτοὺς |swear falsely ἡμεῖς δὲ πολλὰ ὀρώντες ἀγαθὰ  
|solid, firm αὐτῶν |ward off, drive off, refrain, ᾧν θεῶν ὅρκους·  
|be at some distance  
ὥστε ἐξεῖναι μοι δοκεῖ ἰέναι ἐπὶ τὸν |gathering ὅλῳ σὺν  
|place  
|mind, spirit μείζονι ἢ τούτοις. ἔτι δ' ἔχομεν σώματα  
ικανώτερα τούτων καὶ |coolness· ἢ θάληπῃ καὶ |toil, suffering· ἢ·

their territory, the plenteousness of their provisions, the multitude of their dependants, their cattle, their gold, and their apparel. And then to turn and ponder the condition of our soldiers, without part or lot in these good things, except we bought it; few, I knew, had any longer the wherewithal to buy, and yet our oath held us down, so that we could not provide ourselves otherwise than by purchase. I say, as I reasoned thus, there were times when I dreaded the truce more than I now dread war.

«Now, however, that they have abruptly ended the truce, there is an end also to their own insolence and to our suspicion. All these good things of theirs are now set as prizes for the combatants. To whichever of us shall prove the better men, will they fall as guerdons; and the gods themselves are the judges of the strife. The gods, who full surely will be on our side, seeing it is our enemies who have taken their names falsely; whilst we, with much to lure us, yet for our oath's sake, and the gods who were our witnesses, sternly held aloof. So that, it seems to me, we have a right to enter upon this contest with much more heart than our foes; and further, we are possessed of bodies more capable than theirs of bearing cold and heat and labour;

*vocabulary*

ἀκμάζω be in top form, flourish  
 ἀμείνων comparative of ἀγαθός, noble  
 ἀναμένω wait for ~remain  
 ἀξιοστράτηγος worthy of command  
 ἀπορία difficulty, bottleneck ~pierce  
 ἀρετή goodness, excellence  
 ἀρχηγός original; chief, originator  
 βοιωτιάζω speak Boeotian, favor them  
 ἐνθυμέομαι (ῥ) take to heart  
 ἐξορμάω veer off course ~hormone  
 ἐρύκω (ῥ) hold back ~serve  
 ἡλικία time of life, contemporaries

θαυμάσιος wonderful  
 θνητός mortal ~euthanasia  
 λοχαγέω (ᾱ) lead a company  
 λοχαγός (ᾱ) captain  
 μεταξύ between  
 νίκη (ι) victory ~Nike  
 προφασίζομαι make an excuse  
 σωτηρία saving, preservation  
 τρατός vulnerable ~trauma  
 ὑπολαμβάνω take under one's  
 support, seize; speak up; imagine  
 ~epilepsy  
 φλυαρέω talk foolishly

ἔχομεν δὲ καὶ ψυχὰς σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς ἀμείνονας· οἱ δὲ ἄνδρες καὶ τρωτοὶ καὶ θνητοὶ μᾶλλον ἡμῶν, ἣν οἱ θεοὶ ὥσπερ τὸ πρόσθεν νίκην ἡμῖν διδώσιν.

«Ἄλλ' ἴσως γὰρ καὶ ἄλλοι ταῦτ' ἐνθυμοῦνται, πρὸς τῶν θεῶν μὴ ἀναμένωμεν ἄλλους ἐφ' ἡμᾶς ἐλθεῖν παρακαλοῦντας ἐπὶ τὰ κάλλιστα ἔργα, ἀλλ' ἡμεῖς ἄρξωμεν τοῦ ἐξορμῆσαι καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρετὴν· φάνητε τῶν λοχαγῶν ἄριστοι καὶ τῶν στρατηγῶν ἀξιοστρατηγότεροι. καὶ γὰρ δέ, εἰ μὲν ὑμεῖς ἐθέλετε ἐξορμᾶν ἐπὶ ταῦτα, ἔπεσθαι ὑμῖν βούλομαι, εἰ δ' ὑμεῖς τάττετ' ἐμὲ ἡγεῖσθαι, οὐδὲν προφασίζομαι τὴν ἡλικίαν, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἀκμάζειν ἡγοῦμαι ἐρύκειν ἀπ' ἐμαντοῦ τὰ κακά.»

Ὁ Μὲν ταῦτ' ἔλεξεν, οἱ δὲ ἀρχηγοὶ ἀκούσαντες ἡγεῖσθαι ἐκέλευον πάντες, πλὴν Ἀπολλωνίδης τις ἦν βοιωτιάζων τῇ φωνῇ· οὗτος δ' εἶπεν ὅτι φλυαροίη ὅστις λέγει ἄλλως πως σωτηρίας ἂν τυχεῖν ἢ βασιλέα πείσας, εἰ δύναιτο, καὶ ἅμα ἥρχετο λέγειν τὰς ἀπορίας. ὁ μὲντοι Ξενοφῶν μεταξὺ ὑπολαβὼν ἔλεξεν ὧδε. «ὦ θαυμασιώτατε ἄνθρωπε,



ἔχομεν δὲ καὶ ψυχὰς σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς |better οἱ δὲ ἄνδρες  
καὶ |vulnerable...|mortal μᾶλλον ἡμῶν, ἣν οἱ θεοὶ ὥσπερ τὸ  
πρόσθεν |victory ἡμῖν διδῶσιν.

«Ἄλλ' ἴσως γὰρ καὶ ἄλλοι ταῦτ' |take to heart , πρὸς  
τῶν θεῶν μὴ |wait for ἄλλους ἐφ' ἡμᾶς ἐλθεῖν  
παρακαλοῦντας ἐπὶ τὰ κάλλιστα ἔργα, ἀλλ' ἡμεῖς  
ἄρξωμεν τοῦ ἐξορμῆσαι καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους ἐπὶ τὴν |excellence  
φάνητε τῶν λοχαγῶν ἄριστοι καὶ τῶν στρατηγῶν  
|worthy of command . καὶ γὰρ δέ, εἰ μὲν ὑμεῖς ἐθέλετε |veer off course  
ἐπὶ ταῦτα, ἔπεσθαι ὑμῖν βούλομαι, εἰ δ' ὑμεῖς τάττετ'  
ἐμὲ ἡγεῖσθαι, οὐδὲν |make an excuse τὴν |time of life, 'còn-| καὶ  
|be in top form, ὑμῖν |hold back...π' ἐμαντοῦ τὰ κακά.»  
|flourish

Ὁ Μὲν ταῦτ' ἔλεξεν, οἱ δὲ |original; chief, ἴσαντες ἡγεῖσθαι  
|originator  
ἐκέλευον πάντες, πλὴν Ἀπολλωνίδης τις ἦν |speak Boeotian,  
|favor them  
τῇ φωνῇ· οὗτος δ' εἶπεν ὅτι |talk foolishly...|τις λέγει ἄλλως  
πως σωτηρίας ἂν τυχεῖν ἢ βασιλέα πείσας, εἰ δύναίτο, καὶ  
ἅμα ἤρχετο λέγειν τὰς |difficulty, ὁ μέντοι Ξενοφῶν |between  
|bottleneck  
|take under one's support, seize; |wonderful ἄνθρωπε,  
|speak up; imagine

souls too we have, by the help of heaven, better and braver; nay, the men themselves are more vulnerable, more mortal, than ourselves, if so be the gods vouchsafe to give us victory once again.

«Howbeit, for I doubt not elsewhere similar reflections are being made, whatsoever betide, let us not, in heaven's name, wait for others to come and challenge us to noble deeds; let us rather take the lead in stimulating the rest to valour. Show yourselves to be the bravest of officers, and among generals, the worthiest to command. For myself, if you choose to start forwards on this quest, I will follow; or, if you bid me lead you, my age shall be no excuse to stand between me and your orders. At least I am of full age, I take it, to avert misfortune from my own head.»

Such were the speaker's words; and the officers, when they heard, all, with one exception, called upon him to put himself at their head. This was a certain Apollonides there present, who spoke in the Boeotian dialect. This man's opinion was that it was mere nonsense for any one to pretend they could obtain safety otherwise than by an appeal to the king, if he had skill to enforce it; and at the same time he began to dilate on the difficulties. But Xenophon cut him short. «O most marvellous of men! though you have eyes to

*vocabulary*

**αἰτέω** ask for ~etiology

**ἀνατίθῃμι** consecrate, lay on, impute;  
(mp) reproach

**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not  
needing ~Sp. sin

**ἀφαιρέω** take away ~heresy

**Ἑλλῆν** Greek

**ἐξοπλίζω** prepare, arm ~hoplite

**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable

**καταισχύνω** (ῶ) act disgracefully

**κεντέω** whip, goad

**λοχαγία** (ἄα) rank of major, captain

**λοχαγός** (ἄ) captain

**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
~hoplite

**παίω** hit

**παρασκηνάω** camp beside

**παρασκηνέω** camp beside

**προσίστημι** be allowed near

**σκεῦος** -εος (n, 3) thing, tool, vessel

**σπονδή** libation, treaty ~spontaneous

**τλήμων** steadfast, enduring ~talent

**ὕβριζω** insult, treat outrageously

**φλυαρέω** talk foolishly

σύγε οὐδὲ ὁρῶν γιγνώσκεις οὐδὲ ἀκούων μέμνησαι. ἐν  
 ταῦτῳ γε μέντοι ἦσθα τούτοις ὅτε βασιλεὺς, ἐπεὶ Κῦρος  
 ἀπέθανε, μέγα φρονήσας ἐπὶ τούτῳ πέμπων ἐκέλευε  
 παραδιδόναι τὰ ὄπλα. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡμεῖς οὐ παραδόντες,  
 ἀλλ' ἐξοπλισάμενοι ἐλθόντες παρεσκηνήσαμεν αὐτῷ, τί  
 οὐκ ἐποίησε πρέσβεις πέμπων καὶ σπονδὰς αἰτῶν καὶ  
 παρέχων τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἔστε σπονδῶν ἔτυχεν; ἐπεὶ δ'  
 αὖ οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοί, ὥσπερ δὴ σὺ κελεύεις,  
 εἰς λόγους αὐτοῖς ἄνευ ὅπλων ἦλθον πιστεύσαντες  
 ταῖς σπονδαῖς, οὐ νῦν ἐκεῖνοι παιόμενοι, κεντούμενοι,  
 ὑβριζόμενοι οὐδὲ ἀποθανεῖν οἱ τλήμονες δύνανται, καὶ  
 μάλ' οἶμαι ἐρῶντες τούτου; ἃ σὺ πάντα εἰδὼς τοὺς  
 μὲν ἀμύνεσθαι κελεύοντας φλυαρεῖν φήεις, πείθειν δὲ  
 πάλιν κελεύεις ἰόντας; ἐμοί, ὦ ἄνδρες, δοκεῖ τὸν  
 ἄνθρωπον τοῦτον μήτε προσίεσθαι εἰς ταῦτ' ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς  
 ἀφελομένους τε τὴν λοχαγίαν σκευὴ ἀναθέντας ὥς  
 τοιούτῳ χρῆσθαι. οὗτος γὰρ καὶ τὴν πατρίδα καταισχύνει  
 καὶ πᾶσαν τὴν Ἑλλάδα, ὅτι Ἕλληνας ὧν τοιοῦτός ἐστιν.»

σύγχε οὐδὲ ὁρῶν γιγνώσκεις οὐδὲ ἀκούων μέμνησαι. ἐν  
 ταῦτῳ γε μέντοι ἦσθα τούτοις ὅτε βασιλεύς, ἐπεὶ Κῦρος  
 ἀπέθανε, μέγα φρονήσας ἐπὶ τούτῳ πέμπων ἐκέλευε  
 παραδιδόναι τὰ |tool . ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡμεῖς οὐ παραδόντες,  
 ἀλλ' |prepare, arm ἐλθόντες παρεσκηνήσαμεν αὐτῷ, τί  
 οὐκ ἐποίησε πρέσβεις πέμπων καὶ |libation, |ask for καὶ  
 |treaty  
 παρέχων τὰ |fit, suitable, ἔστε |libation, ἔτυχεν; ἐπεὶ δ'  
 |treaty  
 αὐτοὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ |captain , ὥσπερ δὴ σὺ κελεύεις,  
 εἰς λόγους αὐτοῖς |away |tool ἦλθον πιστεύσαντες  
 |from;  
 ταῖς |libation, , οὐκ ἐκείνοι |hit , |whip, goad ,  
 |treaty  
 |insult οὐδὲ ἀπαρνεῖν οἱ |steadfast δύνανται, καὶ  
 |not  
 |need-  
 |ing  
 μάλ' οἶμαι ἐρῶντες τούτου; ἂ σὺ πάντα εἰδὼς τοὺς  
 μὲν ἀμύνασθαι κελεύοντας |talk foolishly, ἥς, πείθειν δὲ  
 πάλιν κελεύεις ἰόντας; ἐμοί, ὦ ἄνδρες, δοκεῖ τὸν  
 ἄνθρωπον τοῦτον μήτε |be allowed near ταὐτὸ ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς  
 |take away τε τὴν |rank of ma-|thing, |consecrate, lay on, impute;  
 |jor, captain |tool, |(mp) reproach  
 |vessel  
 τοιούτῳ χρῆσθαι. οὗτος γὰρ καὶ τὴν πατρίδα |act disgracefully  
 καὶ πᾶσαν τὴν Ἑλλάδα, ὅτι Ἕλλην ὢν τοιοῦτός ἐστιν.»

see, you do not perceive; though you have ears to hear, you do not recollect. You were present with the rest of us now here when, after the death of Cyrus, the king, vaunting himself on that occurrence, sent dictatorially to bid us lay down our arms. But when we, instead of giving up our arms, put them on and went and pitched our camp near him, his manner changed. It is hard to say what he did not do, he was so at his wit's end, sending us embassies and begging for a truce, and furnishing provisions the while, until he had got it. Or to take the contrary instance, when just now, acting precisely on your principles, our generals and captains went, trusting to the truce, unarmed to a conference with them, what came of it? what is happening at this instant? Beaten, goaded with pricks, insulted, poor souls, they cannot even die: though death, I ween, would be very sweet. And you, who know all this, how can you say that it is mere nonsense to talk of self-defence? how can you bid us go again and try the arts of persuasion? In my opinion, sirs, we ought not to admit this fellow to the same rank with ourselves; rather ought we to deprive him of his captaincy, and load him with packs and treat him as such. The man is a disgrace to his own fatherland and the whole of Hellas, that,

*vocabulary*

**ἀπελαύνω** expel, exclude, ward off;  
(intrans) ride away  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**καθέζομαι** act: set, seat; pass: sit  
down, sit up  
**λοχαγέω** (ᾱ) lead a company  
**λοχαγός** (ᾱ) captain  
**οἶχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
~hoplite  
**ὅπόθεν** whence  
**ὅπου** where

**οὖς οὔατος** (n) ear  
**παντάπασι** altogether; yes, certainly  
**προσῆκω** belong to, it beseems  
**συνέρχομαι** come together  
**σχεδόν** near, approximately at  
~ischemia  
**σῶς** safe, alive  
**τροπᾶω** (ὀ) to drill (a hole) ~trepan  
**ὑπολαμβάνω** take under one's  
support, seize; speak up; imagine  
~epilepsy  
**ὑποστράτηγος** subordinate  
commander

Ἐντεῦθεν ὑπολαβὼν Ἀγασίας Στυμφάλιος εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ τούτῳ γε οὔτε τῆς Βοιωτίας προσήκει οὐδὲν οὔτε τῆς Ἑλλάδος παντάπασιν, ἐπεὶ ἐγὼ αὐτὸν εἶδον ὥσπερ Λυδὸν ἀμφοτέρω τὰ ὦτα τετρυπημένον.» καὶ εἶχεν οὕτως. τοῦτον μὲν οὖν ἀπήλασαν.

Οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι παρὰ τὰς τάξεις ἰόντες, ὅπου μὲν στρατηγὸς σῶος εἴη, τὸν στρατηγὸν παρεκάλουν, ὁπόθεν δὲ οἴχοιτο, τὸν ὑποστράτηγον, ὅπου δ' αὖ λοχαγὸς σῶος εἴη, τὸν λοχαγόν. ἐπεὶ δὲ πάντες συνήλθον, εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν τῶν ὅπλων ἐκαθέζοντο· καὶ ἐγένοντο οἱ συνελθόντες στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ ἀμφὶ τοὺς ἑκατόν. ὅτε δὲ ταῦτα ἦν σχεδὸν μέσαι ἦσαν νύκτες.

Ἐνταῦθα Ἰερώνυμος Ἡλείος πρεσβύτατος ὢν τῶν Προξένου λοχαγῶν ἤρχετο λέγειν ὧδε.

«Ἡμῖν, ὦ ἄνδρες στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοί, ὁρώσι τὰ παρόντα ἔδοξε καὶ αὐτοῖς συνελθεῖν καὶ ὑμᾶς παρακαλέσαι, ὅπως βουλευσαίμεθα εἴ τι δυναίμεθα



|thence |take under one's support, |*τυμφάλιος* |*εἶπεν*· |*Ἀλλὰ*  
 |seize; speak up; imagine  
*τούτῳ γε οὔτε τῆς Βοιωτίας* |belong to, |*οὐδὲν οὔτε τῆς*  
 |it beseems  
*Ἑλλάδος* |altogether; , |*ἐπεὶ ἐγὼ αὐτὸν εἶδον ὥσπερ Λυδὸν*  
 |yes, certainly  
*ἀμφοτέρα τὰ* |ear |to drill (a hole) » |*καὶ εἶχεν οὕτως.*  
*τοῦτον μὲν οὖν* |expel, exclude, ward off;  
 |(intrans) ride away  
*Οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι παρὰ τὰς τάξεις ἰόντες,* |where |*μὲν στρατηγὸς*  
*σῶος εἴη, τὸν στρατηγὸν παρεκάλουν,* |whence |*δὲ* |come, go,  
*τὸν* |subordinate com-, |where |*δ' αὖ* |captain |*σῶος εἴη, τὸν*  
 |mander  
 |captain |*ἐπεὶ δὲ πάντες* |come together |*ς τὸ πρόσθεν*  
*τῶν* |tool |*ἐκαθέζοντο· καὶ ἐγένοντο οἱ* |come together  
*στρατηγοὶ καὶ* |captain |*ἀμφὶ τοὺς ἑκατόν. ὅτε δὲ ταῦτα*  
*ἦν* |about |*μέσαι ἦσαν νύκτες.*

|there, here |*Ἰερώνυμος Ἡλείος πρεσβύτατος ὢν τῶν*  
*Προξένου λοχαγῶν ἤρχετο λέγειν ὧδε.*

«*Ἡμῖν, ὦ ἄνδρες στρατηγοὶ καὶ* |captain , |*ὁρώσι*  
*τὰ παρόντα ἔδοξε καὶ αὐτοῖς* |come together |*· καὶ ὑμᾶς*  
*παρακαλέσαι, ὅπως βουλευσαίμεθα εἴ τι δυναίμεθα*

being a Hellene, he is what he is.”

Here Agasias the Stymphalian broke in, exclaiming: «Nay, this fellow has no connection either with Boeotia or with Hellas, none whatever. I have noted both his ears bored like a Lydian's.” And so it was. Him then they banished.

But the rest visited the ranks, and wherever a general was left, they summoned the general; where he was gone, the lieutenant-general; and where again the captain alone was left, the captain. As soon as they were all met, they seated themselves in front of the place d'armes: the assembled generals and officers, numbering about a hundred. It was nearly midnight when this took place.

Thereupon Hieronymous the Eleian, the eldest of Proxenus's captains, commenced speaking as follows: «Generals and captains, it seemed right to us, in view of the present crisis, ourselves

*vocabulary*

**ἄθυμος** (ῥ) having low morale ~fume  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous  
**ἐπιβουλεύω** plot, plan, harm  
 ~volunteer  
**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand  
 ~station  
**ἐφίστημι** set; (mp) come/be near,  
 direct, stop ~station  
**λοχαγός** (ᾱ) captain

**μήποτε** absolutely never  
**μιμέομαι** (ι) imitate, represent  
**πλεονεκτέω** be greedy, take advantage  
**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
 mercenary ~strategy  
**συλλαμβάνω** seize, capture;  
 understand ~epilepsy  
**συνέρχομαι** come together  
**ταξίαρχος** military rank  
**τοίνυν** well, then  
**φανερός** visible, conspicuous ~photon

ἀγαθόν. λέξον δ',» ἔφη, «καὶ σύ, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, ἅπερ καὶ πρὸς ἡμᾶς.»

Ἐκ τούτου λέγει τάδε Ξενοφῶν. «Ἄλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν δὴ πάντες ἐπιστάμεθα, ὅτι βασιλεὺς καὶ Τισσαφέρνης οὓς μὲν ἐδυνήθησαν συνειλήφασιν ἡμῶν, τοῖς δ' ἄλλοις δῆλον ὅτι ἐπιβουλεύουσιν, ὥς, ἢν δύνωνται, ἀπολέσωσιν. ἡμῖν δέ γε οἶμαι πάντα ποιητέα ὥς μήποτε ἐπὶ τοῖς βαρβάροις γενώμεθα, ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον ἐκεῖνοι ἐφ' ἡμῖν. εἰ τοίνυν ἐπίστασθε ὅτι ὑμεῖς τοσοῦτοι ὄντες ὅσοι νῦν συνεληλύθατε μέγιστον ἔχετε καιρόν. οἱ γὰρ στρατιῶται οὗτοι πάντες πρὸς ὑμᾶς βλέπουσι, καὶ μὲν ὑμᾶς ὀρώσιν ἀθύμους, πάντες κακοὶ ἔσονται, ἢν δὲ ὑμεῖς αὐτοὶ τε παρασκευαζόμενοι φανεροὶ ᾗτε ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους παρακαλῆτε, εἰ ἵστε ὅτι ἔψονται ὑμῖν καὶ πειράσονται μιμῆσθαι. ἴσως δέ τοι καὶ δίκαιόν ἐστιν ὑμᾶς διαφέρειν τι τούτων. ὑμεῖς γάρ ἐστε στρατηγοί, ὑμεῖς ταξίαρχοι καὶ λοχαγοί· καὶ ὅτε εἰρήνη ᾗν, ὑμεῖς καὶ χρήμασι καὶ τιμαῖς τούτων ἐπλεονεκτεῖτε· καὶ νῦν τοίνυν

ἀγαθόν. λέξον δ',» ἔφη, «καὶ σύ, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, ἅπερ καὶ  
πρὸς ἡμᾶς.»

Ἐκ τούτου λέγει τάδε Ξενοφῶν. «Ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν  
δὴ πάντες ἐπιστάμεθα, ὅτι βασιλεὺς καὶ Τισσαφέρνης  
οὓς μὲν ἐδυνήθησαν |seize, capture; ἡμῶν, τοῖς δ' ἄλλοις  
|understand

|visible, ὥς, ἣν δύνωνται, ἀπολέσωσιν.  
|conspicuous

ἡμῖν δέ γε οἶμαι πάντα ποιητέα ὥς |absolutely ὑπὲρ τοῖς  
|never

|non-Greek γενώμεθα, ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον ἐκείνοι ἐφ' ἡμῖν.

εἶ |well, then ἵστασθε ὅτι ὑμεῖς τοσοῦτοι ὄντες ὅσοι νῦν

|come together μέγιστον ἔχετε καιρόν. οἱ γὰρ |soldier,  
|mercenary

οὗτοι πάντες πρὸς ὑμᾶς βλέπουσι, καὶ μὲν ὑμᾶς ὁρώσιν

|having low morale κακοὶ ἔσονται, ἣν δὲ ὑμεῖς αὐτοί τε

παρασκευαζόμενοι |visible, ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους καὶ  
|conspicuous

τοὺς ἄλλους παρακαλήτε, εἶ ἵστε ὅτι ἔψονται ὑμῖν καὶ

πειράσονται |imitate, ἵσως δέ τοι καὶ δίκαιόν ἐστιν  
|represent

ὑμᾶς διαφέρειν τι τούτων. ὑμεῖς γὰρ ἐστε στρατηγοί,

ὑμεῖς |military rank καὶ |captain καὶ ὅτε εἰρήνη ἦν, ὑμεῖς καὶ

χρήμασι καὶ τιμαῖς τούτων |be greedy, take καὶ νῦν |well, then  
|advantage

to assemble and to summon you, that we might advise upon some practicable course. Would you, Xenophon, repeat what you said to us?"

Thereupon Xenophon spoke as follows: «We all know only too well, that the king and Tissaphernes have seized as many of us as they could, and it is clear they are plotting to destroy the rest of us if they can. Our business is plain: it is to do all we can to avoid getting into the power of the barbarians; rather, if we can, we will get them into our power. Rely upon this then, all you who are here assembled, now is your great opportunity. The soldiers outside have their eyes fixed upon you; if they think that you are faint-hearted, they will turn cowards; but if you show them that you are making your own preparations to attack the enemy, and setting an example to the rest—follow you, be assured, they will: imitate you they will. May be, it is but right and fair that you should somewhat excel them, for you are generals, you are commanders of brigades or regiments; and if, while it was peace, you had the advantage in wealth and position, so now, when it is war,

*vocabulary*

**ἄθυμος** (ῥ) having low morale ~fume  
**ἁμείνων** comparative of ἄγαθός, noble  
**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not  
 needing ~Sp. sin  
**ἀντικαθίστημι** replace; set against  
**ἄταξία** disorder  
**εἴτε** if, whenever; either/or  
**ἐννοέω** consider  
**ἐπειδάν** when, after  
**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee  
**εὐταξία** good order ~syntax  
**λοχαγός** (ᾱ) captain  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
 ~hoplite

**οὐδαμοῦ** nowhere  
**παντάπασι** altogether; yes, certainly  
**παραθαρσύνω** encourage  
**πολεμικός** warlike, hostile ~polemic  
**προβουλεύω** take counsel before  
**προπονέω** prepare; suffer before  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
 mercenary ~strategy  
**συλλέγω** collect, assemble ~legion  
**συναίρω** put together, crush ~heresy  
**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch  
 ~phylactery  
**ὠφελέω** help, be useful

ἐπεὶ πόλεμός ἐστιν, ἀξιοῦν δεῖ ὑμᾶς αὐτοὺς ἀμείνους τε τοῦ πλήθους εἶναι καὶ προβουλεύειν τούτων καὶ προπονεῖν, ἣν που δέη.

«Καὶ νῦν πρῶτον μὲν οἶομαι ἂν ὑμᾶς μέγα ὠφελῆσαι τὸ στράτευμα, εἰ ἐπιμεληθείητε ὅπως ἀντὶ τῶν ἀπολωλότων ὡς τάχιστα στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ ἀντικατασταθῶσιν. ἄνευ γὰρ ἀρχόντων οὐδὲν ἂν οὔτε καλὸν οὔτε ἀγαθὸν γένοιτο ὡς μὲν συνελόντι εἰπεῖν οὐδαμοῦ, ἐν δὲ δὴ τοῖς πολεμικοῖς παντάπασιν. ἡ μὲν γὰρ εὐταξία σώζειν δοκεῖ, ἡ δὲ ἀταξία πολλοὺς ἤδη ἀπολώλεκεν. ἐπειδὴν δὲ καταστήσησθε τοὺς ἄρχοντας ὅσους δεῖ, ἦν καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους στρατιώτας συλλέγητε καὶ παραθαρρύνητε, οἶμαι ἂν ὑμᾶς πάνυ ἐν καιρῷ ποιῆσαι. νῦν γὰρ ἴσως καὶ ὑμεῖς αἰσθάνεσθε ὡς ἀθύμως μὲν ἦλθον ἐπὶ τὰ ὅπλα, ἀθύμως δὲ πρὸς τὰς φυλακάς· ὥστε οὕτω γ' ἐχόντων οὐκ οἶδα ὅ τι ἂν τις χρήσαιτο αὐτοῖς, εἴτε νυκτὸς δέοι εἴτε καὶ ἡμέρας. ἦν δέ τις αὐτῶν τρέψῃ τὰς γνώμας, ὡς μὴ τοῦτο μόνον ἐννοῶνται, τί πείσονται, ἀλλὰ καὶ τί ποιήσουσι, πολλὴ



ἐπεὶ πόλεμός ἐστιν, ἀξιοῦν δεῖ ὑμᾶς αὐτοὺς |better τε τοῦ  
 πλήθους εἶναι καὶ |take counsel before ἑτῶν καὶ |prepare; suf- ἦν  
 |fer before  
 που δέη.

«Καὶ νῦν πρῶτον μὲν οἶμαι ἂν ὑμᾶς μέγα |help, be useful  
 |army , εἰ |take care of, ὅπως ἀντὶ τῶν ἀπολωλότων  
 |oversee  
 ὡς τάχιστα στρατηγοὶ καὶ |captain |replace; set against  
 |away from; not hav- οὐδὲν ἂν οὔτε καλὸν οὔτε ἀγαθὸν  
 |ing; not needing  
 γένοιτο ὡς μὲν |put together, crush |nowhere , ἐν δὲ δὴ τοῖς

|warlike, |altogether; ἡ μὲν γὰρ |good order ὥζειν  
 |hostile |yes, certainly  
 δοκεῖ, ἡ δὲ ἀταξία πολλοὺς ἤδη ἀπολώλεκεν. |when,  
 |after

δὲ καταστήσῃσθε τοὺς ἄρχοντας ὅσους δεῖ, ἦν καὶ τοὺς  
 ἄλλους |soldier, |collect, καὶ |encourage , οἶμαι  
 |mercenary |assemble  
 ἂν ὑμᾶς πάννυ ἐν καιρῷ ποιῆσαι. νῦν γὰρ ἴσως καὶ ὑμεῖς

αἰσθάνεσθε ὡς |having low morale ἐπὶ τὰ |tool , |having low morale  
 πρὸς τὰς |guard, ὥστε οὕτω γ' ἐχόντων οὐκ οἶδα ὅ τι  
 |prison,  
 ἂν τις χρῆσθαι αὐτοῖς, |if, whenever; δέοι |if, whenever; ρας.  
 |watch |either/or |either/or  
 ἦν δέ τις αὐτῶν τρέψῃ τὰς γνώμας, ὡς μὴ τοῦτο μόνον  
 |consider , τί πείσονται, ἀλλὰ καὶ τί ποιήσουσι, πολὺν

you are expected to rise superior to the common herd—to think for them, to toil for them, whenever there be need.

«At this very moment you would confer a great boon on the army, if you made it your business to appoint generals and officers to fill the places of those that are lost. For without leaders nothing good or noble, to put it concisely, was ever wrought anywhere; and in military matters this is absolutely true; for if discipline is held to be of saving virtue, the want of it has been the ruin of many ere now. Well, then! when you have appointed all the commanders necessary, it would only be opportune, I take it, if you were to summon the rest of the soldiers and speak some words of encouragement. Even now, I daresay you noticed yourselves the crestfallen air with which they came into camp, the despondency with which they fell to picket duty, so that, unless there is a change for the better, I do not know for what service they will be fit; whether by night, if need were, or even by day. The thing is to get them to turn their thoughts to what they mean to do, instead of to what they are likely to suffer. Do that, and their spirits will

*vocabulary*

**ἀγωνίζομαι** contend, exert oneself

**αἰσχροῦς** shameful

**ἀναγκαῖος** coerced, coercing, slavery

**γῆρας** -ος (n, 3) old age

**διάγω** lead through; pass a time

~demagogue

**ἐνθυμέομαι** (ὑ) take to heart

**ἐπαινέω** concur, praise, advise

**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand

~station

**ἐρρωμένος** vigorous, powerful

**εὐδαίμων** blessed with a good genius

**εὖθυμος** (ὑ) well-disposed ~fume

**ἐφίστημι** set; (mp) come/be near,  
direct, stop ~station

**ἡώς ἡῶθι** (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene

**ἰσχύς** -ος (f) strength; body of troops

**καταμανθάνω** examine, observe

**κοινός** communal, ordinary

**μαστεύω** crave

**νίκη** (ι) victory ~Nike

**ὀπόσος** as many as, how many, how  
great

**ὀπότερος** which of two, either of two

**πολεμικός** warlike, hostile ~polemic

εὐθυμότεροι ἔσονται. ἐπίστασθε γὰρ δὴ ὅτι οὔτε πληθὸς ἔστιν οὔτε ἰσχὺς ἢ ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ τὰς νίκας ποιοῦσα, ἀλλ' ὁπότεροι ἂν σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς ταῖς ψυχαῖς ἐρρωμενέστεροι ἴωσιν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους, τούτους ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ οἱ ἀντίοι οὐ δέχονται. ἐντεθύμῃμαι δ' ἔγωγε, ὦ ἄνδρες, καὶ τοῦτο, ὅτι ὅποσοι μὲν μαστεύουσι ζῆν ἐκ παντὸς τρόπου ἐν τοῖς πολεμικοῖς, οὗτοι μὲν κακῶς τε καὶ αἰσχροῶς ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ ἀποθνήσκουσιν. ὅποσοι δὲ τὸν μὲν θάνατον ἐγνώκασιν πᾶσι κοινὸν εἶναι καὶ ἀναγκαῖον ἀνθρώποις, περὶ δὲ τοῦ καλῶς ἀποθνήσκειν ἀγωνίζονται, τούτους ὁρῶ μᾶλλον πως εἰς τὸ γῆρας ἀφικνουμένους καὶ ἕως ἂν ζῶσιν εὐδαιμονέστερον διάγοντας. ἃ καὶ ὑμᾶς δεῖ νῦν καταμαθόντας ἐν τοιούτῳ γὰρ καιρῷ ἔσμεν αὐτούς τε ἄνδρας ἀγαθοὺς εἶναι καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους παρακαλεῖν.» ὁ μὲν ταῦτα εἰπὼν ἐπαύσατο.

Μετὰ δὲ τοῦτον εἶπε Χειρίσοφος· «Ἀλλὰ πρόσθεν μὲν, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, τοσοῦτον μόνον σε ἐγίγνωσκον ὅσον ἤκουον Ἀθηναῖον εἶναι, νῦν δὲ καὶ ἐπαινῶ σε ἐφ' οἷς λέγεις

|well-disposed ἔσονται. ἐπίστασθε γὰρ δὴ ὅτι οὔτε πληθὸς  
 ἔστιν οὔτε |strength; |body πολέμῳ τὰς |victory τοιοῦσα, ἀλλ'  
 |which of two, |either of two σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς ταῖς ψυχαῖς |vigorous, powerful  
 ἴωσιν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους, τούτους ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ οἱ  
 ἀντίοι οὐ δέχονται. |take to heart δ' ἔγωγε, ὦ ἄνδρες, καὶ  
 τοῦτο, ὅτι |as/how |crave ζῆν ἐκ παντὸς τρόπου  
 ἐν τοῖς |warlike, |hostile οὔτοι μὲν κακῶς τε καὶ |shameful ὡς  
 ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ ἀποθνήσκουσιν. |as/how many/great |θάνατον  
 ἐγνώκασιν πᾶσι |communal, |ordinary καὶ ἀναγκαῖον ἀνθρώποις,  
 περὶ δὲ τοῦ καλῶς ἀποθνήσκειν |contend, exert, |oneself τούτους  
 ὁρῶ μᾶλλον πῶς εἰς τὸ |old age ἀφικνουμένους καὶ ἕως  
 ἂν ζῶσιν |blessed with a good |lead through; |genius καὶ ὑμᾶς δεῖ νῦν  
 |pass a time  
 |examine, observe ἐν τοιούτῳ γὰρ καιρῷ ἔσμεν αὐτούς τε  
 ἄνδρας ἀγαθοὺς εἶναι καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους παρακαλεῖν.» ὁ  
 μὲν ταῦτα εἰπὼν ἐπαύσατο.

Μετὰ δὲ τοῦτον εἶπε Χειρίσοφος· «Ἀλλὰ πρόσθεν μὲν,  
 ὦ Ξενοφῶν, τοσοῦτον μόνον σε ἐγίγνωσκον ὅσον ἤκουον  
 Ἀθηναῖον εἶναι, νῦν δὲ καὶ |concur σε ἐφ' οἷς λέγεις

soon revive wonderfully. You know, I need hardly remind you, it is not numbers or strength that gives victory in war; but, heaven helping them, to one or other of two combatants it is given to dash with stouter hearts to meet the foe, and such onset, in nine cases out of ten, those others refuse to meet. This observation, also, I have laid to heart, that they, who in matters of war seek in all ways to save their lives, are just they who, as a rule, die dishonourably; whereas they who, recognising that death is the common lot and destiny of all men, strive hard to die nobly: these more frequently, as I observe, do after all attain to old age, or, at any rate, while life lasts, they spend their days more happily. This lesson let all lay to heart this day, for we are just at such a crisis of our fate. Now is the season to be brave ourselves, and to stimulate the rest by our example.”

With these words he ceased; and after him, Cheirisophus said: «Xenophon, hitherto I knew only so much of you as that you were, I heard, an Athenian, but now I must commend you for your words and for your conduct. I

*vocabulary*

**κῆρυξ** -κος (m) henchman, functionary

**κοινός** communal, ordinary

**περαίνω** finish, accomplish

**προφυλακή** picket

**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,

mercenary ~strategy

**συγκαλέω** call together ~gallo

**συνέρχομαι** come together

**σχεδόν** near, approximately at

~ischemia

**ὕποφαίνω** show a little ~photon

τε καὶ πράττεις, καὶ βουλοίμην ἂν ὅτι πλείστους εἶναι τοιούτους· κοινὸν γὰρ ἂν εἴη τὸ ἀγαθόν. καὶ νῦν,» ἔφη, «μὴ μέλλωμεν, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἀλλ' ἀπελθόντες ἤδη αἰρεῖσθε οἱ δεόμενοι ἄρχοντας, καὶ ἐλόμενοι ἦκετε εἰς τὸ μέσον τοῦ στρατοπέδου καὶ τοὺς αἰρεθέντας ἄγετε·» ἔπειτ' ἐκεῖ συγκαλοῦμεν τοὺς ἄλλους στρατιώτας. «παρέστω δ' ἡμῖν,» ἔφη, «καὶ Τολμίδης ὁ κήρυξ.» καὶ ἅμα ταῦτ' εἰπὼν ἀνέστη, ὥς μὴ μέλλοιτο ἀλλὰ περαίνοιτο τὰ δέοντα. ἐκ τούτου ἡρέθησαν ἄρχοντες ἀντὶ μὲν Κλεάρχου Τιμασίων Δαρδανεύς, ἀντὶ δὲ Σωκράτους Ξανθικλῆς Ἀχαιός, ἀντὶ δὲ Ἀγίου Κλεάνωρ Ἀρκάς, ἀντὶ δὲ Μένωνος Φιλήσιος Ἀχαιός, ἀντὶ δὲ Προξένου Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος.

### 3.2

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἤρηντο, ἡμέρα τε σχεδὸν ὑπέφαινε καὶ εἰς τὸ μέσον ἦκον οἱ ἄρχοντες, καὶ ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς προφυλακὰς καταστήσαντας συγκαλεῖν τοὺς στρατιώτας. ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι στρατιῶται συνήλθον, ἀνέστη πρῶτος μὲν Χειρίσοφος ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε.



τε καὶ πράττεις, καὶ βουλοίμην ἂν ὅτι πλείστους εἶναι  
 τοιούτους· <sup>|communal, ordinary</sup> ἂν εἴη τὸ ἀγαθόν. καὶ νῦν,» ἔφη,  
 «μὴ μέλλωμεν, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἀλλ' ἀπελθόντες ἤδη αἰρείσθε  
 οἱ δεόμενοι ἄρχοντας, καὶ ἐλόμενοι ἦκετε εἰς τὸ μέσον  
 τοῦ στρατοπέδου καὶ τοὺς αἰρεθέντας ἄγετε·» ἔπειτ' ἐκεῖ  
<sup>|call together</sup> τοὺς ἄλλους <sup>|soldier, mercenary</sup> «παρέστω δ'  
 ἡμῖν,» ἔφη, «καὶ Τολμίδης ὁ <sup>|henchman, |functionary</sup> καὶ ἅμα ταῦτ' εἰπὼν  
 ἀνέστη, ὡς μὴ μέλλοιτο ἀλλὰ <sup>|finish, |accomplish</sup> τὰ δέοντα. ἐκ  
 τούτου ἡρέθησαν ἄρχοντες ἀντὶ μὲν Κλεάρχου Τιμασίων  
 Δαρδανεύς, ἀντὶ δὲ Σωκράτους Ξανθικλῆς Ἀχαιοός, ἀντὶ  
 δὲ Ἀγίου Κλεάνωρ Ἀρκάς, ἀντὶ δὲ Μένωνος Φιλήσιος  
 Ἀχαιοός, ἀντὶ δὲ Προξένου Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος.

### 3.2

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἤρηντο, ἡμέρα τε <sup>|about</sup> <sup>|show a little</sup> καὶ εἰς τὸ  
 μέσον ἦκον οἱ ἄρχοντες, καὶ ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς <sup>|picket</sup>  
 καταστήσαντας <sup>|call together</sup> τοὺς <sup>|soldier, mercenary</sup> ἐπεὶ δὲ  
 καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι <sup>|soldier, mercenary</sup> <sup>|come together</sup> νέστη <sup>|first</sup>  
 μὲν Χειρίσοφος ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε.

hope that there may be many more like you, for it would prove a public blessing.” Then turning to the officers: «And now,” said he, «let us waste no time; retire at once, I beg you, and choose leaders where you need them. After you have made your elections, come back to the middle of the camp, and bring the newly appointed officers. After that, we will there summon a general meeting of the soldiers. Let Tolmides, the herald,” he added, «be in attendance.” With these words on his lips he got up, in order that what was needful might be done at once without delay. After this the generals were chosen. These were Timasion the Dardanian, in place of Clearchus; Xanthicles, an Achaean, in place of Socrates; Cleanor, an Arcadian, in place of Agias; Philesius, an Achaean, in place of Menon; and in place of Proxenus, Xenophon the Athenian.

### 3.2

By the time the new generals had been chosen, the first faint glimmer of dawn had hardly commenced, as they met in the centre of the camp, and resolved to post an advance guard and to call a general meeting of the soldiers. Now, when these had come together, Cheirisophus the Lacedaemonian first rose and spoke as follows: «Fellow-soldiers, the present posture

*vocabulary*

**αἰδέομαι** respect, be ashamed

**ἄπιστία** disbelief, distrust

**ἀσέβεια** impiety

**γείτων** -ονος (f) neighbor

**ἐξαπατάω** trick, cheat ~apatosaurus

**λοχαγέω** (ᾱ) lead a company

**λοχαγός** (ᾱ) captain

**μηδέποτε** never

**ξένιος** of hospitality ~xenophobe

**ὄμνυμι** (ὄ) swear

**ὁμοτράπεζος** messmate

**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless

**προδίδωμι** betray

**στέρομαι** lack, lose

**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier, mercenary ~strategy

**συλλαμβάνω** seize, capture; understand ~epilepsy

**τελέθω** turn out, come around ~apostle

**ὑποχείριος** under one's hand ~chiral

**ὕφίημι** lower; admit; slack off ~jet

«Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, χαλεπὰ μὲν τὰ παρόντα, ὅποτε ἀνδρῶν στρατηγῶν τοιούτων στερόμεθα καὶ λοχαγῶν καὶ στρατιωτῶν, πρὸς δ' ἔτι καὶ οἱ ἀμφὶ Ἄριαϊον οἱ πρόσθεν σύμμαχοι ὄντες προδεδώκασιν ἡμᾶς· ὅμως δὲ δεῖ ἐκ τῶν παρόντων ἄνδρας ἀγαθοὺς τελέθειν καὶ μὴ ὑφίεσθαι, ἀλλὰ πειρᾶσθαι ὅπως, ἣν μὲν δυνώμεθα, καλῶς νικῶντες σφζώμεθα· εἰ δὲ μή, ἀλλὰ καλῶς γε ἀποθνήσκωμεν, ὑποχείριοι δὲ μηδέποτε γενώμεθα ζῶντες τοῖς πολεμίοις. οἶομαι γὰρ ἂν ἡμᾶς τοιαῦτα παθεῖν οἶα τοὺς ἐχθροὺς οἱ θεοὶ ποιήσειαν.» ἐπὶ τούτῳ Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ὀρχομένιος ἀνέστη καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε. «Ἄλλ' ὁρᾶτε μὲν, ὦ ἄνδρες, τὴν βασιλέως ἐπιорκίαν καὶ ἀσέβειαν, ὁρᾶτε δὲ τὴν Τισσαφέρνους ἀπιστίαν, ὅστις λέγων ὡς γείτων τε εἴη τῆς Ἑλλάδος καὶ περὶ πλείστου ἂν ποιήσαιτο σῶσαι ἡμᾶς, καὶ ἐπὶ τούτοις αὐτὸς ὁμόσας ἡμῖν, αὐτὸς δεξιὰς δούς, αὐτὸς ἐξαπατήσας συνέλαβε τοὺς στρατηγούς, καὶ οὐδὲ Δία ξένιον ἠδέσθη, ἀλλὰ Κλεάρχῳ καὶ ὁμοτράπεζος γενόμενος αὐτοῖς τούτοις ἐξαπατήσας τοὺς ἄνδρας ἀπολώλεκεν.

«Ἄνδρες <sup>|soldier, mercenary</sup> χαλεπὰ μὲν τὰ παρόντα, ὅποτε  
 ἀνδρῶν στρατηγῶν τοιούτων <sup>|lack, lose</sup> καὶ λοχαγῶν καὶ  
<sup>|soldier, mercenary</sup> , πρὸς δ' ἔτι καὶ οἱ ἀμφὶ Ἀριαῖον οἱ πρόσθεν  
 σύμμαχοι ὄντες <sup>|betray</sup> ἡμᾶς <sup>|anyway, nevertheless</sup>  
 τῶν παρόντων ἀνδρας ἀγαθοὺς <sup>|turn out</sup> καὶ μὴ <sup>|lower; admit; slack off</sup>  
 ἀλλὰ πειρᾶσθαι ὅπως, ἣν μὲν δυνώμεθα, καλῶς νικῶντες  
 σωζώμεθα· εἰ δὲ μὴ, ἀλλὰ καλῶς γε ἀποθνήσκωμεν,  
<sup>|under hand</sup> <sup>one's</sup>never γενώμεθα ζῶντες τοῖς πολεμίοις.  
 οἶμαι γὰρ ἂν ἡμᾶς τοιαῦτα παθεῖν οἶα τοὺς ἐχθροὺς  
 οἱ θεοὶ ποιήσειαν.» ἐπὶ τούτῳ Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ὀρχομένιος  
 ἀνέστη καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε. «Ἄλλ' ὁρᾶτε μὲν, ὦ ἄνδρες,  
 τὴν βασιλέως ἐπιορκίαν καὶ <sup>|impeity</sup> , ὁρᾶτε δὲ τὴν  
 Τισσαφέρνους <sup>|disbelief, distrust</sup> , ὅστις λέγων ὡς <sup>|neighbor</sup> εἴη τῆς  
 Ἑλλάδος καὶ περὶ πλείστου ἂν ποιήσαιτο σῶσαι ἡμᾶς, καὶ  
 ἐπὶ τούτοις αὐτὸς ὁμόσας ἡμῖν, αὐτὸς δεξιὰς δούς, αὐτὸς  
<sup>|trick, cheat</sup> <sup>|seize, capture; understand</sup> <sup>us</sup> στρατηγούς, καὶ οὐδὲ Δία  
<sup>|of hos-|respect, be ashamed</sup> <sup>ι</sup>ρχῶ καὶ <sup>|messmate</sup> γενόμενος  
 αὐτοῖς τούτοις <sup>|trick, cheat</sup> τοὺς ἀνδρας ἀπολώλεκεν.

of affairs is not pleasant, seeing that we are robbed of so many generals and captains and soldiers; and more than that, our former allies, Ariaeus and his men, have betrayed us; still, we must rise above our circumstances to prove ourselves brave men, and not give in, but try to save ourselves by glorious victory if we can; or, if not, at least to die gloriously, and never, while we have breath in our bodies, fall into the hands of our enemies. In which latter case, I fear, we shall suffer things, which I pray the gods may visit rather upon those we hate.”

At this point Cleanor the Ochomenian stood up and spoke as follows: «You see, men, the perjury and the impiety of the king. You see the faithlessness of Tissaphernes, professing that he was next-door neighbour to Hellas, and would give a good deal to save us, in confirmation of which he took an oath to us himself, he gave us the pledge of his right hand, and then, with a lie upon his lips, this same man turned round and arrested our generals. He had no reverence even for Zeus, the god of strangers; but, after entertaining Clearchus at his own board as a friend, he used his hospitality to

*vocabulary*

**αἰδέομαι** respect, be ashamed

**ἄπιστία** disbelief, distrust

**ἀποτίνω** (ι) pay back

**βάρβαρος** non-Greek

**εἴτε** if, whenever; either/or

**ἐξαπατάω** trick, cheat ~apatosaurus

**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand

~station

**ἐφίστημι** set; (mp) come/be near,

direct, stop ~station

**κράτιστος** best

**μήποτε** absolutely never

**νίκη** (ι) victory ~Nike

**ὀρθός** upright, straight; correct, just

~orthogonal

**ὀρθόω** stand up

**πιστός** faithful; trustworthy

**πρέπω** be conspicuous, preeminent

~refurbish

**προδίδωμι** betray

**στέλλω** prepare, send, furl ~apostle

**τελευτάω** bring about, finish ~apostle

**τελευτή** conclusion, fulfilment ~apostle

**τιμάω** (ι) honor, exalt

**φίλιος** friendly

Ἄριαῖος δέ, ὃν ἡμεῖς ἠθέλομεν βασιλέα καθιστάναι, καὶ ἐδώκαμεν καὶ ἐλάβομεν πιστὰ μὴ προδώσειν ἀλλήλους, καὶ οὗτος οὔτε τοὺς θεοὺς δείσας οὔτε Κῦρον τεθνηκότα αἰδεσθείς, τιμώμενος μάλιστα ὑπὸ Κύρου ζῶντος νῦν πρὸς τοὺς ἐκείνου ἐχθίστους ἀποστὰς ἡμᾶς τοὺς Κύρου φίλους κακῶς ποιεῖν πειρᾶται. ἀλλὰ τούτους μὲν οἱ θεοὶ ἀποτείσαιντο· ἡμᾶς δὲ δεῖ ταῦτα ὀρῶντας μήποτε ἐξαπατηθῆναι ἔτι ὑπὸ τούτων, ἀλλὰ μαχομένους ὥς ἂν δυνώμεθα κράτιστα τοῦτο ὃ τι ἂν δοκῇ τοῖς θεοῖς πάσχειν.»

Ἐκ τούτου Ξενοφῶν ἀνίσταται ἐσταλμένος ἐπὶ πόλεμον ὥς ἐδύνατο κάλλιστα, νομίζων, εἴτε νίκην διδοῖεν οἱ θεοί, τὸν κάλλιστον κόσμον τῷ νικᾷν πρέπειν, εἴτε τελευτᾷν δέοι, ὀρθῶς ἔχειν τῶν καλλίστων ἑαυτὸν ἀξιῶσαντα ἐν τούτοις τῆς τελευτῆς τυγχάνειν· τοῦ λόγου δὲ ἤρχετο ὧδε. «Τὴν μὲν τῶν βαρβάρων ἐπιτορκίαν τε καὶ ἀπιστίαν λέγει μὲν Κλεάνωρ, ἐπίστασθε δὲ καὶ ὑμεῖς οἶμαι. εἰ μὲν οὖν βουλόμεθα πάλιν αὐτοῖς διὰ φιλίας ἰέναι, ἀνάγκη ἡμᾶς



Ἀριαῖος δέ, ὃν ἡμεῖς ἠθέλομεν βασιλέα καθιστάναι, καὶ  
 ἐδώκαμεν καὶ ἐλάβομεν <sup>|faithful; trustworthy</sup> <sup>|betray</sup> ἀλλήλους,  
 καὶ οὗτος οὔτε τοὺς θεοὺς δείσας οὔτε Κῦρον τεθνηκότα  
<sup>|respect, ashamed</sup> <sup>|honor</sup> μάλιστα ὑπὸ Κύρου ζῶντος νῦν  
 πρὸς τοὺς ἐκείνου ἐχθίστους ἀποστὰς ἡμᾶς τοὺς Κύρου  
 φίλους κακῶς ποιεῖν πειράται. ἀλλὰ τούτους μὲν οἱ  
 θεοὶ <sup>|pay back</sup> ἡμᾶς δὲ δεῖ ταῦτα ὁρῶντας <sup>|absolutely never</sup>  
<sup>|trick, cheat</sup> ἔτι ὑπὸ τούτων, ἀλλὰ μαχομένους ὥς  
 ἂν δυνώμεθα <sup>|best</sup> τοῦτο ὅ τι ἂν δοκῇ τοῖς θεοῖς  
 πᾶσχειν.»

Ἐκ τούτου Ξενοφῶν ἀνίσταται <sup>|prepare, send, furl</sup> πόλεμον  
 ὥς ἐδύνατο κάλλιστα, νομίζων, <sup>|if, when-ever;</sup> <sup>|victory</sup> διδοῖεν οἱ θεοί,  
 τὸν κάλλιστον κόσμον τῷ νικᾷ <sup>|ei-</sup> <sup>|be conspic-</sup> <sup>|if, bring</sup>  
 δέοι, ὁρθῶς ἔχειν τῶν καλλίστων <sup>|ei-</sup> <sup>|themselves, pre-</sup> <sup>|when about,</sup>  
 εἰς πάντα <sup>|eminent</sup> <sup>|ever; finish</sup> <sup>|ei-</sup> <sup>|ther/or</sup> ἐν  
 τούτοις τῆς <sup>|conclusion, fulfilment</sup> <sup>|fulfilment</sup> <sup>|non-Greek</sup> ἐπιτορκίαν τε καὶ <sup>|disbelief, distrust</sup> λέγει  
 μὲν Κλεάνωρ, ἐπίστασθε δὲ καὶ ὑμεῖς οἶμαι. εἰ μὲν οὖν  
 βουλόμεθα πάλιν αὐτοῖς διὰ <sup>|friendly</sup> ἔναι, ἀνάγκη ἡμᾶς

delude and decoy his victims. And Ariaeus, whom we offered to make king, with whom we exchanged pledges not to betray each other, even this man, without a particle of fear of the gods, or respect for Cyrus in his grave, though he was most honoured by Cyrus in lifetime, even he has turned aside to the worst foes of Cyrus, and is doing his best to injure the dead man's friends. Them may the gods requite as they deserve! But we, with these things before our eyes, will not any more be cheated and cajoled by them; we will make the best fight we can, and having made it, whatever the gods think fit to send, we will accept."

After him Xenophon arose; he was arrayed for war in his bravest apparel: «For," said he to himself, «if the gods grant victory, the finest attire will match with victory best; or if I must needs die, then for one who has aspired to the noblest, it is well there should be some outward correspondence between his expectation and his end." He began his speech as follows: «Cleanor has spoken of the perjury and faithlessness of the barbarians, and you yourselves know them only too well, I fancy. If then we are minded to enter a second time into terms of friendship with them, with the experience of what

*vocabulary*

**ἄθυμία** (ῥ) despondency  
**ἀνατείνω** lift, reach out, threaten  
**διανοέω** have in mind  
**ἐγχειρίζω** entrust  
**ἐμπεδέω** confirm, ratify  
**ἐμπεδόω** confirm, ratify  
**θύω** (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω  
**οἰωνός** vulture, large bird, bird of  
 prey; omen ~avis  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
 ~hoplite  
**ὅπου** where

**ὄρκος** what is sworn by, witness, oath  
 ~orc  
**παιανίζω** (ᾱ) chant in victory  
**προσκυνέω** kow tow to; kiss  
**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
 mercenary ~strategy  
**συνεπέυχομαι** make a vow also to  
**σωτήρ** -ος (m) savior  
**σωτηρία** saving, preservation  
**σωτήριος** saving  
**φιλία** friendship ~philanthropy  
**φίλιος** friendly

πολλήν ἀθυμίαν ἔχειν, ὀρώντας καὶ τοὺς στρατηγούς, οἳ διὰ πίστεως αὐτοῖς ἑαυτοὺς ἐνεχείρισαν, οἷα πεπόνθασιν· εἰ μέντοι διανοοῦμεθα σὺν τοῖς ὅπλοις ὧν τε πεποιήκασιν δίκην ἐπιθεῖναι αὐτοῖς καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν διὰ παντὸς πολέμου αὐτοῖς ἰέναι, σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς πολλὰ ἡμῖν καὶ καλὰ ἐλπίδες εἰσὶ σωτηρίας.»

Τοῦτο δὲ λέγοντος αὐτοῦ πτάρνυται τις· ἀκούσαντες δ' οἱ στρατιῶται πάντες μιᾷ ὀρμῇ προσεκύνησαν τὸν θεόν, καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν εἶπε· «Δοκεῖ μοι, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἐπεὶ περὶ σωτηρίας ἡμῶν λεγόντων οἰωνὸς τοῦ Διὸς τοῦ σωτῆρος ἐφάνη, εὐξασθαι τῷ θεῷ τούτῳ θύσειν σωτήρια ὅπου ἂν πρῶτον εἰς φιλίαν χώραν ἀφικώμεθα, συνεπεύξασθαι δὲ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις θεοῖς θύσειν κατὰ δύναμιν. καὶ ὅτῳ δοκεῖ ταῦτ',» ἔφη, «ἀνατεινάτω τὴν χεῖρα.» καὶ ἀνέτειναν ἅπαντες. ἐκ τούτου ἠῤῥξαντο καὶ ἐπαιάνισαν. ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ τῶν θεῶν καλῶς εἶχεν, ἤρχετο πάλιν ὧδε. «Ἐτύγχανον λέγων ὅτι πολλὰ καὶ καλὰ ἐλπίδες ἡμῖν εἰεν σωτηρίας. πρῶτον μὲν γὰρ ἡμεῖς μὲν ἐμπεδοῦμεν τοὺς τῶν θεῶν ὄρκους,

πολλήν |despondency| ν, ὀρώντας καὶ τοὺς στρατηγούς, οἷ  
 διὰ πίστεως αὐτοῖς ἑαυτοὺς |entrust| , οἷα πεπόνθασιν·  
 εἰ μέντοι διανοούμεθα σὺν τοῖς |tool| ὧν τε πεποιήκασι  
 δίκην ἐπιθεῖναι αὐτοῖς καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν διὰ παντὸς πολέμου  
 αὐτοῖς ἰέναι, σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς πολλαὶ ἡμῖν καὶ καλαὶ ἐλπίδες  
 εἰςὶ σωτηρίας.»

Τοῦτο δὲ λέγοντος αὐτοῦ πτάρνυταί τις· ἀκούσαντες δ' οἱ  
 |soldier,| πάντες μιᾷ ὀρμῇ |kow tow to; kiss| γὸν θεόν, καὶ  
 |mercenary|  
 ὁ Ξενοφῶν εἶπε· «Δοκεῖ μοι, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἐπεὶ περὶ σωτηρίας  
 ἡμῶν λεγόντων |vulture,| τοῦ Διὸς τοῦ |savior| ἐφάνη,  
 |eagle,  
 οὐρανόθεν |omen|  
 εὔξασθαι τῷ θεῷ τούτῳ |rush;| |saving| |where| ἢν πρῶτον  
 |sacrifice|  
 εἰς φιλίαν χώραν ἀφικώμεθα, |make a vow also to| καὶ τοῖς  
 ἄλλοις θεοῖς |rush; sacrifice| δύναμιν. καὶ ὅτῳ δοκεῖ ταῦτ',»  
 ἔφη, «|lift, reach out,| τὴν χεῖρα.» καὶ |lift,| reach| παντες.  
 |threaten| |out, threaten|  
 ἐκ τούτου ἠΰξαντο καὶ |chant in victory|·τεὶ δὲ τὰ τῶν θεῶν  
 καλῶς εἶχεν, ἤρχετο πάλιν ὠδε. «Ἐτύγχανον λέγων ὅτι  
 πολλαὶ καὶ καλαὶ ἐλπίδες ἡμῖν εἶεν σωτηρίας. πρῶτον μὲν  
 γὰρ ἡμεῖς μὲν ἐμπεδοῦμεν τοὺς τῶν θεῶν |oath| ,

our generals, who in all confidence entrusted themselves to their power, have suffered, reason would we should feel deep despondency. If, on the other hand, we purpose to take our good swords in our hands and to inflict punishment on them for what they have done, and from this time forward will be on terms of downright war with them, then, God helping, we have many a bright hope of safety.”

The words were scarcely spoken when someone sneezed, and with one impulse the soldiers bowed in worship; and Xenophon proceeded: «I propose, sirs, since, even as we spoke of safety, an omen from Zeus the Saviour has appeared, we vow a vow to sacrifice to the Saviour thank-offerings for safe deliverance, wheresoever first we reach a friendly country; and let us couple with that vow another of individual assent, that we will offer to the rest of the gods ‘according to our ability.’ Let all those who are in favour of this proposal hold up their hands.” They all held up their hands, and there and then they vowed a vow and chanted the battle hymn. But as soon as these sacred matters were duly ended, he began once more thus: «I was saying that many and bright are the hopes we have of safety. First of all, we it is who confirm and ratify the oaths

*vocabulary*

**ἄγειρω** gather ~agora  
**ἀναμνησῶ** (+2 acc) remind  
 someone ~mnemonic  
**ἀναρίθμητος** countless  
**ἀποθύω** make a sacrifice re a vow  
**ἀφανίζω** do away with, make off with;  
 (pass) disappear  
**εἰκός** likely  
**ἐνιαυτός** cycle of a year  
**ἐπιορκέω** swear falsely ~oath  
**εὐπέτης** flying well  
**θύω** (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω  
**καταθύω** sacrifice, offer  
**κατακαίνω** kill

**ὀπόσος** as many as, how many, how  
 great  
**ὄρκος** what is sworn by, witness, oath  
 ~orc  
**πεντακόσιοι** 500  
**Πέρσης** Persian  
**πρόγονος** elder, ancestor ~genus  
**προσέχω** belong to, it beseems  
**σπονδή** libation, treaty ~spontaneous  
**στόλος** expedition, equipment, forces  
 ~apostle  
**στρατιά** army ~strategy  
**ὕφιστημι** promise, undertake ~station  
**χίμαιρα** she-goat ~chimera

οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι ἐπιωρκήκασί τε καὶ τὰς σπονδὰς παρὰ  
τοὺς ὄρκους λελύκασιν. οὕτω δ' ἐχόντων εἰκὸς τοῖς μὲν  
πολεμίοις ἐναντίους εἶναι τοὺς θεούς, ἡμῖν δὲ συμμάχους,  
οἵπερ ἱκανοί εἰσι καὶ τοὺς μεγάλους ταχὺ μικροὺς ποιεῖν  
καὶ τοὺς μικροὺς κἂν ἐν δεινοῖς ὥσι σῶζειν εὐπετῶς, ὅταν  
βούλωνται.

«Ἐπειτα δὲ ἀναμνήσω γὰρ ὑμᾶς καὶ τοὺς τῶν προγόνων  
τῶν ἡμετέρων κινδύνους, ἵνα εἰδῆτε ὡς ἀγαθοῖς τε ὑμῖν  
προσῆκει εἶναι σῶζονταί τε σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς καὶ ἐκ πάνυ  
δεινῶν οἱ ἀγαθοί. ἐλθόντων μὲν γὰρ Περσῶν καὶ τῶν σὺν  
αὐτοῖς παμπληθεὶ στόλῳ ὡς ἀφανιούντων τὰς Ἀθήνας,  
ὑποστῆναι αὐτοὶ Ἀθηναῖοι τολμήσαντες ἐνίκησαν αὐτούς.  
καὶ εὐξάμενοι τῇ Ἀρτέμιδι ὁπόσους κατακάνοιεν τῶν  
πολεμίων τοσαύτας χιμαῖρας καταθύσειν τῇ θεῷ, ἐπεὶ  
οὐκ εἶχον ἱκανὰς εὐρεῖν, ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς κατ' ἐνιαυτὸν  
πεντακοσίας θύειν, καὶ ἔτι νῦν ἀποθύουσιν. ἔπειτα ὅτε  
Ξέρξης ὕστερον ἀγείρας τὴν ἀναρίθμητον στρατιὰν ἦλθεν  
ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, καὶ τότε ἐνίκων οἱ ἡμέτεροι πρόγονοι





we take by heaven, but our enemies have taken false oaths and broken the truce, contrary to their solemn word. This being so, it is but natural that the gods should be opposed to our enemies, but with ourselves allied; the gods, who are able to make the great ones quickly small, and out of sore perplexity can save the little ones with ease, what time it pleases them. In the next place, let me recall to your minds the dangers of our own forefathers, that you may see and know that bravery is your heirloom, and that by the aid of the gods brave men are rescued even out of the midst of sorest straits." So was it when the Persians came, and their attendant hosts, with a very great armament, to wipe out Athens from the face of the earth—the men of Athens had the heart to withstand them and conquered them. Then they vowed to Artemis that for every man they slew of the enemy, they would sacrifice to the goddess goats so many; and when they could not find sufficient for the slain, they resolved to offer yearly five hundred; and to this day they perform that sacrifice. And at a somewhat later date, when Xerxes assembled his countless hosts and marched upon Hellas, then too our fathers conquered the forefathers of our foes

*vocabulary*

**ἄγών** -ος (m, 3) gathering place  
 ~agony  
**ἁμείνων** comparative of ἁγαθός, noble  
**ἄμετρος** immeasurable, immoderate  
**ἀντιτάσσω** set against  
**ἄπειρος** untested; infinite  
**δεσπότης** -ου (m, 1) master, despot  
**δήπου** perhaps; is it not so?  
**ἔκγονος** offspring, descendant ~genus  
**ἐλευθερία** freedom  
**θαρσαλέος** bold, over-bold  
**καταισχύνω** (ὑ) act disgracefully  
**μαρτύριον** testimony, proof  
**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless

**πεῖρα** an attempt  
**πείρω** pierce, run through ~pierce  
**πολλαπλάσιος** many times more  
**πρέπω** be conspicuous, preeminent  
 ~refurbish  
**πρόγονος** elder, ancestor ~genus  
**πρόθυμος** (ὑ) willing, eager ~fume  
**προσῆκω** belong to, it beseems  
**προσκυνέω** kow tow to; kiss  
**σωτηρία** saving, preservation  
**τεκμήριον** sign; proof  
**τρόπαιον** victory monument  
**ὕμέτερος** (ὑ) yours  
**φρόνημα** -τος (n, 3) mind, spirit

τοὺς τούτων προγόνους καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν.

«Ὡν ἔστι μὲν τεκμήρια ὁρᾶν τὰ τρόπαια, μέγιστον δὲ μαρτύριον ἡ ἐλευθερία τῶν πόλεων ἐν αἷς ὑμεῖς ἐγένεσθε καὶ ἐτράφητε· οὐδένα γὰρ ἄνθρωπον δεσπότην ἀλλὰ τοὺς θεοὺς προσκυνεῖτε. τοιούτων μὲν ἐστε προγόνων. οὐ μὲν δὴ τοῦτό γε ἐρῶ ὥς ὑμεῖς καταισχύνετε αὐτούς· ἀλλ' οὐ πολλαὶ ἡμέραι ἀφ' οὗ ἀντιταξάμενοι τούτοις τοῖς ἐκείνων ἐκγόνοις πολλαπλασίους ὑμῶν αὐτῶν ἐνικᾶτε σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς. καὶ τότε μὲν δὴ περὶ τῆς Κύρου βασιλείας ἄνδρες ἦτε ἀγαθοί· νῦν δ' ὅποτε περὶ τῆς ὑμετέρας σωτηρίας ὁ ἀγὼν ἐστι, πολὺν δῆπου ὑμᾶς προσήκει καὶ ἀμείνονας καὶ προθυμοτέρους εἶναι. ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ θαρραλεωτέρους νῦν πρέπει εἶναι πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους. τότε μὲν γὰρ ἄπειροι ὄντες αὐτῶν τὸ δὲ πλῆθος ἄμετρον ὁρῶντες, ὅμως ἐτολμήσατε σὺν τῷ πατρίῳ φρονήματι ἵεναι εἰς αὐτούς· νῦν δὲ ὅποτε καὶ πείραν ἤδη ἔχετε αὐτῶν ὅτι οὐ θέλουσι καὶ πολλαπλάσιοι ὄντες μὴ δέχεσθαι ὑμᾶς, τί ἔτι ὑμῖν προσήκει τούτους φοβεῖσθαι;

τοὺς τοῦτων |elder, ancestor καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν.

«᾿Ων ἔστι μὲν |sign; proof ὁρᾶν τὰ |victory monument, μέγιστον δὲ

|testimony, ἡ ἐλευθερία τῶν πόλεων ἐν αἷς ὑμεῖς ἐγένεσθε |proof

καὶ ἐτράφητε· οὐδένα γὰρ ἄνθρωπον |master, despot ἀλλὰ τοὺς

θεοὺς |kow tow to; kiss τοιούτων μὲν ἔστε |elder, ancestor οὐ

μὲν δὴ τοῦτό γε ἐρῶ ὥς ὑμεῖς |act disgracefully αὐτούς·

ἀλλ' οὐ πολλαὶ ἡμέραι ἀφ' οὗ |set against τούτοις τοῖς

ἐκείνων |offspring πολλαπλασίους ὑμῶν αὐτῶν ἐνικάτε σὺν

τοῖς θεοῖς. καὶ τότε μὲν δὴ περὶ τῆς Κύρου βασιλείας

ἄνδρες ἦτε ἀγαθοί· νῦν δ' ὁπότε περὶ τῆς |yours

σωτηρίας ὁ |gathering-τι, πολὺ |perhaps; is it not belong to, place |so? |it beseems

καὶ |better καὶ |willing, eager εἶναι. ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ

|bold νῦν |be conspicuous, |preeminent ρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους.

τότε μὲν γὰρ |untested; ἄντες αὐτῶν τὸ δὲ πλῆθος |immeasurable, |infinite |immoderate

ὁρῶντες, |anyway, nevertheless σὺν τῷ πατρίῳ |mind, spirit

ιέναι εἰς αὐτούς· νῦν δὲ ὁπότε καὶ πείραν ἤδη ἔχετε

αὐτῶν ὅτι οὐ θέλουσι καὶ |many times more ἄντες μὴ

δέχεσθαι ὑμᾶς, τί ἔτι ὑμῖν |belong to, |it beseems τούτους φοβεῖσθαι;

by land and by sea.

«And proofs of these things are yet to be seen in trophies; but the greatest witness of all is the freedom of our cities—the liberty of that land in which you were born and bred. For you call no man master or lord; you bow your heads to none save to the gods alone. Such were your forefathers, and their sons are ye. Think not I am going to say that you put to shame in any way your ancestry—far from it. Not many days since, you too were drawn up in battle face to face with these true descendants of their ancestors, and by the help of heaven you conquered them, though they many times outnumbered you. At that time, it was to win a throne for Cyrus that you showed your bravery; to-day, when the struggle is for your own salvation, what is more natural than that you should show yourselves braver and more zealous still. Nay, it is very meet and right that you should be more undaunted still to-day to face the foe. The other day, though you had not tested them, and before your eyes lay their immeasurable host, you had the heart to go against them with the spirit of your fathers. To-day you have made trial of them, and knowing that, however many times your number, they do not care to await your onset, what concern have you now to be afraid of

*vocabulary*

**ἀθυμέω** (ῥ) be disheartened

**ἀσφαλής** safe, easy, steady, careful

**γοῦν** at least then

**δάκνω** bite

**ἐνθυμέομαι** (ῥ) take to heart

**ἡσάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be  
overcome; (active) defeat

**ἰσχυρός** (ῥ) strong, forceful, violent

**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon

**καταπίπτω** fall down ~petal

**κρείσσω** more powerful; better

**κρεμάννυμι** (ῥ) hang

**λακτίζω** kick

**μείων** less, smaller

**μυρίος** (ῥ) 10,000 ~myriad

**οὐκοῦν** not so?; and so

**ὄχημα** vehicle

**παίω** hit

**προέχω** be ahead, jut forward; mid:  
have before one

**προσίημι** be allowed near

**πώποτε** never

**φυγή** flight, means of escape ~fugitive

«Μηδὲ μέντοι τοῦτο μείον δόξῃτε ἔχειν ὅτι οἱ Κύριοι πρόσθεν σὺν ἡμῖν ταπτόμενοι νῦν ἀφεστήκασιν. ἔτι γὰρ οὗτοι κακίονές εἰσι τῶν ὑφ' ἡμῶν ἡττημένων· ἔφυγον γοῦν πρὸς ἐκείνους καταλιπόντες ἡμᾶς. τοὺς δ' ἐθέλοντας φυγῆς ἄρχειν πολὺ κρεῖττον σὺν τοῖς πολεμίοις ταπτομένους ἢ ἐν τῇ ἡμετέρᾳ τάξει ὄραν. εἰ δέ τις ὑμῶν ἀθυμεῖ ὅτι ἡμῖν μὲν οὐκ εἰσὶν ἵππεις, τοῖς δὲ πολεμίοις πολλοὶ πάρειςιν, ἐνθυμήθητε ὅτι οἱ μύριοι ἵππεις οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἢ μύριοί εἰσιν ἄνθρωποι· ὑπὸ μὲν γὰρ ἵππου ἐν μάχῃ οὐδεὶς πώποτε οὔτε δηχθεὶς οὔτε λακτισθεὶς ἀπέθανεν, οἱ δὲ ἄνδρες εἰσὶν οἱ ποιοῦντες ὅ τι ἂν ἐν ταῖς μάχαις γίγνηται. οὐκοῦν τῶν ἱππέων πολὺ ἡμεῖς ἐπ' ἀσφαλεστέρου ὀχήματός ἐσμεν· οἱ μὲν γὰρ ἐφ' ἵππων κρέμανται φοβούμενοι οὐχ ἡμᾶς μόνον ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸ καταπεσεῖν· ἡμεῖς δ' ἐπὶ γῆς βεβηκότες πολὺ μὲν ἰσχυρότερον παίσομεν, ἢν τις προσίῃ, πολὺ δὲ μᾶλλον ὅτου ἂν βουλώμεθα τευξόμεθα. ἐνὶ δὲ μόνῳ προέχουσιν οἱ ἵππεις ἡμᾶς· φεύγειν αὐτοῖς ἀσφαλέστερόν ἐστιν ἢ ἡμῖν.



«Μηδὲ μέντοι τοῦτο |less, |smaller ὀξῆτε ἔχειν ὅτι οἱ Κύριοι  
 πρόσθεν σὺν ἡμῖν ταπτόμενοι νῦν ἀφεστήκασιν. ἔτι  
 γὰρ οὗτοι κακίονές εἰσι τῶν ὑφ' ἡμῶν |(pass) be weaker, be over-  
 |come; (active) defeat  
 ἔφυγον |at least then ἐκείνους |leave behind, ἡμᾶς. τοὺς δ'  
 |abandon  
 ἐθέλοντας |flight, means νὰ πολὺ κρεῖττον σὺν τοῖς πολεμίοις  
 |of escape  
 ταπτομένους ἢ ἐν τῇ ἡμετέρᾳ τάξει ὄραν. εἰ δέ τις  
 ὑμῶν |be disheartened, ἡμῶν μὲν οὐκ εἰσὶν ἵππεις, τοῖς δὲ  
 πολεμίοις πολλοὶ πάρεισιν, |take to heart ὅτι οἱ μύριοι  
 ἵππεις οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἢ μύριοί εἰσιν ἄνθρωποι· ὑπὸ μὲν  
 γὰρ ἵππου ἐν μάχῃ οὐδεὶς |never οὔτε |bite οὔτε  
 |kick ἀπέθανεν, οἱ δὲ ἄνδρες εἰσὶν οἱ ποιοῦντες ὅ τι  
 ἂν ἐν ταῖς μάχαις γίγνηται. |not so?; and so ἰπέων πολὺ  
 ἡμεῖς ἐπ' |safe, easy, steady, |vehicle ἔσμεν· οἱ μὲν γὰρ ἐφ'  
 |careful  
 ἵππων |hang φοβούμενοι οὐχ ἡμᾶς μόνον ἀλλὰ καὶ  
 τὸ |fall down ἡμεῖς δ' ἐπὶ γῆς βεβηκότες πολὺ μὲν  
 |strong, forceful, |hit ἢν τις |be allowed near δὲ μάλλον  
 |violent  
 ὅτου ἂν βουλώμεθα τευξόμεθα. ἐνὶ δὲ μόνῳ |be ahead, οἱ  
 |have before  
 ἵππεις ἡμᾶς· φεύγειν αὐτοῖς |safe, easy, steady, ἔστιν ἢ ἡμῖν.  
 |careful

them?

«Nor let any one suppose that herein is a point of weakness, in that Cyrus's troops, who before were drawn up by your side, have now deserted us, for they are even worse cowards still than those we worsted. At any rate they have deserted us, and sought refuge with them. Leaders of the forlorn hope of flight—far better is it to have them brigaded with the enemy than shoulder to shoulder in our ranks. But if any of you is out of heart to think that we have no cavalry, while the enemy have many squadrons to command, lay to heart this doctrine, that ten thousand horse only equal ten thousand men upon their backs, neither less nor more. Did any one ever die in battle from the bite or kick of a horse? It is the men, the real swordsmen, who do whatever is done in battles. In fact we, on our stout shanks, are better mounted than those cavalry fellows; there they hang on to their horses' necks in mortal dread, not only of us, but of falling off; while we, well planted upon earth, can deal far heavier blows to our assailants, and aim more steadily at who we will. There is one point, I admit, in which their cavalry have the whip-hand of us; it is safer for them than it is for us to run away.

«May be, however, you are in

*vocabulary*

ἄπορος impassable, difficult

ἀργύριον small coin

ἄχθομαι be burdened with

βάρβαρος non-Greek

βρέχω soak; it rains

γόνυ γουνός (n, 3) knee ~polygon

διαβαίνω pass over, cross ~basis

διαβατός crossable, fordable

διίημι drive off, pass through

ἐξαπατάω trick, cheat ~apatosaurus

ἐπιβουλεύω plot, plan, harm

~volunteer

ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable

ἡγεμών -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide,

chief ~hegemony

θαρρέω be of good heart

θαρρέω be of good heart

κρείσσων more powerful; better

μέτρον measure ~metric

μωρός stupid

ὅπόσος as many as, how many, how great

πηγή headwaters, fountain

πηγός stout, mighty

πότερος which, whichever of two

πρόσεμι approach, draw near; add ~ion

προσίημι be allowed near

πρόσω forward, in the future; far

σκέπτομαι look, look at, watch

~skeptic

φανερός visible, conspicuous ~photon

ὠνέομαι buy

«Εἰ δὲ δὴ τὰς μὲν μάχας θαρρεῖτε, ὅτι δὲ οὐκέτι ὑμῖν Τισσαφέρνης ἡγήσεται οὐδὲ βασιλεὺς ἀγορὰν παρέξει, τοῦτο ἄχθεσθε, σκέψασθε πότερον κρεῖττον Τισσαφέρνην ἡγεμόνα ἔχειν, ὃς ἐπιβουλεύων ἡμῖν φανερός ἐστιν, ἢ οὓς ἂν ἡμεῖς ἄνδρας λαβόντες ἡγείσθαι κελεύωμεν, οἱ εἴσονται ὅτι, ἢν τι περὶ ἡμᾶς ἀμαρτάνωσι, περὶ τὰς ἐαυτῶν ψυχὰς καὶ σώματα ἀμαρτήσονται. τὰ δὲ ἐπιτήδεια πότερον ὠνεῖσθαι κρεῖττον ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς ἢς οὗτοι παρείχον μικρὰ μέτρα πολλοῦ ἀργυρίου, μηδὲ τοῦτο ἔτι ἔχοντας, ἢ αὐτοὺς λαμβάνειν ἢνπερ κρατῶμεν, μέτρῳ χρωμένους ὅπόσῳ ἂν ἕκαστος βούληται.

«Εἰ δὲ ταῦτα μὲν γινώσκετε ὅτι κρείττονα, τοὺς δὲ ποταμοὺς ἄπορον νομίζετε εἶναι καὶ μεγάλως ἡγείσθε ἐξαπατηθῆναι διαβάντες, σκέψασθε εἰ ἄρα τοῦτο καὶ μωρότατον πεποιήκασιν οἱ βάρβαροι. πάντες γὰρ ποταμοί, ἢν καὶ πρόσω τῶν πηγῶν ἄποροι ᾧσι, προσιοῦσι πρὸς τὰς πηγὰς διαβατοὶ γίνονται οὐδὲ τὸ γόνυ βρέχοντες. εἰ δὲ μήθ' οἱ ποταμοὶ διήσουσιν ἡγεμῶν τε

«Εἰ δὲ δὴ τὰς μὲν μάχας θαρρεῖτε, ὅτι δὲ οὐκέτι ὑμῖν  
 Τισσαφέρνης ἡγήσεται οὐδὲ βασιλεὺς ἀγορὰν παρέξει,  
 τοῦτο |be |bur-|look, look|which, |κρίττον Τισσαφέρνην  
 |dened |at, watch |whichever  
 |leader |with |ἔχειν, ὃς |plot, plan, harm |ὑμῖν |visible, |τιν, ἣ οὖς  
 |conspicuous  
 ἂν ἡμεῖς ἄνδρας λαβόντες ἡγείσθαι κελεύωμεν, οἱ εἴσονται  
 ὅτι, ἣν τι περὶ ἡμᾶς ἀμαρτάνωσι, περὶ τὰς ἐαυτῶν ψυχὰς  
 καὶ σώματα ἀμαρτήσονται. τὰ δὲ |fit, suitable |which,  
 |whichever  
 |buy |κρίττον ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς ἥς οὗτοι παρέιχον μικρὰ  
 |measure |ολλοῦ |small coin |, μηδὲ τοῦτο ἔτι ἔχοντας, ἣ αὐτοὺς  
 λαμβάνειν ἥνπερ κρατῶμεν, |measure |ῥωμένους |as/how many/great  
 ἕκαστος βούληται.

«Εἰ δὲ ταῦτα μὲν γινώσκετε ὅτι κρίττονα, τοὺς δὲ  
 ποταμοὺς |impassable, |μίξετε εἶναι καὶ μεγάλως ἡγείσθαι  
 |difficult  
 |trick, cheat |pass |over, |look, look at, watch |... τοῦτο καὶ  
 |cross  
 |stupid |πεποιήκασιν οἱ |non-Greek |. πάντες γὰρ  
 ποταμοί, ἣν καὶ |forward, in the |ηγῶν |impassable, |, προσιούσι  
 |future; far |difficult  
 πρὸς τὰς πηγὰς |crossable, |γίνονται οὐδὲ τὸ |knee  
 |fordable  
 |soak; it rains |ἰ δὲ μήθ' οἱ ποταμοὶ |drive |leader |τε  
 |off, |pass  
 |through

good heart about the fighting, but annoyed to think that Tissaphernes will not guide us any more, and that the king will not furnish us with a market any longer. Now, consider, is it better for us to have a guide like Tissaphernes, whom we know to be plotting against us, or to take our chance of the stray people whom we catch and compel to guide us, who will know that any mistake made in leading us will be a sad mistake for their own lives? Again, is it better to be buying provisions in a market of their providing, in scant measure and at high prices, without even the money to pay for them any longer; or, by right of conquest, to help ourselves, applying such measure as suits our fancy best?

«Or again, perhaps you admit that our present position is not without its advantages, but you feel sure that the rivers are a difficulty, and think that you were never more taken in than when you crossed them; if so, consider whether, after all, this is not perhaps the most foolish thing which the barbarians have done. No river is impassable throughout; whatever difficulties it may present at some distance from its source, you need only make your way up to the springhead, and there you may cross it without wetting more than your ankles. But, granted that the rivers do bar our passage, and that

*vocabulary*

ἄδολος honest, genuine  
 ἀέκων unwilling  
 ἀεργός lazy ~ergonomics  
 ἀθυμέω (ῥ) be disheartened  
 ἄκων javelin; unwilling ~acme  
 ἅπαξ once  
 ἀργός glistening, swift  
 ἄφθονος ungrudging, plentiful  
 βιοτεύω live, live on  
 ἐκπέμπω send forth ~pomp  
 ἐπιλανθάνω mp: forget ~Lethe  
 ἐπίσταμαι know how, understand  
 ~station  
 ἐρυμνός fortified, impregnable  
 εὐδαίμων blessed with a good genius  
 ἐφίστημι set; (mp) come/be near,  
 direct, stop ~station  
 ἡγεμὼν -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide,

chief ~hegemony  
 καρπὼν bear fruit; harvest it  
 καταλαμβάνω seize, understand, catch,  
 overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy  
 κατασκευάζω equip, build  
 μήπω not yet, lest yet  
 ὁδοποιέω make a path  
 οἴκαδε homeward ~economics  
 οἰκέω inhabit ~economics  
 ὄμηρος insurance, hostage  
 ὀμιλέω (ι) associate with ~homily  
 παρθένος (f) girl, virgin ~Parthenon  
 Πέρσης Persian  
 τέθριππος four-horse  
 τρισάσμενος thrice-pleased, most  
 willing  
 φανερός visible, conspicuous ~photon  
 ὡσαύτως in the same way

μηδεὶς ἡμῖν φανείται, οὐδ' ὥς ἡμῖν γε ἀθυμητέον.

«Ἐπιστάμεθα γὰρ Μυσοὺς, οὓς οὐκ ἂν ἡμῶν φαίημεν  
 βελτίους εἶναι, ὅτι βασιλέως ἄκοντος ἐν βασιλέως χώρα  
 πολλάς τε καὶ εὐδαίμονας καὶ μεγάλας πόλεις οἰκοῦσιν,  
 ἐπιστάμεθα δὲ Πισίδας ὡσαύτως, Λυκάονας δὲ καὶ αὐτοὶ  
 εἶδομεν ὅτι ἐν τοῖς πεδίοις τὰ ἐρυμνὰ καταλαβόντες τὴν  
 τούτων χώραν καρποῦνται· καὶ ἡμᾶς δ' ἂν ἔφην ἔγωγε  
 χρῆναι μήπω φανεροὺς εἶναι οἴκαδε ὠρμημένους, ἀλλὰ  
 κατασκευάζεσθαι ὡς αὐτοῦ οἰκήσοντας. οἶδα γὰρ ὅτι καὶ  
 Μυσοῖς βασιλεὺς πολλοὺς μὲν ἡγεμόνας ἂν δοίη, πολλοὺς  
 δ' ἂν ὁμήρους τοῦ ἀδόλως ἐκπέμψειν, καὶ ὁδοποιήσεί γ'  
 ἂν αὐτοῖς καὶ εἰ σὺν τεθρίπποις βούλουντο ἀπιέναι. καὶ  
 ἡμῖν γ' ἂν οἶδ' ὅτι τρισάσμενος ταῦτ' ἐποίει, εἰ ἑώρα ἡμᾶς  
 μένειν κατασκευαζομένους.

«Ἀλλὰ γὰρ δέδοικα μή, ἂν ἅπαξ μάθωμεν ἄργοι ζῆν  
 καὶ ἐν ἀφθόνοις βιοτεύειν, καὶ Μήδων δὲ καὶ Περσῶν  
 καλαῖς καὶ μεγάλαις γυναιξὶ καὶ παρθένοις ὁμιλεῖν, μὴ  
 ὥσπερ οἱ λωτοφάγοι ἐπιλαθώμεθα τῆς οἴκαδε ὁδοῦ.



μηδεὶς ἡμῖν φανέται, οὐδ' ὥς ἡμῖν γε |be disheartened

«Ἐπιστάμεθα γὰρ Μυσοῦς, οὓς οὐκ ἂν ἡμῶν φαίημεν

βελτίους εἶναι, ὅτι βασιλέως ἄκοντος ἐν βασιλέως χώρα

πολλὰς τε καὶ |blessed with a :aὶ μεγάλας πόλεις |inhabit ,  
|good genius

ἐπιστάμεθα δὲ Πισίδας |in the same way ἴονας δὲ καὶ αὐτοὶ

εἶδομεν ὅτι ἐν τοῖς πεδίοις τὰ |fortified |seize, understand, catch, overtake;  
| (mp) happen

τούτων χώραν |bear fruit; καὶ ἡμᾶς δ' ἂν ἔφην ἔγωγε  
|harvest it

χρῆναι |not yet, |visible, ἵναι |homeward, -μημένους, ἀλλὰ  
|lest yet |conspicuous

|equip, build ὥς αὐτοῦ |inhabit οἶδα γὰρ ὅτι καὶ

Μυσοῖς βασιλεὺς πολλοὺς μὲν |leader ἂν δοίῃ, πολλοὺς

δ' ἂν |insurance, :οῦ |honest, |send forth , καὶ |make a path γ'  
|hostage |genuine

ἂν αὐτοῖς καὶ εἰ σὺν |four-horse βούλονται ἀπιέναι. καὶ

ἡμῖν γ' ἂν οἶδ' ὅτι |thrice-pleased, ταῦτ' ἐποίει, εἰ ἑώρα ἡμᾶς  
|most willing

μένειν |equip, build

«Ἀλλὰ γὰρ δέδοικα μή, ἂν |once μάθωμεν ἀργοὶ ζῆν

καὶ ἐν |ungrudg- |live, live on καὶ Μήδων δὲ καὶ Περσῶν  
|ing, plenti-

καλαῖς καὶ μεγάλας γυναιξὶ καὶ |girl, virgin |associate with

ὥσπερ οἱ λωτοφάγοι ἐπιλαθόμεθα τῆς |homeward οὔ.

guides are not forthcoming, what care we? We need feel no alarm for all that.

We have heard of the Mysians, a people whom we certainly cannot admit to be better than ourselves; and yet they inhabit numbers of large and prosperous cities in the king's own country without asking leave. The Pisidians are an equally good instance, or the Lycaonians. We have seen with our own eyes how they fare: seizing fortresses down in the plains, and reaping the fruits of these men's territory. As to us, I go so far as to assert, we ought never to have let it be seen that we were bent on getting home: at any rate, not so soon; we should have begun stocking and furnishing ourselves, as if we fully meant to settle down for life somewhere or other hereabouts. I am sure that the king would be thrice glad to give the Mysians as many guides as they like, or as many hostages as they care to demand, in return for a safe conduct out of his country; he would make carriage roads for them, and if they preferred to take their departure in coaches and four, he would not say them nay. So too, I am sure, he would be only too glad to accommodate us in the same way, if he saw us preparing to settle down here.

But, perhaps, it is just as well that we did not stop; for I fear, if once we learn to live in idleness and to batten in luxury and dalliance with these tall and handsome Median and Persian women and maidens, we shall be like the Lotus-eaters, and forget the road home altogether.

«It

*vocabulary*

**ἄμαξα** wagon  
**ἀπαλλάξείω** wish to get rid of  
**ἀπαλλάσσω** free from, remove; be freed, depart  
**ἀσφαλής** safe, easy, steady, careful  
**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous  
**εἰκός** likely  
**ἐκὼν** willingly, on purpose; giving in too easily  
**ἐλάχιστος** smallest, shortest, fewest  
**Ἑλλήν** Greek  
**ἐνθάδε** here, hither  
**ἔξιμι** go forth; is possible ~ion  
**ἐπιδείκνυμι** (ῶ) display, exhibit  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ζεῦγος** -ους (n, 3) team of animals ~zygote  
**κατακαίω** burn down ~caustic  
**κράτιστος** best  
**οἰκεῖος** household, familiar, proper  
**οἰκείω** adopt, adapt  
**οἴκοι** at home ~economics

**ὅπη** wherever, however  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle ~hoplite  
**πένομαι** be busy, work at ~osteopenia  
**περισσός** prodigious, superfluous  
**πλούσιος** wealth ~plutocrat  
**πολιτεύω** (ι) be a free citizen  
**ποτή** flight? ~petal  
**ποτός** potable  
**σῖτος** grain, bread, food ~parasite  
**σκευή** equipment  
**σκεῦος** -εος (n, 3) thing, tool, vessel  
**σκευόω** prepare, collect  
**σκηνή** tent; stage  
**σκληρός** hard  
**στρατηγέω** be a general  
**στρατιά** army ~strategy  
**συγκατακαίω** burn along with  
**συμφέρω** bring together; be expedient; agree; (mp) happen ~bear  
**συνωφελέω** join in helping  
**τοίνυν** well, then

«Δοκεῖ οὖν μοι εἰκὸς καὶ δίκαιον εἶναι πρῶτον εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα καὶ πρὸς τοὺς οἰκείους πειρᾶσθαι ἀφικνεῖσθαι καὶ ἐπιδειῖξαι τοῖς Ἑλλησιν ὅτι ἐκόντες πένονται, ἐξὸν αὐτοῖς τοὺς νῦν οἴκοι σκληρῶς ἐκεῖ πολιτεύοντας ἐνθάδε κομισαμένους πλουσίους ὀρᾶν. ἀλλὰ γάρ, ὦ ἄνδρες, πάντα ταῦτα τάγαθὰ δῆλον ὅτι τῶν κρατούντων ἐστί.

«Τοῦτο δὴ δεῖ λέγειν, ὅπως ἂν πορευοίμεθά τε ὥς ἀσφαλέστατα καὶ εἰ μάχεσθαι δέοι ὥς κράτιστα μαχοίμεθα.

«Πρῶτον μὲν τοίνυν, ἔφη, δοκεῖ μοι κατακαῦσαι τὰς ἀμάξας ἃς ἔχομεν, ἵνα μὴ τὰ ζεύγη ἡμῶν στρατηγῇ, ἀλλὰ πορευώμεθα ὅπῃ ἂν τῇ στρατιᾷ συμφέρη· ἔπειτα καὶ τὰς σκηνὰς συγκατακαῦσαι. αὗται γὰρ αὖ ὄχλον μὲν παρέχουσιν ἄγειν, συνωφελοῦσι δ' οὐδὲν οὔτε εἰς τὸ μάχεσθαι οὔτ' εἰς τὸ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἔχειν. ἔτι δὲ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων σκευῶν τὰ περιττὰ ἀπαλλάξωμεν πλὴν ὅσα πολέμου ἔνεκεν ἢ σίτων ἢ ποτῶν ἔχομεν, ἵνα ὥς πλείστοι μὲν ἡμῶν ἐν τοῖς ὅπλοις ὦσιν, ὥς ἐλάχιστοι

«Δοκεῖ οὖν μοι |likely καὶ δίκαιον εἶναι πρῶτον εἰς τὴν

Ἑλλάδα καὶ πρὸς τοὺς οἰκείους πειρᾶσθαι ἀφικνεῖσθαι

καὶ |display, τοῖς |Greek ὅτι |willingly |be busy; go forth; is pos-  
|exhibit |work at |sible

αὐτοῖς τοὺς νῦν |at |hard ἐκεῖ |be a free citizen |here,  
|home |hither

κομισαμένους |wealth ὁρᾶν. ἀλλὰ γάρ, ὦ ἄνδρες,

πάντα ταῦτα τάγαθὰ |visible, "... ὧν κρατούντων ἐστί.  
|conspicuous

«Τοῦτο δὴ δεῖ λέγειν, ὅπως ἂν πορευοίμεθά τε

ὥς |safe, easy, steady, καὶ εἰ μάχεσθαι δέοι ὥς |best  
|careful

μαχοίμεθα.

«Πρῶτον μὲν |well, then ᾗφη, δοκεῖ μοι |burn down τὰς

|wagon ἅς ἔχομεν, ἵνα μὴ τὰ |team ἡμῶν |be a general

ἀλλὰ πορευώμεθα |wherever, ᾗ |army |bring together; ... be expedient;  
|however |agree; (mp) happen

καὶ τὰς |tent; συγκατακαῦσαι. αὗται γὰρ αὖ ὄχλον  
|stage

μὲν παρέχουσιν ἄγειν, |join in helping δ' οὐδὲν οὔτε εἰς

τὸ μάχεσθαι οὔτ' εἰς τὸ τὰ |fit, suitable ἔχειν. ἔτι δὲ καὶ

τῶν ἄλλων σκευῶν τὰ περιττὰ ἀπαλλάξωμεν πλὴν ὅσα

πολέμου ἔνεκεν ἢ |grain, ἢ ποτῶν ἔχομεν, ἵνα ὥς πλείστοι  
|bread,

μὲν ἡμῶν ἐν τοῖς |food  
|tool ὦσιν, ὥς |smallest, short-  
|est, fewest

seems to me that it is only right, in the first instance, to make an effort to return to Hellas and to revisit our hearths and homes, if only to prove to other Hellenes that it is their own faults if they are poor and needy, seeing it is in their power to give to those now living a pauper life at home a free passage hither, and convert them into well to do burghers at once. Now, sirs, is it not clear that all these good things belong to whoever has strength to hold them?

«Let us look another matter in the face. How are we to march most safely? or where blows are needed, how are we to fight to the best advantage? That is the question.

«The first thing which I recommend is to burn the wagons we have got, so that we may be free to march wherever the army needs, and not, practically, make our baggage train our general. And, next, we should throw our tents into the bonfire also: for these again are only a trouble to carry, and do not contribute one grain of good either for fighting or getting provisions. Further, let us get rid of all superfluous baggage, save only what we require for the sake of war, or meat and drink, so that as many of us as possible may be under arms, and as few as possible doing portorage.

*vocabulary*

**ἀλλότριος** someone else's; alien ~alien  
**ἀναρχία** lawlessness  
**ἀπειθέω** disobey  
**ἀταξία** disorder  
**ἐκφέρω** carry off ~bear  
**ἐπιμελής** careful, cared for  
**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand  
 ~station  
**ἐπιτρέπω** entrust, decide, allow  
 ~trophy  
**εὐτακτος** orderly, disciplined  
**ἐφίστημι** set; (mp) come/be near,

direct, stop ~station  
**κολάζω** punish  
**μυρίος** (ὅ) 10,000 ~myriad  
**περαίνω** finish, accomplish  
**περιγίγνομαι** surpass; survive; attain  
 ~genus  
**σκευοφορέω** carry baggage  
**σκευοφόρος** pack animal, porter  
**συλλαμβάνω** seize, capture;  
 understand ~epilepsy  
**ψεύδω** be false, deceive; (mid) to lie  
 ~pseudo-  
**ψηφίζω** count, vote

δὲ σκευοφορῶσι. κρατουμένων μὲν γὰρ ἐπίστασθε ὅτι πάντα ἀλλότρια· ἦν δὲ κρατῶμεν, καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους δεῖ σκευοφόρους ἡμετέρους νομίζειν.

«Λοιπὸν μοι εἰπεῖν ὅπερ καὶ μέγιστον νομίζω εἶναι. ὁρᾶτε γὰρ καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους ὅτι οὐ πρόσθεν ἐξενεγκεῖν ἐτόλμησαν πρὸς ἡμᾶς πόλεμον πρὶν τοὺς στρατηγοὺς ἡμῶν συνέλαβον, νομίζοντες ὄντων μὲν τῶν ἀρχόντων καὶ ἡμῶν πειθομένων ἱκανοὺς εἶναι ἡμᾶς περιγενέσθαι τῷ πολέμῳ, λαβόντες δὲ τοὺς ἄρχοντας ἀναρχία ἂν καὶ ἀταξία ἐνόμιζον ἡμᾶς ἀπολέσθαι. δεῖ οὖν πολὺ μὲν τοὺς ἄρχοντας ἐπιμελεστέρους γενέσθαι τοὺς νῦν τῶν πρόσθεν, πολὺ δὲ τοὺς ἀρχομένους εὐτακτοτέρους καὶ πειθομένους μᾶλλον τοῖς ἄρχουσι νῦν ἢ πρόσθεν· ἦν δέ τις ἀπειθῇ, ἦν ψηφίσασθαι τὸν αἰὲ ὑμῶν ἐντυγχάνοντα σὺν τῷ ἄρχοντι κολάζειν· οὕτως οἱ πολέμοι πλείστον ἐβρυσμένοι ἔσονται· τῇδε γὰρ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ μυρίους ὄψονται ἀνθ' ἑνὸς Κλεάρχους τοὺς οὐδενὶ ἐπιτρέφοντας κακῶ εἶναι. ἀλλὰ γὰρ καὶ περαίνειν ἤδη ὥρα· ἴσως γὰρ οἱ πολέμοι



δὲ |carry baggage κρατουμένων μὲν γὰρ ἐπίστασθε ὅτι  
 πάντα |someone ἣν δὲ κρατῶμεν, καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους δεῖ  
 |else's; alien  
 |pack animal, porter... ἔρους νομίζειν.

«Λοιπὸν μοι εἰπεῖν ὅπερ καὶ μέγιστον νομίζω εἶναι.  
 ὁρᾶτε γὰρ καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους ὅτι οὐ πρόσθεν |carry off  
 ἐτόλμησαν πρὸς ἡμᾶς πόλεμον πρὶν τοὺς στρατηγούς  
 ἡμῶν |seize, capture; ὁμίζοντες ὄντων μὲν τῶν ἀρχόντων  
 |understand  
 καὶ ἡμῶν πειθομένων ἱκανοὺς εἶναι ἡμᾶς |surpass; sur-  
 |vive; attain  
 τῷ πολέμῳ, λαβόντες δὲ τοὺς ἄρχοντας |lawlessness ὡ καὶ  
 ἀταξία ἐνόμιζον ἡμᾶς ἀπολέσθαι. δεῖ οὖν πολὺ μὲν τοὺς  
 ἄρχοντας |careful, cared for γενέσθαι τοὺς νῦν τῶν πρόσθεν,  
 πολὺ δὲ τοὺς ἀρχομένους |orderly, καὶ πειθομένους  
 |disciplined  
 μᾶλλον τοῖς ἄρχουσι νῦν ἢ πρόσθεν· ἣν δέ τις |disobey, ἣν  
 |count, vote τὸν αἰὲ ὑμῶν ἐντυγχάνοντα σὺν τῷ ἄρχοντι  
 |punish οὕτως οἱ πολέμοι πλείστον |be false, deceive; |ται·  
 |(mid) to lie  
 τῇδε γὰρ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ μυρίους ὄψονται ἀνθ' ἐνὸς Κλεάρχους  
 τοὺς οὐδενὶ |entrust, decide, κακῶ εἶναι. ἀλλὰ γὰρ καὶ  
 |allow  
 |finish, ἤδη ὥρα· ἴσως γὰρ οἱ πολέμοι  
 |accomplish

I need not remind you that, in case of defeat, the owners' goods are not their own; but if we master our foes, we will make them our baggage bearers.

«It only rests for me to name the one thing which I look upon as the greatest of all. You see, the enemy did not dare to bring war to bear upon us until they had first seized our generals; they felt that whilst our rulers were there, and we obeyed them, they were no match for us in war; but having got hold of them, they fully expected that the consequent confusion and anarchy would prove fatal to us. What follows? This: Officers and leaders ought to be more vigilant ever than their predecessors; subordinates still more orderly and obedient to those in command now than even they were to those who are gone. And you should pass a resolution that, in case of insubordination, any one who stands by is to aid the officer in chastising the offender. So the enemy will be mightily deceived; for on this day they will behold ten thousand Clearchuses instead of one, who will not suffer one man to play the coward. And now it is high time I brought my remarks to an end, for may be the enemy will

*vocabulary*

**ἀνατείνω** lift, reach out, threaten

**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some distance

**ἀσφαλής** safe, easy, steady, careful

**δάκνω** bite

**δειλός** wretched, poor, cowardly

~Deimos

**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous

**ἐξιμι** go forth; is possible ~ion

**ἐξίστημι** displace, transform; (+gen) give up ~station

**ἐπακολουθέω** chase; accrue

**ἐπικυρόω** (ῶ) confirm, sanction

**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable

**ιδιώτης** -ου (m, 1) private; a layman

**κοινός** communal, ordinary

**κώμη** village

**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle

~hoplite

**ὅπου** where

**περαίνω** finish, accomplish

**πλαίσιον** frame, scaffolding

**προσδοκέω** be thought besides

**σκευοφόρος** pack animal, porter

**σταδίη** (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters

**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)

**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters

**σωτηρία** saving, preservation

**ψηφίζω** count, vote

αὐτίκα παρέσονται. ὅτω οὖν ταῦτα δοκεῖ καλῶς ἔχειν, ἐπικυρωσάτω ὡς τάχιστα, ἵνα ἔργῳ περαίνηται. εἰ δέ τι ἄλλο βέλτιον ἢ ταύτη, τολμάτω καὶ ὁ ἰδιώτης διδάσκειν· πάντες γὰρ κοινῆς σωτηρίας δεόμεθα.»

Μετὰ ταῦτα Χειρίσοφος εἶπεν· «Ἄλλ' εἰ μὲν τινος ἄλλου δεῖ πρὸς τούτοις οἷς λέγει Ξενοφῶν, καὶ αὐτίκα ἐξέσται ποιεῖν· ἃ δὲ νῦν εἴρηκε δοκεῖ μοι ὡς τάχιστα ψηφίσασθαι ἄριστον εἶναι· καὶ ὅτω δοκεῖ ταῦτα, ἀνατεινάτω τὴν χεῖρα.» ἀνέτειναν πάντες. ἀναστὰς δὲ πάλιν εἶπε Ξενοφῶν· «ὦ ἄνδρες, ἀκούσατε ὧν προσδοκεῖ μοι. δῆλον ὅτι πορεύεσθαι ἡμᾶς δεῖ ὅπου ἔξομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια· ἀκούω δὲ κώμας εἶναι καλὰς οὐ πλέον εἴκοσι σταδίων ἀπεχούσας· οὐκ ἂν οὖν θαυμάζοιμεν εἰ οἱ πολέμιοι, ὥσπερ οἱ δειλοὶ κύνες τοὺς μὲν παριόντας διώκουσιν τε καὶ δάκνουσιν, ἣν δύνωνται, τοὺς δὲ διώκοντας φεύγουσιν, εἰ καὶ αὐτοὶ ἡμῖν ἀπιούσιν ἐπακολουθοῖεν. ἴσως οὖν ἀσφαλέστερον ἡμῖν πορεύεσθαι πλαίσιον ποιησαμένους τῶν ὅπλων, ἵνα τὰ σκευοφόρα καὶ ὁ πολὺς ὄχλος ἐν

αὐτίκα παρέσσονται. ὅτω οὖν ταῦτα δοκεῖ καλῶς ἔχειν,

|                      |                      |                       |            |
|----------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|------------|
| confirm,<br>sanction | ὥς τάχιστα, ἵνα ἔργω | finish,<br>accomplish | · εἰ δέ τι |
|----------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|------------|

ἄλλο βέλτιον ἢ ταύτῃ, πολυμάτω καὶ ὁ private; a layman . . ν.

πάντες γὰρ communal, τηρίας δεόμεθα.»  
ordinary

Μετὰ ταῦτα Χειρίσοφος εἶπεν· «Ἄλλ' εἰ μὲν τινος ἄλλου

δεῖ πρὸς τούτοις οἷς λέγει Ξενοφῶν, καὶ αὐτίκα ἐξέσται

ποιεῖν· ἃ δὲ νῦν εἶρηκε δοκεῖ μοι ὡς τάχιστα |count, vote

ἄριστον εἶναι· καὶ ὅτῳ δοκεῖ ταῦτα, lift, reach out, threaten τὴν

χεῖρα.» | lift, reach γάντες. ἀναστὰς δὲ πάλιν εἶπε  
| out, threaten

Ξενοφῶν· «ὦ ἄνδρες, ἀκούσατε ὧν |be thought besides

|visible, "... ορεύεσθαι ἡμᾶς δεῖ |where ἔξομεν τὰ |fit, suitable  
|conspicuous

ἀκούω δὲ |village εἶναι καλὰς οὐ πλέον εἴκοσι σταδίων

ward off, drive off, refrain, *θαυμάζοιμεν εἰ οἱ πολέμιοι, ὥσπερ*  
be at some distance

οἱ |wretched\_ ἄνδρες τοὺς μὲν παριόντας διώκουσί τε καὶ

bite , ἤν δύνωνται, τοὺς δὲ διώκοντας φεύγουσιν,

εἰ καὶ αὐτοὶ ἡμῖν ἀπιούσιν |chase; accrue ἴσως οὖν

|safe, easy, steady, *ἡμῖν πορεύεσθαι* |frame, scaffolding *ιμένους*  
|careful

τῶν |tool , ἵνα τὰ |pack animal, porter τοὺς ὄχλους ἐν

be here anon. Let those who are in favour of these proposals confirm them with all speed, that they may be realised in fact; or if any other course seem better, let not any one, even though he be a private soldier, shrink from proposing it. Our common safety is our common need.”

After this Cheirisophus spoke. He said: «If there is anything else to be done, beyond what Xenophon has mentioned, we shall be able to carry it out presently; but with regard to what he has already proposed, it seems to me the best course to vote upon the matters at once. Those who are in favour of Xenophon’s proposals, hold up their hands.” They all held them up. Xenophon rose again and said: «Listen, sirs, while I tell you what I think we have need of besides. It is clear that we must march where we can get provisions. Now, I am told there are some splendid villages not more than two miles and a half distant. I should not be surprised, then, if the enemy were to hang on our heels and dog us as we retire, like cowardly curs which rush out at the passer-by and bite him if they can, but when you turn upon them they run away. Such will be their tactics, I take it. It may be safer, then, to march in a hollow square, so as to place the baggage animals and our mob of sutlers in greater security. It

*vocabulary*

**ἀνατείνω** lift, reach out, threaten  
**ἀντιλέγω** contradict, oppose  
**ἀποδείκνυμι** (ō) show, point out;  
 appoint; (mid) declare  
**ἀσφαλής** safe, easy, steady, careful  
**ἐκάτερος** each of two  
**ἐπιθυμέω** (ō) wish, covet  
**ἐσσόμαι** (pass) be weaker, be  
 overcome; (active) defeat  
**ἡσάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be  
 overcome; (active) defeat  
**ἡττάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be

overcome; (active) defeat  
**καίνω** kill  
**κοσμέω** marshal, array ~cosmos  
**κράτιστος** best  
**οἰκεῖος** household, familiar, proper  
**οἰκειόω** adopt, adapt  
**ὀπισθοφυλακέω** guard the rear  
**πλαίσιον** frame, scaffolding  
**πλευρά** rib, side ~pleurisy  
**πλευρόν** rib, side ~pleurisy  
**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military  
 unit  
**τοῖνον** well, then

ἀσφαλεστέρω εἶη. εἰ οὖν νῦν ἀποδειχθείη τίνας χρή  
 ἡγεῖσθαι τοῦ πλαισίου καὶ τὰ πρόσθεν κοσμεῖν καὶ τίνας  
 ἐπὶ τῶν πλευρῶν ἐκατέρων εἶναι, τίνας δ' ὀπισθοφυλακεῖν,  
 οὐκ ἂν ὁπότε οἱ πολέμοι ἔλθοιεν βουλευέσθαι ἡμᾶς δέοι,  
 ἀλλὰ χρήμεθα ἂν εὐθὺς τοῖς τεταγμένοις. εἰ μὲν οὖν ἄλλο  
 τις βέλτιον ὁρᾷ, ἄλλως ἐχέτω· εἰ δὲ μή, Χειρίσοφος μὲν  
 ἡγοῖτο, ἐπειδὴ καὶ Λακεδαιμόνιός ἐστι· τῶν δὲ πλευρῶν  
 ἐκατέρων δύο τῶν πρεσβυτάτῳ στρατηγῷ ἐπιμελοίσθην·  
 ὀπισθοφυλακοῖμεν δ' ἡμεῖς οἱ νεώτατοι ἐγὼ καὶ Τιμασίῳ  
 τὸ νῦν εἶναι. τὸ δὲ λοιπὸν πειρώμενοι ταύτης τῆς τάξεως  
 βουλευσόμεθα ὅ τι ἂν ἀεὶ κράτιστον δοκῇ εἶναι. εἰ δέ τις  
 ἄλλο ὁρᾷ βέλτιον, λεξάτω. ἐπεὶ δ' οὐδεὶς ἀντέλεγεν, εἶπεν·  
 Ὅτῳ δοκεῖ ταῦτα, ἀνατεινάτω τὴν χεῖρα. ἔδοξε ταῦτα.  
 Νῦν τοίνυν, ἔφη, ἀπιόντας ποιεῖν δεῖ τὰ δεδογμένα. καὶ  
 ὅστις τε ὑμῶν τοὺς οἰκείους ἐπιθυμεῖ ἰδεῖν, μεμνήσθω ἀνὴρ  
 ἀγαθὸς εἶναι· οὐ γὰρ ἔστιν ἄλλως τούτου τυχεῖν· ὅστις τε  
 ζῆν ἐπιθυμεῖ, πειράσθω νικᾶν· τῶν μὲν γὰρ νικῶντων τὸ  
 καίνειν, τῶν δὲ ἡττωμένων τὸ ἀποθνήσκειν



|safe, easy, steady, *εἴη*. *εἰ οὖν νῦν* |show, point out; ap- *χρή*  
 |careful |point; (mid) declare  
*ἡγείσθαι τοῦ πλαισίου καὶ τὰ πρόσθεν* |marshal, *καὶ τίνας*  
 |array  
*ἐπὶ τῶν πλευρῶν* |each of two *ἵναι, τίνας δ'* |guard the rear ,  
*οὐκ ἂν ὁπότε οἱ πολέμοι ἔλθοιεν βουλευέσθαι ἡμᾶς δέοι,*  
*ἀλλὰ χρήμεθα ἂν εὐθὺς τοῖς τεταγμένοις. εἰ μὲν οὖν ἄλλο*  
*τις βέλτιον ὁρᾷ, ἄλλως ἐχέτω· εἰ δὲ μή, Χειρίσοφος μὲν*  
*ἡγοῖτο, ἐπειδὴ καὶ Λακεδαιμονίός ἐστι· τῶν δὲ πλευρῶν*  
*|each of two δύο τῶ πρεσβυτάτῳ στρατηγῷ ἐπιμελοίσθην·*  
*|guard the rear δ' ἡμεῖς οἱ νεώτατοι ἐγὼ καὶ Τιμασίῳ*  
*τὸ νῦν εἶναι. τὸ δὲ λοιπὸν πειρώμενοι ταύτης τῆς τάξεως*  
*βουλευσόμεθα ὅ τι ἂν αἰὲ |best δοκῇ εἶναι. εἰ δέ τις*  
*ἄλλο ὁρᾷ βέλτιον, λεξάτω. ἐπεὶ δ' οὐδεὶς |contradict, , εἶπεν·*  
 |oppose  
*Ὅτῳ δοκεῖ ταῦτα, |lift, reach out, τὴν χεῖρα. ἔδοξε ταῦτα.*  
 |threaten  
*Νῦν |well, then ἤ, ἀπιόντας ποιεῖν δεῖ τὰ δεδογμένα. καὶ*  
*ὅστις τε ὑμῶν τοὺς οἰκείους |wish, ἰδεῖν, μεμνήσθω ἀνὴρ*  
 |covet  
*ἀγαθὸς εἶναι· οὐ γὰρ ἔστιν ἄλλως τούτου τυχεῖν· ὅστις τε*  
*ζῇν |wish, , πειράσθω νικᾶν· τῶν μὲν γὰρ νικῶντων τὸ*  
 |covet  
*|kill , τῶν δὲ ἡττωμένων τὸ ἀποθνήσκειν*

will save time to make the appointments at once, and to settle who leads the square and directs the vanguard; who will take command of the two flanks, and who of the rearguard; so that, when the enemy appears, we shall not need to deliberate, but can at once set in motion the machinery in existence.

«If any one has any better plan, we need not adopt mine; but if not, suppose Cheirisophus takes the lead, as he is a Lacedaemonian, and the two eldest generals take in charge the two wings respectively, whilst Timasion and I, the two youngest, will for the present guard the rear. For the rest, we can but make experiment of this arrangement, and alter it with deliberation, as from time to time any improvement suggests itself. If any one has a better plan to propose, let him do so.”... No dissentient voice was heard. Accordingly he said: «Those in favour of this resolution, hold up their hands.” The resolution was carried. «And now,” said he, «it would be well to separate and carry out what we have decreed. If any of you has set his heart on seeing his friends again, let him remember to prove himself a man; there is no other way to achieve his heart’s wish. Or is mere living an object with any of you, strive to conquer; if to slay is the privilege of victory, to die is the doom of

*vocabulary*

**ἄμαξα** wagon

**ἀριστοποιέω** (ᾶ) make breakfast

**διάγω** lead through; pass a time

~demagogue

**Ἑλλην** Greek

**ἐνθάδε** here, hither

**ἐπήκοος** listening

**ἐπιθυμέω** (ὖ) wish, covet

**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand

~station

**ἐσσόμαι** (pass) be weaker, be

overcome; (active) defeat

**εὖνοος** kindly; favorable

**ἐφίστημι** set; (mp) come/be near,

direct, stop ~station

**ἡσάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be  
overcome; (active) defeat

**ἡττάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be  
overcome; (active) defeat

**θεράπων** -οντος (m, 3) helper,  
henchman, servant ~therapy

**κατακαίω** burn down ~caustic

**κοινός** communal, ordinary

**μεταδίδωμι** give part of ~donate

**περισσός** prodigious, superfluous

**πιστός** faithful; trustworthy

**ῥιπτέω** hurl

**σκηνή** tent; stage

**στόλος** expedition, equipment, forces

~apostle

**σωτήριος** saving

ἐστί· καὶ εἴ τις δὲ χρημάτων ἐπιθυμεῖ, κρατεῖν πειράσθω·  
τῶν γὰρ νικούντων ἐστὶ καὶ τὰ ἐαυτῶν σφάζειν καὶ τὰ τῶν  
ἡττωμένων λαμβάνειν.

### 3.3

Τούτων λεχθέντων ἀνέστησαν καὶ ἀπελθόντες κατέκαιον  
τὰς ἀμάξας καὶ τὰς σκηνάς, τῶν δὲ περιττῶν ὅτου  
μὲν δέοιτό τις μετεδίδοσαν ἀλλήλοις, τὰ δὲ ἄλλα εἰς  
τὸ πῦρ ἐρρίπτουν. ταῦτα ποιήσαντες ἡριστοποιοῦντο.  
ἀριστοποιουμένων δὲ αὐτῶν ἔρχεται Μιθραδάτης  
σὺν ἱππεῦσιν ὡς τριάκοντα, καὶ καλεσάμενος τοὺς  
στρατηγοὺς εἰς ἐπήκοον λέγει ὧδε. «Ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες  
Ἕλληνες, καὶ Κύρω πιστὸς ἦν, ὡς ὑμεῖς ἐπίστασθε, καὶ  
νῦν ὑμῖν εὖνους· καὶ ἐνθάδε δ' εἰμὶ σὺν πολλῷ φόβῳ  
διάγων. εἰ οὖν ὁρώην ὑμᾶς σωτήριόν τι βουλευομένους,  
ἔλθοιμι ἂν πρὸς ὑμᾶς καὶ τοὺς θεράποντας πάντας ἔχων.  
λέξατε οὖν πρὸς με τί ἐν νῷ ἔχετε ὡς φίλον τε καὶ εὖνουν  
καὶ βουλόμενον κοιῇ σὺν ὑμῖν τὸν στόλον ποιεῖσθαι.»  
βουλευομένοις τοῖς στρατηγοῖς ἔδοξεν

ἐστὶ· καὶ εἴ τις δὲ χρημάτων <sup>|wish,</sup><sub>|covet</sub> , κρατεῖν πειράσθω·  
τῶν γὰρ νικόντων ἐστὶ καὶ τὰ ἑαυτῶν σφύζειν καὶ τὰ τῶν  
ἡττωμένων λαμβάνειν.

### 3.3

Τούτων λεχθέντων ἀνέστησαν καὶ ἀπελθόντες <sup>|burn down</sup>  
τὰς <sup>|wagon</sup> καὶ τὰς <sup>|tent;</sup><sub>|stage</sub> , τῶν δὲ περιττῶν ὅτου  
μὲν δέοιτό τις <sup>|give part of</sup> ἀλλήλοις, τὰ δὲ ἄλλα εἰς  
τὸ πῦρ <sup>|hurl</sup> . ταῦτα ποιήσαντες <sup>|make breakfast</sup> .  
<sup>|make breakfast</sup> δὲ αὐτῶν ἔρχεται Μιθραδάτης  
σὺν ἱππεῦσιν ὡς τριάκοντα, καὶ καλεσάμενος τοὺς  
στρατηγοὺς εἰς <sup>|listening</sup> λέγει ᾧδε. «Ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες  
<sup>|Greek</sup> , καὶ Κύρω <sup>|faithful;</sup><sub>|trustworthy</sub> , ὡς ὑμεῖς ἐπίστασθε, καὶ  
νῦν ὑμῖν εὖνους· καὶ <sup>|here,</sup><sub>|hither</sub> δ' εἰμὶ σὺν πολλῷ φόβῳ  
<sup>|lead through;</sup><sub>|pass a time</sub> ὅν ὁράην ὑμᾶς <sup>|saving</sup> τι βουλευομένους,  
ἔλθοιμι ἂν πρὸς ὑμᾶς καὶ τοὺς <sup>|companion</sup> πάντας ἔχων.  
λέξατε οὖν πρὸς με τί ἐν νῷ ἔχετε ὡς φίλον τε καὶ <sup>|kindly;</sup><sub>|favorable</sub>  
καὶ βουλόμενον κοινῇ σὺν ὑμῖν τὸν <sup>|expedition, equip-</sup><sub>|ment, forces</sub> .»  
βουλευομένοις τοῖς στρατηγοῖς ἔδοξεν

the defeated. Or perhaps to gain money and wealth is your ambition, strive again for mastery; have not conquerors the double gain of keeping what is their own, whilst they seize the possessions of the vanquished?"

### 3.3

The speaking was ended; they got up and retired; then they burnt the wagons and the tents, and after sharing with one another what each needed out of their various superfluities, they threw the remnant into the fire. Having done that, they proceeded to make their breakfasts. While they were breakfasting, Mithridates came with about thirty horsemen, and summoning the generals within earshot, he thus addressed them: «Men of Hellas, I have been faithful to Cyrus, as you know well, and to-day I am your well-wisher; indeed, I am here spending my days in great fear: if then I could see any salutary course in prospect, I should be disposed to join you with all my retainers. Please inform me, then, as to what you propose, regarding me as your friend and well-wisher, anxious only to pursue his march in your company.” The generals held council, and resolved to give the following answer, Cheirisophus

*vocabulary*

**ἀέκων** unwilling  
**ἀκήρυκτος** unannounced,  
 unproclaimed  
**ἄκων** javelin; unwilling ~acme  
**ἀποκωλύω** hinder from/from using  
**ἄπορος** impassable, difficult  
**ἀριστάω** eat lunch ~aristocrat  
**ἀσινής** unharmed  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis  
**διαπολεμέω** carry a war through  
**διαπορεύω** carry over, through  
**δόγμα** -τος (n, 3) belief, legal decision  
**ἐπιφαίνω** display ~photon  
**κράτιστος** best

**λοχαγός** (ᾱ) captain  
**οἴκαδε** homeward ~economics  
**οἰκεῖος** household, familiar, proper  
**οἰκέω** inhabit ~economics  
**οἶχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone  
**παρακολουθέω** dog, follow, trace  
**προέρχομαι** proceed, come out  
**πρόσεμι** approach, draw near; add  
 ~ion  
**προσίημι** be allowed near  
**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
 mercenary ~strategy  
**ὑποζύγιον** beast of burden ~zygote  
**ὑπόπεμπτος** sent secretly ~pomp

ἀποκρίνασθαι τάδε· καὶ ἔλεγε Χειρίσοφος· «Ἡμῖν δοκεῖ, εἰ μὲν τις ἐᾷ ἡμᾶς ἀπιέναι οὔκαδε, διαπορεύεσθαι τὴν χώραν ὥς ἂν δυνώμεθα ἀσινέστατα· ἣν δέ τις ἡμᾶς τῆς ὁδοῦ ἀποκωλύῃ, διαπολεμεῖν τούτῳ ὥς ἂν δυνώμεθα κράτιστα.» ἐκ τούτου ἐπειράτο Μιθραδάτης διδάσκειν ὥς ἄπορον εἶη βασιλέως ἄκοντος σωθῆναι. ἔνθα δὴ ἐγγινώσκετο ὅτι ὑπόπεμπτos εἶη· καὶ γὰρ τῶν Τισσαφέρνους τις οἰκείων παρηκολουθήκει πίστεως ἔνεκα. καὶ ἐκ τούτου ἐδόκει τοῖς στρατηγοῖς βέλτιον εἶναι δόγμα ποιήσασθαι τὸν πόλεμον ἀκήρυκτον εἶναι ἔστ' ἐν τῇ πολεμίᾳ εἶεν· διέφθειρον γὰρ προσιόντες τοὺς στρατιώτας, καὶ ἓνα γε λοχαγὸν διέφθειραν Νίκαρχον Ἀρκάδα, καὶ ὥχετο ἀπιὼν νυκτὸς σὺν ἀνθρώποις ὥς εἴκοσι.

Μετὰ ταῦτα ἀριστήσαντες καὶ διαβάντες τὸν Ζαπάταν ποταμὸν ἐπορεύοντο τεταγμένοι τὰ ὑποζύγια καὶ τὸν ὄχλον ἐν μέσῳ ἔχοντες. οὐ πολὺ δὲ προεληλυθότων αὐτῶν ἐπιφαίνεται πάλιν ὁ Μιθραδάτης, ἱππέας ἔχων ὥς



ἀποκρίνασθαι τάδε· καὶ ἔλεγε Χειρίσοφος· «Ἡμῖν δοκεῖ,  
 εἰ μὲν τις ἐᾷ ἡμᾶς ἀπιέναι |homeward ἀπορεύεσθαι τὴν  
 χώραν ὡς ἂν δυνώμεθα |unharmed ἦν δέ τις ἡμᾶς  
 τῆς ὁδοῦ |hinder , |carry a war through , ὡς ἂν δυνώμεθα  
 |best » ἐκ τούτου ἐπειρᾶτο Μιθραδάτης διδάσκειν  
 ὡς |impassable, |η βασιλέως ἄκοντος σωθῆναι. ἔνθα  
 |difficult  
 δὴ ἐγινώσκετο ὅτι |sent secretly εἶη· καὶ γὰρ τῶν  
 Τισσαφέρνους τις οἰκείων |dog, follow, trace πίστεως ἔνεκα.  
 καὶ ἐκ τούτου ἐδόκει τοῖς στρατηγοῖς βέλτιον εἶναι  
 |belief, legal |ῆσασθαι τὸν πόλεμον |unannounced, |ῆναι ἔστ'  
 |decision |unproclaimed  
 ἐν τῇ πολεμίᾳ εἶεν· διέφθειρον γὰρ προσιόντες τοὺς  
 |soldier, , καὶ ἓνα γε |captain διέφθειραν Νίκαρχον  
 |mercenary  
 Ἀρκάδα, καὶ |come, go |πιὼν νυκτὸς σὺν ἀνθρώποις ὡς  
 εἴκοσι.

Μετὰ ταῦτα |eat lunch καὶ |pass over, cross. Ζαπάταν  
 ποταμὸν ἐπορεύοντο τεταγμένοι τὰ |beast of burden τὸν  
 ὄχλον ἐν μέσῳ ἔχοντες. οὐ πολὺ δὲ |proceed, come out |υῶν  
 |display πάλιν ὁ Μιθραδάτης, ἱππέας ἔχων ὡς

acting as spokesman: «We have resolved to make our way through the country, inflicting the least possible damage, provided we are allowed a free passage homewards; but if any one tries to hinder us, he will have to fight it out with us, and we shall bring all the force in our power to bear.” Thereat Mithridates set himself to prove to them that their deliverance, except with the king’s good pleasure, was hopeless. Then the meaning of his mission was plain. He was an agent in disguise; in fact, a relation of Tissaphernes was in attendance to keep a check on his loyalty. After that, the generals resolved that it would be better to proclaim open war, without truce or herald, as long as they were in the enemy’s country; for they used to come and corrupt the soldiers, and they were even successful with one officer—Nicarchus, an Arcadian, who went off in the night with about twenty men.

After this, they breakfasted and crossed the river Zapatas, marching in regular order, with the beasts and mob of the army in the middle. They had not advanced far on their route when Mithridates made his appearance again, with about a couple of

*vocabulary*

**ἀκοντίζω** throw, (+gen) at ~acute  
**ἀκοντιστής** -οῦ (m, 1) spearman  
 ~acute  
**ἀντιποιέω** do in return; (mid) seek,  
 claim  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**βραχύς** low, short  
**διακόσιοι** (ἄ) two hundred  
**ἐγγύς** near  
**ἐλαφρός** nimble, light on one's feet;  
 light, bearable ~elevator  
**Ἑλλην** Greek  
**ἐξαπίνης** suddenly  
**ἐξικνέομαι** arrive at  
**εὐζωνος** well-girded ~zone  
**κατακλείω** enclose; shut up  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch,  
 overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy  
**ὀπισθεν** behind, hereafter  
**ὀπισθοφυλακέω** guard the rear

**ὀπισθοφύλαξ** rear guard ~phylactery  
**ὀπλίτης** -ου (ι, m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
 infantryman ~hoplite  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
 ~hoplite  
**πελταστής** -οῦ (m, 1) light troops  
 ~pelt  
**Πέρσης** Persian  
**πρόσεμι** approach, draw near; add  
 ~ion  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**σφενδονάω** sling  
**σφενδονέω** sling  
**σφενδονήτης** -ου (m, 1) slinger  
**τετρακόσιοι** 400  
**τιτρώσκω** wound, bring to grief  
 ~trauma  
**τοξεύω** shoot an arrow at ~toxic  
**τοξότης** -ου (m, 1) archer ~toxic  
**χωρίον** area; downwards  
**φιλός** (ι) naked, bare ~epsilon

διακοσίους καὶ τοξότας καὶ σφενδονήτας εἰς τετρακοσίους  
 μάλα ἐλαφροὺς καὶ εὐζώνους. καὶ προσήει μὲν ὡς  
 φίλος ὢν πρὸς τοὺς Ἑλληνας· ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγγὺς ἐγένοντο,  
 ἔξαπίνης οἱ μὲν αὐτῶν ἐτόξευον καὶ ἵππεῖς καὶ πεζοί,  
 οἱ δ' ἐσφενδόνων καὶ ἐτίτρωσκον. οἱ δὲ ὀπισθοφύλακες  
 τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔπασχον μὲν κακῶς, ἀντεποιοῦν δ' οὐδέν·  
 οἳ τε γὰρ Κρήτες βραχύτερα τῶν Περσῶν ἐτόξευον καὶ  
 ἄμα ψιλοὶ ὄντες εἴσω τῶν ὅπλων κατεκέκλειντο, οἱ δὲ  
 ἀκοντισταὶ βραχύτερα ἡκόντιζον ἢ ὡς ἐξικνεῖσθαι τῶν  
 σφενδονητῶν. ἐκ τούτου Ξενοφῶντι ἐδόκει διωκτέον  
 εἶναι· καὶ ἐδίωκον τῶν ὀπλιτῶν καὶ τῶν πελταστῶν  
 οἱ ἔτυχον σὺν αὐτῷ ὀπισθοφυλακοῦντες· διώκοντες δὲ  
 οὐδένα κατελάμβανον τῶν πολεμίων. οὔτε γὰρ ἵππεῖς  
 ἦσαν τοῖς Ἑλλησιν οὔτε οἱ πεζοὶ τοὺς πεζοὺς ἐκ πολλοῦ  
 φεύγοντας ἐδύναντο καταλαμβάνειν ἐν ὀλίγῳ χωρίῳ·  
 πολὺ γὰρ οὐχ οἷόν τε ἦν ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄλλου στρατεύματος  
 διώκειν· οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι ἵππεῖς καὶ φεύγοντες ἄμα  
 ἐτίτρωσκον εἰς τοῦπισθεν τοξεύοντες ἀπὸ τῶν ἵππων,

|two hundred αἰ |archer καὶ |slinger εἰς |400  
 μάλα |light in weight... |well-girded καὶ |approach μὲν ὥς  
 φίλος ὢν πρὸς τοὺς |Greek ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγγὺς ἐγένοντο,  
 |suddenly οἱ μὲν αὐτῶν |shoot an arrow at πέϊς καὶ πεζοί,  
 οἱ δ' |sling καὶ |wound, bring to grief οἱ δὲ |rear guard  
 τῶν |Greek ἔπασχον μὲν κακῶς, |do in return; (mid) seek, claim ἵδεν·  
 οἱ τε γὰρ Κρήτες βραχύτερα τῶν Περσῶν |shoot an arrow at  
 ἄμα |naked, bare... εἴσω τῶν ὅπλων |enclose; shut up, οἱ δὲ  
 |spearman βραχύτερα |throw, (+gen), at... |arrive at τῶν  
 σφενδονητῶν. ἐκ τούτου Ξενοφῶντι ἐδόκει διωκτέον  
 εἶναι· καὶ ἐδίωκον τῶν ὀπλιτῶν καὶ τῶν |light troops  
 οἱ ἔτυχον σὺν αὐτῷ |guard the rear διώκοντες δὲ  
 οὐδένα κατελάμβανον τῶν πολεμίων. οὔτε γὰρ ἵππεῖς  
 ἦσαν τοῖς |Greek οὔτε οἱ πεζοὶ τοὺς πεζοὺς ἐκ πολλοῦ  
 φεύγοντας ἐδύναντο καταλαμβάνειν ἐν ὀλίγῳ χωρίῳ·  
 πολὺ γὰρ οὐχ οἷόν τε ἦν ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄλλου |army  
 διώκειν· οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι ἵππεῖς καὶ φεύγοντες ἄμα  
 |wound, bring to grief εἰς τοῦπισθεν |shoot an arrow at τῶν ἵππων,

hundred horsemen at his back, and bowmen and slingers twice as many, as nimble fellows as a man might hope to see. He approached the Hellenes as if he were friendly; but when they had got fairly to close quarters, all of a sudden some of them, whether mounted or on foot, began shooting with their bows and arrows, and another set with slings, wounding the men. The rearguard of the Hellenes suffered for a while severely without being able to retaliate, for the Cretans had a shorter range than the Persians, and at the same time, being light-armed troops, they lay cooped up within the ranks of the heavy infantry, while the javelin men again did not shoot far enough to reach the enemy's slingers. This being so, Xenophon thought there was nothing for it but to charge, and charge they did; some of the heavy and light infantry, who were guarding the rear, with him; but for all their charging they did not catch a single man.

The dearth of cavalry told against the Hellenes; nor were their infantry able to overhaul the enemy's infantry, with the long start they had, and considering the shortness of the race, for it was out of the question to pursue them far from the main body of the army. On the other hand, the Asiatic cavalry, even while fleeing, poured volleys of arrows behind their backs, and wounded the pursuers; while the Hellenes

*vocabulary*

**ἄθυμία** (ῥ) despondency  
**αἰτιόομαι** blame ~etiology  
**ἀναγκάζω** force, compel  
**ἀναχωρέω** return, retreat ~heir  
**ἀντιποιέω** do in return; (mid) seek, claim  
**βλάπτω** break, make fail  
**δείλη** afternoon ~diem  
**δηλώω** show, disclose  
**διέρχομαι** pierce, traverse  
**Ἑλλήν** Greek  
**ἐπαναχωρέω** retreat, return ~heir  
**κινδυνεύω** encounter danger; (+inf)  
 there is a danger that  
**κώμη** village  
**μαρτυρέω** testify, bear witness

**ὁπόσος** as many as, how many, how great  
**ὀρθός** upright, straight; correct, just ~orthogonal  
**ὀρθόω** stand up  
**παγχάλεπος** very difficult, impracticable, of persons and things  
**ῥώμη** strength, might  
**σταδίη** (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters  
**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)  
**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters  
**σφενδονάω** sling  
**τοξεύω** shoot an arrow at ~toxic  
**φάλαγξ** -γος (f) rank of battle ~phalanx

ὅποσον δὲ διώξειαν οἱ Ἕλληνες, τοσοῦτον πάλιν ἐπαναχωρεῖν μαχομένους ἔδει. ὥστε τῆς ἡμέρας ὅλης διῆλθον οὐ πλέον πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι σταδίων, ἀλλὰ δείλῃς ἀφίκοντο εἰς τὰς κόμας.

Ἐνθα δὴ πάλιν ἀθυμία ἦν. καὶ Χειρίσοφος καὶ οἱ πρεσβύτατοι τῶν στρατηγῶν Ξενοφῶντα ἡτιῶντο ὅτι ἐδίωκεν ἀπὸ τῆς φάλαγγος καὶ αὐτός τε ἐκινδύνευε καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους οὐδὲν μᾶλλον ἐδύνατο βλάπτειν. ἀκούσας δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἔλεγεν ὅτι ὀρθῶς αἰτιῶντο καὶ αὐτὸ τὸ ἔργον αὐτοῖς μαρτυροίη. «ἀλλ' ἐγώ,» ἔφη, «ἡναγκάσθην διώκειν, ἐπειδὴ ἐώρων ἡμᾶς ἐν τῷ μένειν κακῶς μὲν πάσχοντας, ἀντιποιεῖν δὲ οὐ δυναμένους. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἐδιώκομεν, ἀληθῆ,» ἔφη, «ὕμεῖς λέγετε· κακῶς μὲν γὰρ ποιεῖν οὐδὲν μᾶλλον ἐδυνάμεθα τοὺς πολεμίους, ἀνεχωροῦμεν δὲ παγχαλέπως. τοῖς οὖν θεοῖς χάρις ὅτι οὐ σὺν πολλῇ ῥώμῃ ἀλλὰ σὺν ὀλίγοις ἦλθον, ὥστε βλάψαι μὲν μὴ μεγάλα, δηλῶσαι δὲ ὧν δεόμεθα. νῦν γὰρ οἱ πολέμιοι τοξεύουσι καὶ σφενδονῶσιν ὅσον οὔτε οἱ



|as/how many|great ἕλειαν οἱ |Greek , τοσοῦτον πάλιν  
|retreat, return μαχομένους ἔδει. ὥστε τῆς ἡμέρας ὅλης  
|pierce, οὐ πλέον πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι σταδίων, ἀλλὰ |afternoon  
|traverse  
ἀφίκοντο εἰς τὰς |village

Ἐνθα δὲ πάλιν ἀθυμία ἦν. καὶ Χειρίσοφος καὶ οἱ  
πρεσβύτατοι τῶν στρατηγῶν Ξενοφῶντα |blame ὅτι  
ἐδίωκεν ἀπὸ τῆς |rank of battle καὶ αὐτός τε |encounter danger; (+inf)  
|there is a danger that  
τοὺς πολεμίους οὐδὲν μᾶλλον ἐδύνατο |break, make fail ἵσας  
δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἔλεγεν ὅτι ὀρθῶς |blame καὶ αὐτὸ τὸ  
ἔργον αὐτοῖς |testify, bear «ἀλλ' ἐγώ,» ἔφη, «|force, compel  
|witness  
διώκειν, ἐπειδὴ ἐώρων ἡμᾶς ἐν τῷ μένειν κακῶς μὲν  
πάσχοντας, |do in return; οὐ δυναμένους. ἐπειδὴ δὲ  
|(mid) seek, claim  
ἐδιώκομεν, ἀληθῆ,» ἔφη, «ὕμεις λέγετε· κακῶς μὲν  
γὰρ ποιεῖν οὐδὲν μᾶλλον ἐδυνάμεθα τοὺς πολεμίους,  
|return, retreat δὲ |very difficult . τοῖς οὖν θεοῖς χάρις ὅτι οὐ  
σὺν πολλῇ |strength, ἡλὰ σὺν ὀλίγοις ἦλθον, ὥστε |break, make fail  
|might  
μὲν μὴ μεγάλα, |show, δὲ ὧν δεόμεθα. νῦν γὰρ οἱ  
|disclose  
πολέμιοι |shoot an arrow|sling ὅσον οὔτε οἱ  
|at

must fall back fighting every step of the way they had measured in the pursuit; so that by the end of that day they had not gone much more than three miles; but in the late afternoon they reached the villages.

Here there was a return of the old despondency. Cheirisophus and the eldest of the generals blamed Xenophon for leaving the main body to give chase and endangering himself thereby, while he could not damage the enemy one whit the more. Xenophon admitted that they were right in blaming him: no better proof of that was wanted than the result. «The fact is,” he added, «I was driven to pursue; it was too trying to look on and see our men suffer so badly, and be unable to retaliate. However, when we did charge, there is no denying the truth of what you say; we were not a whit more able to injure the enemy, while we had considerable difficulty in beating a retreat ourselves. Thank heaven they did not come upon us in any great force, but were only a handful of men; so that the injury they did us was not large, as it might have been; and at least it has served to show us what we need. At present the enemy shoot and sling beyond our range, so that our

*vocabulary*

**ἀντιτοξεύω** shoot arrows in return  
**ἀργύριον** small coin  
**ἀτέλεια** incompleteness, imperfection;  
 exemption  
**βέλος** -εος (n, 3) missile ~ballistic  
**βλάπτω** break, make fail  
**βραχύς** low, short  
**διπλάσιος** twofold, double  
**ἐξικνέομαι** arrive at  
**ἐπισκέπτομαι** look upon, inspect  
**ἐπισκοπέω** look upon, inspect  
**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand  
 ~station  
**ἔργω** bound, fend off; do ~ergonomics  
**ἐφίστημι** set; (mp) come/be near,  
 direct, stop ~station

**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch,  
 overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy  
**λίθος** (f) stone ~monolith  
**μολυβδῖς** -δος (f) lead weight ~murky  
**πάομαι** acquire ~pathos  
**πλέκω** braid ~complex  
**ῥύμα** -τος (n, 3) that which is drawn  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**σφενδονάω** sling  
**σφενδονέω** sling  
**σφενδόνη** sling  
**σφενδονήτης** -ου (m, 1) slinger  
**τόξον** bow ~toxic  
**χειροπληθής** hand-size  
**χωρίον** area; downwards  
**ώφελέω** help, be useful

Κρήτες ἀντιτοξέειν δύνανται οὔτε οἱ ἐκ χειρὸς βάλλοντες ἐξικνεῖσθαι· ὅταν δὲ αὐτοὺς διώκωμεν, πολὺ μὲν οὐχ οἶόν τε χωρίον ἀπὸ τοῦ στρατεύματος διώκειν, ἐν ὀλίγῳ δὲ οὐδ' εἰ ταχὺς εἴη πεζὸς πεζὸν ἂν διώκων καταλαμβάνοι ἐκ τόξου ρύματος. ἡμεῖς οὖν εἰ μέλλοιμεν τούτους εἶργειν ὥστε μὴ δύνασθαι βλάπτειν ἡμᾶς πορευομένους, σφενδονητῶν τὴν ταχίστην δεῖ καὶ ἱππέων. ἀκούω δ' εἶναι ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι ἡμῶν Ῥοδίους, ὧν τοὺς πολλοὺς φασιν ἐπίστασθαι σφενδονᾶν, καὶ τὸ βέλος αὐτῶν καὶ διπλάσιον φέρεσθαι τῶν Περσικῶν σφενδονῶν. ἐκεῖναι γὰρ διὰ τὸ χειροπληθέσι τοῖς λίθοις σφενδονᾶν ἐπὶ βραχὺ ἐξικνοῦνται, οἱ δὲ Ῥόδιοι καὶ ταῖς μολυβδίσι ἐπίστανται χρῆσθαι. ἦν οὖν αὐτῶν ἐπισκεψώμεθα τίνες πέπανται σφενδόνας, καὶ τούτῳ μὲν δώμεν αὐτῶν ἀργύριον, τῷ δὲ ἄλλας πλέκειν ἐθέλοντι ἄλλο ἀργύριον τελῶμεν, καὶ τῷ σφενδονᾶν ἐν τῷ τεταγμένῳ ἐθέλοντι ἄλλην τινὰ ἀτέλειαν εὐρίσκωμεν, ἵσως τινὲς φανοῦνται ἱκανοὶ ἡμᾶς ὠφελεῖν. ὁρῶ δὲ ἵππους ὄντας ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι,

Κρήτες |shoot arrows| δύνανται οὔτε οἱ ἐκ χειρὸς βάλλοντες  
 |in return|  
 |arrive at| ὅταν δὲ αὐτοὺς διώκωμεν, πολὺ μὲν οὐχ οἶόν  
 τε χωρίον ἀπὸ τοῦ |army| διώκειν, ἐν ὀλίγῳ δὲ  
 οὐδ' εἰ ταχὺς εἴη πεζὸς πεζὸν ἂν διώκων |seize, understand, catch,  
 |overtake; (mp) happen|  
 ἐκ |bow| |that which is drawn| οὖν εἰ μέλλοιμεν τούτους  
 |bound, fend off; do| ὕνασθαι |break, make fail| πορευομένους,  
 σφενδονητῶν τὴν ταχίστην δεῖ καὶ ἱππέων. ἀκούω δ'  
 εἶναι ἐν τῷ |army| ἡμῶν Ῥοδίους, ὧν τοὺς πολλοὺς  
 φασιν ἐπίστασθαι |sling|, καὶ τὸ |missile| αὐτῶν καὶ  
 |twofold, double| φέρεσθαι τῶν Περσικῶν σφενδονῶν. ἐκεῖναι  
 γὰρ διὰ τὸ |hand-size| τοῖς |stone| |sling| ἐπὶ |low, short|  
 |arrive at|, οἱ δὲ Ῥόδιοι καὶ ταῖς |lead weight| ἐπίστανται  
 χρῆσθαι. ἦν οὖν αὐτῶν ἐπισκεψώμεθα τίνες |acquire|  
 |sling|, καὶ τούτῳ μὲν δῶμεν αὐτῶν |small coin|, τῷ δὲ  
 ἄλλας |braid| ἐθέλοντι ἄλλο |small coin| τελῶμεν, καὶ τῷ  
 |sling| ἐν τῷ τεταγμένῳ ἐθέλοντι ἄλλην τινα |incompleteness;  
 |exemption|  
 εὐρίσκωμεν, ἴσως τινὲς φανοῦνται ἱκανοὶ ἡμᾶς |help, be useful|  
 ὁρῶ δὲ ἵππους ὄντας ἐν τῷ |army|,

Cretan archers are no match for them; our hand-throwers cannot reach as far; and when we pursue, it is not possible to push the pursuit to any great distance from the main body, and within the short distance no foot-soldier, however fleet of foot, could overtake another foot-soldier who has a bow-shot the start of him. If, then, we are to exclude them from all possibility of injuring us as we march, we must get slingers as soon as possible and cavalry. I am told there are in the army some Rhodians, most of whom, they say, know how to sling, and their missile will reach even twice as far as the Persian slings (which, on account of their being loaded with stones as big as one's fist, have a comparatively short range; but the Rhodians are skilled in the use of leaden bullets). Suppose, then, we investigate and find out first of all who among them possess slings, and for these slings offer the owner the money value; and to another, who will plait some more, hand over the money price; and for a third, who will volunteer to be enrolled as a slinger, invent some other sort of privilege, I think we shall soon find people to come forward capable of helping us. There are horses

*vocabulary*

αἰχμάλωτος captive ~acute  
 ἀνιάζω bother, grieve  
 ἀνιάω (ἱ) vex  
 ἀντιδίδωμι repay, exchange  
 διαβαίνω pass over, cross ~basis  
 διακόσιοι (ἄ) two hundred  
 δοκιμάζω test, approve  
 ἐκλέγω pick, single out  
 ἐφίστημι set; (mp) come/be near,  
 direct, stop ~station  
 θώραξ -ηκος (m) breastplate ~thorax  
 ἵππαρχος horse-ruling (epithet of  
 Poseidon) ~hippo

καταλείβω drip  
 καταλείπω leave behind, abandon  
 ~eclipse  
 κατασκευάζω equip, build  
 πορίζω bring about, provide  
 σκευοφορέω carry baggage  
 σκευοφόρος pack animal, porter  
 σπολάς jerkin  
 σφενδονήτης -ου (m, 1) slinger  
 τοξότης -ου (m, 1) archer ~toxic  
 ὕστεραῖος the next; later  
 χαράδρα torrent, gorge  
 χίλιοι (ἑ) thousand ~kilo-

τοὺς μὲν τινὰς παρ' ἐμοί, τοὺς δὲ τῶν Κλεάρχου καταλελειμμένους, πολλοὺς δὲ καὶ ἄλλους αἰχμαλώτους σκευοφοροῦντας. ἂν οὖν τούτους πάντας ἐκλέξαντες σκευοφόρα μὲν ἀντιδῶμεν, τοὺς δὲ ἵππους εἰς ἱππέας κατασκευάσωμεν, ἴσως καὶ οὗτοί τι τοὺς φεύγοντας ἀνιάσουσιν.»

Ἦδοξε καὶ ταῦτα. καὶ ταύτης τῆς νυκτὸς σφενδονῆται μὲν εἰς διακοσίους ἐγένοντο, ἵπποι δὲ καὶ ἱππεῖς ἐδοκιμάσθησαν τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ εἰς πεντήκοντα, καὶ σπολάδες καὶ θώρακες αὐτοῖς ἐπορίσθησαν, καὶ ἵππαρχος ἐπεστάθη Λύκιος ὁ Πολυστράτου Ἀθηναῖος.

### 3.4

Μείναντες δὲ ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν, τῇ ἄλλῃ ἐπορεύοντο πρωαίτερον ἀναστάντες· χαράδραν γὰρ ἔδει αὐτοὺς διαβῆναι ἐφ' ἣ ἐφοβοῦντο μὴ ἐπιθοῖντο αὐτοῖς διαβαίνουσιν οἱ πολέμοι. διαβεβηκόσι δὲ αὐτοῖς πάλιν φαίνεται Μιθραδάτης, ἔχων ἱππέας χιλίους, τοξότας δὲ



τοὺς μὲν τινας παρ' ἐμοί, τοὺς δὲ τῶν Κλεάρχου  
καταλελειμμένους, πολλοὺς δὲ καὶ ἄλλους |captive

|carry baggage ἂν οὖν τούτους πάντας |pick, single  
|out

|pack animal, porter |repay, , τοὺς δὲ ἵππους εἰς ἱππέας  
|exchange

|equip, build , ἴσως καὶ οὗτοί τι τοὺς φεύγοντας

ἀνιάσουσιν.»

Ἔδοξε καὶ ταῦτα. καὶ ταύτης τῆς νυκτὸς |slinger

μὲν εἰς |two hundred ἐγένοντο, ἵπποι δὲ καὶ ἱππεῖς

|test, approve τῇ |the next; later |fifty , καὶ |jerkin

καὶ |breastplate ὑτοῖς |bring about, καὶ |horse-ruling|set; (mp) come/be near,  
|provide |direct, stop

Λύκιος ὁ Πολυστράτου Ἀθηναῖος.

### 3.4

Μείναντες δὲ ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν, τῇ ἄλλῃ ἐπορεύοντο

πρῳαίτερον ἀναστάντες· |torrent, γὰρ ἔδει αὐτοὺς  
|gorge

|pass over, cross'' ἣ ἐφοβοῦντο μὴ ἐπιθοῖντο αὐτοῖς

|pass over, cross |ι πολέμιοι. |pass over, cross |ἐ αὐτοῖς πάλιν

φαίνεται Μιθραδάτης, ἔχων ἱππέας χιλίους, |archer δὲ

in the army I know; some few with myself, others belonging to Clearchus's stud, and a good many others captured from the enemy, used for carrying baggage. Let us take the pick of these, supplying their places by ordinary baggage animals, and equipping the horses for cavalry. I should not wonder if our troopers gave some annoyance to these fugitives."

These proposals were carried, and that night two hundred slingers were enrolled, and next day as many as fifty horse and horsemen passed muster as duly qualified; buff jackets and cuirasses were provided for them, and a commandant of cavalry appointed to command—Lycius, the son of Polystratus, by name, an Athenian.

### 3.4

That day they remained inactive, but the next they rose earlier than usual, and set out betimes, for they had a ravine to cross, where they feared the enemy might attack them in the act of crossing. When they were across, Mithridates appeared again with one thousand horse, and archers and slingers to the number

*vocabulary*

**αἰτέω** ask for ~etiology  
**ἄκίζω** disrespect, mutilate  
**ἄπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some distance  
**αὐτοκέλευστος** of one's own accord  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis  
**Ἑλλήν** Greek  
**ἐξικνέομαι** arrive at  
**ἐφέπω** drive, meet, follow ~sequel  
**ζῶός** alive ~zoo  
**θαρρέω** be of good heart  
**θαρσέω** be of good heart  
**θέω** run, run for  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch, overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy  
**καταφρονέω** scorn; think of  
**ὀκτώ** eight ~octopus  
**ὀκτωκαίδεκα** 18  
**ὁμόσε** to the same spot ~homoerotic

**ὀπλίτης** -ου (ī, m, 1) hoplite, heavy infantryman ~hoplite  
**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon, recommend, encourage  
**πελταστής** -οῦ (m, 1) light troops ~pelt  
**προσβολή** application, attack  
**σάλπιγξ** -γος (f) trumpet  
**σημαίνω** give orders to; show; mark ~semaphore  
**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)  
**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters  
**σφενδόνη** sling  
**σφενδονήτης** -ου (m, 1) slinger  
**τετρακισχίλιοι** 4000 ~kilo-  
**τόξευμα** -τος (n, 3) arrow  
**ὕπέχω** promise; hold out one's hand; submit to  
**φοβερός** frightful, afraid  
**χαράδρα** torrent, gorge

καὶ σφενδονήτας εἰς τετρακισχιλίους· τοσούτους γὰρ ἤτησε Τισσαφέρνην, καὶ ἔλαβεν ὑποσχόμενος, ἂν τούτους λάβῃ, παραδώσειν αὐτῷ τοὺς Ἑλληνας, καταφρονήσας, ὅτι ἐν τῇ πρόσθεν προσβολῇ ὀλίγους ἔχων ἔπαθε μὲν οὐδέν, πολλὰ δὲ κακὰ ἐνόμιζε ποιῆσαι.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ Ἑλληνες διαβεβηκότες ἀπείχον τῆς χαράδρας ὅσον ὀκτῶ σταδίους, διέβαινε καὶ ὁ Μιθραδάτης ἔχων τὴν δύναμιν. παρήγγελτο δὲ τῶν τε πελταστῶν οὓς ἔδει διώκειν καὶ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν, καὶ τοῖς ἵππευσιν εἶρητο θαρροῦσι διώκειν ὥς ἐφευομένης ἱκανῆς δυνάμεως. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ Μιθραδάτης κατειλήφει, καὶ ἤδη σφενδόναι καὶ τοξεύματα ἐξικνοῦντο, ἐσήμηνε τοῖς Ἑλλησι τῇ σάλπιγγι, καὶ εὐθὺς ἔθεον ὁμόσε οἷς εἶρητο καὶ οἱ ἵππεῖς ἤλαυνον· οἱ δὲ οὐκ ἐδέξαντο, ἀλλ' ἔφευγον ἐπὶ τὴν χαράδραν. ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ διώξει τοῖς βαρβάροις τῶν τε πεζῶν ἀπέθανον πολλοὶ καὶ τῶν ἵππέων ἐν τῇ χαράδρᾳ ζωοὶ ἐλήφθησαν εἰς ὀκτωκαίδεκα. τοὺς δὲ ἀποθανόντας αὐτοκέλευστοι οἱ Ἑλληνες ἠκίσαντο, ὥς ὅτι φοβερώτατον τοῖς πολεμίοις

καὶ |slinger εἰς |4000 τοσούτους γὰρ  
 ἤτησε Τισσαφέρην, καὶ ἔλαβεν |promise , ἂν τούτους  
 λάβῃ, παραδώσειν αὐτῷ τοὺς |Greek , |scorn; think of ,  
 ὅτι ἐν τῇ πρόσθεν |application, ὀλίγους ἔχων ἔπαθε μὲν  
 |attack  
 οὐδέν, πολλὰ δὲ κακὰ ἐνόμιζε ποιῆσαι.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ |Greek |pass over, cross |ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some  
 |distance  
 ὅσον |eight σταδίου, |pass over, cross ὁ Μιθραδάτης ἔχων  
 τὴν δύναμιν. |transmit; order, summon, rec-light troops οὓς  
 |commend, encourage  
 ἔδει διώκειν καὶ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν, καὶ τοῖς ἱππεύσιν εἶρητο  
 θαρροῦσι διώκειν ὡς |drive, meet, follow ἡς δυνάμεως. ἐπεὶ  
 δὲ ὁ Μιθραδάτης |seize, understand, catch, sling καὶ  
 |overtake; (mp) happen  
 |arrow |arrive at , |give orders to; |Greek τῇ |trumpet ,  
 |show; mark  
 καὶ εὐθὺς |run |to the same spot, ὁ καὶ οἱ ἱππεῖς ἤλαυνον·  
 οἱ δὲ οὐκ ἐδέξαντο, ἀλλ' ἔφευγον ἐπὶ τὴν |torrent, ἐν  
 |gorge  
 ταύτῃ τῇ διώξει τοῖς βαρβάροις τῶν τε πεζῶν ἀπέθανον  
 πολλοὶ καὶ τῶν ἱππέων ἐν τῇ χαράδρᾳ |alive ἐλήφθησαν  
 εἰς |18 . τοὺς δὲ ἀποθανόντας |of one's own accord  
 |Greek |disrespect, , ὥς ὅτι |frightful, afraid τοῖς πολεμίοις  
 |mutilate

of four thousand. This whole body he had got by request from Tissaphernes, and in return he undertook to deliver up the Hellenes to Tissaphernes. He had grown contemptuous since his late attack, when, with so small a detachment, he had done, as he thought, a good deal of mischief, without the slightest loss to himself.

When the Hellenes were not only right across, but had got about a mile from the ravine, Mithridates also crossed with his forces. An order had been passed down the lines, what light infantry and what heavy infantry were to take part in the pursuit; and the cavalry were instructed to follow up the pursuit with confidence, as a considerable support was in their rear. So, when Mithridates had come up with them, and they were well within arrow and sling shot, the bugle sounded the signal to the Hellenes; and immediately the detachment under orders rushed to close quarters, and the cavalry charged. There the enemy preferred not to wait, but fled towards the ravine. In this pursuit the Asiatics lost several of their infantry killed, and of their cavalry as many as eighteen were taken prisoners in the ravine. As to those who were slain the Hellenes, acting upon impulse, mutilated their bodies, by way of impressing their enemy with

*vocabulary*

**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured ~helix  
**ἀποφεύγω** avoid, escape, go free  
**ἀσφαλής** safe, easy, steady, careful  
**ἀφανίζω** do away with, make off with;  
 (pass) disappear  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**ἐκλείπω** leave out, pass over  
**Ἑλλήν** Greek  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἕξ** six ~hexagon  
**ἐρῆμος** empty  
**εὐρος** -εος (n, 3) width; (caps) the east  
 wind  
**κρηπίς** (ι) boot; foundation  
**κύκλος** circle, wheel ~cycle  
**κυκλόω** circle, encircle  
**κώμη** village

**λίθινος** made of stone  
**μέχρι** as far as, until  
**νεφέλη** cloud, fog ~nebula  
**οικήω** inhabit ~economics  
**οικοδομέω** build, build a house  
**παλαιός** old ~paleo  
**παρασάγγης** -ου (m, 1) Persian unit,  
 ca. 5 km  
**περίοδος** picket, circuit  
**Πέρσης** Persian  
**πλέθρον** 30 meters or its square  
 ~plethora  
**πλησίος** near, neighboring  
**πλίνθος** (f) brick, block  
**προκαλύπτω** cover in front  
**πυραμῖς** (ῶ) pyramid  
**σταθμός** cottage; post  
**ὑπείμι** be under  
**ὕψος** ὕψους (n, 3) height, summit

εἶη ὄραν.

Καὶ οἱ μὲν πολέμοι οὕτω πράξαντες ἀπῆλθον, οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ἀσφαλῶς πορευόμενοι τὸ λοιπὸν τῆς ἡμέρας ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸν Τίγρητα ποταμόν. ἐνταῦθα πόλις ἦν ἐρήμη μεγάλη, ὄνομα δ' αὐτῇ ἦν Λάρισα· ὥκουν δ' αὐτὴν τὸ παλαιὸν Μῆδοι. τοῦ δὲ τείχους αὐτῆς ἦν τὸ εὖρος πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι πόδες, ὕψος δ' ἑκατόν· τοῦ δὲ κύκλου ἡ περίοδος δύο παρασάγγαι· ὠκοδόμητο δὲ πλίνθοις κεραμεαῖς· κρηπὶς δ' ὑπὴν λιθίνη τὸ ὕψος εἴκοσι ποδῶν. ταύτην βασιλεὺς Περσῶν, ὅτε παρὰ Μήδων τὴν ἀρχὴν ἐλάμβανον Πέρσαι, πολιορκῶν οὐδενὶ τρόπῳ ἐδύνατο ἐλεῖν· ἥλιον δὲ νεφέλη προκαλύψασα ἠφάνισε μέχρι ἐξέλιπον οἱ ἄνθρωποι, καὶ οὕτως ἐάλω. παρὰ ταύτην τὴν πόλιν ἦν πυραμὶς λιθίνη, τὸ μὲν εὖρος ἑνὸς πλέθρου, τὸ δὲ ὕψος δύο πλέθρων. ἐπὶ ταύτης πολλοὶ τῶν βαρβάρων ἦσαν ἐκ τῶν πλησίον κωμῶν ἀποπεφευγότες.

Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμὸν ἓνα παρασάγγας ἐξ πρὸς τεῖχος ἔρημον μέγα, πρὸς τῇ πόλει κείμενον· ὄνομα



εἶη ὁράν.

Καὶ οἱ μὲν πολέμιοι οὕτω πράξαντες ἀπῆλθον, οἱ δὲ

|Greek ἀσφαλῶς πορευόμενοι τὸ λοιπὸν τῆς ἡμέρας

ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸν Τίγρητα ποταμόν. |there, here .τόλιν

ἦν |empty μεγάλη, ὄνομα δ' αὐτῇ ἦν Λάρισα· ὥκουν δ'

αὐτὴν τὸ |old Μῆδοι. τοῦ δὲ τείχους αὐτῆς ἦν

τὸ |width; (caps) καὶ εἴκοσι πόδες, |height, ὃ ἑκατόν· τοῦ  
|the east wind |summit

δὲ κύκλου ἣ |picket, δύο |ca. 5 km |build, build a δὲ  
|circuit |house

πλίνθοις κεραμεαῖς· |boot; foun- |be un- |made ὃ |height, ὃσοι  
|dation |der |stone |summit

ποδῶν. ταύτην βασιλεὺς Περσῶν, ὅτε παρὰ Μήδων

τὴν ἀρχὴν ἐλάμβανον Πέρσαι, πολιορκῶν οὐδενὶ τρόπῳ

ἐδύνατο ἐλεῖν· ἥλιον δὲ |cloud, fog|cover in front |do away with, make  
|leave out, pass over, |υποῖ, καὶ οὕτως |be captured |appear  
|appear

μέχρι |leave out, pass over, |υποῖ, καὶ οὕτως |be captured |appear

ταύτην τὴν πόλιν ἦν |pyramid |made of stone· ὃ |width; (caps)  
|the east wind

|30 meters or its |height, ὃ |30 me- ἐπὶ ταύτης πολλοὶ τῶν  
|square |summit |ters or its

βαρβάρων ἦσαν ἐκ τῶν |πλησίον |village |avoid, escape, go  
|free

|thence δ' ἐπορεύθησαν |cottage; post. α |ca. 5 km ἔξ

πρὸς τείχος ἔρημον μέγα, πρὸς τῇ πόλει κείμενον· ὄνομα

as frightful an image as possible.

So fared the foe and so fell back; but the Hellenes, continuing their march in safety for the rest of that day, reached the river Tigris. Here they came upon a large deserted city, the name of which was Larissa: a place inhabited by the Medes in days of old; the breadth of its walls was twenty-five feet, and the height of them a hundred, and the circuit of the whole two parasangs. It was built of clay-bricks, supported on a stone basis twenty feet high. This city the king of the Persians besieged, what time the Persians strove to snatch their empire from the Medes, but he could in no wise take it; then a cloud hid the face of the sun and blotted out the light thereof, until the inhabitants were gone out of the city, and so it was taken. By the side of this city there was a stone pyramid in breadth a hundred feet, and in height two hundred feet; in it were many of the barbarians who had fled for refuge from the neighbouring villages.

From this place they marched one stage of six parasangs to a great deserted fortress (which lay over against the city), and

*vocabulary*

**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured ~helix

**βάρβαρος** non-Greek

**βροντή** thunder ~brontosaurus

**ἐγγύς** near

**ἐνοικέω** dwell in

**ἐνταῦθα** there, here

**ἐντεῦθεν** thence

**ἕξ** six ~hexagon

**ἐποικοδομέω** build up, upon

**εὖρος** -εος (n, 3) width; (caps) the east  
wind

**καταπλήσσω** be struck with dismay  
~plectrum

**καταφεύγω** resort to, flee to, appeal to  
~fugitive

**κογχυλιάτης** (ᾱ) limestone marble

**κρηπίς** (ι) boot; foundation

**λίθος** (f) stone ~monolith

**ξεστός** polished, wrought

**οικέω** inhabit ~economics

**πάμπολος** very great

**παρασάγγης** -ου (m, 1) Persian unit,  
ca. 5 km

**περίοδος** picket, circuit

**Πέρσης** Persian

**πλίνθινος** of brick

**πότε** when?

**σταθμός** cottage; post

**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy

**τέσσαρες** four ~trapezoid

**ὑψος** ὕψους (n, 3) height, summit

δὲ ἦν τῇ πόλει Μέσπιλα· Μῆδοι δ' αὐτήν ποτε ᾤκουν.  
 ἦν δὲ ἡ μὲν κρηπὶς λίθου ξεστοῦ κογχυλιάτου, τὸ εὖρος  
 πεντήκοντα ποδῶν καὶ τὸ ὕψος πεντήκοντα. ἐπὶ δὲ ταύτῃ  
 ἐπωκοδόμητο πλίνθινον τείχος, τὸ μὲν εὖρος πεντήκοντα  
 ποδῶν, τὸ δὲ ὕψος ἑκατόν· τοῦ δὲ τείχους ἡ περίοδος  
 ἕξ παρασάγγαι. ἐνταῦθα λέγεται Μήδεια γυνὴ βασιλέως  
 καταφυγεῖν ὅτε ἀπώλλυσαν τὴν ἀρχὴν ὑπὸ Περσῶν  
 Μῆδοι. ταύτην δὲ τὴν πόλιν πολιορκῶν ὁ Περσῶν  
 βασιλεὺς οὐκ ἐδύνατο οὔτε χρόνῳ ἐλεῖν οὔτε βίᾳ· Ζεὺς  
 δὲ βροντῇ κατέπληξε τοὺς ἐνοικοῦντας, καὶ οὕτως ἐάλω.

Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμὸν ἓνα παρασάγγας  
 τέτταρας. εἰς τοῦτον δὲ τὸν σταθμὸν Τισσαφέρνης  
 ἐπεφάνη, οὗς τε αὐτὸς ἱππέας ἦλθεν ἔχων καὶ τὴν  
 Ὀρόντα δύναμιν τοῦ τὴν βασιλέως θυγατέρα ἔχοντος· καὶ  
 οὗς Κῦρος ἔχων ἀνέβη βαρβάρους· καὶ οὗς ὁ βασιλεὺς  
 ἀδελφὸς ἔχων βασιλεῖ ἐβοήθει, καὶ πρὸς τούτοις ὅσους  
 βασιλεὺς ἔδωκεν αὐτῷ— ὥστε τὸ στράτευμα πάμπολυ  
 ἐφάνη. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγγὺς ἐγένετο, τὰς μὲν τῶν

δὲ ἦν τῇ πόλει Μέσπιλα· Μῆδοι δ' αὐτήν ποτε |inhabit

ἦν δὲ ἡ μὲν |boot; |stone |polished |limestone , τὸ |width; (caps) the  
|founda- |marble  
|tion  
πεντήκοντα ποδῶν καὶ τὸ |height, |πντήκοντα. ἐπὶ δὲ ταύτῃ  
|summit

|build up, upon |of brick τείχος, τὸ μὲν |width; (caps) |κοντα  
|the east wind

ποδῶν, τὸ δὲ |height, |ατόν· τοῦ δὲ τείχους ἡ |picket,  
|summit |circuit

ἕξ |ca. 5 km . |there, here ἔγεται Μήδεια γυνὴ βασιλέως

|resort to, flee ὅτε ἀπώλλυσαν τὴν ἀρχὴν ὑπὸ Περσῶν  
|to, appeal to

Μῆδοι. ταύτην δὲ τὴν πόλιν πολιορκῶν ὁ Περσῶν

βασιλεὺς οὐκ ἐδύνατο οὔτε χρόνῳ ἐλεῖν οὔτε βίᾳ· Ζεὺς

δὲ |thunder |be struck τοὺς |dwell in , καὶ οὕτως |be captured  
|with dismay

|thence δ' ἐπορεύθησαν |cottage; post |ca. 5 km

|four . εἰς τοῦτον δὲ τὸν |cottage; post |σσαφέρνης

ἐπεφάνη, οὓς τε αὐτὸς ἱππέας ἦλθεν ἔχων καὶ τὴν

Ὀρόντα δύναμιν τοῦ τὴν βασιλέως θυγατέρα ἔχοντος· καὶ

οὓς Κῦρος ἔχων ἀνέβη |non-Greek καὶ οὓς ὁ βασιλέως

ἀδελφὸς ἔχων βασιλεῖ ἐβοήθει, καὶ πρὸς τούτοις ὅσους

βασιλεὺς ἔδωκεν αὐτῷ— ὥστε τὸ |army |very great

ἐφάνη. ἐπεὶ δ' |near ἐγένετο, τὰς μὲν τῶν

the name of that city was Mespila. The Medes once dwelt in it. The basement was made of polished stone full of shells; fifty feet was the breadth of it, and fifty feet the height; and on this basement was reared a wall of brick, the breadth whereof was fifty feet and the height thereof four hundred; and the circuit of the wall was six parasangs. Hither, as the story goes, Medea, the king's wife, betook herself in flight what time the Medes lost their empire at the hands of the Persians. To this city also the king of the Persians laid siege, but could not take it either by length of days or strength of hand. But Zeus sent amazement on the inhabitants thereof, and so it was taken.

From this place they marched one stage—four parasangs. But, while still on this stage, Tissaphernes made his appearance. He had with him his own cavalry and a force belonging to Orontas, who had the king's daughter to wife; and there were, moreover, with them the Asiatics whom Cyrus had taken with him on his march up; together with those whom the king's brother had brought as a reinforcement to the king; besides those whom Tissaphernes himself had received as a gift from the king, so that the armament appeared to be very great. When they were close, he halted some of his regiments at the rear and wheeled others into position on either flank, but hesitated to attack, having no mind apparently to

*vocabulary*

**ἀκροβόλισις** -εως (f) skirmishing  
**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured ~helix  
**ἄνω** (ᾱ) accomplish, pass, waste;  
 upwards, out to sea  
**ἀποχωρέω** go away from, retreat  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**βέλος** -εος (n, 3) missile ~ballistic  
**διακινδυνεύω** (ὅ) take risks  
**διατάσσω** arrange, array  
**διατελέω** accomplish; keep doing  
 ~apostle  
**Ἑλλήν** Greek  
**ἐμβάλλω** throw in; inspire a mental  
 state ~ballistic  
**ἐπιτυγχάνω** meet, attain  
**καταστρατοπεδεύω** encamp, station  
**κώμη** village  
**μελετάω** pursue, attend to, exercise  
**μόλυβδος** lead

**νεῦρον** tendon ~neuro  
**ὀπισθεν** behind, hereafter  
**ὁπόσος** as many as, how many, how  
 great  
**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon,  
 recommend, encourage  
**παράγω** deflect; bring forward  
**Πέρσης** Persian  
**πλάγιος** sideways; treacherous  
**προσδοκάω** expect  
**σίνομαι** (ἰ) rob, damage  
**σφενδονάω** sling  
**σφενδόνη** sling  
**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military  
 unit  
**τόξευμα** -τος (n, 3) arrow  
**τοξεύω** shoot an arrow at ~toxic  
**τόξον** bow ~toxic  
**τοξότης** -ου (m, 1) archer ~toxic  
**χρήσιμος** useful

τάξεων ὅπισθεν καταστήσας, τὰς δὲ εἰς τὰ πλάγια παραγαγὼν ἐμβαλεῖν μὲν οὐκ ἐτόλμησεν οὐδ' ἐβούλετο διακινδυνεύειν, σφενδονᾶν δὲ παρήγγειλε καὶ τοξεύειν. ἐπεὶ δὲ διαταχθέντες οἱ Ῥόδιοι ἐσφενδόνησαν καὶ οἱ Σκύθαι τοξόται ἐτόξευσαν καὶ οὐδείς ἡμάρτανεν ἀνδρός οὐδὲ γὰρ εἰ πάνυ προυθυμείτο ῥάδιον ἦν, καὶ ὁ Τισσαφέρνης μάλα ταχέως ἔξω βελῶν ἀπεχώρει καὶ αἱ ἄλλαι τάξεις ἀπεχώρησαν. καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν τῆς ἡμέρας οἱ μὲν ἐπορεύοντο, οἱ δ' εἵποντο· καὶ οὐκέτι ἐσίνοντο οἱ βάρβαροι τῇ τότε ἀκροβολίσει· μακρότερον γὰρ οἷ τε Ῥόδιοι τῶν Περσῶν ἐσφενδόνων καὶ τῶν τοξοτῶν· μεγάλα δὲ καὶ τόξα τὰ Περσικά ἐστίν· ὥστε χρήσιμα ἦν ὅποσα ἀλίσκοιτο τῶν τοξευμάτων τοῖς Κρησί, καὶ διετέλουν χρώμενοι τοῖς τῶν πολεμίων τοξεύμασι, καὶ ἐμελέτων τοξεύειν ἄνω ἰέντες μακράν. ἠύρίσκετο δὲ καὶ νεῦρα πολλὰ ἐν ταῖς κώμαις καὶ μόλυβδος, ὥστε χρῆσθαι εἰς τὰς σφενδόνας. καὶ ταύτῃ μὲν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, ἐπεὶ κατεστρατοπεδεύοντο οἱ Ἕλληνες κώμαις ἐπιτυχόντες,



τάξεων ὅπισθεν καταστήσας, τὰς δὲ εἰς τὰ πλάγια

|deflect; bring forward ἐμβαλεῖν μὲν οὐκ ἐτόλμησεν οὐδ' ἐβούλετο

|take risks , |sling δὲ |transmit; summon, order; shoot an arrow at  
ἐπεὶ δὲ |arrange, array οἱ Ῥόδιοι |mend, encourage |sling καὶ οἱ

Σκύθαι |archer |shoot an arrow at ἰδεῖς ἡμάρτανεν ἀνδρός

οὐδὲ γὰρ εἰ πάνυ προθυμεῖτο ῥάδιον ἦν, καὶ ὁ

Τισσαφέρνης μάλα ταχέως ἔξω βελῶν |go away .αὶ αἱ  
|from, retreat

ἄλλαι τάξεις |go away from, καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν τῆς ἡμέρας  
|retreat

οἱ μὲν ἐπορεύοντο, οἱ δ' εἶποντο· καὶ οὐκέτι |rob, damage

οἱ βάρβαροι τῇ τότε |skirmishing μακρότερον γὰρ οἱ

τε Ῥόδιοι τῶν Περσῶν |sling καὶ τῶν |archer

μεγάλα δὲ καὶ τόξα τὰ Περσικά ἐστίν· ὥστε |useful

ἦν |as/how many/great - τῶν |arrow τοῖς Κρησί, καὶ

|accomplish; |keep doing χρώμενοι τοῖς τῶν πολεμίων |arrow , καὶ

|pursue, at-|shoot an arrow at ἔντες μακράν. ἠΐρσκετο δὲ  
|tend to, ex-  
|exercise  
καὶ |tendon πολλὰ ἐν ταῖς |village καὶ |lead , ὥστε

χρησθαι εἰς τὰς |sling . καὶ ταύτῃ μὲν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, ἐπεὶ

|encamp, station οἱ |Greek |village |meet, attain ,

run any risks, and contenting himself with an order to his slingers to sling and his archers to shoot. But when the Rhodian slingers and the bowmen, posted at intervals, retaliated, and every shot told (for with the utmost pains to miss it would have been hard to do so under the circumstances), then Tissaphernes with all speed retired out of range, the other regiments following suit; and for the rest of the day the one party advanced and the other followed. But now the Asiatics had ceased to be dangerous with their sharpshooting. For the Rhodians could reach further than the Persian slingers, or, indeed, than most of the bowmen. The Persian bows are of great size, so that the Cretans found the arrows which were picked up serviceable, and persevered in using their enemies' arrows, and practised shooting with them, letting them fly upwards to a great height. There were also plenty of bowstrings found in the villages—and lead, which they turned to account for their slings. As a result of this day, then, the Hellenes chancing upon some villages had no sooner encamped than the barbarians fell back,

*vocabulary*

ἄθυμέω (ῥ) be disheartened  
 ἀκροβολίζομαι fight with missiles  
 ἀκροβολίσις -εως (f) skirmishing  
 ἀναγκάζω force, compel  
 ἄτακτος disorderly  
 βάρβαρος non-Greek  
 γέφυρα (ῥ) dam, dike; bridge  
 διαβαίνω pass over, cross ~basis  
 διάβασις -εως (f) crossing, passage  
 ~basis  
 διασπᾶω tear apart ~spatula  
 διέχω pass through; be apart  
 δύσχρηστος hard to use  
 ἐκθλίβω (ι) squeeze out  
 Ἑλλήν Greek  
 ἐνταῦθα there, here  
 ἕξ six ~hexagon  
 ἔπειμι lie upon; approach ~ion  
 ἐπισιτίζομαι (ιῡ) take supplies  
 εὐεπίθετος easy to attack  
 ἰσόπλευρος equilateral

κενός empty, vain  
 κέρας -τος (n, 3) horn; military unit  
 ~ceratopsia  
 κώμη village  
 λόχος ambush, band, childbirth ~lie  
 μείων less, smaller  
 ὀπλίτης -ου (ι, m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
 infantryman ~hoplite  
 πιέζω press, squeeze ~piezoelectric  
 πλαίσιον frame, scaffolding  
 σῖτος grain, bread, food ~parasite  
 σπεύδω 'push on,' get going, hurry  
 ~repudiate  
 συγκύπτης rafter  
 συγκύπτω go in a huddle  
 τάξις -εως (f) arrangement, military  
 unit  
 ταράσσω mess things up ~trachea  
 ὕστεραῖος the next; later  
 φθάζω do first, outstrip  
 φθάνω (ᾱ) do first, outstrip

ἀπῆλθον οἱ βάρβαροι μείον ἔχοντες τῇ ἀκροβολίσει.

Τὴν δ' ἐπιούσαν ἡμέραν ἔμειναν οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο· ἦν γὰρ πολὺς σίτος ἐν ταῖς κώμαις. τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ ἐπορεύοντο διὰ τοῦ πεδίου, καὶ Τισσαφέρνης εἶπετο ἀκροβολιζόμενος. ἔνθα δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔγνωσαν πλαίσιον ἰσόπλευρον ὅτι πονηρὰ τάξις εἴη πολεμίων ἐπομένων. ἀνάγκη γάρ ἐστιν, ἦν συγκύπτῃ τὰ κέρατα τοῦ πλαισίου ἢ ὁδοῦ στενοτέρας οὔσης ἢ ὁρέων ἀναγκαζόντων ἢ γεφύρας, ἐκθλίβεσθαι τοὺς ὀπλίτας καὶ πορεύεσθαι πονήρως ἅμα μὲν πιεζομένους, ἅμα δὲ καὶ ταραττομένους, ὥστε δυσχρήστους εἶναι ἀνάγκη ἀτάκτους ὄντας· ὅταν δ' αὖ διάσχη τὰ κέρατα, ἀνάγκη διασπᾶσθαι τοὺς τότε ἐκθλιβομένους καὶ κενὸν γίγνεσθαι τὸ μέσον τῶν κεράτων, καὶ ἀθυμεῖν τοὺς ταῦτα πάσχοντας πολεμίων ἐπομένων. καὶ ὁπότε δέοι γέφυραν διαβαίνειν ἢ ἄλλην τινὰ διάβασιν, ἔσπευδεν ἕκαστος βουλόμενος φθάσαι πρῶτος· καὶ εὐεπίθετον ἦν ἐνταῦθα τοῖς πολεμίοις. ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτ' ἔγνωσαν οἱ στρατηγοί, ἐποίησαν ἕξ λόχους

ἀπῆλθον οἱ βάρβαροι |less, ᾗχοντες τῇ |skirmishing  
|smaller  
Τὴν δ' ἐπιούσαν ἡμέραν ἔμειναν οἱ |Greek καὶ  
ἐπεσιτίσαντο· ἦν γὰρ πολὺς σῖτος ἐν ταῖς |village τῇ  
δὲ |the next; later ρεύοντο διὰ τοῦ πεδίου, καὶ Τισσαφέρνης  
εἶπετο |fight with missiles ἔνθα δὲ οἱ |Greek ἔγνωσαν  
|frame, scaf-|equilateral ὅτι πονηρὰ τάξις εἴη πολεμίων  
|folding  
ἐπομένων. ἀνάγκη γάρ ἐστιν, ἣν συγκύπτῃ τὰ κέρατα τοῦ  
πλαισίου ἢ ὁδοῦ στενοτέρας οὔσης ἢ ὁρέων ἀναγκαζόντων  
ἢ |dam, dike;|squeeze out τοὺς |hoplite, heavy πορεύεσθαι  
|bridge |infantryman  
πονήρως ἅμα μὲν |press, squeeze ἅμα δὲ καὶ |mess things up  
ὥστε |hard to use εἶναι ἀνάγκη |disorderly ὄντας· ὅταν  
δ' αὖ |pass through; κέρατα, ἀνάγκη |tear apart τοὺς  
|be apart  
τότε |squeeze out καὶ |empty, vain εἶναι τὸ μέσον τῶν  
κεράτων, καὶ |be disheartened αὐτὰ πάσχοντας πολεμίων  
ἐπομένων. καὶ ὁπότε δέοι |dam, dike;|pass over, cross ἄλλην  
|bridge  
τινὰ διάβασιν, |'push on,' get αστος βουλόμενος φθάσαι  
|going, hurry  
πρῶτος· καὶ |easy to attack, |there, here οἷς πολεμοῖς. ἐπεὶ  
δὲ ταῦτ' ἔγνωσαν οἱ στρατηγοί, ἐποίησαν ἐξ |ambush, band,  
|childbirth

having had distinctly the worst of it in the skirmishing.

The next day was a day of inaction: they halted and took in supplies, as there was much corn in the villages; but on the day following, the march was continued through the plain (of the Tigris), and Tissaphernes still hung on their skirts with his skirmishers. And now it was that the Hellenes discovered the defect of marching in a square with an enemy following. As a matter of necessity, whenever the wings of an army so disposed draw together, either where a road narrows, or hills close in, or a bridge has to be crossed, the heavy infantry cannot help being squeezed out of their ranks, and march with difficulty, partly from actual pressure, and partly from the general confusion that ensues. Or, supposing the wings are again extended, the troops have hardly recovered from their former distress before they are pulled asunder, and there is a wide space between the wings, and the men concerned lose confidence in themselves, especially with an enemy close behind. What happened, when a bridge had to be crossed or other passage effected, was, that each unit of the force pressed on in anxiety to get over first, and at these moments it was easy for the enemy to make an attack. The generals accordingly, having recognised the defect, set about curing it. To do so, they made six *lochi*, or divisions of a hundred men apiece, each

*vocabulary*

**βασίλειος** kingly  
**γέφυρα** (ῥ) dam, dike; bridge  
**γήλοφος** hill, mound  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis  
**διάβασις** -εως (f) crossing, passage  
 ~basis  
**διέχω** pass through; be apart  
**εἰκός** likely  
**ἐκπίμπλημι** fulfil, accomplish  
**ἐκπλεως** full of, abundant  
**Ἑλλην** Greek  
**ἐνοχλέω** be annoyed  
**ἐνωμοτία** army division  
**ἐξωθεν** from outside  
**ἐπιπάρειμι** come to help; pass, visit  
**ἐφίστημι** set; (mp) come/be near,  
 direct, stop ~station  
**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism  
**ἡνίκα** when  
**καθήκω** come down, (a day) to fall,  
 arrive; be proper

**κέρας** -τος (n, 3) horn; military unit  
 ~ceratopsia  
**κώμη** village  
**λόφος** neck, crest on a helmet, hilltop  
**λοχαγός** (ᾱ) captain  
**λόχος** ambush, band, childbirth ~lie  
**παράγω** deflect; bring forward  
**πέμπτος** fifth ~pentagon  
**πλαίσιον** frame, scaffolding  
**πλατύς** extensive, wide  
**πλευρά** rib, side ~pleurisy  
**σταθμός** cottage; post  
**συγκύπτω** go in a huddle  
**ταράσσω** mess things up ~trachea  
**τέσσαρες** four ~trapezoid  
**ὑπείμι** be under  
**ὑπομένω** stay behind, await ~remain  
**ὕψηλός** high  
**φάλαγξ** -γος (f) rank of battle  
 ~phalanx  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

ἀνὰ ἑκατὸν ἄνδρας, καὶ λοχαγοὺς ἐπέστησαν καὶ ἄλλους πεντηκοντῆρας καὶ ἄλλους ἐνωμοτάρχους. οὗτοι δὲ πορευόμενοι, ὁπότε μὲν συγκύπτει τὰ κέρατα, ὑπέμενον ὕστεροι οἱ λοχαγοί, ὥστε μὴ ἐνοχλεῖν τοῖς κέρασι, τότε δὲ παρῆγον ἔξωθεν τῶν κεράτων. ὁπότε δὲ διάσχοιεν αἱ πλευραὶ τοῦ πλαισίου, τὸ μέσον ἂν ἐξεπίμπλασαν, εἰ μὲν στενότερον εἴη τὸ διέχον, κατὰ λόχους, εἰ δὲ πλατύτερον, κατὰ πεντηκοστῆς, εἰ δὲ πάνυ πλατύ, κατ' ἐνωμοτίας· ὥστε αἰὲ ἐκπλεων εἶναι τὸ μέσον. εἰ δὲ καὶ διαβαίνειν τινὰ δέοι διάβασιν ἢ γέφυραν, οὐκ ἐταράττοντο, ἀλλ' ἐν τῷ μέρει οἱ λοχαγοὶ διέβαινον· καὶ εἴ που δέοι τι τῆς φάλαγγος, ἐπιπαρῆσαν οὗτοι.

Τούτῳ τῷ τρόπῳ ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμοὺς τέτταρας. ἡνίκα δὲ τὸν πέμπτον ἐπορεύοντο, εἶδον βασιλείον τι καὶ περὶ αὐτὸ κώμας πολλὰς, τὴν δὲ ὁδὸν πρὸς τὸ χωρίον τοῦτο διὰ γηλόφων ὑψηλῶν γιγνομένην, οἱ καθήκον ἀπὸ τοῦ ὄρους ὑφ' ᾧ ἦν ἡ κώμη. καὶ εἶδον μὲν τοὺς λόφους ἄσμενοι οἱ Ἕλληνες, ὡς εἰκὸς τῶν πολεμίων ὄντων ἱππέων· ἐπεὶ



ἀνὰ ἑκατὸν ἄνδρας, καὶ |captain ἐπέστησαν καὶ ἄλλους  
 πεντηκοντῆρας καὶ ἄλλους ἐνωμοτάρχους. οὗτοι δὲ  
 πορευόμενοι, ὁπότε μὲν |go in a huddle· κέρατα, ὑπέμενον  
 ὕστεροι οἱ |captain , ὥστε μὴ |be annoyed ἵς κέρασι, τότε  
 δὲ |deflect; |from outside κεράτων. ὁπότε δὲ |pass through;  
 |bring |be apart  
 |rib, |forward τοῦ πλαισίου, τὸ μέσον ἂν |fulfil, accomplish. εἰ μὲν  
 στενότερον εἶη τὸ |pass through; |ambush, |band; |extensive, wide  
 |be apart |childbirth  
 κατὰ πεντηκοστῆς, εἰ δὲ πάνυ |extensive, wide |army division  
 ὥστε αἰὲ |full of, abundant τὸ μέσον. εἰ δὲ καὶ |pass over, cross  
 τινὰ δέοι διάβασιν ἢ |dam, dike; bridge· πράττοντο, ἀλλ' ἐν  
 τῷ μέρει οἱ |captain |pass over, cross· εἴ που δέοι τι τῆς  
 |rank of battle· τιπαρήσαν οὗτοι.

Τούτῳ τῷ τρόπῳ ἐπορεύθησαν |cottage; post ἔτταρας. ἡνίκα  
 δὲ τὸν |fifth ἐπορεύοντο, εἶδον βασιλείον τι καὶ περὶ  
 αὐτὸ |village πολλάς, τὴν δὲ ὁδὸν πρὸς τὸ χωρίον τοῦτο  
 διὰ |hill, ὑψηλῶν γιγνομένην, οἱ |come down, (a day) to fall, arrive;  
 |mound |be proper  
 ὄρους ὑφ' ᾧ ἦν ἡ |village καὶ εἶδον μὲν τοὺς |neck, crest on a  
 |helmet, hilltop  
 οἱ |Greek , ὥς |likely τῶν πολεμίων ὄντων ἱππέων· ἐπεί

of which had its own set of captains and under-officers in command of half and quarter companies. It was the duty of these new companies, during a march, whenever the flanks needed to close in, to fall back to the rear, so as to disencumber the wings. This they did by wheeling clear of them. When the sides of the oblong again extended, they filled up the interstices, if the gap were narrow, by columns of companies, if broader, by columns of half-companies, or, if broader still, by columns of quarter-companies, so that the space between was always filled up. If again it were necessary to effect a passage by bridge or otherwise, there was no confusion, the several companies crossing in turns; or, if the occasion arose to form in line of battle, these companies came up to the front and fell in.

In this way they advanced four stages, but ere the fifth was completed, they came in sight of a palace of some sort, with villages clustered round it; they could further see that the road leading to this place pursued its course over high undulating hillocks, the spur of the mountain range, under which lay the village. These knolls were a welcome sight to the Hellenes, naturally enough, as the enemy were cavalry. However, when they had issued from

*vocabulary*

ἄκρον crest, extremity ~acute  
 ἄκρος at the edge, extreme ~acute  
 ἀποπηδάω jump off, start from  
 ἀποτέμνω cut off, sever ~tonsure  
 ἄχρηστος useless, unprofitable  
 βάρβαρος non-Greek  
 γήλοφος hill, mound  
 γυμνής light infantry; serf  
 Ἑλλήν Greek  
 ἐνταῦθα there, here  
 ἐπιγίγνομαι succeed, come after  
 ~genus  
 ἐπιχειρέω do, try, attack ~chiral  
 κατακλείω enclose; shut up  
 κινέω (i) set in motion, move, remove  
 ~kinetic  
 μάστιξ -γος (f) whip  
 ὀπλίτης -ου (i, m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
 infantryman ~hoplite

ὄπλον tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
 ~hoplite  
 παντάπασιν altogether; yes, certainly  
 πελταστής -οῦ (m, 1) light troops  
 ~pelt  
 πιέζω press, squeeze ~piezoelectric  
 πλαίσιον frame, scaffolding  
 πλευρά rib, side ~pleurisy  
 προνής (ᾱ) prone; precipitous  
 στρατεύμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
 στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
 mercenary ~strategy  
 σφενδονάω sling  
 σφενδονήτης -ου (m, 1) slinger  
 σχολή rest, leisure  
 τιτρώσκω wound, bring to grief  
 ~trauma  
 τοξεύω shoot an arrow at ~toxic  
 τοξότης -ου (m, 1) archer ~toxic  
 ὕψηλός high

δὲ πορευόμενοι ἐκ τοῦ πεδίου ἀνέβησαν ἐπὶ τὸν πρῶτον γήλοφον καὶ κατέβαινον, ὥς ἐπὶ τὸν ἕτερον ἀναβαίνειν, ἐνταῦθα ἐπιγίγνονται οἱ βάρβαροι καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ ὑψηλοῦ εἰς τὸ πρηνὲς ἔβαλλον, ἐσφενδόνων, ἐτόξευον ὑπὸ μαστίγων, καὶ πολλοὺς ἐτίτρωσκον καὶ ἐκράτησαν τῶν Ἑλλήνων γυμνήτων καὶ κατέκλεισαν αὐτοὺς εἴσω τῶν ὅπλων· ὥστε παντάπασι ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν ἄχρηστοι ἦσαν ἐν τῷ ὄχλῳ ὄντες καὶ οἱ σφενδονῇται καὶ οἱ τοξόται.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ πιεζόμενοι οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπεχείρησαν διώκειν, σχολῇ μὲν ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον ἀφικνουῦνται ὀπλῖται ὄντες, οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι ταχὺ ἀπεπήδων. πάλιν δὲ ὁπότε ἀπίοιεν πρὸς τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα ταῦτα ἔπασχον, καὶ ἐπὶ τοῦ δευτέρου γηλόφου ταῦτα ἐγίγνετο, ὥστε ἀπὸ τοῦ τρίτου γηλόφου ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς μὴ κινεῖν τοὺς στρατιώτας πρὶν ἀπὸ τῆς δεξιᾶς πλευρᾶς τοῦ πλαισίου ἀνήγαγον πελταστὰς πρὸς τὸ ὄρος. ἐπεὶ δ' οὗτοι ἐγένοντο ὑπὲρ τῶν ἐπομένων πολεμίων, οὐκέτι ἐπετίθεντο οἱ πολέμιοι τοῖς καταβαίνουσι, δεδοικότες μὴ ἀποτμηθεῖσαν καὶ

δὲ πορευόμενοι ἐκ τοῦ πεδίου ἀνέβησαν ἐπὶ τὸν πρῶτον

|hill, καὶ κατέβαινον, ὡς ἐπὶ τὸν ἕτερον ἀναβαίνειν,  
|mound

|there, |succeed οἱ βάρβαροι καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ |high εἰς  
|here

τὸ |prone; precipitous, |sling, |shoot an arrow|whip  
|at

καὶ πολλοὺς |wound, bring καὶ ἐκράτησαν τῶν |Greek  
|to grief

|light καὶ |enclose; shut up. τὸν εἶσω τῶν |tool ὥστε  
|infantry;

serf  
altogether; ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν |useless, un-σαν ἐν τῷ ὄχλῳ  
|yes, certainly |profitable

ὄντες καὶ οἱ |slinger καὶ οἱ |archer

Ἐπεὶ δὲ |press, οἱ |Greek |do, try, attack διώκειν,  
|squeeze

|rest, μὲν ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον ἀφικνοῦνται |hoplite, heavy s, οἱ  
|leisure |infantryman

δὲ πολέμιοι ταχὺ |jump off, start from...ν δὲ ὅποτε ἀπίοιεν

πρὸς τὸ ἄλλο |army ταῦτὰ ἔπασχον, καὶ ἐπὶ

τοῦ δευτέρου |hill, ταῦτὰ ἐγίνετο, ὥστε ἀπὸ τοῦ  
|mound

τρίτου |hill, ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς μὴ |move, οὓς στρατιώτας  
|mound |remove

πρὶν ἀπὸ τῆς δεξιᾶς |rib, side τοῦ πλαισίου ἀνήγαγον

|light troops πρὸς τὸ ὄρος. ἐπεὶ δ' οὗτοι ἐγένοντο ὑπὲρ τῶν

ἐπομένων πολεμίων, οὐκέτι ἐπετίθεντο οἱ πολέμιοι τοῖς

καταβαίνουσι, δεδοκότες μὴ |cut off, sever καὶ

the plain and ascended the first crest, and were in the act of descending it so as to mount the next, at this juncture the barbarians came upon them. From the high ground down the sheer steep they poured a volley of darts, slingstones, and arrows, which they discharged «under the lash,” wounding many, until they got the better of the Hellenic light troops, and drove them for shelter behind the heavy infantry, so that this day that arm was altogether useless, huddling in the mob of sutlers, both slingers and archers alike.

But when the Hellenes, being so pressed, made an attempt to pursue, they could barely scale to the summit, being heavy-armed troops, while the enemy as lightly sprung away; and they suffered similarly in retiring to join the rest of the army. And then, on the second hill, the whole had to be gone through again; so that when it came to the third hillock, they determined not to move the main body of troops from their position until they had brought up a squadron of light infantry from the right flank of the square to a point on the mountain range. When this detachment were once posted above their pursuers, the latter desisted from attacking the main body in its descent, for fear of being cut

*vocabulary*

**ἀκροβολίζομαι** fight with missiles  
**ἄλέξω** ward off; aid  
**ἄλευρον** flour  
**ἀμφοτέρωθεν** from or on both sides  
 ~ambient  
**ἀπόμαχος** disabled  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**γῆλοφος** hill, mound  
**Ἕλληγν** Greek  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**ἔπειμι** lie upon; approach ~ion  
**ἐπιπάρειμι** come to help; pass, visit  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἐπιχειρέω** do, try, attack ~chiral  
**ἱατρός (ᾱ)** physician  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch,  
 overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy  
**κατασκηνάω** set up camp

**κριθή (ι)** barley plant  
**κώμη** village  
**ὀκτώ** eight ~octopus  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
 ~hoplite  
**περίειμι** be superior to; be left over;  
 still exist  
**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near; add  
 ~ion  
**προσίημι** be allowed near  
**σατραπεύω** be a satrap  
**συμβάλλω** pit against; compare; mp:  
 meet, fall in with ~ballistic  
**συμφέρω** bring together; be expedient;  
 agree; (mp) happen ~bear  
**τέταρτος** fourth ~trapezoid  
**τιτρώσκω** wound, bring to grief  
 ~trauma

ἀμφοτέρωθεν αὐτῶν γένοιτο οἱ πολέμιοι. οὕτω  
τὸ λοιπὸν τῆς ἡμέρας πορευόμενοι, οἱ μὲν ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ  
κατὰ τοὺς γηλόφους, οἱ δὲ κατὰ τὸ ὄρος ἐπιπαριόντες,  
ἀφίκοντο εἰς τὰς κώμας· καὶ ἰατροὺς κατέστησαν  
ὀκτώ· πολλοὶ γὰρ ἦσαν οἱ τετρωμένοι. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν  
ἡμέρας τρεῖς καὶ τῶν τετρωμένων ἕνεκα καὶ ἅμα  
ἐπιτήδεια πολλὰ εἶχον, ἄλευρα, οἶνον, κριθὰς ἵπποις  
συμβεβλημένας πολλὰς. ταῦτα δὲ συνενηνεγμένα  
ἦν τῷ σατραπεύοντι τῆς χώρας. τετάρτη δ' ἡμέρα  
καταβαίνουσιν εἰς τὸ πεδῖον. ἐπεὶ δὲ κατέλαβεν αὐτοὺς  
Τισσαφέρνης σὺν τῇ δυνάμει, ἐδίδαξεν αὐτοὺς ἡ ἀνάγκη  
κατασκηνῆσαι οὗ πρῶτον εἶδον κώμην καὶ μὴ πορεύεσθαι  
ἔτι μαχομένους· πολλοὶ γὰρ ἦσαν οἱ ἀπόμαχοι, οἳ  
τε τετρωμένοι καὶ οἱ ἐκείνους φέροντες καὶ οἱ τῶν  
φερόντων τὰ ὄπλα δεξάμενοι. ἐπεὶ δὲ κατεσκήνησαν  
καὶ ἐπεχείρησαν αὐτοῖς ἀκροβολίζεσθαι οἱ βάρβαροι  
πρὸς τὴν κώμην προσιόντες, πολὺ περιῆσαν οἱ Ἕλληνες·  
πολὺ γὰρ διέφερεν ἐκ χώρας ὀρμῶντας ἀλέξασθαι  
ἢ πορευομένους ἐπιούσι τοῖς πολεμίοις μάχεσθαι.



|from or on both sides αὐτῶν γ' |lie upon; approach ἴμοι. οὕτω  
 τὸ λοιπὸν τῆς ἡμέρας πορευόμενοι, οἱ μὲν ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ  
 κατὰ τοὺς |hill, mound, οἱ δὲ κατὰ τὸ ὄρος |come to help; pass, visit  
 ἀφίκοντο εἰς τὰς |village καὶ |physician κατέστησαν  
 |eight πολλοὶ γὰρ ἦσαν οἱ |wound, bring to|there, here ἕμιναν  
 |grief ἡμέρας τρεῖς καὶ τῶν |wound, bring to|grief ἔνεκα καὶ ἅμα  
 |fit, suitable πολλὰ εἶχον, |flour, οἶνον, |barley ἵπποις  
 |plant  
 |pit against; compare; ἄλλας. ταῦτα δὲ |bring together; be expedient;  
 |mp: meet, fall in with |agree; (mp) happen  
 ἦν τῷ |be a satrap τῆς χώρας. |fourth δ' ἡμέρᾳ  
 καταβαίνουσιν εἰς τὸ πεδίον. ἐπεὶ δὲ |seize, understand, catch, overtake;  
 |(mp) happen  
 Τισσαφέρνης σὺν τῇ δυνάμει, ἐδίδαξεν αὐτοὺς ἡ ἀνάγκη  
 κατασκηνῆσαι οὗ πρῶτον εἶδον |village καὶ μὴ πορεύεσθαι  
 ἔτι μαχομένους· πολλοὶ γὰρ ἦσαν οἱ |disabled, οἳ  
 τε |wound, bring to|grief καὶ οἱ ἐκείνους φέροντες καὶ οἱ τῶν  
 φερόντων τὰ |tool δεξάμενοι. ἐπεὶ δὲ κατεσκήνησαν  
 καὶ |do, try, attack αὐτοῖς |fight with missiles οἱ |non-Greek  
 πρὸς τὴν |village προσιόντες, πολὺν |be superior to;|Greek  
 πολὺν γὰρ διέφερεν ἐκ χώρας |be left over;  
 |still exist ὁρμώντας |ward off; aid  
 ἢ πορευομένους τοῖς πολεμίοις μάχεσθαι.

off and finding themselves between two assailants. Thus the rest of the day they moved on in two divisions: one set keeping to the road by the hillocks, the other marching parallel on the higher level along the mountains; and thus they reached the villages and appointed eight surgeons to attend to the many wounded.

Here they halted three days for the sake of the wounded chiefly, while a further inducement was the plentiful supply of provisions which they found, wheat and wine, and large stores of barley laid up for horses. These supplies had been collected by the ruling satrap of the country. On the fourth day they began their descent into the plain; but when Tissaphernes overtook them, necessity taught them to camp in the first village they caught sight of, and give over the attempt of marching and fighting simultaneously, as so many were hors de combat, being either on the list of wounded themselves, or else engaged in carrying the wounded, or laden with the heavy arms of those so occupied. But when they were once encamped, and the barbarians, advancing upon the village, made an attempt to harass them with their sharp-shooters, the superiority of the Hellenes was pronounced. To sustain a running fight with an enemy constantly attacking was one thing; to keep him at arm's length from a fixed base of action another: and the difference was much in their favour.

But when it was late afternoon, the time had

*vocabulary*

ἀποσκηνῶ keep apart from  
 ἀποστρατοπεδεύω camp away from  
 βάρβαρος non-Greek  
 δείλη afternoon ~diem  
 διαγγέλλω send news, proclaim  
 Ἑλλήν Greek  
 ἑξήκοντα sixty  
 ἐπέχω hold, cover; offer; assail  
 ἐπισάπτω pile a load on  
 ἡνίκα when  
 θόρυβος noise, clamor  
 θωρακίζω (ᾱ) to arm, armor  
 κατάγω lead down/home; land  
 ~demagogue  
 κηρύσσω be a henchman, summon

people

μείων less, smaller  
 νύκτωρ by night  
 ὀψέ late, in evening ~epitaph  
 Πέρσης Persian  
 πορεία gait, march  
 πρόσω forward, in the future; far  
 σαφής clear, understandable  
 σταδίη (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters  
 στάδιον 200 meters (pl also masc)  
 στάδιος (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters  
 στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
 συσκευάζω pack up  
 χαλινός (ι) bridle, bit

Ἦνίκα δ' ἦν ἤδη δαίλη, ὥρα ἦν ἀπιέναι τοῖς πολεμίοις· οὔποτε γὰρ μείον ἀπεστρατοπεδεύοντο οἱ βάρβαροι τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ ἐξήκοντα σταδίων, φοβούμενοι μὴ τῆς νυκτὸς οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπιθῶνται αὐτοῖς. πονηρὸν γὰρ νυκτός ἐστι στράτευμα Περσικόν. οἳ τε γὰρ ἵπποι αὐτοῖς δέδενται καὶ ὥς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ πεποδισμένοι εἰσὶ τοῦ μὴ φεύγειν ἔνεκα εἰ λυθείησαν, εἰάν τέ τις θόρυβος γίγνηται, δεῖ ἐπιδάξαι τὸν ἵππον Πέρσῃ ἀνδρὶ καὶ χαλινῶσαι, δεῖ καὶ θωρακισθέντα ἀναβῆναι ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον. ταῦτα δὲ πάντα χαλεπὰ νύκτωρ καὶ θορύβου ὄντος. τούτου ἔνεκα πόρρω ἀπεσκήνουν τῶν Ἑλλήνων.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐγίγνωσκον αὐτοὺς οἱ Ἕλληνες βουλομένους ἀπιέναι καὶ διαγγελλομένους, ἐκήρυξε τοῖς Ἑλλησι συσκευάζεσθαι ἀκούνων τῶν πολεμίων. καὶ χρόνον μὲν τινα ἐπέσχον τῆς πορείας οἱ βάρβαροι, ἐπειδὴ δὲ ὁψὲ ἐγίγνετο, ἀπῆσαν· οὐ γὰρ ἐδόκει λύειν αὐτοὺς νυκτὸς πορεύεσθαι καὶ κατάγεσθαι ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον.

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ σαφῶς ἀπιόντας ἤδη εἴρων οἱ Ἕλληνες,

|when δ' ἦν ἡδὴ |afternoon, α ἦν ἀπιέναι τοῖς πολέμοις·  
 οὔποτε γὰρ |less, 'πεστρατοπεδεύοντο οἱ |non-Greek τοῦ  
 |smaller  
 Ἑλληνικοῦ |sixty σταδίων, φοβούμενοι μὴ τῆς νυκτὸς  
 οἱ |Greek ἐπιθῶνται αὐτοῖς. πονηρὸν γὰρ νυκτός ἐστι  
 |army Περσικόν. οἳ τε γὰρ ἵπποι αὐτοῖς δέδενται καὶ  
 ὥς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ πεποδισμένοι εἰσὶ τοῦ μὴ φεύγειν ἔνεκα εἰ  
 λυθείησαν, εἰάν τέ τις |noise, γίγνηται, δεῖ |pile a load on.  
 |clamor  
 ἵππον Πέρσῃ ἀνδρὶ καὶ |bridle, bit δεῖ καὶ |to arm, armor  
 ἀναβῆναι ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον. ταῦτα δὲ πάντα χαλεπὰ |by night  
 καὶ |noise, ὄντος. τούτου ἔνεκα |forward, |keep apart from  
 |clamor |in the  
 |Greek . |future;  
 |far  
 Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐγίγνωσκον αὐτοὺς οἱ |Greek βουλομένους  
 ἀπιέναι καὶ |send news, proclaim |be a henchman, |Greek  
 |summon people  
 |pack up ἀκουόντων τῶν πολέμων. καὶ χρόνον  
 μέν τινα |hold, cover; |of-gait, οἱ |non-Greek, ἐπειδὴ δὲ  
 |fer; assail |march  
 |late ἐγίγνετο, ἀπῆσαν· οὐ γὰρ ἐδόκει λύειν αὐτοὺς νυκτὸς  
 πορεύεσθαι καὶ |lead down/home; land γρατόπεδον.  
 Ἐπειδὴ δὲ |clear, under- ἵντας ἡδὴ ἐώρων οἱ |Greek  
 |standable

come for the enemy to withdraw, since the habit of the barbarian was never to encamp within seven or eight miles of the Hellenic camp. This he did in apprehension of a night attack, for a Persian army is good for nothing at night. Their horses are haltered, and, as a rule, hobbled as well, to prevent their escaping, as they might if loose; so that, if any alarm occurs, the trooper has to saddle and bridle his horse, and then he must put on his own cuirass, and then mount—all which performances are difficult at night and in the midst of confusion. For this reason they always encamped at a distance from the Hellenes.

When the Hellenes perceived that they were preparing to retire, and that the order was being given, the herald's cry, «Pack up for starting,” might be heard before the enemy was fairly out of earshot. For a while the Asiatics paused, as if unwilling to be gone; but as night closed in, off they went, for it did not suit their notions of expediency to set off on a march and arrive by night. And now, when the Hellenes saw that they were really and clearly gone, they

*vocabulary*

**ἀκρωνυχία** crest, ridgetop  
**ἀναζεύγνυμι** (ὄ) yoke again  
**ἀποκόπτω** cut off  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**διέρχομαι** pierce, traverse  
**Ἑλλήν** Greek  
**ἔξιμι** go forth; is possible ~ion  
**ἑξήκοντα** sixty  
**ἐπιφαίνω** display ~photon  
**ἐρῆμος** empty  
**ἔρωτάω** ask about something  
**κατάβασις** -εως (f) way down  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch, overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy  
**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon  
**λόφος** neck, crest on a helmet, hilltop  
**μεταξύ** between  
**ὀπισθεν** behind, hereafter

**οὐρά** tail  
**παραγίγνομαι** be beside, attend  
 ~genus  
**παρέρχομαι** pass, escape  
**παρίημι** dangle; pass over, allow ~jet  
**πελταστής** -οῦ (m, 1) light troops  
 ~pelt  
**προέρχομαι** proceed, come out  
**προκαταλαμβάνω** seize beforehand  
 ~epilepsy  
**προσελαύνω** go to, approach ~elastic  
**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)  
**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm;  
 (pl noun) 200 meters  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**τέταρτος** fourth ~trapezoid  
**ὑπερδέξιος** lying above, over  
**ὑστεραίος** the next; later  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

ἐπορεύοντο καὶ αὐτοὶ ἀναζεύξαντες καὶ διήλθον ὅσον  
ἐξήκοντα σταδίους. καὶ γίνεται τοσοῦτον μεταξὺ  
τῶν στρατευμάτων ὥστε τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ οὐκ ἐφάνησαν οἱ  
πολέμιοι οὐδὲ τῇ τρίτῃ, τῇ δὲ τετάρτῃ νυκτὸς προελθόντες  
καταλαμβάνουσι χωρίον ὑπερδέξιον οἱ βάρβαροι, ἣ  
ἔμελλον οἱ Ἕλληνες παριέναι, ἀκρωνυχίαν ὄρους, ὑφ'  
ἣν ἡ κατάβασις ἦν εἰς τὸ πεδῖον. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἑώρα  
Χειρίσοφος προκατειλημμένην τὴν ἀκρωνυχίαν, καλεῖ  
Ξενοφῶντα ἀπὸ τῆς οὐρᾶς καὶ κελεύει λαβόντα τοὺς  
πελταστὰς παραγενέσθαι εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν  
τοὺς μὲν πελταστὰς οὐκ ἤγεν· ἐπιφαινόμενον γὰρ  
ἑώρα Τισσαφέρην καὶ τὸ στράτευμα πᾶν· αὐτὸς δὲ  
προσελάσας ἡρώτα «τί καλεῖς;» ὁ δὲ λέγει αὐτῷ·  
«Ἐξεστὶν ὁρᾶν· κατεῖληπται γὰρ ἡμῖν ὁ ὑπὲρ τῆς  
καταβάσεως λόφος, καὶ οὐκ ἔστι παρελθεῖν, εἰ μὴ τούτους  
ἀποκόψομεν. ἀλλὰ τί οὐκ ἤγες τοὺς πελταστὰς;» ὁ δὲ  
λέγει ὅτι οὐκ ἐδόκει αὐτῷ ἔρημα καταλιπεῖν τὰ ὀπισθεν  
πολεμίων ἐπιφαινομένων. «Ἀλλὰ μὴν ὥρα γ',»



ἐπορεύοντο καὶ αὐτοὶ |yoke again καὶ |pierce, ὅσον  
|traverse  
|sixty σταδίου. καὶ γίγνεται τοσοῦτον |between  
τῶν |army ὥστε τῇ |the next; later ∴ ἐφάνησαν οἱ  
πολέμιοι οὐδὲ τῇ τρίτῃ, τῇ δὲ |fourth νυκτὸς |proceed, come out  
|seize, understand, catch, overtake; |lying above, οἱ βάρβαροι, ἡ  
|(mp) happen |over  
ἔμελλον οἱ |Greek |dangle; pass|crest, ridgetop ὅρους, ὑφ'  
|over, allow  
ἦν ἡ |way down ἦν εἰς τὸ πεδίον. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἑώρα  
Χειρίσοφος |seize beforehand τὴν |crest, ridgetop, καλεῖ  
Ξενοφῶντα ἀπὸ τῆς |tail καὶ κελεύει λαβόντα τοὺς  
|light troops |be beside, attend εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν  
τοὺς μὲν |light troops οὐκ ἦγεν· |display γὰρ  
ἑώρα Τισσαφέρνην καὶ τὸ |army πᾶν· αὐτὸς δὲ  
|go to, approach ἡρώτα «τί καλεῖς;» ὁ δὲ λέγει αὐτῷ·  
«Ἐξεστὶν ὁρᾶν· |seize, understand, catch, ἡν ὁ ὑπὲρ τῆς  
|overtake; (mp) happen  
|way down |neck, crest ὃν ἂ ἥλμετ, |pass, escape εἰ μὴ τούτους  
|hilltop  
|cut off ἀλλὰ τί οὐκ ἦγες τοὺς |light troops ,» ὁ δὲ  
λέγει ὅτι οὐκ ἐδόκει αὐτῷ ἔρημα καταλιπεῖν τὰ ὀπισθεν  
πολεμίων |display . «Ἀλλὰ μὴν ὥρα γ',»

too broke up their camp and pursued their march till they had traversed seven and a half miles. Thus the distance between the two armies grew to be so great, that the next day the enemy did not appear at all, nor yet on the third day; but on the fourth the barbarians had pushed on by a forced night march and occupied a commanding position on the right, where the Hellenes had to pass. It was a narrow mountain spur overhanging the descent into the plain.

But when Cheirisophus saw that this ridge was occupied, he summoned Xenophon from the rear, bidding him at the same time to bring up peltasts to the front. That Xenophon hesitated to do, for Tissaphernes and his whole army were coming up and were well within sight. Galloping up to the front himself, he asked: «Why do you summon me?” The other answered him: «The reason is plain; look yonder; this crest which overhangs our descent has been occupied. There is no passing, until we have dislodged these fellows; why have you not brought up the light infantry?” Xenophon explained: he had not thought it desirable to leave the rear unprotected, with an enemy appearing in the field of view. «However, it is

*vocabulary*

**ἄκρον** crest, extremity ~acute  
**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme ~acute  
**ἀπελαύνω** expel, exclude, ward off;  
 (intrans) ride away  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἐπίλεκτος** chosen (troops)  
**ἔφοδος** accessible; inspector; entrance;  
 attack  
**κορυφή** peak, crown  
**κράτιστος** best

**λόφος** neck, crest on a helmet, hilltop  
**ὁπότερος** which of two, either of two  
**οὐρά** tail  
**πελταστής** -οῦ (m, 1) light troops  
 ~pelt  
**πλαίσιον** frame, scaffolding  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**συμπέμπω** send with ~pomp  
**συνέπομαι** go along with ~sequel  
**τριακόσιοι** three hundred ~three  
**χρήζω** need ~chresard

ἔφη, «βουλευέσθαι πῶς τις τοὺς ἄνδρας ἀπελᾶ ἀπὸ τοῦ λόφου.» ἐνταῦθα Ξενοφῶν ὁρᾷ τοῦ ὄρους τὴν κορυφὴν ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ τοῦ ἐαυτῶν στρατεύματος οὖσαν, καὶ ἀπὸ ταύτης ἔφοδον ἐπὶ τὸν λόφον ἔνθα ἦσαν οἱ πολέμιοι, καὶ λέγει· «Κράτιστον, ὦ Χειρίσοφε, ἡμῖν ἵεσθαι ὡς τάχιστα ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον· ἦν γὰρ τοῦτο λάβωμεν, οὐ δυνήσονται μένειν οἱ ὑπὲρ τῆς ὁδοῦ. ἀλλὰ, εἰ βούλει, μένε ἐπὶ τῷ στρατεύματι, ἐγὼ δ' ἐθέλω πορεύεσθαι· εἰ δὲ χρήζεις, πορεύου ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος, ἐγὼ δὲ μενῶ αὐτοῦ.» «Ἀλλὰ δίδωμί σοι,» ἔφη ὁ Χειρίσοφος, «ὁπότερον βούλει ἐλέσθαι.» εἰπὼν ὁ Ξενοφῶν ὅτι νεώτερός ἐστιν, αἰρεῖται πορεύεσθαι, κελεύει δέ οἱ συμπέμψαι ἀπὸ τοῦ στόματος ἄνδρας· μακρὸν γὰρ ἦν ἀπὸ τῆς οὐρᾶς λαβεῖν. καὶ ὁ Χειρίσοφος συμπέμπει τοὺς ἀπὸ τοῦ στόματος πελταστάς, ἔλαβε δὲ τοὺς κατὰ μέσον πλαισίου.

Συνέπεσθαι δ' ἐκέλευσεν αὐτῷ καὶ τοὺς τριακοσίους οὓς αὐτὸς εἶχε τῶν ἐπιλέκτων ἐπὶ τῷ στόματι τοῦ πλαισίου. ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο ὡς ἐδύναντο τάχιστα. οἱ δ' ἐπὶ

ἔφη, «βουλευέσθαι πῶς τις τοὺς ἄνδρας ἀπελᾶ ἀπὸ τοῦ

neck, crest|there, here|Ξενοφῶν ὁρᾶ τοῦ ὄρους τὴν |peak,  
on a hel-|met, hilltop|crown  
ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ τοῦ ἑαυτῶν |army οὔσαν, καὶ ἀπὸ

ταύτης |accessible; inspec-|neck, crest on a |αν οἱ πολέμιοι, καὶ  
tor; entrance; at-|helmet, hilltop  
λέγει· «|tack  
best, ὦ Χειρίσοφε, ἡμῖν ἔσθαι ὡς τάχιστα

ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον· ἦν γὰρ τοῦτο λάβωμεν, οὐ δυνήσονται  
μένειν οἱ ὑπὲρ τῆς ὁδοῦ. ἀλλά, εἰ βούλει, μένε ἐπὶ τῷ

|army, ἐγὼ δ' ἐθέλω πορεύεσθαι· εἰ δὲ |need,

πορεύου ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος, ἐγὼ δὲ μενῶ αὐτοῦ.» «Ἀλλὰ δίδωμί

σοι,» ἔφη ὁ Χειρίσοφος, «|which of two, ὅντιν ἐλέσθαι.»  
|either of two

εἰπὼν ὁ Ξενοφῶν ὅτι νεώτερός ἐστιν, αἰρεῖται πορεύεσθαι,

κελεύει δέ οἱ |συμπέμπω?: send with; ἢ |στόματος ἄνδρας·  
|συμπέμπω?: send with

μακρὸν γὰρ ἦν ἀπὸ τῆς |tail λαβεῖν. καὶ ὁ Χειρίσοφος

|send with τοὺς ἀπὸ τοῦ στόματος |light troops, ἔλαβε δὲ

τοὺς κατὰ μέσον πλαισίου.

|go along with ὃ ἐκέλευσεν αὐτῷ καὶ τοὺς |three hundred οὓς

αὐτὸς εἶχε τῶν |chosen (troops) τῷ στόματι τοῦ πλαισίου.

|thence ἐπορεύοντο ὡς ἐδύναντο τάχιστα. οἱ δ' ἐπὶ

time," he added, «to decide how we are to dislodge these fellows from the crest." At this moment his eye fell on the peak of the mountain, rising immediately above their army, and he could see an approach leading from it to the crest in question where the enemy lay. He exclaimed: «The best thing we can do, Cheirisophus, is to make a dash at the height itself, and with what speed we may. If we take it, the party in command of the road will never be able to stop. If you like, stay in command of the army, and I will go; or, if you prefer, do you go to the mountain, and I will stay here." — «I leave it to you," Cheirisophus answered, «to choose which you like best." Xenophon remarking, «I am the younger," elected to go; but he stipulated for a detachment from the front to accompany him, since it was a long way to fetch up troops from the rear. Accordingly Cheirisophus furnished him with the light infantry from the front, reoccupying their place by those from the centre. He also gave him, to form part of the detachment, the three hundred of the picked corps under his own command at the head of the square.

They set out

*vocabulary*

ἄκρον crest, extremity ~acute  
 ἄκρος at the edge, extreme ~acute  
 ἀμαχεί unresisted  
 ἀμιλλάομαι contend  
 ἀσπίς -δος (f) shield ~spit  
 ἀφαιρέω take away ~heresy  
 διακελεύομαι give orders to, encourage  
 ἐνταῦθα there, here  
 θώραξ -ηκος (m) breastplate ~thorax  
 ἵππικός of horses ~hippo  
 κάμνω toil, be tired, acquire by toil; be troubled; be sick  
 καταπηδάω jump down  
 κραυγή screaming, shouting  
 λόφος neck, crest on a helmet, hilltop  
 μόλις with difficulty, barely  
 ὀπίσθεν behind, hereafter

ὀχέω carry; be afflicted with ~wagon  
 παίω hit  
 παρακελεύομαι recommend, encourage  
 παρελαύνω pass, outstrip ~elastic  
 παρίημι dangle; pass over, allow ~jet  
 πιέζω press, squeeze ~piezoelectric  
 πονέω work; be busy ~osteopenia  
 πορεία gait, march  
 στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
 στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier, mercenary ~strategy  
 τάξις -εως (f) arrangement, military unit  
 ὑπάγω lead under the yoke, lead away from ~demagogue  
 ὠθέω push

τοῦ λόφου πολέμοι ὥς ἐνόησαν αὐτῶν τὴν πορείαν  
 ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον, εὐθύς καὶ αὐτοὶ ὥρμησαν ἀμιλλᾶσθαι  
 ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον. καὶ ἐνταῦθα πολλὴ μὲν κραυγὴ ἦν τοῦ  
 Ἑλληνικοῦ στρατεύματος διακελευομένων τοῖς ἑαυτῶν,  
 πολλή δὲ κραυγὴ τῶν ἀμφὶ Τισσαφέρνην τοῖς ἑαυτῶν  
 διακελευομένων. Ξενοφῶν δὲ παρελάνων ἐπὶ τοῦ ἵππου  
 παρεκελεύετο· «Ἄνδρες, νῦν ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα νομίζετε  
 ἀμιλλᾶσθαι, νῦν πρὸς τοὺς παῖδας καὶ τὰς γυναῖκας,  
 νῦν ὀλίγον πονήσαντες ἀμαχεὶ τὴν λοιπὴν πορευσόμεθα.»  
 Σωτηρίδας δὲ ὁ Σικυώνιος εἶπεν· «Οὐκ ἐξ ἴσου, ὦ  
 Ξενοφῶν, ἐσμέν· σὺ μὲν γὰρ ἐφ' ἵππου ὀχῇ, ἐγὼ δὲ  
 χαλεπῶς κάμνω τὴν ἀσπίδα φέρων.» καὶ ὃς ἀκούσας  
 ταῦτα καταπηδήσας ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου ὠθεῖται αὐτὸν ἐκ τῆς  
 τάξεως καὶ τὴν ἀσπίδα ἀφελόμενος ὥς ἐδύνατο τάχιστα  
 ἔχων ἐπορεύετο· ἐτύγχανε δὲ καὶ θώρακα ἔχων τὸν  
 ἱππικόν· ὥστ' ἐπιέζετο. καὶ τοῖς μὲν ἔμπροσθεν ὑπάγειν  
 παρεκελεύετο, τοῖς δὲ ὀπισθεν παριέναι μόλις ἐπόμενος.  
 οἱ δ' ἄλλοι στρατιῶται παίουσι καὶ βάλλουσι



τοῦ |neck, crest οὐ̇ ἄ |οι ὡς ἐνόησαν αὐτῶν τὴν |gait,  
 |helmet, hilltop |march  
 ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον, εὐθὺς καὶ αὐτοὶ ὥρμησαν |contend  
 ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον. καὶ |there, here πολλὴ μὲν |screaming,  
 |shouting τοῦ  
 Ἑλληνικοῦ |army |give orders to, en- τοῖς ἑαυτῶν,  
 |courage  
 πολλὴ δὲ |screaming, ὦν ἀμφὶ Τισσαφέρνην τοῖς ἑαυτῶν  
 |shouting  
 |give orders to, en- Ξενοφῶν δὲ |pass, outstrip ἐπὶ τοῦ ἵππου  
 |courage  
 παρεκελεύετο· «Ἄνδρες, νῦν ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα νομίζετε  
 |contend , νῦν πρὸς τοὺς παῖδας καὶ τὰς γυναῖκας,  
 νῦν ὀλίγον |work |unresisted ἢ λοιπὴν πορευσόμεθα.»  
 Σωτηρίδας δὲ ὁ Σικυώνιος εἶπεν· «Οὐκ ἐξ ἴσου, ὦ  
 Ξενοφῶν, ἐσμέν· σὺ μὲν γὰρ ἐφ' ἵππου ὀχῇ, ἐγὼ δὲ  
 χαλεπῶς |toil, acquire, be|shield φέρων.» καὶ ὃς ἀκούσας  
 |tired  
 ταῦτα |jump down ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου |push αὐτὸν ἐκ τῆς  
 τάξεως καὶ τὴν |shield |take away ὡς ἐδύνατο τάχιστα  
 ἔχων ἐπορεύετο· ἐτύγχανε δὲ καὶ |breastplate ἔχων τὸν  
 |of horses ὥστ' |press, καὶ τοῖς μὲν ἔμπροσθεν |lead  
 |squeeze  
 παρεκελεύετο, τοῖς δὲ |behind, |dangle; |with difficulty, τοῖς.  
 |hereafter |pass over, |barely  
 οἱ δ' ἄλλοι |soldier, |hit καὶ βάλλουσι  
 |mercenary

from the low ground with all the haste imaginable. But the enemy in position on the crest no sooner perceived their advance upon the summit of the pass than they themselves set off full tilt in a rival race for the summit too. Hoarse were the shouts of the Hellenic troops as the men cheered their companions forwards, and hoarse the answering shouts from the troops of Tissaphernes, urging on theirs. Xenophon, mounted on his charger, rode beside his men, and roused their ardour the while. «Now for it, brave sirs; bethink you that this race is for Hellas! — now or never! — to find your boys, your wives; one small effort, and the rest of the march we shall pursue in peace, without ever a blow to strike; now for it.” But Soteridas the Sicyonian said: «We are not on equal terms, Xenophon; you are mounted on a horse; I can hardly get along with my shield to carry;” and he, on hearing the reproach, leapt from his horse. In another instant he had pushed Soteridas from the ranks, snatched from him his shield, and begun marching as quickly as he might under the circumstances, having his horseman’s cuirass to carry as well, so that he was sore pressed; but he continued to cheer on the troops: exhorting those in front to lead on and the men toiling behind to follow up. Soteridas was not spared by the rest of the men. They gave him blows, they pelted

*vocabulary*

ἄβατος untrodden; impassable  
 ἄκρον crest, extremity ~acute  
 ἄκρος at the edge, extreme ~acute  
 ἀναγκάζω force, compel  
 ἀποτρέπω divert from ~trophy  
 ἄρπαγή seizure; rape  
 ἄρπάζω carry off, seize ~harpoon  
 ἀσπίς -δος (f) shield ~spit  
 βάρβαρος non-Greek  
 βάσιμος passable, accessible  
 βόσκημα fed livestock  
 δείλη afternoon ~diem  
 διαβιβάζω carry over  
 Ἑλλήν Greek  
 ἐνταῦθα there, here  
 ἐξαπίνης suddenly  
 ἐπιφαίνω display ~photon  
 ἐπιχειρέω do, try, attack ~chiral  
 ἡνίκα when  
 ἠώς ἡῶθι (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene

καίω burn ~caustic  
 κατακόπτω cut down, shatter  
 καταλαμβάνω seize, understand, catch, overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy  
 καταλιμπάνω leave behind, abandon  
 κώμη village  
 λοιδορέω abuse, revile  
 μεστός full  
 νομή pasture; distribution  
 οἶχομαι come, go, leave, be gone  
 πέραν (ᾱ) on the other side, across  
 πλήρης full, complete; (+gen) full of ~plethora  
 σκεδάννυμι (ῡ) shed, disperse  
 σπεύδω 'push on,' get going, hurry ~repudiate  
 στρατοπεδεύω encamp or take up station ~strategy  
 στρέφω turn, veer ~atrophy  
 φθάνω (ᾱ) do first, outstrip

καὶ λαιδοροῦσι τὸν Σωτηρίδαν, ἔστε ἡνάγκασαν λαβόντα τὴν ἀσπίδα πορεύεσθαι. ὁ δὲ ἀναβάς, ἕως μὲν βάσιμα ἦν, ἐπὶ τοῦ ἵππου ἦγεν, ἐπεὶ δὲ ἄβατα ἦν, καταλιπὼν τὸν ἵππον ἔσπευδε πεζῇ. καὶ φθάνουσιν ἐπὶ τῷ ἄκρῳ γενόμενοι τοὺς πολεμίους.

## 3.5

Ἐνθα δὴ οἱ μὲν βάρβαροι στραφέντες ἔφευγον ἢ ἕκαστος ἐδύνατο, οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες εἶχον τὸ ἄκρον. οἱ δὲ ἀμφὶ Τισσαφέρνην καὶ Ἀριαῖον ἀποτραπόμενοι ἄλλην ὁδὸν ὥχοντο. οἱ δὲ ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον καταβάντες ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο ἐν κώμῃ μεστῇ πολλῶν ἀγαθῶν. ἦσαν δὲ καὶ ἄλλαι κῶμαι πολλαὶ πλήρεις πολλῶν ἀγαθῶν ἐν τούτῳ τῷ πεδίῳ παρὰ τὸν Τίγρητα ποταμόν. ἡνίκα δ' ἦν δεῖλη ἑξαπίνης οἱ πολέμοι ἐπιφαίνονται ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ, καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων κατέκοψάν τινες τῶν ἐσκεδασμένων ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ καθ' ἄρπαγὴν· καὶ γὰρ νομαὶ πολλαὶ βοσκημάτων διαβιβαζόμεναι εἰς τὸ πέραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ κατελήφθησαν. ἐνταῦθα Τισσαφέρνης καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ καίειν ἐπεχείρησαν

καὶ |abuse, revile τὸν Σωτηρίδαν, ἔστε |force, compel λαβόντα  
 τὴν |shield πορεύεσθαι. ὁ δὲ ἀναβάς, ἕως μὲν |passable,  
 ἦν, ἐπὶ τοῦ ἵππου ἦγεν, ἐπεὶ δὲ |untrodden; , καταλιπὼν  
 |impassable  
 τὸν ἵππον |‘push on,’ get<sub>1</sub> going, hurry. καὶ |be first ἐπὶ τῷ ἄκρῳ  
 γεινόμενοι τοὺς πολεμίους.

### 3.5

Ἐνθα δὲ οἱ μὲν βάρβαροι |turn ἔφευγον ἢ ἕκαστος  
 ἐδύνατο, οἱ δὲ |Greek εἶχον τὸ ἄκρον. οἱ δὲ  
 ἀμφὶ Τισσαφέρνην καὶ Ἀριαῖον |divert from ἄλλην  
 ὁδὸν ὥχοντο. οἱ δὲ ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον καταβάντες  
 |encamp or take up ἐν |village |full πολλῶν ἀγαθῶν. ἦσαν  
 |station  
 δὲ καὶ ἄλλαι κῶμαι πολλαὶ |full, complete; ὧν ἀγαθῶν ἐν  
 |(+gen) full of  
 τούτῳ τῷ πεδίῳ παρὰ τὸν Τίγρητα ποταμόν. |when δ' ἦν  
 |after- |suddenly οἱ πολέμοι |display ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ, καὶ  
 |noon  
 τῶν |Greek |cut down, shatter... τῶν |shed, disperse ἐν τῷ  
 πεδίῳ καθ' ἀρπαγὴν καὶ γὰρ |pasture; . . . distri- |fed livestock  
 |bution  
 |carry over εἰς τὸ |across τοῦ ποταμοῦ |seize, understand, catch, over-  
 |take; (mp) happen  
 |there, here ἴσσοφον καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ |burn |do, try, attack

him, they showered him with abuse, till they compelled him to take back his shield and march on; and the other, remounting, led them on horseback as long as the footing held; but when the ground became too steep, he left his horse and pressed forward on foot, and so they found themselves on the summit before the enemy.

### 3.5

There and then the barbarians turned and fled as best they might, and the Hellenes held the summit, while the troops with Tissaphernes and Ariaeus turned aside and disappeared by another road. The main body with Cheirisophus made its way down into the plain and encamped in a village filled with good things of divers sorts. Nor did this village stand alone; there were others not a few in this plain of the Tigris equally overflowing with plenty. It was now afternoon; and all of a sudden the enemy came in sight on the plain, and succeeded in cutting down some of the Hellenes belonging to parties who were scattered over the flat land in quest of spoil. Indeed, many herds of cattle had been caught whilst being conveyed across to the other side of the river. And now Tissaphernes and his troops made an attempt to

*vocabulary*

**ἀθυμέω** (ῥ) be disheartened

**ἄλλότριος** someone else's; alien ~alien

**ἀπαντάω** encounter, come upon

**ἀπορία** difficulty, bottleneck ~pierce

**βοήθεια** help

**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish

~practice

**Ἑλλην** Greek

**ἐνθεν** thence, whence

**ἐννοέω** consider

**ἐνταῦθα** there, here

**ἐντίθημι** load; mp: take to heart

~thesis

**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable

**ἡνίκα** when

**καίω** burn ~caustic

**καταλείπω** leave behind, abandon

~eclipse

**κώμη** village

**λοχαγός** (ᾱ) captain

**ὁπόθεν** whence

**οὔκουν** certainly not

**παρελαύνω** pass, outstrip ~elastic

**σκηνή** tent; stage

**σπένδω** libate; (mid) make a treaty

~spontaneous

**συνάδω** sing together, agree

**συναείδω** sing together, agree

**σύνειμι** be with; have sex ~ion

**συνίζω** collapse, sink

**σύνοιδα** know about someone; think proper

**ὕφίημι** lower; admit; slack off ~jet

τὰς κώμας. καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων μάλα ἡθύμησάν τινες, ἐννοοῦμενοι μὴ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, εἰ καίοιεν, οὐκ ἔχοιεν ὀπόθεν λαμβάνοιεν.

Καὶ οἱ μὲν ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον ἀπῆσαν ἐκ τῆς βοηθείας· ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἐπεὶ κατέβη, παρελαύνων τὰς τάξεις ἡνίκα ἀπὸ τῆς βοηθείας ἀπήντησαν οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔλεγεν· «Ὅρατε, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, ὑφίεντας τὴν χώραν ἤδη ἡμετέραν εἶναι; ἃ γὰρ ὅτε ἐσπένδοντο διεπράττοντο, μὴ καίειν τὴν βασιλέως χώραν, νῦν αὐτοὶ καίουσιν ὡς ἀλλοτρίαν. ἀλλ' ἐάν που καταλείπωσί γε αὐτοῖς ἐπιτήδεια, ὄψονται καὶ ἡμᾶς ἐνταῦθα πορευομένους. ἀλλ', ὦ Χειρίσοφε,» ἔφη, «δοκεῖ μοι βοηθεῖν ἐπὶ τοὺς καίοντας ὡς ὑπὲρ τῆς ἡμετέρας.» ὁ δὲ Χειρίσοφος εἶπεν· «Οὐκ οὐκ ἐμοιγε δοκεῖ· ἀλλὰ καὶ ἡμεῖς,» ἔφη, «καίωμεν, καὶ οὕτω θάπτον παύσονται.»

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνὰς ἦλθον, οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι περὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἦσαν, στρατηγοὶ δὲ καὶ λοχαγοὶ συνῆσαν. καὶ ἐνταῦθα πολλὴ ἀπορία ἦν. ἔνθεν μὲν γὰρ ὄρη



τὰς |village . . καὶ τῶν |Greek μάλα |be disheartened .s,  
|consider μὴ τὰ |fit, suitable , .. |burn , οὐκ ἔχουεν |whence  
λαμβάνουεν.

Καὶ οἱ μὲν ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον ἀπῆσαν ἐκ τῆς |help ὁ δὲ  
Ξενοφῶν ἐπεὶ κατέβη, |pass, outstrip τὰς τάξεις |when ἀπὸ  
τῆς |help |encounter, come|Greek ἔλεγεν· «Ὅρατε,  
ὦ ἄνδρες |Greek , |lower; admit; ἢν χώραν ἤδη ἡμετέραν  
|slack off  
εἶναι; ἃ γὰρ ὅτε |libate; (mid)|travel over, ac-, μὴ |burn  
|make a treaty |comply  
τὴν βασιλέως χώραν, νῦν αὐτοὶ |burn ὥς |someone  
|else's; alien  
ἀλλ' εἴαν που καταλείπωσί γε αὐτοῖς |fit, suitable , ὄψονται  
καὶ ἡμᾶς |there, here ::ορευομένους. ἀλλ', ὦ Χειρίσοφε,»  
ἔφη, «δοκεῖ μοι βοηθεῖν ἐπὶ τοὺς |burn ὥς ὑπὲρ  
τῆς ἡμετέρας.» ὁ δὲ Χειρίσοφος εἶπεν· «|certainly ἵπτοι γε  
δοκεῖ· ἀλλὰ καὶ ἡμεῖς,» ἔφη, «|burn , καὶ οὕτω θάπτον  
παύσονται.»

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐπὶ τὰς |tent; ἦλθον, οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι περὶ τὰ  
|stage  
|fit, suitable ἦσαν, στρατηγοὶ δὲ καὶ |captain συνῆσαν. καὶ  
|there, here . . οὐκ ὀλίγη |difficulty, ἵππων ἔνθεν μὲν γὰρ ὄρη  
|bottleneck

burn the villages, and some of the Hellenes were disposed to take the matter deeply to heart, being apprehensive that they might not know where to get provisions if the enemy burnt the villages.

Cheirisophus and his men were returning from their sally of defence when Xenophon and his party descended, and the latter rode along the ranks as the rescuing party came up, and greeted them thus: «Do you not see, men of Hellas, they admit that the country is now ours; what they stipulated against our doing when they made the treaty, viz. that we were not to fire the king's country, they are now themselves doing — setting fire to it as if it were not their own. But we will be even with them; if they leave provisions for themselves anywhere, there also shall they see us marching;” and, turning to Cheirisophus, he added: «But it strikes me, we should sally forth against these incendiaries and protect our country.” Cheirisophus retorted: «That is not quite my view; I say, let us do a little burning ourselves, and they will cease all the quicker.”

When they had got back to the villages, while the rest were busy about provisions, the generals and officers met: and here there was deep despondency. For on the one side were exceedingly high mountains; on the other a river

*vocabulary*

ἄγκυρα (ῥ) anchor  
 ἄδύνατος unable; impossible  
 αἶξ αἰγός (m) goat  
 ἀμφοτέρωθεν from or on both sides  
 ~ambient  
 ἀποδέρω flay completely  
 ἀπορέω be confused, distressed  
 ἄρτάω hang something on  
 ἀσκέω work on  
 ἀσκός wine skin, leather bag  
 βάθος -ους (n, 3) depth, height  
 δεσμέω to chain  
 δεσμός bond, latch, strap; also (pl)  
 headdress  
 διαβαίνω pass over, cross ~basis  
 διάβασις -εως (f) crossing, passage  
 ~basis  
 διαβιβάζω carry over  
 διάγω lead through; pass a time  
 ~demagogue  
 δισχίλιοι 2000 ~kilo-  
 ἐνθεν thence, whence  
 ἐνθύμημα (ῥ) thought, invention  
 ἐντίθημι load; mp: take to heart  
 ~thesis  
 ἐπιβάλλω throw upon, head for

~ballistic  
 ἐπιφορέω pile on  
 ἐρωτάω ask about something  
 ζεύγνυμι (ῥ) yoke, join ~zygote  
 καταδύω enter, sink  
 λίθος (f) stone ~monolith  
 μισθός reward, wages  
 ὀλισθάνω slip ~slide  
 ὄνος (f) donkey ~onager  
 ὀπλίτης -ου (ī, m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
 infantryman ~hoplite  
 ὀρμίζω anchor, beach  
 πορίζω bring about, provide  
 πρόβατον cattle, flocks, herds  
 προσέρχομαι come forward, surrender,  
 come in  
 τάλαντον scale, a unit of weight  
 ~talent  
 τετρακισχίλιοι 4000 ~kilo-  
 ὕλη (ῥ) forest, firewood  
 ὕλεις (ῥ) wooded  
 ὑπερέχω be over; protect  
 ὑπερύψηλος very high  
 ὑπηρετέω serve  
 ὑποζύγιον beast of burden ~zygote  
 φυσάω (ῥ) blow, puff, blow out  
 χαρίζεις graceful

ἦν ὑπερύψηλα, ἔνθεν δὲ ὁ ποταμὸς τοσοῦτος βάθος  
ὥς μηδὲ τὰ δόρατα ὑπερέχειν πειρωμένοις τοῦ βάθους.  
ἀπορουμένοις δ' αὐτοῖς προσελθὼν τις ἀνὴρ Ῥόδιος  
εἶπεν· «Ἐγὼ θέλω, ὦ ἄνδρες, διαβιβάσαι ὑμᾶς κατὰ  
τετρακισχιλίους ὀπλίτας, ἂν ἐμοὶ ὦν δέομαι ὑπηρετήσητε  
καὶ τάλαντον μισθὸν πορίσητε.» ἐρωτώμενος δὲ ὅτου  
δέοιτο, «Ἀσκῶν,» ἔφη, «δισχιλίων δεήσομαι· πολλὰ δ'  
ὀρῶ πρόβατα καὶ αἰγας καὶ βουὸς καὶ ὄνους, ἃ ἀποδαρέντα  
καὶ φνυσηθέντα ῥαδίως ἂν παρέχοι τὴν διάβασιν. δεήσομαι  
δὲ καὶ τῶν δεσμῶν οἷς χρῆσθε περὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια· τούτοις  
ζεύξας τοὺς ἀσκούς πρὸς ἀλλήλους, ὀρμίσας ἕκαστον  
ἀσκὸν λίθους ἀρτήσας καὶ ἀφείς ὥσπερ ἀγκύρας εἰς τὸ  
ὔδωρ, διαγαγὼν καὶ ἀμφοτέρωθεν δήσας ἐπιβαλὼ ὕλην  
καὶ γῆν ἐπιφορήσω· ὅτι μὲν οὖν οὐ καταδύσεσθε αὐτίκα  
μάλα εἴσεσθε· πᾶς γὰρ ἀσκὸς द्व' ἄνδρας ἔξει τοῦ μὴ  
καταδύναι. ὥστε δὲ μὴ ὀλισθάνειν ἢ ὕλη καὶ ἢ γῆ σχήσει.»

Ἀκούσασι ταῦτα τοῖς στρατηγοῖς τὸ μὲν ἐνθύμημα χαρίεν  
ἐδόκει εἶναι, τὸ δ' ἔργον ἀδύνατον· ἦσαν γὰρ οἱ

ἦν |very high , ἔνθεν δὲ ὁ ποταμὸς τοσοῦτος |depth,  
 |height  
 ὥς μὴδὲ τὰ δόρατα |be over; protect, -ωμένοις τοῦ |depth,  
 |height  
 |be confused, δ' αὐτοῖς προσελθὼν τις ἀνὴρ Ῥόδιος  
 |distressed  
 εἶπεν· «Ἐγὼ θέλω, ὦ ἄνδρες, |carry over ὑμᾶς κατὰ  
 |4000 ὀπλίτας, ἂν ἐμοὶ ὦν δέομαι |serve  
 καὶ |scale, a unit μισθὸν |bring .» ἐρωτώμενος δὲ ὅτου  
 |of weight |about,  
 δέοιτο, «Ἄσκῶν,» ἔφη, «|2000 δεήσομαι· πολλὰ δ'  
 |provide  
 ὀρῶ πρόβατα καὶ |goat καὶ βοῦς καὶ |donkey Ἴ |flay completely  
 καὶ |blow, puff, blow οὗτ' ἂν παρέχοι τὴν διάβασιν. δεήσομαι  
 δὲ καὶ τῶν δεσμῶν οἷς χρήσθε περὶ τὰ |beast of burden' οἷς  
 |yoke, join οὗς |wine skin ἰρὸς ἀλλήλους, |anchor, ἕκαστον  
 |beach  
 |wine skin ἰθὺς |hang something ὀν' ἰς ὥσπερ |anchor εἰς τὸ  
 ὕδωρ, |lead through; |from or on both δήσας ἐπιβαλὼ ὕλην  
 |pass a time |sides  
 καὶ γῆν |pile on ὅτι μὲν οὖν οὐ καταδύσεσθε αὐτίκα  
 μάλα εἴσεσθε· πᾶς γὰρ |wine skin ἰ' ἄνδρας ἔξει τοῦ μὴ  
 καταδύναι. ὥστε δὲ μὴ |slip ἡ ὕλη καὶ ἡ γῆ σχήσει.»  
 Ἀκούσασι ταῦτα τοῖς στρατηγοῖς τὸ μὲν |thought, |graceful  
 |invention  
 ἐδόκει εἶναι, τὸ δ' ἔργον ἀδύνατον· ἦσαν γὰρ οἱ

of such depth that they failed to reach the bottom with their spears. In the midst of their perplexities, a Rhodian came up with a proposal, as follows: «I am ready, sirs to carry you across, four thousand heavy infantry at a time; if you will furnish me with what I need and give me a talent into the bargain for my pains.” When asked, «What shall you need?” he replied: «Two thousand wine-skins. I see there are plenty of sheep and goats and asses. They have only to be flayed, and their skins inflated, and they will readily give us a passage. I shall want also the straps which you use for the baggage animals. With these I shall couple the skins to one another; then I shall moor each skin by attaching stones and letting them down like anchors into the water. Then I shall carry them across, and when I have fastened the links at both ends, I shall place layers of wood on them and a coating of earth on the top of that. You will see in a minute that there’s no danger of your drowning, for every skin will be able to support a couple of men without sinking, and the wood and earth will prevent your slipping off.”

The generals thought it a pretty invention enough, but its realisation impracticable, for on the other side were masses of

*vocabulary*

ἄκαυστος unburned, not flammable  
 ἀλίσκομαι be captured ~helix  
 ἄρκτος (f) bear  
 διαβαίνω pass over, cross ~basis  
 ἐλέγχω shame; try, examine  
 Ἑλλήν Greek  
 ἔμπαλιν backwards, on the contrary  
 ἐνθεν thence, whence  
 ἐνταῦθα there, here  
 ἐντίθημι load; mp: take to heart  
 ~thesis  
 ἔξιμι go forth; is possible ~ion  
 ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable  
 ἐπιτρέπω entrust, decide, allow  
 ~trophy  
 ἑσπέρα evening, west  
 θεάομαι look at, behold, consider  
 ~theater

θερίζω reap, harvest  
 κατακαίω burn down ~caustic  
 κύκλος circle, wheel ~cycle  
 κωλύω (ō) hinder, prevent  
 κώμη village  
 μεσημβρία midday; the south  
 οἰκέω inhabit ~economics  
 ὅποι to which place  
 πέραν (ᾱ) on the other side, across  
 πολεμικός warlike, hostile ~polemic  
 προσελαύνω go to, approach ~elastic  
 σοῦσον lily  
 στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
 mercenary ~strategy  
 συνάγω assemble; join in battle  
 ~demagogue  
 συνέρχομαι come together  
 ὕστεραίῳς the next; later

κωλύσοντες πέραν πολλοὶ ἱππεῖς, οἳ εὐθὺς τοῖς πρώτοις οὐδὲν ἂν ἐπέτρεπον τούτων ποιεῖν.

Ἐνταῦθα τὴν μὲν ὑστεραίαν ὑπανεχώρουν εἰς τοῦμπαλιν ἢ πρὸς Βαβυλῶνα εἰς τὰς ἀκαύστους κόμας, κατακαύσαντες ἔνθεν ἐξῆσαν· ὥστε οἱ πολέμιοι οὐ προσήλαννον, ἀλλὰ ἐθεῶντο καὶ ὅμοιοι ἦσαν θαυμάζειν ὅποι ποτὲ τρέφονται οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ τί ἐν νῶ ἔχοιεν. ἐνταῦθα οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι στρατιῶται ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἦσαν· οἱ δὲ στρατηγοὶ πάλιν συνῆλθον, καὶ συναγαγόντες τοὺς ἐαλωκότας ἤλεγχον τὴν κύκλῳ πᾶσαν χώραν τίς ἐκάστη εἴη.

Οἱ δὲ ἔλεγον ὅτι τὰ πρὸς μεσημβρίαν τῆς ἐπὶ Βαβυλῶνα εἴη καὶ Μηδίαν, δι' ἧσπερ ἦκοιεν, ἡ δὲ πρὸς ἑω ἐπὶ Σοῦσά τε καὶ Ἐκβάτανα φέροι, ἔνθα θερίζειν λέγεται βασιλεύς, ἡ δὲ διαβάντι τὸν ποταμὸν πρὸς ἐσπέραν ἐπὶ Λυδίαν καὶ Ἰωνίαν φέροι, ἡ δὲ διὰ τῶν ὁρέων καὶ πρὸς ἄρκτον τετραμμένη ὅτι εἰς Καρδούχους ἄγοι. τούτους δὲ ἔφασαν οἰκεῖν ἀνὰ τὰ ὄρη καὶ πολεμικοὺς εἶναι, καὶ βασιλέως οὐκ



|hinder, |across πολλοὶ ἰππεῖς, οἱ εὐθὺς τοῖς πρώτοις  
|prevent

οὐδὲν ἂν |entrust, de- τούτων ποιεῖν.  
|cide, allow

|there, here τὴν μὲν |the next; later ..ανεχώρουν εἰς |backwards, on  
|the contrary

ἣ πρὸς Βαβυλῶνα εἰς τὰς |unburned, not|village ,  
|flammable

|burn down ἔνθεν |go forth; ὥστε οἱ πολέμοι οὐ  
|is possible

|go to, approach , ἀλλὰ ἐθεῶντο καὶ ὅμοιοι ἦσαν θαυμάζειν

|to which place , ἐψονται οἱ |Greek καὶ τί ἐν νῶ ἔχοιεν.

|there, here ἡ μὲν ἄλλοι |soldier, ἐπὶ τὰ |fit, suitable ἦσαν·  
|mercenary

οἱ δὲ στρατηγοὶ πάλιν |come together .. ἵ join τοὺς

|be captured |shame; try, ἐx-|circle, πᾶσαν χώραν τίς ἐκάστη  
|amine |wheel

εἶη.

Οἱ δὲ ἔλεγον ὅτι τὰ πρὸς |midday; the south ἐπὶ Βαβυλῶνα

εἶη καὶ Μηδίαν, δι' ἣσπερ ἦκοιεν, ἣ δὲ πρὸς ἑὸν ἐπὶ |lily

τε καὶ Ἐκβάτανα φέροι, ἔνθα |reap, λέγεται βασιλεύς,  
|harvest

ἣ δὲ |pass over, cross ποταμὸν πρὸς |evening, west Ἐλιδίαν

καὶ Ἰωνίαν φέροι, ἣ δὲ διὰ τῶν ὁρέων καὶ πρὸς |bear

τετραμμένη ὅτι εἰς Καρδούχους ἄγοι. τούτους δὲ ἔφασαν

|inhabit ἵνα τὰ ὄρη καὶ |warlike, εἶναι, καὶ βασιλέως οὐκ  
|hostile

cavalry posted and ready to bar the passage; who, to begin with, would not suffer the first detachment of crossers to carry out any item of the programme.

Under these circumstances, the next day they turned right about face, and began retracing their steps in the direction of Babylon to the unburnt villages, having previously set fire to those they left, so that the enemy did not ride up to them, but stood and stared, all agape to see in what direction the Hellenes would betake themselves and what they were minded to do. Here, again, while the rest of the soldiers were busy about provisions, the generals and officers met in council, and after collecting the prisoners together, submitted them to a cross-examination touching the whole country round, the names, and so forth, of each district.

The prisoners informed them that the regions south, through which they had come, belonged to the district towards Babylon and Media; the road east led to Susa and Ecbatana, where the king is said to spend summer and spring; crossing the river, the road west led to Lydia and Ionia; and the part through the mountains facing towards the Great Bear, led, they said, to the Carduchians. They were a people, so said the prisoners, dwelling up on the hills, addicted to war, and not subject to the king; so much so that once, when a royal army one

*vocabulary*

**ἀναγκαῖος** coerced, coercing, slavery  
**ἀναπαύω** cause to cease ~pause  
**ἀπονοστέω** go home  
**βασιλικός** royal  
**δειπνέω** eat, dine  
**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous  
**διέρχομαι** pierce, traverse  
**δυσχωρία** rough ground; lack of room  
**ἐκασταχόσε** to each side  
**ἐμβάλλω** throw in; inspire a mental  
state ~ballistic  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**εὐδαίμων** blessed with a good genius  
**εὐπορος** easily passed; rich  
**ἥνικα** when  
**θύω** (ῑ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω  
**καθίζω** set, sit, alight, set up ~sit

**μυριάς** -δος (ῡ, f, 3) countless, myriad  
**ὅποι** to which place  
**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon,  
recommend, encourage  
**πορεία** gait, march  
**πότε** when?  
**προκαταλαμβάνω** seize beforehand  
~epilepsy  
**σατράπης** -ου (m, 1) satrap, Persian  
governor  
**σπένδω** libate; (mid) make a treaty  
~spontaneous  
**στρατιά** army ~strategy  
**συσκευάζω** pack up  
**ὑπερβολή** mountain pass; excess  
**φάσκω** declare, promise, think ~fame  
**χωρίς** separately; except, other than  
~heir

ἀκούειν, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐμβαλεῖν ποτε εἰς αὐτοὺς βασιλικὴν  
στρατιὰν δώδεκα μυριάδας· τούτων δ' οὐδέν' ἀπονοστήσαι  
διὰ τὴν δυσχωρίαν. ὁπότε μέντοι πρὸς τὸν σατράπην τὸν  
ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ σπείσαιντο, καὶ ἐπιμινύναι σφῶν τε πρὸς  
ἐκείνους καὶ ἐκείνων πρὸς ἑαυτούς.

Ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἐκάθισαν χωρὶς τοὺς  
ἐκασταχόσε φάσκοντας εἰδέναι, οὐδὲν δῆλον ποιήσαντες  
ὅποι πορεύεσθαι ἔμελλον. ἐδόκει δὲ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς  
ἀναγκαῖον εἶναι διὰ τῶν ὁρέων εἰς Καρδούχους ἐμβαλεῖν·  
τούτους γὰρ διελθόντας ἔφασαν εἰς Ἀρμενίαν ἥξειν, ἥς  
Ὅρόντας ἦρχε πολλῆς καὶ εὐδαίμονος. ἐντεῦθεν δ' εὖπορον  
ἔφασαν εἶναι ὅποι τις ἐθέλοι πορεύεσθαι. ἐπὶ τούτοις  
ἐθύσαντο, ὅπως ἡνίκα καὶ δοκοίη τῆς ὥρας τὴν πορείαν  
ποιοῖντο· τὴν γὰρ ὑπερβολὴν τῶν ὁρέων ἐδεδοίκεσαν μὴ  
προκαταληφθεῖν· καὶ παρήγγειλαν, ἐπειδὴ δειπνήσαιεν,  
συσκευασμένους πάντας ἀναπαύεσθαι, καὶ ἔπεσθαι ἡνίκ'  
ἂν τις παραγγέλλῃ.

ἀκούειν, ἀλλὰ καὶ |throw in; inspire εἰς αὐτοὺς |royal

στρατιὰν δώδεκα |countless, |myriad τούτων δ' οὐδέν' |go home

διὰ τὴν |rough ground; |lack of room πότε μέντοι πρὸς τὸν |satrap τὸν

ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ |libate; (mid) καὶ ἐπιμινύναι σφῶν τε πρὸς |make a treaty

ἐκείνους καὶ ἐκείνων πρὸς ἑαυτούς.

Ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα οἱ στρατηγοὶ |set, |sit, |separately; |ex-  
|alight, |set|cept, other than

|to each side |declare, promise, |think εἶναι, οὐδέν' |visible, |... |, |ταυτες  
|conspicuous

|to which place |θαι ἔμελλον. ἔδόκει δὲ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς

ἀναγκαῖον εἶναι διὰ τῶν ὁρέων εἰς Καρδούχους |throw in; inspire

τούτους γὰρ |pierce, |traverse ἔφασαν εἰς Ἀρμενίαν ἥξειν, ἧς

Ὅρόντας ἦρχε πολλῆς καὶ |blessed with a |thence |good genius δ' |easily  
|passed;

ἔφασαν εἶναι |to which place |οι πορεύεσθαι. ἐπὶ |rich |τούτοις

|rush; sacrifice ὥς |when καὶ δοκοίῃ τῆς ὥρας τὴν |gait, |march

ποιοῖντο· τὴν γὰρ |mountain |τῶν ὁρέων ἐδεδοίκεσαν μὴ  
|pass; excess

|seize beforehand καὶ |transmit; order, |summon, |eat, dine  
|recommend, encourage

|pack up πάντας |cause to cease , καὶ ἔπεσθαι |when

ἄν τις |transmit; order, summon,  
|recommend, encourage

hundred and twenty thousand strong had invaded them, not a man came back, owing to the intricacies of the country. Occasionally, however, they made truce or treaty with the satrap in the plain, and, for the nonce, there would be intercourse: «they will come in and out amongst us,” «and we will go in and out amongst them,” said the captives.

After hearing these statements, the generals seated apart those who claimed to have any special knowledge of the country in any direction; they put them to sit apart without making it clear which particular route they intended to take. Finally the resolution to which they came was that they must force a passage through the hills into the territory of the Kurds; since, according to what their informants told them, when they had once passed these, they would find themselves in Armenia—the rich and large territory governed by Orontas; and from Armenia, it would be easy to proceed in any direction whatever. Thereupon they offered sacrifice, so as to be ready to start on the march as soon as the right moment appeared to have arrived. Their chief fear was that the high pass over the mountains must be occupied in advance: and a general order was issued, that after supper every one should get his kit together for starting, and repose, in readiness to follow as soon as the word of command was given.

*vocabulary*

**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured ~helix

**ἀνάβασις** -τος (f) going up, mounting,  
going inland

**ἄπορος** impassable, difficult

**ἀπότομος** cut off; severe

**βάθος** -ους (n, 3) depth, height

**δηλώω** show, disclose

**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis

**διέρχομαι** pierce, traverse

**Ἑλλην** Greek

**ἐμβολή** putting in; incursion, charge

**ἐπακολουθέω** chase; accrue

**κρεμάννυμι** (ῥ) hang

**μέγεθος** -ους (n, 3) tall, big (person)  
~megaton

**μέχρι** as far as, until

**παντάπασιν** altogether; yes, certainly

**παραβαίνω** go with; transgress ~basis

**πάροδος** (f) detour, side way,  
mountain pass

**πηγή** headwaters, fountain

**πηγός** stout, mighty

**πρόσω** forward, in the future; far

**σπονδή** libation, treaty ~spontaneous

**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy

## 4

## 4.1

Ὅσα μὲν δὴ ἐν τῇ ἀναβάσει ἐγένετο μέχρι τῆς μάχης, καὶ ὅσα μετὰ τὴν μάχην ἐν ταῖς σπονδαῖς ἃς βασιλεὺς καὶ οἱ σὺν Κύρῳ ἀναβάντες Ἕλληνες ἐποιήσαντο, καὶ ὅσα παραβάντος τὰς σπονδὰς βασιλέως καὶ Τισσαφέρνους ἐπολεμήθη πρὸς τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἐπακολουθοῦντος τοῦ Περσικοῦ στρατεύματος, ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ δεδήλωται. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο ἔνθα ὁ μὲν Τίγρης ποταμὸς παντάπασιν ἄπορος ἦν διὰ τὸ βάθος καὶ μέγεθος, πάροδος δὲ οὐκ ἦν, ἀλλὰ τὰ Καρδούχεια ὄρη ἀπότομα ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἐκρέματο, ἐδόκει δὴ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς διὰ τῶν ὁρέων πορευτέον εἶναι. ἤκουον γὰρ τῶν ἀλισκομένων ὅτι εἰ διέλθοιεν τὰ Καρδούχεια ὄρη, ἐν τῇ Ἀρμενίᾳ τὰς πηγὰς τοῦ Τίγρητος ποταμοῦ, ἣν μὲν βούλωνται, διαβήσονται, ἣν δὲ μὴ βούλωνται, περιίασι. καὶ τοῦ Εὐφράτου δὲ τὰς πηγὰς ἐλέγετο οὐ πρόσω τοῦ Τίγρητος εἶναι, καὶ ἔστιν οὕτως ἔχον. τὴν δ' εἰς τοὺς Καρδούχους ἐμβολὴν ὥδε



4

4.1

Ὅσα μὲν δὴ ἐν τῇ |going up, mounting,|as far as,|until',|ης, καὶ  
 |going inland  
 ὅσα μετὰ τὴν μάχην ἐν ταῖς |libation, ἅς βασιλεὺς καὶ  
 |treaty  
 οἱ σὺν Κύρῳ ἀναβάντες |Greek ἐποιήσαντο, καὶ ὅσα  
 |go with; transgress |libation, βασιλέως καὶ Τισσαφέρνους  
 |treaty  
 ἐπολεμήθη πρὸς τοὺς |Greek |chase; accrue τοῦ  
 Περσικοῦ |army , ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ |show,  
 |disclose  
 ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο ἔνθα ὁ μὲν Τίγρης ποταμὸς |altogether;  
 |yes, certainly  
 |impassable, διὰ τὸ |depth, καὶ |tall, big , |detour, pass |οὐκ  
 |difficult |height  
 ἦν, ἀλλὰ τὰ Καρδούχεια ὄρη |cut off; severe ἐρ αὐτοῦ τοῦ  
 ποταμοῦ |hang , ἐδόκει δὴ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς διὰ τῶν  
 ὁρέων πορευτέον εἶναι. ἤκουον γὰρ τῶν |be captured ὅτι  
 εἰ |pierce, τὰ Καρδούχεια ὄρη, ἐν τῇ Ἀρμενίᾳ τὰς πηγὰς  
 |traverse  
 τοῦ Τίγρητος ποταμοῦ, ἣν μὲν βούλωνται, |pass over, cross  
 ἣν δὲ μὴ βούλωνται, περιάσι. καὶ τοῦ Εὐφράτου δὲ τὰς  
 πηγὰς ἐλέγετο οὐ |forward, in the Τίγρητος εἶναι, καὶ ἔστιν  
 |future; far  
 οὕτως ἔχον. τὴν δ' εἰς τοὺς Καρδούχους |putting in; in-  
 |cursion, charge

**4****4.1**

Given of the incidents of the march up to the battle, and of the occurrences after the battle during the truce which was established between the king and the Hellenes, who marched up with Cyrus, and thirdly, of the fighting to which the Hellenes were exposed, after the king and Tissaphernes had broken the treaty, while a Persian army hung on their rear. Having finally reached a point at which the Tigris was absolutely impassable owing to its depth and breadth, while there was no passage along the bank itself, and the Carduchian hills hung sheer over the river, the generals took the resolution above mentioned of forcing a passage through the mountains. The information derived from the prisoners taken along the way led them to believe that once across the Carduchian mountains they would have the choice either of crossing the Tigris—if they liked to do so—at its sources in Armenia, or of going round them, if so they preferred. Report further said that the sources of the Euphrates also were not far from those of the Tigris, and this is actually the case. The advance into the country of the Carduchians was conducted with a view partly to secrecy, and partly

*vocabulary*

**ἄγκος** -εος (n, 3) bend; glen  
 ~ankylosaurus  
**ἄκρα** at the edge, extreme ~acute  
**ἄκρη** at the edge, extreme  
**ἄκρις** -ός (f) hilltop ~acute  
**ἄκρον** crest, extremity ~acute  
**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme ~acute  
**ἄνω** (ἄ) accomplish, pass, waste;  
 upwards, out to sea  
**γυμνής** light infantry; serf  
**διέρχομαι** pierce, traverse  
**ἐκλείπω** leave out, pass over  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἐφέπω** drive, meet, follow ~sequel  
**ἡνίκα** when  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch,  
 overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy  
**κώμη** village

**μυχός** recess, nook  
**ὀπίσθεν** behind, hereafter  
**ὀπισθοφύλαξ** rear guard ~phylactery  
**ὀπλίτης** -ου (ī, m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
 infantryman ~hoplite  
**ποιόω** make of a certain quality  
**προσδοκάω** expect  
**σκοταῖος** dark, dark time of day  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**τελευταῖος** last, final  
**τηνικαῦτα** at that time, in that case  
**ὑπερβάλλω** cause to go beyond; delay  
 ~ballistic  
**ὕφηγέομαι** lead the way  
**φθάζω** do first, outstrip  
**φθάνω** (ἄ) do first, outstrip  
**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch  
 ~phylactery

ποιοῦνται, ἅμα μὲν λαθεῖν πειρώμενοι, ἅμα δὲ φθάσαι πρὶν τοὺς πολεμίους καταλαβεῖν τὰ ἄκρα.

Ἦνίκα δ' ἦν ἀμφὶ τὴν τελευταίαν φυλακὴν καὶ ἐλείπετο τῆς νυκτὸς ὅσον σκοταίους διελθεῖν τὸ πεδῖον, τηνικαῦτα ἀναστάντες ἀπὸ παραγγέλλεως πορευόμενοι ἀφικνοῦνται ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ πρὸς τὸ ὄρος. ἔνθα δὴ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἡγείτο τοῦ στρατεύματος λαβὼν τὸ ἀμφ' αὐτὸν καὶ τοὺς γυμνήτας πάντας, Ξενοφῶν δὲ σὺν τοῖς ὀπισθοφύλαξι ὀπλίταις εἶπετο οὐδένα ἔχων γυμνήτα· οὐδεὶς γὰρ κίνδυνος ἐδόκει εἶναι μή τις ἄνω πορευομένων ἐκ τοῦ ὀπισθεν ἐπίσποιτο. καὶ ἐπὶ μὲν τὸ ἄκρον ἀναβαίνει Χειρίσοφος πρὶν τινὰς αἰσθέσθαι τῶν πολεμίων· ἔπειτα δ' ὑφηγείτο· ἐφείπετο δὲ αἰεὶ τὸ ὑπερβάλλον τοῦ στρατεύματος εἰς τὰς κώμας τὰς ἐν τοῖς ἄγκεσί τε καὶ μυχοῖς τῶν ὁρέων.

Ἐνθα δὴ οἱ μὲν Καρδοῦχοι ἐκλιπόντες τὰς οἰκίας ἔχοντες καὶ γυναῖκας καὶ παῖδας ἔφευγον ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη. τὰ δὲ ἐπιτήδεια πολλὰ ἦν λαμβάνειν, ἦσαν δὲ καὶ

|make of a cer- ῥμα μὲν λαθεῖν πειρώμενοι, ἅμα δὲ φθάσαι  
tain quality

πρὶν τοὺς πολεμίους |seize, understand, ῥcatch,  
overtake; (mp) happen

|when δ' ἦν ἀμφὶ τὴν |last, final |guard, καὶ ἐλείπετο  
|prison,  
τῆς νυκτὸς ὅσον |dark, dark| Pierce, |watch  
time of day |traverse τὸ πεδίον, |at that time,  
|in that case

ἀναστάντες ἀπὸ παραγγέλσεως πορευόμενοι ἀφικνοῦνται

ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ πρὸς τὸ ὄρος. ἔνθα δὲ Χειρίσοφος μὲν

ἡγεῖτο τοῦ |army λαβὼν τὸ ἀμφ' αὐτὸν καὶ τοὺς

|light πάντας, Ξενοφῶν δὲ σὺν τοῖς |rear guard  
infantry;

serf  
hoplite, heavῥ ιετο οὐδένα ἔχων |light οὐδεὶς γὰρ  
infantryman infantry;

κίνδυνος ἐδόκει εἶναι μὴ τις ἄνω |serf πορευομένων ἐκ τοῦ

|behind, |drive, meet, follow... ἐπὶ μὲν τὸ ἄκρον ἀναβαίνει  
hereafter

Χειρίσοφος πρὶν τινὰς αἰσθῆσθαι τῶν πολέμιων· ἔπειτα

δ' |lead the way |ἐφέπω?: drive, meet, follow;|cause to go be- τοῦ  
or ἐφέπω?: drive, meet, fol-|yond; delay

|army low εἰς τὰς |village τὰς ἐν τοῖς |bend; glen καὶ

|recess, nook ὀρέων.

Ἐνθα δὲ οἱ μὲν Καρδοῦχοι |leave out, pass over ...ίας ἔχοντες

καὶ γυναῖκας καὶ παῖδας ἔφευγον ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη. τὰ δὲ

|fit, suitable πολλὰ ἦν λαμβάνειν, ἦσαν δὲ καὶ

to speed, so as to effect their entry before the enemy could occupy the passes.

It was now about the last watch, and enough of the night remained to allow them to cross the valley under cover of darkness; when, at the word of command, they rose and set off on their march, reaching the mountains at daybreak. At this stage of the march Cheirisophus, at the head of his own division, with the whole of the light troops, led the van, while Xenophon followed behind with the heavy infantry of the rearguard, but without any light troops, since there seemed to be no danger of pursuit or attack from the rear, while they were making their way up hill. Cheirisophus reached the summit without any of the enemy perceiving him. Then he led on slowly, and the rest of the army followed, wave upon wave, cresting the summit and descending into the villages which nestled in the hollows and recesses of the hills.

Thereupon the Carduchians abandoned their dwelling places, and with their wives and children fled to the mountains; so there was plenty of provisions to be got for the mere trouble of taking, and the homesteads too were well supplied with a

*vocabulary*

**ἄκρον** crest, extremity ~acute  
**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme ~acute  
**ἀνάβασις** -τος (f) going up, mounting,  
 going inland  
**ἀπροσδόκητος** unexpected; unaware  
**αὐλίζομαι** live, lodge at  
**διίημι** drive off, pass through  
**Ἑλλήν** Greek  
**ἐπιπίπτω** fall upon, attack  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἐπιτυχάνω** meet, attain  
**καίω** burn ~caustic  
**κατάβασις** -εως (f) way down  
**κατασκευάζω** equip, build  
**κατατιτρώσκω** wound  
**κινδυνεύω** encounter danger; (+inf)  
 there is a danger that

**κύκλος** circle, wheel ~cycle  
**κώμη** village  
**λίθος** (f) stone ~monolith  
**πάμπολυς** very great  
**πυρά** pyre ~pyre  
**σκοταῖος** dark, dark time of day  
**στενός** narrow  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**συλλέγω** collect, assemble ~legion  
**συνοράω** be able to see ~panorama  
**τελευταῖος** last, final  
**τόξευμα** -τος (n, 3) arrow  
**ὑπακούω** listen, reply ~acoustic  
**ὑποφείδομαι** spare a little; speak  
 moderately  
**φίλικός** friendly  
**φίλιος** friendly  
**χάλκωμα** bronze or copper object

χαλκώμασι παμπόλλοις κατεσκευασμένοι αἱ οἰκίαι, ὧν οὐδὲν ἔφερον οἱ Ἕλληνες, οὐδὲ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἐδίωκον, ὑποφειδόμενοι, εἴ πως ἐθελήσειαν οἱ Καρδοῦχοι διέναι αὐτοὺς ὡς διὰ φιλίας τῆς χώρας, ἐπείπερ βασιλεῖ πολέμοι ἦσαν· τὰ μέντοι ἐπιτήδεια ὅτῳ τις ἐπιτυχάνοι ἐλάμβανεν· ἀνάγκη γὰρ ἦν. οἱ δὲ Καρδοῦχοι οὔτε καλούντων ὑπήκουον οὔτε ἄλλο φιλικὸν οὐδὲν ἐποιοῦν. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ τελευταῖοι τῶν Ἑλλήνων κατέβαινον εἰς τὰς κώμας ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄκρου ἤδη σκοταῖοι διὰ γὰρ τὸ στενὴν εἶναι τὴν ὁδὸν ὅλην τὴν ἡμέραν ἢ ἀνάβασις αὐτοῖς ἐγένετο καὶ κατάβασις, τότε δὴ συλλεγόντες τινὲς τῶν Καρδούχων τοῖς τελευταίοις ἐπετίθεντο, καὶ ἀπέκτεινάν τινας καὶ λίθοις καὶ τοξεύμασι κατέτρωσαν, ὀλίγοι ὄντες· ἐξ ἀπροσδοκίτου γὰρ αὐτοῖς ἐπέπεσε τὸ Ἑλληνικόν. εἰ μέντοι τότε πλείους συνελέγησαν, ἐκινδύνευσεν ἂν διαφθαρῆναι πολὺ τοῦ στρατεύματος. καὶ ταύτην μὲν τὴν νύκτα οὕτως ἐν ταῖς κώμας ἠγύλισθησαν· οἱ δὲ Καρδοῦχοι πυρὰ πολλὰ ἔκαιον κύκλῳ ἐπὶ τῶν ὁρέων καὶ συνεώρων



|bronze or παμπόλλους |equip, build αἱ οἰκίαι, ὧν  
 |copper object  
 οὐδὲν ἔφερον οἱ |Greek , οὐδὲ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἐδίωκον,  
 |spare a little; εἴ πως ἐθελήσειαν οἱ Καρδοῦχοι |drive off, pass  
 |speak moderately |through  
 αὐτοὺς ὡς διὰ |friendly τῆς χώρας, ἐπείπερ βασιλεῖ  
 πολέμοι ἦσαν· τὰ μέντοι |fit, suitable ὅτῳ τις |meet, attain  
 ἐλάβανεν· ἀνάγκη γὰρ ἦν. οἱ δὲ Καρδοῦχοι οὔτε  
 καλούντων |listen, οὔτε ἄλλο |friendly οὐδὲν ἐποιοῦν.  
 |reply  
 ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ |last, final τῶν |Greek κατέβαινον εἰς τὰς  
 |village ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄκρου ἤδη |dark, dark ἰὰ γὰρ τὸ |narrow  
 |time of day  
 εἶναι τὴν ὁδὸν ὅλην τὴν ἡμέραν ἢ |going up, mount-  
 |ing, going inland  
 ἐγένετο καὶ |way down , τότε δὲ |collect, τινὲς τῶν  
 |assemble  
 Καρδούχων τοῖς |last, final ἐπετίθεντο, καὶ ἀπέκτεινάν  
 τινὰς καὶ λίθοις καὶ |arrow κατέτρωσαν, ὀλίγοι ὄντες·  
 ἐξ |unexpected; γὰρ αὐτοῖς |fall upon, attack Ἑλληνικόν.  
 |unaware  
 εἰ μέντοι τότε πλείους |collect, ἐκινδύνευσεν ἂν  
 |assemble  
 διαφθαρῆναι πολὺ τοῦ |army . καὶ ταύτην μὲν τὴν  
 νύκτα οὕτως ἐν ταῖς |village |live, lodge at οἱ δὲ Καρδοῦχοι  
 |pyre πολλὰ |burn |circle, ἐπὶ τῶν ὁρέων καὶ |be able to see  
 |wheel

copious store of bronze vessels and utensils which the Hellenes kept their hands off, abstaining at the same time from all pursuit of the folk themselves, gently handling them, in hopes that the Carduchians might be willing to give them friendly passage through their country, since they too were enemies of the king: only they helped themselves to such provisions as fell in their way, which indeed was a sheer necessity. But the Carduchians neither gave ear, when they called to them, nor showed any other friendly sign; and now, as the last of the Hellenes descended into the villages from the pass, they were already in the dark, since, owing to the narrowness of the road, the whole day had been spent in the ascent and descent. At that instant a party of the Carduchians, who had collected, made an attack on the hindmost men, killing some and wounding others with stones and arrows—though it was quite a small body who attacked. The fact was, the approach of the Hellenic army had taken them by surprise; if, however, they had mustered in larger force at this time, the chances are that a large portion of the army would have been annihilated. As it was, they got into quarters, and bivouacked in the villages that night, while the Carduchians kept many watch-fires blazing in a circle on the mountains, and kept each other

*vocabulary*

αἰχμάλωτος captive ~acute  
 ἀναγκαῖος coerced, coercing, slavery  
 ἀναπαύω cause to cease ~pause  
 ἀνδράποδον -ς slave ~androgynous  
 ἀπόμαχος disabled  
 ἀριστάω eat lunch ~aristocrat  
 ἀφαιρέω take away ~heresy  
 διπλάσιος twofold, double  
 Ἕλλην Greek  
 ἐπιθυμέω (ὄ) wish, covet  
 ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable  
 εὐπρεπής comely, decent; specious  
 καταλιμπάνω leave behind, abandon  
 κηρύσσω be a henchman, summon

people

κλέπτω steal  
 λοχαγέω (ᾱ) lead a company  
 λοχαγός (ᾱ) captain  
 πορεία gait, march  
 πορίζω bring about, provide  
 στενός narrow  
 στρατιά army ~strategy  
 συνέρχομαι come together  
 σχολαῖος slow, leisurely  
 ὑποζύγιον beast of burden ~zygote  
 ὕστεραίος the next; later  
 ὑφίστημι promise, undertake ~station  
 χειμών -ος (m, 3) winter, storm

ἀλλήλους.

Ἄμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ συνελθοῦσι τοῖς στρατηγοῖς καὶ λοχαγοῖς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔδοξε τῶν τε ὑποζυγίων τὰ ἀναγκαῖα καὶ δυνατώτατα ἔχοντας πορεύεσθαι, καταλιπόντας τᾶλλα, καὶ ὅσα ἦν νεωστὶ αἰχμάλωτα ἀνδράποδα ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ πάντα ἀφεῖναι. σχολαίαν γὰρ ἐποιοῦν τὴν πορείαν πολλὰ ὄντα τὰ ὑποζύγια καὶ τὰ αἰχμάλωτα, πολλοὶ δὲ οἱ ἐπὶ τούτοις ὄντες ἀπόμαχοι ἦσαν, διπλάσιά τε ἐπιτήδεια ἔδει πορίζεσθαι καὶ φέρεσθαι πολλῶν τῶν ἀνθρώπων ὄντων. δόξαν δὲ ταῦτα ἐκήρυξαν οὕτω ποιεῖν.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀριστήσαντες ἐπορεύοντο, ὑποστήσαντες ἐν τῷ στενῷ οἱ στρατηγοί, εἴ τι εὕρισκοιεν τῶν εἰρημένων μὴ ἀφειμένον, ἀφηροῦντο, οἱ δ' ἐπείθοντο, πλὴν εἴ τις ἔκλειψεν, οἶον ἢ παιδὸς ἐπιθυμίας ἢ γυναικὸς τῶν εὐπρεπῶν. καὶ ταύτην μὲν τὴν ἡμέραν οὕτως ἐπορεύθησαν, τὰ μὲν τι μαχόμενοι τὰ δὲ καὶ ἀναπανόμενοι. εἰς δὲ τὴν ὑστεραίαν γίνεται χειμῶν

ἀλλήλους.

Ἄμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ |come together τοῖς στρατηγοῖς καὶ

λοχαγοῖς τῶν |Greek ἔδοξε τῶν τε |beast of burden

τὰ ἀναγκαῖα καὶ δυνατώτατα ἔχοντας πορεύεσθαι,

|leave behind, τᾶλλα, καὶ ὅσα ἦν νεωστὶ |captive  
|abandon

|slave ἐν τῇ |army πάντα ἀφεῖναι. |slow, leisurely` ,

ἐποιοῦν τὴν |gait, πολλά ὄντα τὰ |beast of burden` τὰ  
|march

|captive , πολλοὶ δὲ οἱ ἐπὶ τούτοις ὄντες |disabled

ἦσαν, |twofold, τε |fit, suitable ἔδει |bring about, καὶ φέρεσθαι  
|double |provide

πολλῶν τῶν ἀνθρώπων ὄντων. δόξαν δὲ ταῦτα |be a henchman, sum-  
|mon people

οὕτω ποιεῖν.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ |eat lunch ἐπορεύοντο, |promise,  
|undertake

ἐν τῷ |narrow οἱ στρατηγοί, εἴ τι εὐρίσκοιεν τῶν

εἰρημένων μὴ ἀφειμένον, |take away , οἱ δ' ἐπείθοντο,

πλὴν εἴ τις |steal , οἶον ἢ παιδὸς |wish, covet ἢ

γυναικὸς τῶν |comely, de- καὶ ταύτην μὲν τὴν ἡμέραν  
|cent; specious

οὕτως ἐπορεύθησαν, τὰ μὲν τι μαχόμενοι τὰ δὲ καὶ

|cause to cease . εἰς δὲ τὴν |the next; later` , γνεται |winter,  
|storm

in sight all round.

But with the dawn the generals and officers of the Hellenes met and resolved to proceed, taking only the necessary number of stout baggage animals, and leaving the weaklings behind. They resolved further to let go free all the lately-captured slaves in the host; for the pace of the march was necessarily rendered slow by the quantity of animals and prisoners, and the number of non-combatants in attendance on these was excessive, while, with such a crowd of human beings to satisfy, twice the amount of provisions had to be procured and carried. These resolutions passed, they caused a proclamation by herald to be made for their enforcement.

When they had breakfasted and the march recommenced, the generals planted themselves a little to one side in a narrow place, and when they found any of the aforesaid slaves or other property still retained, they confiscated them. The soldiers yielded obedience, except where some smuggler, prompted by desire of a good-looking boy or woman, managed to make off with his prize. During this day they contrived to get along after a fashion, now fighting and now resting. But on the next day they were visited by a great storm, in spite of which they

*vocabulary*

**αἰτιάομαι** blame ~etiology  
**αἷτιος** blameworthy; the cause  
 ~etiology  
**αἰτίος** blameworthy; the cause  
 ~etiology  
**ἄλλοτε** at another time ~alien  
**ἀναγκάζω** force, compel  
**ἀναγκαῖος** coerced, coercing, slavery  
**ἀναχάζω** pull back; (mp) back off;  
 grieve ~heir  
**ἀσπίς** -δος (f) shield ~spit  
**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous  
**διαμπερές** right through; all the time,  
 forever  
**ἐγγύς** near  
**Ἑλλην** Greek  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**ἐπιδιώκω** chase after  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἰσχυρός** (ῶ) strong, forceful, violent  
**ὀπισθοφυλακέω** guard the rear

**ὀπισθοφύλαξ** rear guard ~phylactery  
**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon,  
 recommend, encourage  
**παρεγγυάω** entrust; pass an order  
**παρέρχομαι** pass, escape  
**πλευρά** rib, side ~pleurisy  
**πορεία** gait, march  
**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near; add  
 ~ion  
**προσίημι** be allowed near  
**σπολάς** jerkin  
**σπουδή** zeal; (dat) with difficulty,  
 hastily ~repudiate  
**σταθμός** cottage; post  
**στενός** narrow  
**σφενδονάω** sling  
**σχολή** rest, leisure  
**τοξεύω** shoot an arrow at ~toxic  
**ὑπείμι** be under  
**ὑπομένω** stay behind, await ~remain  
**φυγή** flight, means of escape ~fugitive  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

πολύς, ἀναγκαῖον δ' ἦν πορεύεσθαι· οὐ γὰρ ἦν ἱκανὰ τὰπιτήδεια. καὶ ἡγείτο μὲν Χειρίσοφος, ὡπισθοφυλάκει δὲ Ξενοφῶν. καὶ οἱ πολέμοι ἰσχυρῶς ἐπετίθεντο, καὶ στενῶν ὄντων τῶν χωρίων ἐγγὺς προσιόντες ἐτόξευον καὶ ἐσφενδόνων· ὥστε ἡναγκάζοντο οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπιδιώκοντες καὶ πάλιν ἀναχάζοντες σχολῇ πορεύεσθαι· καὶ θαμινὰ παρήγγελλεν ὁ Ξενοφῶν ὑπομένειν, ὅτε οἱ πολέμοι ἰσχυρῶς ἐπικέοιντο. ἐνταῦθα ὁ Χειρίσοφος ἄλλοτε μὲν ὅτε παρεγγυῶτο ὑπέμενε, τότε δὲ οὐχ ὑπέμενε, ἀλλ' ἡγε ταχέως καὶ παρηγγύα ἔπεσθαι, ὥστε δῆλον ἦν ὅτι πρᾶγμά τι εἴη· σχολὴ δ' οὐκ ἦν ἰδεῖν παρελθόντι τὸ αἴτιον τῆς σπουδῆς· ὥστε ἡ πορεία ὁμοία φυγῇ ἐγίνετο τοῖς ὀπισθοφύλαξι. καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἀποθνήσκει ἀνὴρ ἀγαθὸς Λακωνικὸς Λεώνυμος τοξευθεὶς διὰ τῆς ἀσπίδος καὶ τῆς σπολάδος εἰς τὰς πλευράς, καὶ Βασίας Ἀρκὰς διαμπερὲς τὴν κεφαλὴν.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ σταθμόν, εὐθὺς ὥσπερ εἶχεν ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐλθὼν πρὸς τὸν Χειρίσοφον ἡτιᾶτο αὐτὸν ὅτι



πολύς, ἀναγκαῖον δ' ἦν πορεύεσθαι· οὐ γὰρ ἦν ἱκανὰ  
|fit, suitable . καὶ ἡγείτο μὲν Χειρίσοφος, |guard the rear  
δὲ Ξενοφῶν. καὶ οἱ πολέμοι ἰσχυρῶς ἐπετίθεντο, καὶ  
|narrow ὄντων τῶν χωρίων ἐγγὺς προσιόντες |shoot an arrow at  
|sling ὥστε ἡναγκάζονται οἱ |Greek |chase after  
καὶ πάλιν |pull back |rest, πορεύεσθαι· καὶ θαμνὰ  
|leisure  
|transmit; order, summon, recom-|stay behind, await οἱ πολέμοι  
|mend, encourage  
ἰσχυρῶς ἐπικέοιντο. |there, here ' Χειρίσοφος |at another time  
ὅτε |entrust; pass ὑπέμενε, τότε δὲ οὐχ |stay behind, await  
|an order  
ἦγε ταχέως καὶ |entrust; pass ἔπεσθαι, ὥστε δῆλον ἦν ὅτι  
|an order  
πρᾶγμά τι εἴη· |rest, δ' οὐκ ἦν ἰδεῖν |pass, escape τὸ αἴτιον  
|leisure  
τῆς |zeal; (dat) with diffi-|gait, ὁμοία |flight, means το τοῖς  
|culty, hastily |march |of escape  
|rear guard . καὶ |there, here ἰποθνήσκει ἀνὴρ ἀγαθὸς  
Λακωνικὸς Λεώνυμος |shoot an arrow at ; ἀσπίδος καὶ τῆς  
|jerkin εἰς τὰς |rib, side , καὶ Βασίης Ἀρκὰς |right  
|through  
τὴν κεφαλὴν.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ |cottage; post ἕθους ὥσπερ εἶχεν ὁ  
Ξενοφῶν ἐλθὼν πρὸς τὸν Χειρίσοφον |blame αὐτὸν ὅτι

were obliged to continue the march, owing to insufficiency of provisions. Cheirisophus was as usual leading in front, while Xenophon headed the rearguard, when the enemy began a violent and sustained attack. At one narrow place after another they came up quite close, pouring in volleys of arrows and slingstones, so that the Hellenes had no choice but to make sallies in pursuit and then again recoil, making but very little progress. Over and over again Xenophon would send an order to the front to slacken pace, when the enemy were pressing their attack severely. As a rule, when the word was so passed up, Cheirisophus slackened; but sometimes instead of slackening, Cheirisophus quickened, sending down a counter-order to the rear to follow on quickly. It was clear that there was something or other happening, but there was no time to go to the front and discover the cause of the hurry. Under the circumstances the march, at any rate in the rear, became very like a rout, and here a brave man lost his life, Cleonymus the Laconian, shot with an arrow in the ribs right through shield and corselet, as also Basias, an Arcadian, shot clean through the head.

As soon as they reached a halting-place, Xenophon, without more ado, came up to Cheirisophus, and took him to task for not having waited, «whereby,” he said, «we were forced

*vocabulary*

ἄβατος untrodden; impassable  
 ἀναγκάζω force, compel  
 ἀναιρέω take up ~heresy  
 ἀναπνέω catch one's breath ~apnea  
 διαλαμβάνω distribute  
 ἐκβαίνω come forth, disembark ~basis  
 ἐκβασις -τος (f) way out ~basis  
 ἐλέγχω shame; try, examine  
 ἐνεδρεύω ambush, trap  
 ἔξιμι go forth; is possible ~ion  
 ἡγεμῶν -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide,  
 chief ~hegemony

θάπτω bury ~epitaph  
 καταλαμβάνω seize, understand, catch,  
 overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy  
 ὄρθιος shrill; steep, straight  
 σπεύδω 'push on,' get going, hurry  
 ~repudiate  
 ὑπείμι be under  
 ὑπερβολή mountain pass; excess  
 ὑπομένω stay behind, await ~remain  
 φανερός visible, conspicuous ~photon  
 φθάζω do first, outstrip  
 φθάνω (ᾱ) do first, outstrip

οὐχ ὑπέμενεν, ἀλλ' ἠναγκάζοντο φεύγοντες ἅμα μάχεσθαι. καὶ νῦν δύο καλῶ τε καὶ ἀγαθῶ ἄνδρε τέθνατον καὶ οὔτε ἀνελέσθαι οὔτε θάψαι ἐδυνάμεθα. ἀποκρίνεται ὁ Χειρίσοφος· «Βλέψον,» ἔφη, «πρὸς τὰ ὄρη καὶ ἰδὲ ὡς ἄβατα πάντα ἐστί· μία δ' αὕτη ὁδὸς ἦν ὁρᾶς ὀρθία, καὶ ἐπὶ ταύτῃ ἀνθρώπων ὁρᾶν ἔξεστί σοι ὄχλον τοσοῦτον, οἳ κατειληφότες φυλάττουσι τὴν ἔκβασιν. ταῦτ' ἐγὼ ἔσπευδον καὶ διὰ τοῦτό σε οὐχ ὑπέμενον, εἴ πως δυναίμην φθάσαι πρὶν κατειληφθαι τὴν ὑπερβολήν· οἳ δ' ἡγεμόνες οὓς ἔχομεν οὐ φασιν εἶναι ἄλλην ὁδόν.»

Ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν λέγει· Ἄλλ' ἐγὼ ἔχω δύο ἄνδρας. ἐπεὶ γὰρ ἡμῖν πράγματα παρεῖχον, ἐνηδρεύσαμεν, ὅπερ ἡμᾶς καὶ ἀναπνεῦσαι ἐποίησε, καὶ ἀπεκτείναντες τινὰς αὐτῶν, καὶ ζῶντας προθυμήθημεν λαβεῖν αὐτοῦ τούτου ἔνεκα ὅπως ἡγεμόσιν εἰδόσι τὴν χώραν χρησαίμεθα.»

Καὶ εὐθὺς ἀγαγόντες τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἤλεγχον διαλαβόντες εἴ τινα εἶδειεν ἄλλην ὁδὸν ἢ τὴν φανεράν. ὁ μὲν οὖν ἕτερος οὐκ ἔφη μάλα πολλῶν φόβων

οὐχ |stay behind, await|force, compel φεύγοντες ἅμα μάχεσθαι.  
καὶ νῦν δύο καλῶ τε καὶ ἀγαθῶ ἄνδρε τέθνατον καὶ  
οὔτε |take up οὔτε |bury ἐδυνάμεθα. ἀποκρίνεται ὁ  
Χειρίσοφος· «Βλέπον,» ἔφη, «πρὸς τὰ ὄρη καὶ ἰδὲ ὡς  
|untrodden; 'τα ἐστί· μία δ' αὕτη ὁδὸς ἦν ὀρᾶς |shrill; steep,  
|impassable |straight  
ἐπὶ ταύτῃ ἀνθρώπων ὀρᾶν ἔξεστί σοι ὄχλον τοσοῦτον,  
οἷ |seize, understand, ' catch, ουσι τὴν ἔκβασιν. ταῦτ' ἐγὼ  
|overtake; (mp) happen  
|'push on,' get διὰ τοῦτό σε οὐχ ὑπέμενον, εἴ πως δυναίμην  
|going, hurry  
φθάσαι πρὶν |seize, understand, |mountain οἱ δ' |leader  
|catch, overtake; (mp)|pass; excess  
οὓς ἔχομεν οὐ φασὶν εἶναι ἄλλην ὁδόν.»

Ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν λέγει· Ἄλλ' ἐγὼ ἔχω δύο ἄνδρας. ἐπεὶ γὰρ  
ἡμῖν πράγματα παρείχον, |ambush, trap , ὅπερ ἡμᾶς καὶ  
|catch one's breath ἴησε, καὶ ἀπεκτείναντι τινὰς αὐτῶν, καὶ  
ζῶντας προυθυμήθημεν λαβεῖν αὐτοῦ τούτου ἔνεκα ὅπως  
|leader εἰδόσι τὴν χώραν χρησαίμεθα.»

Καὶ εὐθὺς ἀγαγόντες τοὺς ἀνθρώπους |shame; try, examine  
|distribute εἴ τινα εἰδεῖεν ἄλλην ὁδὸν ἢ τὴν |visible, '   
|conspicuous  
μὲν οὖν ἕτερος οὐκ ἔφη μάλα πολλῶν φόβων

to fight and flee at the same moment; and now it has cost us the lives of two fine fellows; they are dead, and we were not able to pick up their bodies or bury them.” Cheirisophus answered: «Look up there,” pointing as he spoke to the mountain, «do you see how inaccessible it all is? only this one road, which you see, going straight up, and on it all that crowd of men who have seized and are guarding the single exit. That is why I hastened on, and why I could not wait for you, hoping to be beforehand with them yonder in seizing the pass: the guides we have got say there is no other way.”

And Xenophon replied: «But I have got two prisoners also; the enemy annoyed us so much that we laid an ambushade for them, which also gave us time to recover our breaths; we killed some of them, and did our best to catch one or two alive—for this very reason—that we might have guides who knew the country, to depend upon.”

The two were brought up at once and questioned separately: «Did they know of any other road than the one visible?” The first said no; and in spite of all sorts of

*vocabulary*

**ἄδύνατος** unable; impossible  
**ἄκρον** crest, extremity ~acute  
**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme ~acute  
**ἀντιστασιάζω** form a party against  
**γυμνής** light infantry; serf  
**δυσπάριτος** hard to pass  
**ἐθελοντής** -οῦ (m, 1) a volunteer  
**ἐκδίδωμι** hand over ~donate  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**ἔρωτάω** ask about something  
**κατασφάζω** slaughter  
**λοχαγός** (ἄ) captain  
**ὀπλίτης** -ου (ī, m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
 infantryman ~hoplite  
**παρέρχομαι** pass, escape

**πελταστής** -οῦ (m, 1) light troops  
 ~pelt  
**προσάγω** bring to a place  
 ~demagogue  
**προσλαμβάνω** add, borrow, take hold,  
 help  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**συγκαλέω** call together ~gallo  
**συμπορεύομαι** proceed together,  
 assemble ~pierce  
**ταξίαρχος** military rank  
**ὑποζύγιον** beast of burden ~zygote  
**ὕφιστημι** promise, undertake ~station  
**χωρίον** area; downwards  
**ὠφέλιμος** helping, useful

προσαγομένων· ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐδὲν ὠφέλιμον ἔλεγεν, ὁρῶντος τοῦ ἐτέρου κατεσφάγη. ὁ δὲ λοιπὸς ἔλεξεν ὅτι οὗτος μὲν οὐ φαίη διὰ ταῦτα εἰδέναι, ὅτι αὐτῷ ἐτύγχανε θυγάτηρ ἐκεῖ παρ' ἀνδρὶ ἐκδεδομένη· αὐτὸς δ' ἔφη ἡγήσασθαι δυνατὴν καὶ ὑποζυγίοις πορεύεσθαι ὁδόν. ἐρωτώμενος δ' εἰ εἴη τι ἐν αὐτῇ δυσπάριτον χωρίον, ἔφη εἶναι ἄκρον ὃ εἰ μή τις προκαταλήψοιτο, ἀδύνατον ἔσασθαι παρελθεῖν.

Ἐνταῦθα δ' ἐδόκει συγκαλέσαντας λοχαγοὺς καὶ πελταστὰς καὶ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν λέγειν τε τὰ παρόντα καὶ ἐρωτᾶν εἴ τις αὐτῶν ἔστιν ὅστις ἀνὴρ ἀγαθὸς ἐθέλοι ἂν γενέσθαι καὶ ὑποστὰς ἐθελοντῆς πορεύεσθαι. ὑφίσταται τῶν μὲν ὀπλιτῶν Ἀριστώνυμος Μεθυδριεὺς Ἄρκας καὶ Ἀγασίας Στυμφάλιος Ἄρκας, ἀντιστασιάζων δὲ αὐτοῖς Καλλίμαχος Παρράσιος Ἄρκας καὶ οὗτος ἔφη ἐθέλει πορεύεσθαι προσλαβὼν ἐθελοντὰς ἐκ παντὸς τοῦ στρατεύματος· «ἐγὼ γάρ,» ἔφη, «οἶδα ὅτι εἵπονται πολλοὶ τῶν νέων ἐμοῦ ἡγουμένου. ἐκ τούτου ἐρωτῶσιν εἴ τις καὶ τῶν γυμνήτων ταξιάρχων ἐθέλοι συμπορεύεσθαι.



bring to a place      ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐδὲν |helping, useful  
τοῦ ἑτέρου |slaughter      ὁ δὲ λοιπὸς ἔλεξεν ὅτι οὗτος μὲν οὐ  
φαίη διὰ ταῦτα εἰδέναι, ὅτι αὐτῷ ἐτύγχανε θυγάτηρ ἐκεί  
παρ' ἀνδρὶ |hand over      αὐτὸς δ' ἔφη ἡγήσασθαι δυνατὴν  
καὶ |beast of burden, ρεύεσθαι ὁδόν. |ask      δ' εἰ εἴη τι  
ἐν αὐτῇ δυσπάριτον |area; downwards. |αι ἄκρον ὃ εἰ μή τις  
προκαταλήψοιτο, |unable; ἔσσεσθαι |pass, escape.  
|impossible  
|there, here      δ' ἐδόκει      |call together      |captain      καὶ  
|light troops      καὶ τῶν |hoplite, heavy, |ειν τε τὰ παρόντα  
|infantryman  
καὶ |ask      εἴ τις αὐτῶν ἔστιν ὅστις ἀνὴρ ἀγαθὸς  
ἐθέλοι ἂν γενέσθαι καὶ |promise, |a volunteer πορεύεσθαι.  
|undertake  
|promise, τῶν μὲν |hoplite, heavy |στώννμος Μεθυδριεὺς  
|undertake |infantryman  
Ἄρκας καὶ Ἀγασίας Στυμφάλιος Ἄρκας, |form a party against  
δὲ αὐτοῖς Καλλίμαχος Παρράσιος Ἄρκας καὶ οὗτος ἔφη  
ἐθέλει πορεύεσθαι |add, borrow, |a volunteer ἐκ παντὸς  
|take hold, help  
τοῦ |army      «ἐγὼ γάρ,» ἔφη, «οἶδα ὅτι ἔψονται  
πολλοὶ τῶν νέων ἐμοῦ ἡγουμένου. ἐκ τούτου |ask      εἴ  
τις καὶ τῶν |light |military rank ἰθέλοι |proceed together, .  
|infantry; |assemble  
serf

terrors applied to extract a better answer—«no,” he persisted. When nothing could be got out of him, he was killed before the eyes of his fellow. This latter then explained: «Yonder man said, he did not know, because he has got a daughter married to a husband in those parts. I can take you,” he added, «by a good road, practicable even for beasts.” And when asked whether there was any point on it difficult to pass, he replied that there was a col which it would be impossible to pass unless it were occupied in advance.

Then it was resolved to summon the officers of the light infantry and some of those of the heavy infantry, and to acquaint them with the state of affairs, and ask them whether any of them were minded to distinguish themselves, and would step forward as volunteers on an expedition. Two or three heavy infantry soldiers stepped forward at once—two Arcadians, Aristonymus of Methydrium, and Agasias of Stymphalus—and in emulation of these, a third, also an Arcadian, Callimachus from Parrhasia, who said he was ready to go, and would get volunteers from the whole army to join him. «I know,” he added, «there will be no lack of youngsters to follow where I lead.” After that they asked, «Were there any captains of light infantry willing to accompany the

*vocabulary*

ἄκρον crest, extremity ~acute  
 ἄκρος at the edge, extreme ~acute  
 ἀμαξιαῖος large enough to load a wagon  
 ἄνω (ἄ) accomplish, pass, waste; upwards, out to sea  
 βάρβαρος non-Greek  
 δείλη afternoon ~diem  
 διαβαίνω pass over, cross ~basis  
 δισχιλίοι 2000 ~kilo-  
 ἐκβαίνω come forth, disembark ~basis  
 ἐκβασίς -τος (f) way out ~basis  
 ἐλαχύς small; comp.: less ~light  
 ἐνεσθίω eat hastily  
 ἡγεμῶν -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide, chief ~hegemony  
 κυλίνδω roll ~cylinder  
 ὀλοίτροχος boulder  
 ὀπισθοφύλαξ rear guard ~phylactery

ὄρθιος shrill; steep, straight  
 παίω hit  
 περίειμι be superior to; be left over; still exist  
 πέτρα rock, cliff, reef ~petrified  
 πολλαχοῦ in many places  
 προσδοκάω expect  
 προσέχω direct to; think about  
 σάλπιγξ -γος (f) trumpet  
 σημαίνω give orders to; show; mark ~semaphore  
 στρατιά army ~strategy  
 συμβοηθέω help in aiding  
 συντίθημι hearken, mark ~thesis  
 τῇνικαῦτα at that time, in that case  
 ὑφίστημι promise, undertake ~station  
 φανερός visible, conspicuous ~photon  
 χαράδρα torrent, gorge  
 χωρίον area; downwards

ὑφίσταται Ἀριστέας Χίος, ὃς πολλαχοῦ πολλοῦ ἄξιος τῇ στρατιᾷ εἰς τὰ τοιαῦτα ἐγένετο.

#### 4.2

Καὶ ἦν μὲν δειλὴ, οἱ δ' ἐκέλευον αὐτοὺς ἐμφαγόντας πορεύεσθαι. καὶ τὸν ἡγεμόνα δῆσαντες παραδιδόασιν αὐτοῖς, καὶ συντίθενται τὴν μὲν νύκτα, ἦν λάβωσι τὸ ἄκρον, τὸ χωρίον φυλάττειν, ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ τῇ σάλπιγγι σημαίνειν· καὶ τοὺς μὲν ἄνω ὄντας ἰέναι ἐπὶ τοὺς κατέχοντας τὴν φανεράν ἐκβασιν, αὐτοὶ δὲ συμβοηθήσειν ἐκβαίνοντες ὡς ἂν δύνωνται τάχιστα. ταῦτα συνθέμενοι οἱ μὲν ἐπορεύοντο πλῆθος ὡς δισχίλιοι· καὶ ὕδωρ πολὺ ἦν ἐξ οὐρανοῦ· Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἔχων τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλακας ἡγείτο πρὸς τὴν φανεράν ἐκβασιν, ὅπως ταύτῃ τῇ ὁδῷ οἱ πολέμοι προσέχοιεν τὸν νοῦν καὶ ὡς μάλιστα λάθοιεν οἱ περιόντες. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσαν ἐπὶ χαράδρᾳ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες ἦν ἔδει διαβάντας πρὸς τὸ ὄρθιον ἐκβαίνειν, τηνικαῦτα ἐκύλινδον οἱ βάρβαροι ὀλοιτρόχους ἀμαξιαίους καὶ μείζους καὶ ἐλάττους, οἱ φερόμενοι πρὸς τὰς πέτρας παίοντες

|promise, undertake Ἀριστέας Χίος, ὃς |in many places ἁλὸς ἄξιος τῇ  
|army εἰς τὰ τοιαῦτα ἐγένετο.

#### 4.2

Καὶ ἦν μὲν |afternoon ὃ δ' ἐκέλευον αὐτοὺς ἐμπαγόντας  
πορεύεσθαι. καὶ τὸν ἡγεμόνα δῆσαντες παραδιδόασιν  
αὐτοῖς, καὶ |hearken, mark ἦν μὲν νύκτα, ἦν λάβωσι τὸ  
ἄκρον, τὸ |area; downwards εἰν, ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ τῇ  
|trumpet |give orders to; |show; mark ἵ τοὺς μὲν ἄνω ὄντας ἰέναι ἐπὶ τοὺς  
κατέχοντας τὴν |visible, |conspicuous ἡ βασιν, αὐτοὶ δὲ συμβοηθήσειν  
|come forth ὥς ἂν δύνωνται τάχιστα. ταῦτα |hearken, mark  
οἱ μὲν ἐπορεύοντο πλῆθος ὥς |2000 καὶ ὕδωρ πολὺ  
ἦν ἐξ οὐρανοῦ· Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἔχων τοὺς |rear guard  
ἡγείτο πρὸς τὴν |visible, |conspicuous ἡ βασιν, ὅπως ταύτῃ τῇ ὁδῷ οἱ  
πολέμιοι |direct to; |think about τὸν νοῦν καὶ ὥς μάλιστα λάθοιεν οἱ  
|be superior to; |left over; still exist ἦσαν ἐπὶ χαράδρᾳ οἱ |rear guard  
ἦν ἔδει |pass over, cross, |shrill; |come forth, |at that time,  
|roll οἱ |non-Greek |boulder |steep, |straight |in that case  
καὶ |small , οἱ φερόμενοι πρὸς τὰς |rock |hit

expedition?" Aristeas, a Chian, who on several occasions proved his usefulness to the army on such service, volunteered.

#### 4.2

It was already late afternoon, when they ordered the storming party to take a snatch of food and set off; then they bound the guide and handed him over to them. The agreement was, that if they succeeded in taking the summit they were to guard the position that night, and at daybreak to give a signal by bugle. At this signal the party on the summit were to attack the enemy in occupation of the visible pass, while the generals with the main body would bring up their succours; making their way up with what speed they might. With this understanding, off they set, two thousand strong; and there was a heavy downpour of rain, but Xenophon, with his rearguard, began advancing to the visible pass, so that the enemy might fix his attention on this road, and the party creeping round might, as much as possible, elude observation. Now when the rearguard, so advancing, had reached a ravine which they must cross in order to strike up the steep, at that instant the barbarians began rolling down great boulders, each a wagon load, some larger, some smaller; against the rocks they crashed and splintered flying like slingstones

*vocabulary*

ἄκρον crest, extremity ~acute  
 ἄκρος at the edge, extreme ~acute  
 ἀνάριστος (αἶ) without dinner  
 αὐτόθεν from that place  
 ἀφανής unseen, occult, obscure  
 δείπνον meal, food  
 δείπνος meal, food  
 διάγω lead through; pass a time  
 ~demagogue  
 διασφενδονάω strew, dismember  
 ἐγγύς near  
 εἴσοδος (f) entrance ~odometer  
 ἔνιοι some  
 ἐνταῦθα there, here  
 ἔφοδος accessible; inspector; entrance;  
 attack  
 ἡγεμών -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide,  
 chief ~hegemony  
 καταδιώκω chase hard  
 κατακαίω kill  
 καταλαμβάνω seize, understand, catch,  
 overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy  
 κύκλος circle, wheel ~cycle  
 κυλίνδω roll ~cylinder

λίθος (f) stone ~monolith  
 λοχαγέω (ᾱ) lead a company  
 λοχαγός (ᾱ) captain  
 μαστός nipple, breast  
 μέχρι as far as, until  
 ὁμίχλη fog, cloud ~mist  
 ὀπισθοφυλακέω guard the rear  
 παντάπασιν altogether; yes, certainly  
 πελάζω bring/come to, near, into  
 contact with  
 περίεμι be superior to; be left over;  
 still exist  
 σιγά silence  
 σιγά (ι) be silent  
 σκότος darkness, shadow ~shadow  
 στενός narrow  
 συντάσσω gather, assemble ~syntax  
 τεκμαίρομαι conclude, declare from  
 evidence  
 ὑποφαίνω show a little ~photon  
 φανερός visible, conspicuous ~photon  
 φύλαξ -χος (m) guard; sentry  
 ~phylactery  
 ψόφος noise

διεσφενδονῶντο· καὶ παντάπασιν οὐδὲ πελάσαι οἶόν τ' ἦν τῇ εἰσόδῳ. ἔνιοι δὲ τῶν λοχαγῶν, εἰ μὴ ταύτῃ δύναιτο, ἄλλῃ ἐπειρῶντο· καὶ ταῦτα ἐποιοῦν μέχρι σκότος ἐγένετο· ἐπεὶ δὲ ὥοντο ἀφανεῖς εἶναι ἀπιόντες, τότε ἀπῆλθον ἐπὶ τὸ δεῖπνον· ἐτύγχανον δὲ καὶ ἀνάριστοι ὄντες αὐτῶν οἱ ὀπισθοφυλακήσαντες. οἱ μέντοι πολέμοι οὐδὲν ἐπαύσαντο δι' ὅλης τῆς νυκτὸς κυλίνδοντες τοὺς λίθους· τεκμαίρεσθαι δ' ἦν τῷ ψόφῳ.

Οἱ δ' ἔχοντες τὸν ἡγεμόνα κύκλῳ περιμόντες καταλαμβάνουσι τοὺς φύλακας ἀμφὶ πῦρ καθημένους· καὶ τοὺς μὲν κατακαίνοντες τοὺς δὲ καταδιώξαντες αὐτοὶ ἐνταῦθ' ἔμενον ὡς τὸ ἄκρον κατέχοντες. οἱ δ' οὐ κατεῖχον, ἀλλὰ μαστὸς ἦν ὑπὲρ αὐτῶν παρ' ὃν ἦν ἡ στενὴ αὕτη ὁδὸς ἐφ' ἣ ἐκάθηντο οἱ φύλακες. ἔφοδος μέντοι αὐτόθεν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους ἦν οἱ ἐπὶ τῇ φανεράῃ ὁδῷ ἐκάθηντο.

Καὶ τὴν μὲν νύκτα ἐνταῦθα διήγαγον· ἐπεὶ δ' ἡμέρα ὑπέφαιεν, ἐπορεύοντο σιγῇ συντεταγμένοι ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους· καὶ γὰρ ὁμίχλη ἐγένετο, ὥστ' ἔλαθον ἐγγὺς



|strew, dismember καὶ |altogether; οὐδὲ |bring/come to, near, into contact  
|yes, certainly |with

ἦν τῇ |entrance |some δὲ τῶν λοχαγῶν, εἰ μὴ ταύτῃ

δύναιτο, ἄλλῃ ἐπειρῶντο· καὶ ταῦτα ἐποιοῦν μέχρι

|darkness ἔγένετο· ἐπεὶ δὲ ὥοντο |unseen, οὐ· αἱ ἀπιόντες,  
|cult, obscure

τότε ἀπῆλθον ἐπὶ τὸ δεῖπνον· ἐτύχανον δὲ καὶ |without  
|dinner

ὄντες αὐτῶν οἱ |guard the rear . οἱ μέντοι πολέμιοι

οὐδὲν ἐπαύσαντο δι' ὅλης τῆς νυκτὸς |roll τοὺς

|stone |conclude, declare ἦν τῷ |noise  
|from evidence

Οἱ δ' ἔχοντες τὸν ἡγεμόνα |circle, |be superior to; be left  
|wheel |over; still exist

|seize, understand, catch, guard; ἀμφὶ πῦρ καθημένους·  
|overtake; (mp) happen |sentry

καὶ τοὺς μὲν |kill τοὺς δὲ |chase hard αὐτοὶ

|there, here...ενον ὡς τὸ ἄκρον κατέχοντες. οἱ δ' οὐ κατεῖχον,

ἀλλὰ |breast ἦν ὑπὲρ αὐτῶν παρ' ὃν ἦν ἡ |narrow ἕστη

ὁδὸς ἐφ' ἣ ἐκάθηντο οἱ |guard; |accessible; inspec-|from that place  
|sentry |tor; entrance; at-

ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους ἦν οἱ ἐπὶ τῇ |visible, |tack ἔκάθηντο.  
|conspicuous

Καὶ τὴν μὲν νύκτα |there, here |lead through; πεὶ δ' ἡμέρα  
|pass a time

|show a little, ἐπορεύοντο σιγῇ |gather, assemble ἐπὶ τοὺς

πολεμίους· καὶ γὰρ ὁμίχλη ἐγένετο, ὥστ' ἔλαθον ἐγγὺς

in every direction — so that it was absolutely out of the question even to approach the entrance of the pass. Some of the officers finding themselves baulked at this point, kept trying other ways, nor did they desist till darkness set in; and then, when they thought they would not be seen retiring, they returned to supper. Some of them who had been on duty in the rearguard had had no breakfast (it so happened). However, the enemy never ceased rolling down their stones all through the night, as was easy to infer from the booming sound.

The party with the guide made a circuit and surprised the enemy's guards seated round their fire, and after killing some, and driving out the rest, took their places, thinking that they were in possession of the height. As a matter of fact they were not, for above them lay a breast-like hill skirted by the narrow road on which they had found the guards seated. Still, from the spot in question there was an approach to the enemy, who were seated on the pass before mentioned.

Here then they passed the night, but at the first glimpse of dawn they marched stealthily and in battle order against the enemy. There was a mist, so that they could get quite close without being observed. But

*vocabulary***ἀλαλάζω** give war cry**ἀνιμάω** pull up**ἄνω** (ἄ) accomplish, pass, waste;

upwards, out to sea

**ἀποκόπτω** cut off**ἀτριβής** untrodden, not worn**διαξέγνυμι** (ῶ) take apart**ἐκβαίνω** come forth, disembark ~basis**Ἑλλην** Greek**εὐζωνος** well-girded ~zone**εὐοδος** easily passable**ἡγεμών** -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide,

chief ~hegemony

**ἡμισυς** half ~hemisphere**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch,

overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy

**λόφος** neck, crest on a helmet, hilltop**ὀπισθεν** behind, hereafter**ὀπισθοφύλαξ** rear guard ~phylactery**παρακελεύομαι** recommend,

encourage

**προκαταλαμβάνω** seize beforehand

~epilepsy

**προσβάλλω** hit, attack, approach;

attach, offer ~ballistic

**προσδοκάω** expect**προσέρχομαι** come forward, surrender,

come in

**σάλπιγξ** -γος (f) trumpet**ὑποζύγιον** beast of burden ~zygote**φανερός** visible, conspicuous ~photon**φθέγγομαι** make a sound, utter

~diphthong

**χωρίον** area; downwards

προσελθόντες. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶδον ἀλλήλους, ἥ τε σάλπιγξ ἐφθέγγετο καὶ ἀλαλάξαντες ἔεντο ἐπὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους· οἱ δὲ οὐκ ἐδέξαντο, ἀλλὰ λιπόντες τὴν ὁδὸν φεύγοντες ὀλίγοι ἀπέθνησκον· εὖζωνοι γὰρ ἦσαν. οἱ δὲ ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον ἀκούσαντες τῆς σάλπιγγος εὐθὺς ἔεντο ἄνω κατὰ τὴν φανεράν ὁδόν· ἄλλοι δὲ τῶν στρατηγῶν κατὰ ἀτριβεῖς ὁδοὺς ἐπορεύοντο ἢ ἔτυχον ἕκαστοι ὄντες, καὶ ἀναβάντες ὥς ἐδύναντο ἀνίμων ἀλλήλους τοῖς δόρασι. καὶ οὗτοι πρῶτοι συνέμειξαν τοῖς προκαταλαβοῦσι τὸ χωρίον. Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἔχων τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων τοὺς ἡμίσεις ἐπορεύετο ἥπερ οἱ τὸν ἡγεμόνα ἔχοντες· εὐοδωτάτη γὰρ ἦν τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις· τοὺς δὲ ἡμίσεις ὀπισθεν τῶν ὑποζυγίων ἔταξε. πορευόμενοι δ' ἐντυγχάνουσι λόφῳ ὑπὲρ τῆς ὁδοῦ κατειλημμένῳ ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων, οὓς ἢ ἀποκόψαι ἦν ἀνάγκη ἢ διεξεῦχθαι ἀπὸ τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων. καὶ αὐτοὶ μὲν ἂν ἐπορεύθησαν ἥπερ οἱ ἄλλοι, τὰ δὲ ὑποζύγια οὐκ ἦν ἄλλη ἢ ταύτῃ ἐκβῆναι.

Ἦνθα δὴ παρακελευσάμενοι ἀλλήλοις προσβάλλουσι

|come forward, sur-render, come in ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶδον ἀλλήλους, ἣ τε |trumpet  
 |make a sound, ut-|give war cry ἔεντο ἐπὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους·  
 |ter  
 οἱ δὲ οὐκ ἐδέξαντο, ἀλλὰ λιπόντες τὴν ὁδὸν φεύγοντες  
 ὀλίγοι ἀπέθνησκον· |well-girded γὰρ ἦσαν. οἱ δὲ ἀμφὶ  
 Χειρίσοφον ἀκούσαντες τῆς |trumpet εὐθὺς ἔεντο ἄνω  
 κατὰ τὴν |visible, ᾧ· ἄλλοι δὲ τῶν στρατηγῶν κατὰ  
 |conspicuous  
 |untrodden, ἥ· ᾧ· ῥεύοντο ἣ ἔτυχον ἕκαστοι ὄντες, καὶ  
 ἀναβάντες ὡς ἐδύναντο |pull up ἀλλήλους τοῖς δόρασι. καὶ  
 οὗτοι πρῶτοι συνέμειξαν τοῖς |seize beforehand τὸ |area; downwards  
 Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἔχων τῶν |rear guard τοὺς |half  
 ἐπορεύετο ἥπερ οἱ τὸν |leader ἔχοντες· |easily γὰρ  
 |passable  
 ἦν τοῖς |beast of burden ἡς δὲ |half |behind, τῶν |beast of burden  
 |hereafter  
 ἔταξε. πορευόμενοι δ' ἐντυγχάνουσι |neck, crést ὅν αἱ ὁδοῦ  
 |helmet, hilltop  
 |seize, understand, catch, ὧν πολεμίῳ, οὗς ἣ |cut off ἦν  
 |overtake; (mp) happen  
 ἀνάγκη ἣ |take apart ἀπὸ τῶν ἄλλων |Greek καὶ αὐτοὶ  
 μὲν ἂν ἐπορεύθησαν ἥπερ οἱ ἄλλοι, τὰ δὲ |beast of burden ἦν  
 ἄλλη ἣ ταύτῃ |come forth  
 Ἐνθα δὲ |recommend, ἀλλήλοισι |hit, attack, approach;  
 |encourage |attach, offer

as soon as they caught sight of one another, the trumpet sounded, and with a loud cheer they rushed upon the fellows, who did not wait their coming, but left the road and made off; with the loss of only a few lives however, so nimble were they. Cheirisophus and his men, catching the sound of the bugle, charged up by the well-marked road, while others of the generals pushed their way up by pathless routes, where each division chanced to be; the men mounting as they were best able, and hoisting one another up by means of their spears; and these were the first to unite with the party who had already taken the position by storm. Xenophon, with the rearguard, followed the path which the party with the guide had taken, since it was easiest for the beasts of burthen; one half of his men he had posted in rear of the baggage animals; the other half he had with himself. In their course they encountered a crest above the road, occupied by the enemy, whom they must either dislodge or be themselves cut off from the rest of the Hellenes. The men by themselves could have taken the same route as the rest, but the baggage animals could not mount by any other way than this.

Here then, with shouts of encouragement to each other, they dashed at the hill with

*vocabulary*

**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured ~helix  
**ἄτε** as if; since  
**ἄφοδος** departure, return; toilet, shit  
**ἄω** aor: to sate ~sate  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**ἐγγύς** near  
**Ἕλλην** Greek  
**ἐννοέω** consider  
**ἐρῆμος** empty  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch, overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy  
**καταλείπω** leave behind, abandon ~eclipse  
**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon  
**κύκλος** circle, wheel ~cycle  
**λόφος** neck, crest on a helmet, hilltop

**λοχαγός** (ᾱ) captain  
**λόχος** ambush, band, childbirth ~lie  
**μαστός** nipple, breast  
**ὅπη** wherever, however  
**ὄρθιος** shrill; steep, straight  
**παρέρχομαι** pass, escape  
**προσίστημι** be allowed near  
**στενός** narrow  
**τοξεύω** shoot an arrow at ~toxic  
**ὕποζύγιον** beast of burden ~zygote  
**φυγὰς** -δος (m, 3) exile, refugee ~fugitive  
**φυγή** flight, means of escape ~fugitive  
**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch ~phylactery  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

πρὸς τὸν λόφον ὀρθίοις τοῖς λόχοις, οὐ κύκλῳ ἀλλὰ  
 καταλιπόντες ἄφοδον τοῖς πολεμίοις, εἰ βούλονται  
 φεύγειν. καὶ τέως μὲν αὐτοὺς ἀναβαίνοντας ὅπῃ ἐδύναντο  
 ἕκαστος οἱ βάρβαροι ἐτόξευον καὶ ἔβαλλον, ἐγγὺς δ' οὐ  
 προσίεντο, ἀλλὰ φυγῇ λείπουνσι τὸ χωρίον. καὶ τοῦτόν τε  
 παρελλύθεσαν οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ ἕτερον ὁρώσιν ἔμπροσθεν  
 λόφον κατεχόμενον ἐπὶ τοῦτον αὐθις ἐδόκει πορεύεσθαι.  
 ἐννοήσας δ' ὁ Ξενοφῶν μή, εἰ ἔρημον καταλίποι τὸν  
 ἡλωκότα λόφον, καὶ πάλιν λαβόντες οἱ πολέμιοι ἐπιθοῦντο  
 τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις παριούσιν ἐπὶ πολὺν δ' ἦν τὰ ὑποζύγια  
 ἅτε διὰ στενῆς τῆς ὁδοῦ πορευόμενα, καταλείπει ἐπὶ τοῦ  
 λόφου λοχαγοὺς Κηφισόδωρον Κηφισοφώντος Ἀθηναῖον  
 καὶ Ἀμφικράτην Ἀμφιδήμου Ἀθηναῖον καὶ Ἀρχαγόραν  
 Ἀργεῖον φυγάδα, αὐτὸς δὲ σὺν τοῖς λοιποῖς ἐπορεύετο  
 ἐπὶ τὸν δεύτερον λόφον, καὶ τῷ αὐτῷ τρόπῳ καὶ τοῦτον  
 αἰροῦσιν. ἔτι δ' αὐτοῖς τρίτος μαστὸς λοιπὸς ἦν πολὺν  
 ὀρθιώτατος ὁ ὑπὲρ τῆς ἐπὶ τῷ πυρὶ καταληφθείσης  
 φυλακῆς τῆς νυκτὸς ὑπὸ τῶν



πρὸς τὸν |neck, |shrill; steep, |ambush, band, |circle, ἀλλὰ  
 crest |straight |childbirth |wheel  
 καταλιπόν<sup>α</sup> |on |departure, re- πολεμίοις, εἰ βούλονται  
 helmet, |turn; toilet,  
 hilltop |shit  
 φεύγειν. καὶ τέως μὲν αὐτοὺς ἀναβαίνοντας |wherever, |ντο  
 |however

ἕκαστος οἱ |non-Greek |shoot an arrow at Ἴλλον, |near δ' οὐ

|be allowed near ἄ |flight, means |σι τὸ |area; downwards ἰόν τε  
 |of escape

|pass, escape οἱ |Greek καὶ ἕτερον ὁρώσιν ἔμπροσθεν

|neck, crest on a ἄ |μενον ἐπὶ τοῦτον αὖθις ἐδόκει πορεύεσθαι.  
 helmet, hilltop

|consider δ' ὁ Ξενοφῶν μή, εἰ ἔρημον καταλίποι τὸν

|be cap- |neck, crest on a ἄ |λιν λαβόντες οἱ πολέμοι ἐπιθοῦντο  
 |tured |helmet, hilltop

τοῖς |beast of burden ...ριοῦσιν ἐπὶ πολὺ δ' ἦν τὰ |beast of burden

ἄτε διὰ |narrow τῆς ὁδοῦ πορευόμενα, καταλείπει ἐπὶ τοῦ

|neck, |captain Κηφισόδωρον Κηφισοφώντος Ἀθηναίων  
 crest  
 on a  
 helmet, ἄ |ἀμφικράτην Ἀμφιδήμου Ἀθηναίων καὶ Ἀρχαγόραν  
 hilltop

Ἀργεῖον |exile, , αὐτὸς δὲ σὺν τοῖς λοιποῖς ἐπορεύετο  
 |refugee

ἐπὶ τὸν δεύτερον |neck, crest on a ἄ |αὐτῷ τρόπῳ καὶ τοῦτον  
 |helmet, hilltop

αἰροῦσιν. ἔτι δ' αὐτοῖς τρίτος |breast λοιπὸς ἦν πολὺ

|shrill; steep, ὁ ὑπὲρ τῆς ἐπὶ τῷ πυρὶ |seize, understand, catch, over-  
 |straight |take; (mp) happen

|guard, τῆς νυκτὸς ὑπὸ τῶν  
 |prison,  
 |watch

their storming columns, not from all sides, but leaving an avenue of escape for the enemy, if he chose to avail himself of it. For a while, as the men scrambled up where each best could, the natives kept up a fire of arrows and darts, yet did not receive them at close quarters, but presently left the position in flight. No sooner, however, were the Hellenes safely past this crest, than they came in sight of another in front of them, also occupied, and deemed it advisable to storm it also. But now it struck Xenophon that if they left the ridge just taken unprotected in their rear, the enemy might re-occupy it and attack the baggage animals as they filed past, presenting a long extended line owing to the narrowness of the road by which they made their way. To obviate this, he left some officers in charge of the ridge—Cephisodorus, son of Cephisophon, an Athenian; Amphicrates, the son of Amphidemus, an Athenian; and Archagoras, an Argive exile—while he in person with the rest of the men attacked the second ridge; this they took in the same fashion, only to find that they had still a third knoll left, far the steepest of the three. This was none other than the *mamelon* mentioned as above the outpost, which had been captured over their fire by the volunteer storming party in the night. But

*vocabulary*

**ἄκρον** crest, extremity ~acute

**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme ~acute

**ἁλίσκομαι** be captured ~helix

**ἄλλομαι** to jump ~sally

**ἀμαχητί** without a fight

**ἀντίπορος** on the other side, shore

**ἀπαιτέω** demand to have returned

**ἀποκόπτω** cut off

**ἀπολείπω** leave behind, fail ~eclipse

**ἀπολιμπάνω** leave behind, fail

**βάρβαρος** non-Greek

**διαλέγω** go through, debate ~legion

**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish

~practice

**ἐγγύς** near

**ἐθελοντής** -οῦ (m, 1) a volunteer

**Ἑλλήν** Greek

**ἐρμηνεύς** -ος (m) interpreter

**θαυμαστός** wonderful; admirable

**καθοράω** look down ~panorama

**καίω** burn ~caustic

**κυκλώω** circle, encircle

**λόφος** neck, crest on a helmet, hilltop

**λόχος** ambush, band, childbirth ~lie

**μαστός** nipple, breast

**ὀμαλός** smooth ~homoerotic

**ὀπισθεν** behind, hereafter

**ὀπισθοφύλαξ** rear guard ~phylactery

**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle

~hoplite

**πέτρα** rock, cliff, reef ~petrified

**προέρχομαι** proceed, come out

**προσμείγνυμι** (ῶ) reach out to,

approach

**σπονδή** libation, treaty ~spontaneous

**συνομολογέω** agree

**τελευταῖος** last, final

**ὕάγω** lead under the yoke, lead away

from ~demagogue

**ὕποπτεύω** guess, observe, be

suspicious of

**χωρέω** withdraw, give way to (+dat)

~heir

ἐθελοντῶν. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγγὺς ἐγένοντο οἱ Ἕλληνες, λείπουσιν οἱ βάρβαροι ἀμαχητὶ τὸν μαστόν, ὥστε θαυμαστὸν πᾶσι γενέσθαι καὶ ὑπώπτειον δείσαντας αὐτοὺς μὴ κυκλωθέντες πολιορκοῦντο ἀπολιπεῖν. οἱ δ' ἄρα ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄκρου καθορῶντες τὰ ὀπισθεν γιγνόμενα πάντες ἐπὶ τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλακας ἐχώρουν.

Καὶ Ξενοφῶν μὲν σὺν τοῖς νεωτάτοις ἀνέβαινεν ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον, τοὺς δὲ ἄλλους ἐκέλευσεν ὑπάγειν, ὅπως οἱ τελευταῖοι λόχοι προσμείξαιαν, καὶ προελθόντας κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν ἐν τῷ ὁμαλῷ θέσθαι τὰ ὄπλα εἶπε. καὶ ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ ἦλθεν Ἀρχαγόρας ὁ Ἀργεῖος πεφευγὼς καὶ λέγει ὡς ἀπεκόπησαν ἀπὸ τοῦ λόφου καὶ ὅτι τεθνᾶσι Κηφισόδωρος καὶ Ἀμφικράτης καὶ ἄλλοι ὅσοι μὴ ἀλόμενοι κατὰ τῆς πέτρας πρὸς τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλακας ἀφίκοντο. ταῦτα δὲ διαπραξάμενοι οἱ βάρβαροι ἦκον ἐπ' ἀντίπορον λόφον τῷ μαστῷ· καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν διελέγετο αὐτοῖς δι' ἑρμηνέως περὶ σπονδῶν καὶ τοὺς νεκροὺς ἀπῆτει. οἱ δὲ ἔφασαν ἀποδώσειν ἐφ' ᾧ μὴ καίειν τὰς οἰκίας. συνωμολόγει

|a volunteer . ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγγὺς ἐγένοντο οἱ |Greek , λείπουσιν

οἱ βάρβαροι |without a fight |breast , ὥστε |wonderful;  
|admirable

πᾶσι γενέσθαι καὶ |guess, observe, ἴσαντας αὐτοὺς μὴ  
|be suspicious of

|circle, encircle πολιορκοῖντο ἀπολιπεῖν. οἱ δ' ἄρα ἀπὸ τοῦ

ἄκρου |look down τὰ ὀπισθεν γιγνόμενα πάντες ἐπὶ τοὺς

|rear guard |withdraw, . give  
|way to (+dat)

Καὶ Ξενοφῶν μὲν σὺν τοῖς νεωτάτοις ἀνέβαινεν ἐπὶ

τὸ ἄκρον, τοὺς δὲ ἄλλους ἐκέλευσεν |lead , ὅπως οἱ

|last, final |am- |reach out to, καὶ |proceed, come out . ἀ τήν  
|bush, |approach

ὁδὸν ἐν τῷ |band, |smother θέσθαι τὰ ὅπλα εἶπε. καὶ ἐν τούτῳ τῷ  
|smother  
|birth

χρόνῳ ἦλθεν Ἀρχαγόρας ὁ Ἀργεῖος πεφευγὼς καὶ λέγει ὥς

|cut off ἀπὸ τοῦ |neck, crest ὅν a τεθνᾶσι Κηφισόδωρος  
|helmet, hilltop

καὶ Ἀμφικράτης καὶ ἄλλοι ὅσοι μὴ ἀλόμενοι κατὰ τῆς

|rock πρὸς τοὺς |rear guard ἀφίκοντο. ταῦτα δὲ

|travel over, ac- οἱ βάρβαροι ἦκον ἐπ' |on the other |neck, crest on a  
|comply |side, shore |helmet, hilltop

τῷ |breast καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν |go through, debate δι' |interpreter

περὶ |libation, καὶ τοὺς νεκροὺς |demand τὸ δὲ ἔφασαν  
|treaty |have returned

ἀποδώσειν ἐφ' ᾧ μὴ |burn τὰς οἰκίας. |agree

when the Hellenes were close, the natives, to the astonishment of all, without a struggle deserted the knoll. It was conjectured that they had left their position from fear of being encircled and besieged, but the fact was that they, from their higher ground, had been able to see what was going on in the rear, and had all made off in this fashion to attack the rearguard.

So then Xenophon, with the youngest men, scaled up to the top, leaving orders to the rest to march on slowly, so as to allow the hindmost companies to unite with them; they were to advance by the road, and when they reached the level to ground arms. Meanwhile the Argive Archagoras arrived, in full flight, with the announcement that they had been dislodged from the first ridge, and that Cephisodorus and Amphicrates were slain, with a number of others besides, all in fact who had not jumped down the crags and so reached the rearguard. After this achievement the barbarians came to a crest facing the mamelon, and Xenophon held a colloquy with them by means of an interpreter, to negotiate a truce, and demanded back the dead bodies. These they agreed to restore if he would not burn their houses, and to

*vocabulary*

ἄμφω both ~amphora  
 ἀπολείπω leave behind, fail ~eclipse  
 ἀπολιμπάνω leave behind, fail  
 ἀποχωρέω go away from, retreat  
 ἀσπίς -δος (f) shield ~spit  
 δαφιλής abundant; generous  
 διαλέγω go through, debate ~legion  
 διαπράσσω travel over, accomplish  
 ~practice  
 ἐνταῦθα there, here  
 ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable  
 ἡγεμών -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide,  
 chief ~hegemony  
 θόρυβος noise, clamor  
 κατάγνυμι (ῥ) break up, shatter  
 κονιατός (ᾱ) plastered  
 κορυφή peak, crown  
 κυλινδέω roll ~cylinder  
 λάκκος pond, tank

μαστός nipple, breast  
 ὁμός same ~homoerotic  
 ὁμοῦ together  
 ὁμός unite ~homoerotic  
 ὀπλίτης -ου (ῖ, m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
 infantryman ~hoplite  
 ὄπλον tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
 ~hoplite  
 πέτρος rock ~petrified  
 προβάλλω throw before; propose;  
 (mp) pretend, abandon, nominate  
 ~ballistic  
 προστρέχω run to, join, attack  
 σκέλος -εος (n, 3) leg ~scoliosis  
 σκηνέω camp  
 στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
 συντάσσω gather, assemble ~syntax  
 συρρέω flow together  
 ὑπασπιστής -οῦ (m, 1) armored  
 soldier

ταῦτα ὁ Ξενοφῶν. ἐν ᾧ δὲ τὸ μὲν ἄλλο στράτευμα παρῆι, οἱ δὲ ταῦτα διελέγοντο, πάντες οἱ ἐκ τούτου τοῦ τόπου συνερρύησαν· ἐνταῦθα ἴσταντο οἱ πολέμοιοι. καὶ ἐπεὶ ἤρξαντο καταβαίνειν ἀπὸ τοῦ μαστοῦ πρὸς τοὺς ἄλλους ἔνθα τὰ ὄπλα ἔκειντο, ἴεντο δὴ οἱ πολέμοιοι πολλῶ πληθύνει καὶ θορύβῳ· καὶ ἐπεὶ ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ τῆς κορυφῆς τοῦ μαστοῦ ἀφ' οὗ Ξενοφῶν κατέβαινεν, ἐκυλίνδουν πέτρους· καὶ ἐνὸς μὲν κατέαξαν τὸ σκέλος, Ξενοφῶντα δὲ ὁ ὑπασπιστὴς ἔχων τὴν ἀσπίδα ἀπέλιπεν· Εὐρύλοχος δὲ Λουσιεὺς Ἀρκὰς προσέδραμεν αὐτῷ ὀπλίτης, καὶ πρὸ ἀμφοῖν προβεβλημένος ἀπεχώρει, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι πρὸς τοὺς συντεταγμένους ἀπῆλθον.

Ἐκ δὲ τούτου πᾶν ὁμοῦ ἐγένετο τὸ Ἑλληνικόν, καὶ ἐσκήνησαν αὐτοῦ ἐν πολλαῖς καὶ καλαῖς οἰκίαις καὶ ἐπιτηδείοις δαψιλέσι· καὶ γὰρ οἶνος πολὺς ἦν, ὥστε ἐν λάκκοις κονιατοῖς εἶχον. Ξενοφῶν δὲ καὶ Χειρίσοφος διεπράξαντο ὥστε λαβόντες τοὺς νεκροὺς ἀπέδωκαν τὸν ἡγεμόνα· καὶ πάντα ἐποίησαν τοῖς ἀποθανοῦσιν ἐκ τῶν



ταῦτα ὁ Ξενοφῶν. ἐν ᾧ δὲ τὸ μὲν ἄλλο |army  
 παρήει, οἱ δὲ ταῦτα |go through, debate . ἐς οἱ ἐκ τούτου τοῦ  
 τόπου |flow together |there, here ὕψαντο οἱ πολέμοιοι. καὶ  
 ἐπεὶ ἤρξαντο καταβαίνειν ἀπὸ τοῦ |breast πρὸς τοὺς  
 ἄλλους ἔνθα τὰ |tool ἔκειντο, ἔεντο δὴ οἱ πολέμοιοι πολλῶ  
 πλήθει καὶ |noise, clamor καὶ ἐπεὶ ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ τῆς |peak, crown τοῦ  
 |breast ἀφ' οὗ Ξενοφῶν κατέβαινε, |roll |rock  
 καὶ ἐνὸς μὲν |break up, shatter |leg , Ξενοφῶντα δὲ ὁ  
 |armored ἔχων τὴν |shield ἀπέλιπεν· Εὐρύλοχος δὲ  
 |soldier  
 Λουσιεὺς Ἄρκας |run to, join, attack ἑ. ἑ. |hoplite, heavy πρὸ  
 |infantryman  
 |both |throw before; go away καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι πρὸς τοὺς  
 |propose; (mp) from, retreat  
 |pretend, abandon.  
 |gather, assemble, nominate ἀπηλθόν.  
 Ἐκ δὲ τούτου πᾶν ὁμοῦ ἐγένετο τὸ Ἑλληνικόν, καὶ  
 |camp αὐτοῦ ἐν πολλαῖς καὶ καλαῖς οἰκίαις καὶ  
 |fit, suitable |abundant; καὶ γὰρ οἶνος πολὺς ἦν, ὥστε ἐν  
 |generous  
 |pond, tank ονιαιοῖς εἶχον. Ξενοφῶν δὲ καὶ Χειρίσοφος  
 |travel over, ac- ὥστε λαβόντες τοὺς νεκροὺς ἀπέδοσαν τὸν  
 |comply  
 |leader καὶ πάντα ἐποίησαν τοῖς ἀποθανοῦσιν ἐκ τῶν

these terms Xenophon agreed. Meanwhile, as the rest of the army filed past, and the colloquy was proceeding, all the people of the place had time to gather gradually, and the enemy formed; and as soon as the Hellenes began to descend from the mamelon to join the others where the troops were halted, on rushed the foe, in full force, with hue and cry. They reached the summit of the mamelon from which Xenophon was descending, and began rolling down crags. One man's leg was crushed to pieces. Xenophon was left by his shield-bearer, who carried off his shield, but Eurylochus of Lusian, an Arcadian hoplite, ran up to him, and threw his shield in front to protect both of them; so the two together beat a retreat, and so too the rest, and joined the serried ranks of the main body.

After this the whole Hellenic force united, and took up their quarters there in numerous beautiful dwellings, with an ample store of provisions, for there was wine so plentiful that they had it in cemented cisterns. Xenophon and Cheirisophus arranged to recover the dead, and in return restored the guide; afterwards they did everything for the dead, according to the means at their disposal, with the customary

*vocabulary*

**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not needing ~Sp. sin  
**ἄνω** (ἄ) accomplish, pass, waste; upwards, out to sea  
**ἀποφεύγω** avoid, escape, go free  
**ἀπόφραξις** blocking up  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**δίπηχυς** 2 cubits long  
**ἐγγύθεν** near  
**ἐγγύς** near  
**ἐκβαίνω** come forth, disembark ~basis  
**ἐλαφρός** nimble, light on one's feet; light, bearable ~elevator  
**ἔλκω** drag, pull, hoist; rape  
**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee  
**ἡγεμῶν** -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide, chief ~hegemony

**ἰσχυρός** (ῥ) strong, forceful, violent  
**κωλύω** (ῥ) hinder, prevent  
**νευρά** bowstring ~neuro  
**ὅπη** wherever, however  
**ὅπισθεν** behind, hereafter  
**πάροδος** (f) detour, side way, mountain pass  
**προκαταλαμβάνω** seize beforehand ~epilepsy  
**στενός** narrow  
**σφενδόνη** sling  
**τόξευμα** -τος (n, 3) arrow  
**τοξεύω** shoot an arrow at ~toxic  
**τόξον** bow ~toxic  
**τοξότης** -ου (m, 1) archer ~toxic  
**τρίπηχυς** 3 cubits long  
**ὕστεραίῳς** the next; later  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

δυνατῶν ὥσπερ νομίζεται ἀνδράσιν ἀγαθοῖς.

Τῇ δὲ ὑστεραία ἄνευ ἡγεμόνος ἐπορεύοντο· μαχόμενοι δ' οἱ πολέμιοι καὶ ὄπη εἷη στενὸν χωρίον προκαταλαμβάνοντες ἐκώλουν τὰς παρόδους. ὁπότε μὲν οὖν τοὺς πρώτους κωλύοιεν, Ξενοφῶν ὄπισθεν ἐκβαίνων πρὸς τὰ ὄρη ἔλυε τὴν ἀπόφραξιν τῆς ὁδοῦ τοῖς πρώτοις ἀνωτέρω πειρώμενος γίγνεσθαι τῶν κωλυνόντων, ὁπότε δὲ τοῖς ὄπισθεν ἐπιθοῖντο, Χειρίσοφος ἐκβαίνων καὶ πειρώμενος ἀνωτέρω γίγνεσθαι τῶν κωλυνόντων ἔλυε τὴν ἀπόφραξιν τῆς παρόδου τοῖς ὄπισθεν· καὶ αἰεὶ οὕτως ἐβοήθουν ἀλλήλοις καὶ ἰσχυρῶς ἀλλήλων ἐπεμέλοντο. ἦν δὲ καὶ ὁπότε αὐτοῖς τοῖς ἀναβᾶσι πολλὰ πράγματα παρείχον οἱ βάρβαροι πάλιν καταβαίνουσιν· ἐλαφροὶ γὰρ ἦσαν ὥστε καὶ ἐγγύθεν φεύγοντες ἀποφεύγειν· οὐδὲν γὰρ εἶχον ἄλλο ἢ τόξα καὶ σφενδόνας.

Ἄριστοι δὲ καὶ τοξόται ἦσαν· εἶχον δὲ τόξα ἐγγύς τριπήχη, τὰ δὲ τοξεύματα πλεόν ἢ διπήχη· εἰλκον δὲ τὰς νευρὰς ὁπότε τοξεύοιεν πρὸς τὸ κάτω τοῦ τόξου τῷ

δυνατῶν ὥσπερ νομίζεται ἀνδράσιν ἀγαθοῖς.

Τῇ δὲ |the next; away from; not hav- ρεύοντο· μαχόμενοι δ' οἱ  
|later |ing; not needing

πολέμιοι καὶ |wherever|narrow χωρίον |seize beforehand  
|however

|hinder, τὰς |detour, pass ὁπότε μὲν οὖν τοὺς πρώτους  
|prevent

|hinder, , Ξενοφῶν ὅπισθεν |come forth πρὸς τὰ ὄρη  
|prevent

ἔλυε τὴν |blocking up τῆς ὁδοῦ τοῖς πρώτοις |accomplish, pass,  
waste; upwards, out to

πειρώμενος γίγνεσθαι τῶν |hinder, , ὁπότε δὲ τοῖς  
|prevent sea

ὅπισθεν ἐπιθοῖντο, Χειρίσοφος |come forth καὶ πειρώμενος

|accomplish, pass, waste; up-|hinder, ἔλυε τὴν |blocking up  
|wards, out to sea |prevent

τῆς |detour, pass οἷς ὅπισθεν· καὶ ἀεὶ οὕτως ἐβοήθουν

ἀλλήλοις καὶ ἰσχυρῶς ἀλλήλων |take care of, ἦν δὲ καὶ  
|oversee

ὁπότε αὐτοῖς τοῖς ἀναβάσι πολλὰ πράγματα παρείχον οἱ

βάρβαροι πάλιν καταβαίνουνσιν· |light in weight ἦσαν ὥστε

καὶ |near φεύγοντες |avoid, escape, οὐδὲν γὰρ εἶχον ἄλλο  
|go free

ἢ τόξα καὶ |sling

Ἄριστοι δὲ καὶ |archer ἦσαν· εἶχον δὲ τόξα ἐγγὺς

|3 cubits ἀ δὲ |arrow πλέον ἢ |2 cubits|drag, pull, τὰς  
|long |long |hoist; rape

|bowstring ᾧ ὅτε |shoot an arrow at ὃ κάτω τοῦ τόξου τῷ

honours paid to good men.

Next day they set off without a guide; and the enemy, by keeping up a continuous battle and occupying in advance every narrow place, obstructed passage after passage. Accordingly, whenever the van was obstructed, Xenophon, from behind, made a dash up the hills and broke the barricade, and freed the vanguard by endeavouring to get above the obstructing enemy. Whenever the rear was the point attacked, Cheirisophus, in the same way, made a detour, and by endeavouring to mount higher than the barricaders, freed the passage for the rear rank; and in this way, turn and turn about, they rescued each other, and paid unflinching attention to their mutual needs. At times it happened that, the relief party having mounted, encountered considerable annoyance in their descent from the barbarians, who were so agile that they allowed them to come up quite close, before they turned back, and still escaped, partly no doubt because the only weapons they had to carry were bows and slings.

They were, moreover, excellent archers, using bows nearly three cubits long and arrows more than two cubits. When discharging the arrow, they draw the string by getting a purchase with the left foot planted forward on the lower end

*vocabulary*

**ἀχόντιον** diminutive of javelin  
**ἀναπνέω** catch one's breath ~apnea  
**ἀπαλλάξείω** wish to get rid of  
**ἀπαλλάσσω** free from, remove; be freed, depart  
**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some distance  
**ἀριστερός** left-hand  
**ἀσπίς** -δος (f) shield ~spit  
**αὐλίζομαι** live, lodge at  
**διατελέω** accomplish; keep doing ~apostle  
**δίπλεθρος** 60 meters long  
**Ἑλλην** Greek  
**ἐναγκυλάω** prepare darts  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**ἕξ** six ~hexagon  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**εὖρος** -εος (n, 3) width; (caps) the east wind

**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism  
**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism  
**θώραξ** -ηχος (m) breastplate ~thorax  
**κοιμάω** put to sleep; (pass) lie down, have sex  
**κώμη** village  
**μνημονεύω** remember, remind  
**ορίζω** divide; ordain, define ~horizon  
**παρέρχομαι** pass, escape  
**πόνος** toil, suffering ~osteopenia  
**προσβαίνω** proceed; step on ~basis  
**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)  
**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters  
**σύμπας** (α) all together  
**τόξευμα** -τος (n, 3) arrow  
**χρήσιμος** useful  
**χωρέω** withdraw, give way to (+dat) ~heir  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

ἀριστερῷ ποδὶ προσβαίνοντες. τὰ δὲ τοξεύματα ἐχώρει  
 διὰ τῶν ἀσπίδων καὶ διὰ τῶν θωράκων. ἐχρῶντο δὲ  
 αὐτοῖς οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἐπεὶ λάβοιεν, ἀκοντίοις ἐναγκυλῶντες.  
 ἐν τούτοις τοῖς χωρίοις οἱ Κρήτες χρησιμώτατοι ἐγένοντο.  
 ἦρχε δὲ αὐτῶν Στρατοκλῆς Κρής.

## 4.3

Ταύτην δ' αὖ τὴν ἡμέραν ἠγλίσθησαν ἐν ταῖς κώμαις  
 ταῖς ὑπὲρ τοῦ πεδίου παρὰ τὸν Κεντρίτην ποταμόν,  
 εὖρος ὡς δίπλεθρον, ὃς ὀρίζει τὴν Ἀρμενίαν καὶ τὴν  
 τῶν Καρδούχων χώραν. καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐνταῦθα  
 ἀνέπνευσαν ἄσμενοι ἰδόντες πεδίον· ἀπείχε δὲ τῶν ὀρέων  
 ὁ ποταμὸς ἕξ ἢ ἑπτὰ στάδια τῶν Καρδούχων. τότε μὲν  
 οὖν ἠγλίσθησαν μάλα ἡδέως καὶ τὰπιτήδεια ἔχοντες καὶ  
 πολλὰ τῶν παρεληλυθότων πόνων μνημονεύοντες. ἑπτὰ  
 γὰρ ἡμέρας ὅσασπερ ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ τῶν Καρδούχων  
 πάσας μαχόμενοι διετέλεσαν, καὶ ἔπαθον κακὰ ὅσα  
 οὐδὲ τὰ σύμπαντα ὑπὸ βασιλέως καὶ Τισσαφέρνους.  
 ὥς οὖν ἀπηλλαγμένοι τούτων ἡδέως ἐκοιμήθησαν.



|left-hand ποδὶ |proceed; step on . τὰ δὲ |arrow |withdraw, give way  
 |to (+dat)  
 διὰ τῶν |shield καὶ διὰ τῶν |breastplate . ἔχρωντο δὲ  
 αὐτοῖς οἱ |Greek , ἐπεὶ λάβοιεν, |diminutive |prepare darts  
 |of javelin  
 ἐν τούτοις τοῖς |area; downwards, ες |useful ἐγένοντο.  
 ἦρχε δὲ αὐτῶν Στρατοκλῆς Κρής.

## 4.3

Ταύτην δ' αὖ τὴν ἡμέραν |live, lodge at ἐν ταῖς |village  
 ταῖς ὑπὲρ τοῦ πεδίου παρὰ τὸν Κεντρίτην ποταμόν,  
 |width; (caps)60 meters ὅς |divide; or- Ἀρμενίαν καὶ τὴν  
 |the east wind|long |dain, define  
 τῶν Καρδούχων χώραν. καὶ οἱ |Greek |there, here  
 |catch one's|be pleased, enjoy . πεδίον· |ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some  
 |breath |distance  
 ὁ ποταμὸς ἔξ ἣ ἑπτὰ στάδια τῶν Καρδούχων. τότε μὲν  
 οὖν |live, lodge at μάλα |sweet καὶ |fit, suitable ἔχοντες καὶ  
 πολλὰ τῶν |pass, escape |toil, suf-|remember,  
 |fering |remind ἑπτὰ  
 γὰρ ἡμέρας ὅσας περ ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ τῶν Καρδούχων  
 πάσας μαχόμενοι |accomplish; , καὶ ἔπαθον κακὰ ὅσα  
 |keep doing  
 οὐδὲ τὰ |all together ὑπὸ βασιλέως καὶ Τισσαφέρνους.  
 ὥς οὖν ἀπηλλαγμένοι τούτων |sweet ἐκοιμήθησαν.

of the bow. The arrows pierced through shield and cuirass, and the Hellenes, when they got hold of them, used them as javelins, fitting them to their thongs. In these districts the Cretans were highly serviceable. They were under the command of Stratocles, a Cretan.

#### 4.3

During this day they bivouacked in the villages which lie above the plain of the river Centrites, which is about two hundred feet broad. It is the frontier river between Armenia and the country of the Carduchians. Here the Hellenes recruited themselves, and the sight of the plain filled them with joy, for the river was but six or seven furlongs distant from the mountains of the Carduchians. For the moment then they bivouacked right happily; they had their provisions, they had also many memories of the labours that were now passed; seeing that the last seven days spent in traversing the country of the Carduchians had been one long continuous battle, which had cost them more suffering than the whole of their troubles at the hands of the king and Tissaphernes put together. As though they were truly quit of them

*vocabulary***ἄλκιμος** brave; sturdily made

~Alexander

**ἀναχωρέω** return, retreat ~heir**ἄνω** (ᾱ) accomplish, pass, waste;  
upwards, out to sea**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain, be at  
some distance**ἀρπάζω** carry off, seize ~harpoon**βέλος** -εος (n, 3) missile ~ballistic**γέρον** wicker object**γυμνός** naked, unarmed**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis**ἐκβαίνω** come forth, disembark ~basis**ἐλεύθερος** not enslaved

Ἑλλήν Greek

**ἐξοπλίζω** prepare, arm ~hoplite**κωλύω** (ὀ) hinder, prevent**λίθος** (f) stone ~monolith**λόγχη** spear point; lot**μάστις** -εως (f) whip**μαστός** nipple, breast**μισθοφόρος** mercenary**ὀλισθηρός** slippery**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle

~hoplite

**ὄχθη** riverbank; any water's edge**παρατάσσω** place beside**πέραν** (ᾱ) on the other side, across**πλέθρον** 30 meters or its square

~plethora

**προσδοκάω** expect**στρατοπεδεύω** encamp or take up  
station ~strategy**τέσσαρες** four ~trapezoid**τόξευμα** -τος (n, 3) arrow**τραχύς** (ᾱ) rough ~trachea**χειροποίητος** artificial

Ἄμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ὁρώσιν ἱππέας που πέραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ  
ἐξωπλισμένους ὡς κωλύσοντας διαβαίνειν, πεζοὺς δ'  
ἐπὶ ταῖς ὄχθαις παρατεταγμένους ἄνω τῶν ἱππέων ὡς  
κωλύσοντας εἰς τὴν Ἀρμενίαν ἐκβαίνειν. ἦσαν δ' οὗτοι  
Ὀρόντα καὶ Ἀρτούχα Ἀρμένιοι καὶ Μάρδοι καὶ Χαλδαῖοι  
μισθοφόροι. ἐλέγοντο δὲ οἱ Χαλδαῖοι ἐλεύθεροί τε καὶ  
ἄλκιμοι εἶναι· ὅπλα δ' εἶχον γέρρα μακρὰ καὶ λόγχας. αἱ  
δὲ ὄχθαι αὐταὶ ἐφ' ὧν παρατεταγμένοι οὗτοι ἦσαν τρία  
ἢ τέτταρα πλέθρα ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἀπέειχον· ὁδὸς δὲ  
μία ὁρωμένη ἦν ἄγουσα ἄνω ὥσπερ χειροποίητος· ταύτῃ  
ἐπειρῶντο διαβαίνειν οἱ Ἕλληνες. ἐπεὶ δὲ πειρωμένους  
τό τε ὕδωρ ὑπὲρ τῶν μαστῶν ἐφαίνετο, καὶ τραχὺς ἦν ὁ  
ποταμὸς μεγάλοις λίθοις καὶ ὀλισθηροῖς, καὶ οὗτ' ἐν τῷ  
ὕδατι τὰ ὅπλα ἦν ἔχειν· εἰ δὲ μή, ἥρπαζεν ὁ ποταμός· ἐπὶ  
τε τῆς κεφαλῆς τὰ ὅπλα εἴ τις φέροι, γυμνοὶ ἐγίγνοντο  
πρὸς τὰ τοξεύματα καὶ τᾶλλα βέλη, ἀνεχώρησαν καὶ  
αὐτοῦ ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο παρὰ τὸν ποταμόν.

Ἐνθα δὲ αὐτοὶ τὴν πρόσθεν νύκτα ἦσαν ἐπὶ τοῦ ὄρους

Ἄμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ὁρώσιν ἱππέας που |across τοῦ ποταμοῦ

|prepare, arm ὥς |hinder, |pass over, cross . εἰζοὺς δ' |prevent

ἐπὶ ταῖς |river- |place beside ἄνω τῶν ἱππέων ὥς |bank

|hinder, εἰς τὴν Ἀρμενίαν |come forth ἦσαν δ' οὗτοι |prevent

Ὀρόντα καὶ Ἀρτούχα Ἀρμένιοι καὶ Μάρδοι καὶ Χαλδαῖοι

|mercenary . ἐλέγοντο δὲ οἱ Χαλδαῖοι |not enslaved . καὶ

|brave; εἶναι· ὅπλα δ' εἶχον |wicker μακρὰ καὶ |spear . αἱ |sturdily |object |point; |made |riverbank· ται ἐφ' ὧν |place beside οὗτοι ἦσαν τρία |lot

ἢ τέτταρα |30 me- ἱπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ |ward off, drive off, refrain, be at |ters or its |some distance

μία ὁρωμένη τὴν ἀγούσα ἄνω ὥσπερ |artificial ταύτη |square

ἐπειρῶντο |pass over, cross |Greek . ἐπεὶ δὲ πειρωμένοις

τό τε ὕδωρ ὑπὲρ τῶν μαστῶν ἐφαίνετο, καὶ |rough ἦν ὁ

ποταμὸς μεγάλους λίθοις καὶ |slippery , καὶ οὗτ' ἐν τῷ

ὕδατι τὰ ὅπλα ἦν ἔχειν· εἰ δὲ μή, |carry off, seize . ταμός· ἐπὶ

τε τῆς κεφαλῆς τὰ ὅπλα εἴ τις φέροι, |naked, ἡ γίνοντο |unarmed

πρὸς τὰ |arrow καὶ τὰλλα |missile |return, retreat καὶ

αὐτοῦ |encamp or take up sta- παρὰ τὸν ποταμόν. |tion

Ἐνθα δὲ αὐτοὶ τὴν πρόσθεν νύκτα ἦσαν ἐπὶ τοῦ ὄρους

for ever, they laid their heads to rest in sweet content.

But with the morrow's dawn they espied horsemen at a certain point across the river, armed *cap-à-pié*, as if they meant to dispute the passage. Infantry, too, drawn up in line upon the banks above the cavalry, threatened to prevent them debouching into Armenia. These troops were Armenian and Mardian and Chaldaean mercenaries belonging to Orontas and Artuchas. The last of the three, the Chaldaeans, were said to be a free and brave set of people. They were armed with long wicker shields and lances. The banks before named on which they were drawn up were a hundred yards or more distant from the river, and the single road which was visible was one leading upwards and looking like a regular artificially constructed highway. At this point the Hellenes endeavoured to cross, but on their making the attempt the water proved to be more than breast-deep, and the river bed was rough with great slippery stones, and as to holding their arms in the water, it was out of the question — the stream swept them away — or if they tried to carry them over the head, the body was left exposed to the arrows and other missiles; accordingly they turned back and encamped there by the bank of the river.

At the point where they had themselves been last night, up on the mountains, they could see the Carduchians

*vocabulary*

**ἀθυμία** (ῥ) despondency  
**ἀνδάνω** please ~hedonism  
**ἀπορία** difficulty, bottleneck ~pierce  
**ἀριστάω** eat lunch ~aristocrat  
**ἀριστοποιέω** (ᾱ) make breakfast  
**αὐτόματος** self-willed, accidental  
 ~after  
**δειπνέω** eat, dine  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis  
**διηγέομαι** detail, describe  
**δυσπορία** difficulty of passing  
 Ἑλλήν Greek  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**ἐξιμι** go forth; is possible ~ion  
**ἐξίημι** send forth, allow forth ~jet  
**ἐπίκειμαι** impose; shut a door  
**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism  
**ἡώς ἡῶθι** (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene  
**θύω** (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω

**κωλύω** (ῥ) hinder, prevent  
**λοχαγός** (ᾱ) captain  
**νεανίσκος** (ᾱ) young man  
**ὄναρ -τος** (n) dream  
**ὀπισθεν** behind, hereafter  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
 ~hoplite  
**ὀπόσος** as many as, how many, how  
 great  
**ὄρθρος** dawn  
**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon,  
 recommend, encourage  
**πέδη** shackles ~pedal  
**περιρρέω** flow around ~rheostat  
**προσέρχομαι** come forward, surrender,  
 come in  
**προστρέχω** run to, join, attack  
**στρατιά** army ~strategy  
**συλλέγω** collect, assemble ~legion  
**ὕποφαίνω** show a little ~photon

ἐώρων τοὺς Καρδούχους πολλοὺς συνειλεγμένους ἐν τοῖς  
 ὅπλοις. ἐνταῦθα δὴ πολλὴ ἀθυμία ἦν τοῖς Ἑλλησιν, ὁρῶσι  
 μὲν τοῦ ποταμοῦ τὴν δυσπορίαν, ὁρῶσι δὲ τοὺς διαβαίνειν  
 κωλύσοντας, ὁρῶσι δὲ τοῖς διαβαίνουσιν ἐπικεισομένους  
 τοὺς Καρδούχους ὀπισθεν. ταύτην μὲν οὖν τὴν ἡμέραν  
 καὶ νύκτα ἔμειναν ἐν πολλῇ ἀπορίᾳ ὄντες. Ξενοφῶν δὲ  
 ὄναρ εἶδεν· ἔδοξεν ἐν πέδαις δεδέσθαι, αὐται δὲ αὐτῷ  
 αὐτόμαται περιρρυῆναι, ὥστε λυθῆναι καὶ διαβαίνειν  
 ὅποσον ἐβούλετο. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὄρθρος ἦν, ἔρχεται πρὸς τὸν  
 Χειρίσοφον καὶ λέγει ὅτι ἐλπίδας ἔχει καλῶς ἔσεσθαι, καὶ  
 διηγείται αὐτῷ τὸ ὄναρ.

Ὁ δὲ ἦδετό τε καὶ ὡς τάχιστα ἕως ὑπέφαιναν ἐθύοντο  
 πάντες παρόντες οἱ στρατηγοί· καὶ τὰ ἱερὰ καλὰ  
 ἦν εὐθὺς ἐπὶ τοῦ πρώτου. καὶ ἀπιόντες ἀπὸ τῶν  
 ἱερῶν οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ παρήγγελλον τῇ  
 στρατιᾷ ἀριστοποιεῖσθαι. καὶ ἀριστῶντι τῷ Ξενοφῶντι  
 προσέτρεχον δύο νεανίσκω· ἦδεσαν γὰρ πάντες ὅτι ἐξείη  
 αὐτῷ καὶ ἀριστῶντι καὶ δειπνοῦντι προσελθεῖν καὶ εἰ



ἑώρων τοὺς Καρδούχους πολλοὺς |collect, assemble ἐν τοῖς

|tool . |there, here ἡ πολλὴ ἀθυμία ἦν τοῖς |Greek , ὁρώσι

μὲν τοῦ ποταμοῦ τὴν |difficulty of, ὁρώσι δὲ τοὺς |pass over, cross  
|passing

|hinder, , ὁρώσι δὲ τοῖς |pass over, cross |impose; shut a door  
|prevent

τοὺς Καρδούχους |behind, . ταύτην μὲν οὖν τὴν ἡμέραν  
|hereafter

καὶ νύκτα ἔμειναν ἐν πολλῇ |difficulty, ὄντες. Ξενοφῶν δὲ  
|bottleneck

|dream εἶδεν· ἔδοξεν ἐν |shackles δεδέσθαι, αὐται δὲ αὐτῷ

|self-willed, ac-|flow around . ὥστε λυθῆναι καὶ |pass over, cross  
|cidental

|as/how many/great . ἐπεὶ δὲ |dawn ἦν, ἔρχεται πρὸς τὸν

Χειρίσοφον καὶ λέγει ὅτι ἐλπίδας ἔχει καλῶς ἔσεσθαι, καὶ

|detail, αὐτῷ τὸ |dream  
|describe

Ὁ δὲ ἤδετό τε καὶ ὥς τάχιστα ἕως |show a little |rush; sacrifice

πάντες παρόντες οἱ στρατηγοί· καὶ τὰ ἱερὰ καλὰ

ἦν εὐθύς ἐπὶ τοῦ πρώτου. καὶ ἀπιόντες ἀπὸ τῶν

ἱερῶν οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ |captain |transmit; order, summon, recom-  
|mend, encourage

|army |make breakfast . καὶ |eat lunch τῷ Ξενοφῶντι

|run to, join, attack· νεανίσκῳ· ἤδεσαν γὰρ πάντες ὅτι ἐξείη

αὐτῷ καὶ |eat lunch καὶ |eat, dine προσελθεῖν καὶ εἰ

collected in large numbers and under arms. A shadow of deep despair again descended on their souls, whichever way they turned their eyes—in front lay the river so difficult to ford; over, on the other side, a new enemy threatening to bar the passage; on the hills behind, the Carduchians ready to fall upon their rear should they once again attempt to cross. Thus for this day and night they halted, sunk in perplexity. But Xenophon had a dream. In his sleep he thought that he was bound in fetters, but these, of their own accord, fell from off him, so that he was loosed, and could stretch his legs as freely as he wished. So at the first glimpse of daylight he came to Cheirisophus and told him that he had hopes that all things would go well, and related to him his dream.

The other was well pleased, and with the first faint gleam of dawn the generals all were present and did sacrifice; and the victims were favourable in the first essay. Retiring from the sacrifice, the generals and officers issued an order to the troops to take their breakfasts; and while Xenophon was taking his, two young men came running up to him, for every one knew that, breakfasting or supping, he was always accessible, or

*vocabulary*

αἰδοῖον genitals  
 αἰδοῖος modest, honored  
 ἀσφαλής safe, easy, steady, careful  
 βρέχω soak; it rains  
 γυμνός naked, unarmed  
 διαβαίνω pass over, cross ~basis  
 διηγέομαι detail, describe  
 ἐγχειρίδιος handle, hand tool, dagger  
 ἐγχέω pour into  
 ἐκδύω take off; leave; avoid  
 ἐπεγείρω wake up  
 ἐπιτελέω complete; do a religious duty  
 ἱμάτιον toga, cloth  
 καθεύδω lie down  
 καθήκω come down, (a day) to fall,  
 arrive; be proper  
 καθοράω look down ~panorama  
 κατατίθημι put down, deposit, lay

aside ~thesis  
 νεανίσκος (ᾱ) young man  
 νεύω nod  
 νέω spin; swim ~neuro  
 ὄνειρος dream  
 παιδίσκη young girl, slave, prostitute  
 παραγγέλλω transmit; order, summon,  
 recommend, encourage  
 πέραν (ᾱ) on the other side, across  
 πέτρα rock, cliff, reef ~petrified  
 πόρος way, bridge ~fare  
 πόρω aor. give, pf. be fated  
 προσβατός accessible  
 σπένδω libate; (mid) make a treaty  
 ~spontaneous  
 σπονδή libation, treaty ~spontaneous  
 συλλέγω collect, assemble ~legion  
 συσκευάζω pack up  
 φρύγανον (υ) kindling

καθεύδοι ἐπεγείραντα εἰπεῖν, εἴ τίς τι ἔχοι τῶν πρὸς τὸν πόλεμον. καὶ τότε ἔλεγον ὅτι τυγχάνοιεν φρύγανα συλλέγοντες ὡς ἐπὶ πῦρ, κᾶπειτα κατίδοιεν ἐν τῷ πέραν ἐν πέτραις καθηκούσαις ἐπ' αὐτὸν τὸν ποταμὸν γέροντά τε καὶ γυναῖκα καὶ παιδίσκας ὥσπερ μαρσίπους ἱματίων κατατιθεμένους ἐν πέτρᾳ ἀντρώδει. ἰδοῦσι δὲ σφίσι δόξαι ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι διαβῆναι· οὐδὲ γὰρ τοῖς πολεμίοις ἵππεῦσι προσβατὸν εἶναι κατὰ τοῦτο. ἐκδύντες δ' ἔφασαν ἔχοντες τὰ ἐγχειρίδια γυμνοὶ ὡς νευσόμενοι διαβαίνειν· πορευόμενοι δὲ πρόσθεν διαβῆναι πρὶν βρέξαι τὰ αἰδοῖα· καὶ διαβάντες, λαβόντες τὰ ἱμάτια πάλιν ἦκειν.

Εὐθὺς οὖν Ξενοφῶν αὐτός τε ἔσπενδε καὶ τοῖς νεανίσκοις ἐγχεῖν ἐκέλευε καὶ εὐχεσθαι τοῖς φήνασι θεοῖς τά τε ὀνείρατα καὶ τὸν πόρον καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ ἀγαθὰ ἐπιτελέσαι. σπείσας δ' εὐθὺς ἦγε τοὺς νεανίσκους παρὰ τὸν Χειρίσοφον, καὶ διηγοῦνται ταυτά. ἀκούσας δὲ καὶ ὁ Χειρίσοφος σπονδὰς ἐποίει. σπείσαντες δὲ τοῖς μὲν ἄλλοις παρήγγελον συσκευάζεσθαι, αὐτοὶ δὲ

|lie down |wake up εἰπεῖν, εἴ τις τι ἔχοι τῶν πρὸς  
τὸν πόλεμον. καὶ τότε ἔλεγον ὅτι τυγχάνοιεν |kindling  
|collect, assemble ὥς ἐπὶ πῦρ, κάπειτα |look down ἐν τῷ |across  
ἐν πέτραις |come down, (a day) τὸ ὄν τὸν ποταμὸν γέροντά  
|fall, arrive; be proper  
τε καὶ γυναῖκα καὶ |young girl, slave, τερ μαρσίπους |toga,  
|prostitute |cloth  
|put down ἐν πέτρᾳ ἀντρώδει. ἰδοῦσι δὲ σφίσι  
δόξαι ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι |pass over, cross ὃ γὰρ τοῖς πολέμοις  
ἰππεῦσι |accessible εἶναι κατὰ τοῦτο. |take off δ' ἔφασαν  
ἔχοντες τὰ ἐγχειρίδια |naked, ὥς νευσόμενοι |pass over, cross  
|unarmed  
πορευόμενοι δὲ πρόσθεν |pass over, cross |soak; it rains...δοῖα  
καὶ |pass over, cross ῥόντες τὰ |toga,  
|cloth πάλιν ἤκειν.  
Εὐθὺς οὖν Ξενοφῶν αὐτός τε |libate; (mid) τοῖς νεανίσκοις  
|make a treaty  
|pour into ἑκέλευε καὶ εὐχεσθαι τοῖς φήμασι θεοῖς τά  
τε |dream καὶ τὸν πόρον καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ ἀγαθὰ  
|complete; do a |libate; (mid) εὐθὺς ἤγε τοὺς νεανίσκους παρὰ  
|religious duty |make a treaty  
τὸν Χειρίσοφον, καὶ |detail, ταῦτά. ἀκούσας δὲ καὶ ὁ  
|describe  
Χειρίσοφος |libation, ἐποίει. |libate; (mid) ἐπὶ τοῖς μὲν ἄλλοις  
|treaty |make a treaty  
|transmit; order, summon, recom- mend, encourage , αὐτοὶ δὲ

that even if asleep any one was welcome to awaken him who had anything to say bearing on the business of war. What the two young men had at this time to say was that they had been collecting brushwood for fire, and had presently espied on the opposite side, in among some rocks which came down to the river's brink, an old man and some women and little girls depositing, as it would appear, bags of clothes in a cavernous rock. When they saw them, it struck them that it was safe to cross; in any case the enemy's cavalry could not approach at this point. So they stripped naked, expecting to have to swim for it, and with their long knives in their hands began crossing, but going forward crossed without being wet up to the fork. Once across they captured the clothes, and came back again.

Accordingly Xenophon at once poured out a libation himself, and bade the two young fellows fill the cup and pray to the gods, who showed to him this vision and to them a passage, to bring all other blessings for them to accomplishment. When he had poured out the libation, he at once led the two young men to Cheirisophus, and they repeated to him their story. Cheirisophus, on hearing it, offered libations also, and when they had performed them, they sent a general order to the troops to pack up ready for starting, while

*vocabulary*

**ἀντιπάρειμι** march on opposite sides  
**ἀποδύω** strip off, dump  
**ἀριστερός** left-hand  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis  
**διάβασις** -εως (f) crossing, passage  
 ~basis  
**ἡμισυς** half ~hemisphere  
**λοχαγός** (ἄ) captain  
**λόχος** ambush, band, childbirth ~lie  
**μάντις** -ος (m) seer ~mantis  
**νεανίσκος** (ἄ) young man  
**ὀπισθεν** behind, hereafter  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
 ~hoplite  
**ὄρθιος** shrill; steep, straight

**ὄχθη** riverbank; any water's edge  
**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon,  
 recommend, encourage  
**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)  
**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm;  
 (pl noun) 200 meters  
**στεφανώ** crown  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**συγκαλέω** call together ~gallo  
**σφαγιάζομαι** sacrifice an animal  
**σφενδονάω** sling  
**τέσσαρες** four ~trapezoid  
**τοξεύω** shoot an arrow at ~toxic  
**ὑποζύγιον** beast of burden ~zygote  
**ὑπομένω** stay behind, await ~remain

συγκαλέσαντες τοὺς στρατηγούς ἐβουλευόντο ὅπως ἂν κάλλιστα διαβαῖεν καὶ τοὺς τε ἔμπροσθεν νικῶεν καὶ ὑπὸ τῶν ὀπισθεν μηδὲν πάσχοιεν κακόν. καὶ ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς Χειρίσοφον μὲν ἡγείσθαι καὶ διαβαίνειν ἔχοντα τὸ ἥμισυ τοῦ στρατεύματος, τὸ δ' ἥμισυ ἔτι ὑπομένειν σὺν Ξενοφῶντι, τὰ δὲ ὑποζύγια καὶ τὸν ὄχλον ἐν μέσῳ τούτων διαβαίνειν.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα καλῶς εἶχεν ἐπορεύοντο· ἡγούντο δ' οἱ νεανίσκοι ἐν ἀριστερᾷ ἔχοντες τὸν ποταμόν· ὁδὸς δὲ ἦν ἐπὶ τὴν διάβασιν ὥς τέτταρες στάδιοι. πορευομένων δ' αὐτῶν ἀντιπαρήσαν αἱ τάξεις τῶν ἱππέων.

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἦσαν κατὰ τὴν διάβασιν καὶ τὰς ὄχθας τοῦ ποταμοῦ, ἔθεντο τὰ ὅπλα, καὶ αὐτὸς πρῶτος Χειρίσοφος στεφανωσάμενος καὶ ἀποδὺς ἐλάμβανε τὰ ὅπλα καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις πᾶσι παρήγγελλε, καὶ τοὺς λοχαγούς ἐκέλευεν ἄγειν τοὺς λόχους ὀρθίους, τοὺς μὲν ἐν ἀριστερᾷ τοὺς δ' ἐν δεξιᾷ ἑαυτοῦ. καὶ οἱ μὲν μάντεις ἐσφαγιάζοντο εἰς τὸν ποταμόν· οἱ δὲ πολέμοι ἐτόξενον καὶ ἐσφενδόνων· ἀλλ'



|call together      τοὺς στρατηγούς ἐβουλευόντο ὅπως ἂν  
 κάλλιστα |pass over, cross    τοὺς τε ἔμπροσθεν νικῶεν καὶ  
 ὑπὸ τῶν |behind,    μηδὲν πάσχοιεν κακόν. καὶ ἔδοξεν  
 |hereafter  
 αὐτοῖς Χειρίσοφον μὲν ἡγεῖσθαι καὶ |pass over, cross    ντα τὸ  
 |half    τοῦ |army      , τὸ δ' |half    ἔτι |stay behind, await  
 Ξενοφῶντι, τὰ δὲ |beast of burden    ὃν ὄχλον ἐν μέσῳ τούτων  
 |pass over, cross

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα καλῶς εἶχεν ἐπορεύοντο· ἡγοῦντο δ' οἱ  
 |young man    ἐν |left-hand    ἔχοντες τὸν ποταμόν· ὁδὸς δὲ ἦν  
 ἐπὶ τὴν διάβασιν ὥς |four      στάδιοι. πορευομένων δ'  
 αὐτῶν ἀντιπαρήσαν αἱ τάξεις τῶν ἱππέων.

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἦσαν κατὰ τὴν διάβασιν καὶ τὰς |riverbank    ὁ  
 ποταμοῦ, ἔθεντο τὰ |tool    , καὶ αὐτὸς πρῶτος Χειρίσοφος  
 |crown      καὶ |strip off, dūmp    , ἀνε τὰ |tool    καὶ τοῖς  
 ἄλλοις πᾶσι |transmit;    order, ...summon, |captain    ἐκέλευεν  
 |recommmend, encourage  
 ἄγειν τοὺς |ambush, |shrill; steep, ὅς μὲν ἐν |left-hand    τοὺς δ'  
 |band, |straight  
 ἐν δεξιᾷ ἐατέον· καὶ οἱ μὲν |seer      ἐσφαγιάζοντο εἰς τὸν  
 ποταμόν· οἱ δὲ πολέμοι |shoot an arrow\sling      ἀλλ'  
 |at

they themselves called a meeting of the generals and took counsel how they might best effect a passage, so as to overpower the enemy in front without suffering any loss from the men behind. And they resolved that Cheirisophus should lead the van and cross with half the army, the other half still remaining behind under Xenophon, while the baggage animals and the mob of sutlers were to cross between the two divisions.

When all was duly ordered the move began, the young men pioneering them, and keeping the river on their left. It was about four furlongs' march to the crossing, and as they moved along the bank, the squadrons of cavalry kept pace with them on the opposite side.

But when they had reached a point in a line with the ford, and the cliff-like banks of the river, they grounded arms, and first Cheirisophus himself placed a wreath upon his brows, and throwing off his cloak, resumed his arms, passing the order to all the rest to do the same, and bade the captains form their companies in open order in deep columns, some to left and some to right of himself. Meanwhile the soothsayers were slaying a victim over the river, and the enemy were letting fly their arrows and slingstones; but

*vocabulary*

**ἀναλαλάζω** raise a shout  
**ἄνω** (ᾱ) accomplish, pass, waste;  
 upwards, out to sea  
**ἀποκλείω** shut out; (+acc) close  
**ἀπολαμβάνω** receive, recover, take  
 aside, cut off ~epilepsy  
**ἀπολείπω** leave behind, fail ~eclipse  
**ἀπολιμπάνω** leave behind, fail  
**βοάω** shout  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis  
**ἔθος** ἔθεος (n, 3) custom, habit  
 ~ethology  
**ἐκβαίνω** come forth, disembark ~basis  
**ἐκβασις** -τος (f) way out ~basis  
**ἐμβαίνω** step on, board ~basis  
**ἐμπαλιν** backwards, on the contrary  
**ἐξικνέομαι** arrive at  
**εὐζωνος** well-girded ~zone  
**εὐπέτης** flying well  
**θέω** run, run for  
**κράτος** strength, power; victory

~democracy  
**ὀπισθοφύλαξ** rear guard ~phylactery  
**οὐπω** no longer  
**παιανίζω** (ᾱ) chant in victory  
**πελταστής** -οῦ (m, 1) light troops  
 ~pelt  
**περάω** cross over, drive across; sell as  
 a slave ~pierce  
**πόρος** way, bridge ~fare  
**πόρω** aor. give, pf. be fated  
**προσδοκάω** expect  
**προσποιέω** give over to; pretend  
 ~poet  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
 mercenary ~strategy  
**συνολολύζω** raise a cry together  
**σφάγιον** victim, sacrifice  
**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military  
 unit  
**τείνω** stretch, tend ~tense

οὔπω ἐξικνοῦντο· ἐπεὶ δὲ καλὰ ἦν τὰ σφάγια, ἐπαιάνιζον πάντες οἱ στρατιῶται καὶ ἀνηλάλαζον, συνωλόλυζον δὲ καὶ αἱ γυναῖκες ἅπασαι. πολλαὶ γὰρ ἦσαν ἐταῖραι ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι.

Καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἐνέβαινε καὶ οἱ σὺν ἐκείνῳ· ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων λαβὼν τοὺς εὐζωνοτάτους ἔθει ἀνὰ κράτος πάλιν ἐπὶ τὸν πόρον τὸν κατὰ τὴν ἔκβασιν τὴν εἰς τὰ τῶν Ἀρμενίων ὄρη, προσποιοῦμενος ταύτῃ διαβὰς ἀποκλείσειν τοὺς παρὰ τὸν ποταμὸν ἱππέας. οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι ὁρῶντες μὲν τοὺς ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον εὐπετῶς τὸ ὕδωρ περῶντας, ὁρῶντες δὲ τοὺς ἀμφὶ Ξενοφῶντα θέοντας εἰς τοῦμπαλιν, δείσαντες μὴ ἀποληφθείησαν φεύγουσιν ἀνὰ κράτος ὡς πρὸς τὴν τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἄνω ἔκβασιν. ἐπεὶ δὲ κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν ἐγένοντο, ἔτεινον ἄνω πρὸς τὸ ὄρος. Λύκιος δ' ὁ τὴν τάξιν ἔχων τῶν ἱππέων καὶ Αἰσχίνης ὁ τὴν τάξιν τῶν πελταστῶν τῶν ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον ἐπεὶ ἐώρων ἀνὰ κράτος φεύγοντας, εἶποντο· οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται ἐβόων μὴ ἀπολείπεσθαι, ἀλλὰ

|no |arrive at ἐπεὶ δὲ καλὰ ἦν τὰ |victim, |chant in victory  
|longer |sacrifice

πάντες οἱ |soldier, καὶ |raise a shout , |raise a cry together  
|mercenary

καὶ αἱ γυναῖκες ἅπασαι. πολλαὶ γὰρ ἦσαν ἑταῖραι ἐν τῷ  
|army

Καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν |step on, board` οἱ σὺν ἐκείνῳ· ὁ δὲ

Ξενοφῶν τῶν |rear guard λαβὼν τοὺς |well-girded

ἔθει ἀνὰ |strength, ἐπὶ τὸν πόρον τὸν κατὰ τὴν ἔκβασιν  
|power; vic-  
|tory  
τὴν εἰς τὰ τῶν Ἀρμενίων ὄρη, |give over to; pre- ταύτη  
|tend

|pass |shut out; τοὺς παρὰ τὸν ποταμὸν ἱππέας. οἱ  
|over, (+acc) close  
|cross  
οὗ πολέμοι ὁρῶντες μὲν τοὺς ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον |flying well

τὸ ὕδωρ |cross; sell, ὁρῶντες δὲ τοὺς ἀμφὶ Ξενοφῶντα  
|as a slave

|run εἰς |backwards, on δέξαντες μὴ |receive, recover, take aside, cut  
|the contrary |off

φεύγουσιν ἀνὰ |strength, ῥὸς τὴν τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἄνω  
|power; vic-  
|tory  
ἐκβασιν. ἐπεὶ δὲ κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν ἐγένοντο, |stretch, tend

πρὸς τὸ ὄρος. Λύκιος δ' ὁ τὴν τάξιν ἔχων τῶν ἱππέων

καὶ Αἰσχίνης ὁ τὴν τάξιν τῶν |light troops τῶν ἀμφὶ

Χειρίσοφον ἐπεὶ |see ἀνὰ |strength, ντας, εἶποντο·  
|power; vic-  
|tory

οἱ δὲ |soldier, |shout μὴ ἀπολείπεσθαι, ἀλλὰ  
|mercenary

as yet they were out of range. As soon as the victims were favourable, all the soldiers began singing the battle hymn, and with the notes of the paeon mingled the shouting of the men accompanied by the shriller chant of the women, for there were many women in the camp.

So Cheirisophus with his detachment stepped in. But Xenophon, taking the most active-bodied of the rearguard, began running back at full speed to the passage facing the egress into the hills of Armenia, making a feint of crossing at that point to intercept their cavalry on the river bank. The enemy, seeing Cheirisophus's detachment easily crossing the stream, and Xenophon's men racing back, were seized with the fear of being intercepted, and fled at full speed in the direction of the road which emerges from the stream. But when they were come opposite to it they raced up hill towards their mountains. Then Lycius, who commanded the cavalry, and Aeschines, who was in command of the division of light infantry attached to Cheirisophus, no sooner saw them fleeing so lustily than they were after them, and the soldiers shouted not to fall behind, but to follow

*vocabulary*

**ἄκμῃ** point, edge, top, culmination  
~acute

**ἄκροα** at the edge, extreme ~acute

**ἄκρη** at the edge, extreme

**ἄκρις** -ός (f) hilltop ~acute

**ἄκρον** crest, extremity ~acute

**ἄνω** (ᾱ) accomplish, pass, waste;  
upwards, out to sea

**ἀποχωρέω** go away from, retreat

**ἀσπίς** -δος (f) shield ~spit

**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis

**ἐκβαίνω** come forth, disembark ~basis

**ἐκλείπω** leave out, pass over

**ἔκπωμα** -τος (n, 3) drinking cup

**Ἑλλῆν** Greek

**ἐνωμοτία** army division

**ἔπειμι** lie upon; approach ~ion

**ἐπιδιώκω** chase after

**ἐπιχειρέω** do, try, attack ~chiral

**ἐσθής** clothes ~vest

**λοχαγέω** (ᾱ) lead a company

**λοχαγός** (ᾱ) captain

**λόχος** ambush, band, childbirth ~lie

**ὀπλίτης** -ου (ī, m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
infantryman ~hoplite

**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
~hoplite

**ὄχθη** riverbank; any water's edge

**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon,  
recommend, encourage

**παράγω** deflect; bring forward

**πέραν** (ᾱ) on the other side, across

**προσδοκάω** expect

**προσήκω** belong to, it beseems

**σκευοφόρος** pack animal, porter

**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy

**στρέφω** turn, veer ~atrophy

**συνεκβαίνω** go out together

**τελευταῖος** last, final

**ὕπολείπω** leave as a leftover; leave a  
person behind ~eclipse

**φανερός** visible, conspicuous ~photon

συνεκβαίνειν ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος. Χειρίσοφος δ' αὖ ἐπεὶ διέβη, τοὺς ἱππέας οὐκ ἐδίωκεν, εὐθὺς δὲ κατὰ τὰς προσηκούσας ὄχθας ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν ἐξέβαιναν ἐπὶ τοὺς ἄνω πολεμίους. οἱ δὲ ἄνω, ὀρώντες μὲν τοὺς ἑαυτῶν ἱππέας φεύγοντας, ὀρώντες δ' ὀπλίτας σφίσιν ἐπιόντας, ἐκλείπουσι τὰ ὑπὲρ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἄκρα.

Ξενοφῶν δ' ἐπεὶ τὰ πέραν ἑώρα καλῶς γιγνόμενα, ἀπεχώρει τὴν ταχίστην πρὸς τὸ διαβαῖνον στράτευμα· καὶ γὰρ οἱ Καρδοῦχοι φανεροὶ ἤδη ἦσαν εἰς τὸ πεδῖον καταβαίνοντες ὥς ἐπιθησόμενοι τοῖς τελευταίοις.

Καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν τὰ ἄνω κατεῖχε, Λύκιος δὲ σὺν ὀλίγοις ἐπιχειρήσας ἐπιδιώξαι ἔλαβε τῶν σκευοφόρων τὰ ὑπολειπόμενα καὶ μετὰ τούτων ἐσθῆτά τε καλὴν καὶ ἐκπώματα. καὶ τὰ σκευοφόρα τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ ὁ ὄχλος ἀκμὴν διέβαινε, Ξενοφῶν δὲ στρέψας πρὸς τοὺς Καρδούχους ἀντὶα τὰ ὄπλα ἔθετο, καὶ παρήγγειλε τοῖς λοχαγοῖς κατ' ἐνωμοτίας ποιήσασθαι ἕκαστον τὸν ἑαυτοῦ λόχον, παρ' ἀσπίδα παραγαγόντας τὴν ἐνωμοτίαν ἐπὶ



|go out together ἔπι τὸ ὄρος. Χειρίσοφος δ' αὖ ἐπεὶ |pass over, cross

τοὺς ἱππέας οὐκ ἐδίωκεν, εὐθὺς δὲ κατὰ τὰς |belong to, it be-  
|seems

|riverbank ἔ τὸν ποταμὸν |come forth ἐπὶ τοὺς ἄνω πολεμίους.

οἱ δὲ ἄνω, ὁρῶντες μὲν τοὺς ἐαυτῶν ἱππέας φεύγοντας,

ὁρῶντες δ' |hoplite, heavy ἦν ἐπιόντας, |leave out, pass over ἔ ρ  
|infantryman

τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἄκρα.

Ξενοφῶν δ' ἐπεὶ τὰ |across ἐώρα καλῶς γιγνόμενα,

|go away ἦν ταχίστην πρὸς τὸ |pass over, |army  
|from, retreat |cross

καὶ γὰρ οἱ Καρδοῦχοι |visible, ἦσαν εἰς τὸ πεδῖον  
|conspicuous

καταβαίνοντες ὡς ἐπιθησόμενοι τοῖς |last, final

Καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν τὰ ἄνω κατείχε, Λύκιος δὲ σὺν

ὀλίγοις |do, try, attack |chase after ἔλαβε τῶν |pack animal, porter

τὰ |leave (food, person) ἔ μετὰ τούτων |clothes τε καλὴν καὶ

|drinking cup καὶ τὰ |pack animal, porter |Greek καὶ ὁ

ὄχλος |point, |pass over, cross φῶν δὲ |turn πρὸς τοὺς  
|edge,

Καρδοῦχος ἀντία τὰ |tool ἔθετο, καὶ |transmit; order, summon, rec-  
|top, |ommend, encourage  
|culmi-  
|nation

λοχαγοῖς κατ' |army division κήσασθαι ἕκαστον τὸν ἐαυτοῦ

|ambush, band, ὁ σπῖδα |deflect; bring for- τὴν |army division ἔ ῖ  
|childbirth |ward

them right up to the mountains. Cheirisophus, on getting across, forbore to pursue the cavalry, but advanced by the bluffs which reached to the river to attack the enemy overhead. And these, seeing their own cavalry fleeing, seeing also the heavy infantry advancing upon them, abandoned the heights above the river.

Xenophon, as soon as he saw that things were going well on the other side, fell back with all speed to join the troops engaged in crossing, for by this time the Carduchians were well in sight, descending into the plain to attack their rear.

Cheirisophus was in possession of the higher ground, and Lycius, with his little squadron, in an attempt to follow up the pursuit, had captured some stragglers of their baggage-bearers, and with them some handsome apparel and drinking-cups. The baggage animals of the Hellenes and the mob of non-combatants were just about to cross, when Xenophon turned his troops right about to face the Carduchians. Vis a vis he formed his line, passing the order to the captains each to form his company into sections, and to deploy them into line by the left, the captains of companies and

*vocabulary***ᾄδω** sing**αἰῖδω** sing**ἄκοντιστής** -οῦ (m, 1) spearman

~acute

**ἀναστρέφω** act: overturn; mid: find oneself in ~atrophy**ᾠοιδῆ** song**ἀσπίς** -δος (f) shield ~spit**ἀσφαλής** safe, easy, steady, careful**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis**ἐμβαίνω** step on, board ~basis**ἐνθεν** thence, whence**ἐντίθημι** load; mp: take to heart

~thesis

**ἐξικνέομαι** arrive at**ἐπειδάν** when, after**ἔπειμι** lie upon; approach ~ion**ἐπιβάλλω** throw upon, head for

~ballistic

**θέω** run, run for**λοχαγός** (ᾱ) captain**ὀπισθοφύλαξ** rear guard ~phylactery**οὐραγός** (ᾱ) leader of the rearguard**παιανίζω** (ᾱ) chant in victory**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon, recommend, encourage**πελταστής** -οῦ (m, 1) light troops

~pelt

**πολεμικός** warlike, hostile ~polemic**προβαίνω** surpass, continue ~basis**πρόσω** forward, in the future; far**σημαίνω** give orders to; show; mark

~semaphore

**σφενδόνη** sling**σφενδονήτης** -ου (m, 1) slinger**τοξότης** -ου (m, 1) archer ~toxic**φάλαγξ** -γος (f) rank of battle

~phalanx

**φιλόω** (ι) strip bare ~epsilon**φορέω** make a noise

φάλαγγος· καὶ τοὺς μὲν λοχαγοὺς καὶ τοὺς ἐνωμοτάρχους  
πρὸς τῶν Καρδούχων ἵεναι, οὐραγοὺς δὲ καταστήσασθαι  
πρὸς τοῦ ποταμοῦ. οἱ δὲ Καρδοῦχοι ὡς ἐώρων τοὺς  
ὀπισθοφύλακας τοῦ ὄχλου ψιλουμένους καὶ ὀλίγους ἤδη  
φαινομένους, θάττον δὴ ἐπῆσαν ᾧδās τινας ἄδοντες. ὁ  
δὲ Χειρίσοφος, ἐπεὶ τὰ παρ' αὐτῷ ἀσφαλῶς εἶχε, πέμπει  
παρὰ Ξενοφῶντα τοὺς πελταστὰς καὶ σφενδονήτας καὶ  
τοξότας καὶ κελεύει ποιεῖν ὅ τι ἂν παραγγέλλῃ. ἰδὼν δ'  
αὐτοὺς διαβαίνοντας Ξενοφῶν πέμψας ἄγγελον κελεύει  
αὐτοῦ μέναι ἐπὶ τοῦ ποταμοῦ μὴ διαβάντας· ὅταν δ'  
ἄρξωνται αὐτοὶ διαβαίνειν, ἐναντίους ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν  
σφῶν ἐμβαίνειν ὡς διαβησομένους, διηγκυλωμένους τοὺς  
ἀκοντιστὰς καὶ ἐπιβεβλημένους τοὺς τοξότας· μὴ πρόσω  
δὲ τοῦ ποταμοῦ προβαίνειν. τοῖς δὲ παρ' ἐαυτῷ  
παρήγγειλεν, ἐπειδὰν σφενδόνῃ ἐξικνῆται καὶ ἀσπὶς  
ψοφῇ, παιανίσαντας θεῖν εἰς τοὺς πολεμίους, ἐπειδὰν  
δ' ἀναστρέψωσιν οἱ πολέμοι καὶ ἐκ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ὁ  
σαλπικτῆς σημήνῃ τὸ πολεμικόν, ἀναστρέψαντας ἐπὶ

|rank of battle αἱ τοὺς μὲν |captain καὶ τοὺς ἐνωμοτάρχους  
 πρὸς τῶν Καρδούχων ἰέναι, |leader of the ἔ καταστήσασθαι  
 |rearguard  
 πρὸς τοῦ ποταμοῦ. οἱ δὲ Καρδούχοι ὥς ἐώρων τοὺς  
 |rear guard τοῦ ὄχλου |strip bare καὶ ὀλίγους ἤδη  
 φαινομένους, θᾶπτον δὴ ἐπῆσαν ὥδ' αὖς τινας ἄδοντες. ὁ  
 δὲ Χειρίσοφος, ἐπεὶ τὰ παρ' αὐτῷ ἀσφαλῶς εἶχε, πέμπει  
 παρὰ Ξενοφῶντα τοὺς |light troops καὶ |slinger καὶ  
 |archer καὶ κελεύει ποιεῖν ὅ τι ἂν |transmit; order, ὕμνον,  
 |recommend, encourage  
 αὐτοὺς |pass over, cross Ξενοφῶν πέμψας ἄγγελον κελεύει  
 αὐτοῦ μέναι ἐπὶ τοῦ ποταμοῦ μὴ |pass over, cross. ἂν δ'  
 ἄρξωνται αὐτοὶ |pass over, cross. ἀντίους ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν  
 σφῶν |step on, board. |pass over, cross , διηγκυλωμένους τοὺς  
 |spearman καὶ |throw upon τοὺς |archer μὴ |forward, in the fu-  
 |ture; far  
 δὲ τοῦ ποταμοῦ |surpass . τοῖς δὲ παρ' αὐτῷ  
 |transmit; order, ὕμνον, |sling |arrive at καὶ |shield  
 |recommend, encourage  
 |make , |chant in victory |run εἰς τοὺς πολεμίους, ἐπειδὰν  
 |noise  
 δ' |act: overturn; mid: ἔ πολέμοι καὶ ἐκ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ὁ  
 |find oneself in  
 σαλπικτῆς |give orders; |warlike, , |act: overturn; mid: πῖ  
 |to; show; |hostile |find oneself in  
 |mark

lieutenants in command of sections to advance to meet the Carduchians, while the rear leaders would keep their position facing the river. But when the Carduchians saw the rearguard so stript of the mass, and looking now like a mere handful of men, they advanced all the more quickly, singing certain songs the while. Then, as matters were safe with him, Cheirisophus sent back the peltasts and slingers and archers to join Xenophon, with orders to carry out his instructions. They were in the act of recrossing, when Xenophon, who saw their intention, sent a messenger across, bidding them wait there at the river's brink without crossing; but as soon as he and his detachment began to cross they were to step in facing him in two flanking divisions right and left of them, as if in the act of crossing; the javelin men with their javelins on the thong, and the bowmen with their arrows on the string; but they were not to advance far into the stream. The order passed to his own men was: «Wait till you are within sling-shot, and the shield rattles, then sound the paeon and charge the enemy. As soon as he turns, and the bugle from the river sounds for 'the attack,' you will face about to the right, the rear rank leading, and

*vocabulary*

**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis  
**δρόμος** running, racing ground  
 ~hippodrome  
**Ἕλληγν** Greek  
**ἐμποδίζω** fetter, hinder  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**ἐπικειμαι** impose; shut a door  
**ἐπιτρέχω** run at, after  
**θέω** run, run for  
**θρασύς** brave, strong  
**οἶχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone  
**ὀπλίζω** prepare, arm ~hoplite  
**οὐραγός** (ᾱ) leader of the rearguard  
**παιανίζω** (ᾱ) chant in victory

**πέραν** (ᾱ) on the other side, across  
**σημαίνω** give orders to; show; mark  
 ~semaphore  
**σκευή** equipment  
**σκεῦος** -εος (n, 3) thing, tool, vessel  
**σκευόω** prepare, collect  
**στρέφω** turn, veer ~atrophy  
**σφενδονάω** sling  
**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military  
 unit  
**τιτρώσκω** wound, bring to grief  
 ~trauma  
**τοξεύω** shoot an arrow at ~toxic  
**τρέχω** run, spin  
**ὑποζύγιον** beast of burden ~zygote

δόρῳ ἡγεῖσθαι μὲν τοὺς οὐραγούς, θεῖν δὲ πάντας καὶ διαβαίνειν ὅτι τάχιστα ἢ ἕκαστος τὴν τάξιν εἶχεν, ὥς μὴ ἐμποδίζειν ἀλλήλους· ὅτι οὗτος ἄριστος ἔσοιτο ὃς ἂν πρῶτος ἐν τῷ πέραν γένηται.

Οἱ δὲ Καρδοῦχοι ὀρώντες ὀλίγους ἤδη τοὺς λοιπούς πολλοὶ γὰρ καὶ τῶν μένειν τεταγμένων ὥχοντο ἐπιμελόμενοι οἱ μὲν ὑποζυγίων, οἱ δὲ σκευῶν, οἱ δ' ἐταιρῶν ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐπέκειντο θρασέως καὶ ἤρχοντο σφενδονᾶν καὶ τοξεύειν. οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες παιανίσαντες ὥρμησαν δρόμῳ ἐπ' αὐτούς· οἱ δὲ οὐκ ἐδέξαντο· καὶ γὰρ ἦσαν ὥπλισμένοι ὥς μὲν ἐν τοῖς ὄρεσιν ἱκανῶς πρὸς τὸ ἐπιδραμεῖν καὶ φεύγειν, πρὸς δὲ τὸ εἰς χεῖρας δέχεσθαι οὐχ ἱκανῶς. ἐν τούτῳ σημαίνει ὁ σαλπικτής· καὶ οἱ μὲν πολέμοι ἐφευγον πολὺ ἔτι θάττον, οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες τὰναντία στρέψαντες ἐφευγον διὰ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ὅτι τάχιστα. τῶν δὲ πολεμίων οἱ μὲν τινες αἰσθόμενοι πάλιν ἔδραμον ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν καὶ τοξεύοντες ὀλίγους ἔτρωσαν, οἱ δὲ πολλοὶ καὶ πέραν ὄντων τῶν Ἑλλήνων



δόρυ ἡγεῖσθαι μὲν τοὺς |leader of the|run δὲ πάντας καὶ  
|pass over, cross . τάχιστα ἥ ἕκαστος τὴν τάξιν εἶχεν, ὥς  
μὴ |fetter,  
|hinder ἀλλήλους· ὅτι οὗτος ἄριστος ἔσοιτο ὃς ἂν  
πρῶτος ἐν τῷ |across γένηται.

Οἱ δὲ Καρδοῦχοι ὀρώντες ὀλίγους ἤδη τοὺς λοιπούς  
πολλοὶ γὰρ καὶ τῶν μένειν τεταγμένων |come, go  
ἐπιμελόμενοι οἱ μὲν |beast of burden . δὲ σκευῶν, οἱ δ'  
ἐταιρῶν |there, here ὃν |impose; shut|brave, καὶ ἤρχοντο  
|a door |strong  
|sling καὶ |shoot an arrow' at' |Greek |chant in victory  
ὥρμησαν |running ἐπ' αὐτούς· οἱ δὲ οὐκ ἐδέξαντο· καὶ  
γὰρ ἦσαν |prepare, arm ὥς μὲν ἐν τοῖς ὄρεσιν ἱκανῶς  
πρὸς τὸ |run at, after καὶ φεύγειν, πρὸς δὲ τὸ εἰς χεῖρας  
δέχεσθαι οὐχ ἱκανῶς. ἐν τούτῳ |give orders to; αλπικτής·  
|show; mark  
καὶ οἱ μὲν πολέμοι ἔφευγον πολὺ ἔτι θᾶπτον, οἱ δὲ  
|Greek τάναντία |turn ἔφευγον διὰ τοῦ ποταμοῦ  
ὅτι τάχιστα. τῶν δὲ πολεμίων οἱ μὲν τινες αἰσθόμενοι  
πάλιν |run, spin ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν καὶ |shoot an arrow' at, vs  
|wound, bring' δὲ πολλοὶ καὶ |across ὄντων τῶν |Greek  
to grief

the whole detachment falling back and crossing the river as quickly as possible, every one preserving his original rank, so as to avoid tramelling one another: the bravest man is he who gets to the other side first.”

The Carduchians, seeing that the remnant left was the merest handful (for many even of those whose duty it was to remain had gone off in their anxiety to protect their beasts of burden, or their personal kit, or their mistresses), bore down upon them valorously, and opened fire with slingstones and arrows. But the Hellenes, raising the battle hymn, dashed at them at a run, and they did not await them; armed well enough for mountain warfare, and with a view to sudden attack followed by speedy flight, they were not by any means sufficiently equipped for an engagement at close quarters. At this instant the signal of the bugle was heard. Its notes added wings to the flight of the barbarians, but the Hellenes turned right about in the opposite direction, and betook themselves to the river with what speed they might. Some of the enemy, here a man and there another, perceived, and running back to the river, let fly their arrows and wounded a few; but the majority, even when the Hellenes were well across, were still

*vocabulary*

**ἀνδρίζομαι** be manly

**βασιλῆιος** kingly

**γῆλοφος** hill, mound

**δαψιλής** abundant; generous

**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis

**ἐγγύς** near

**ἐντεῦθεν** thence

**ἐπειμι** lie upon; approach ~ion

**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable

**ἐφέζομαι** sit on; bring aboard ~sit

**ἐφίημι** (τι) send at, let fly; mp: rush at,

spring upon ~jet

**κώμη** village

**λεῖος** smooth

**λέων** lion

**μείων** less, smaller

**μέχρι** as far as, until

**παρασάγγης** -ου (m, 1) Persian unit,  
ca. 5 km

**πεντεκαίδεκα** 15

**πηγή** headwaters, fountain

**πηγός** stout, mighty

**πρόεμι** to have been before, earlier  
~ion

**προσωτέρω** farther

**σατράπης** -ου (m, 1) satrap, Persian  
governor

**σταθμός** cottage; post

**συντάσσω** gather, assemble ~syntax

**τιτρώσκω** wound, bring to grief  
~trauma

**τύρσις** tower, castle

**ὕπαντάω** meet

**ὑπερέρχομαι** cross, surpass, survive

**φανερός** visible, conspicuous ~photon

ἔτι φανεροὶ ἦσαν φεύγοντες. οἱ δὲ ὑπαντήσαντες ἀνδριζόμενοι καὶ προσωτέρω τοῦ καιροῦ προϊόντες ὕστερον τῶν μετὰ Ξενοφώντος διέβησαν πάλιν· καὶ ἐτρώθησάν τινες καὶ τούτων.

#### 4.4

Ἐπεὶ δὲ διέβησαν, συνταξάμενοι ἀμφὶ μέσον ἡμέρας ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ τῆς Ἀρμενίας πεδίων ἅπαν καὶ λείους γηλόφους οὐ μείον ἢ πέντε παρασάγγας· οὐ γὰρ ἦσαν ἐγγὺς τοῦ ποταμοῦ κῶμαι διὰ τοὺς πολέμους τοὺς πρὸς τοὺς Καρδούχους. εἰς δὲ ἦν ἀφίκοντο κώμην μεγάλην τε ἦν καὶ βασιλείον εἶχε τῷ σατράπῃ καὶ ἐπὶ ταῖς πλείσταις οἰκίαις τύρσεις ἐπῆσαν· ἐπιτήδεια δ' ἦν δαψιλῇ.

Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμοὺς δύο παρασάγγας δέκα μέχρι ὑπερῆλθον τὰς πηγὰς τοῦ Τίγρητος ποταμοῦ. ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας πεντεκαίδεκα ἐπὶ τὸν Τηλεβόαν ποταμόν. οὗτος δ' ἦν καλὸς μέν, μέγας δ' οὐ· κῶμαι δὲ πολλαὶ περὶ τὸν ποταμόν

ἔτι |visible, |φαν φεύγοντες. οἱ δὲ |meet  
 |conspicuous  
 |be manly καὶ |farther τοῦ καιροῦ |to have been  
 |before, earlier  
 ὕστερον τῶν μετὰ Ξενοφώντος |pass over, cross. ἔιν· καὶ  
 |wound, bring τινες καὶ τούτων.  
 |to grief

## 4.4

Ἐπεὶ δὲ |pass over, |gather, assemble ἀμφὶ μέσον ἡμέρας  
 |cross  
 ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ τῆς Ἀρμενίας πεδῖον ἅπαν καὶ λείους  
 |hill, οὐ |less, ἥ πέντε |ca. 5 km οὐ γὰρ ἦσαν  
 |mound |smaller  
 |near τοῦ ποταμοῦ κῶμαι διὰ τοὺς πολέμους τοὺς πρὸς  
 τοὺς Καρδούχους. εἰς δὲ ἦν ἀφίκοντο |village μεγάλη τε  
 ἦν καὶ βασιλείον εἶχε τῷ |satrap καὶ ἐπὶ ταῖς πλείσταις  
 οἰκίαις |tower, ἐπῆσαν· |fit, suitable δ' ἦν |abundant;  
 |castle |generous  
 |thence δ' ἐπορεύθησαν |cottage; post ὅσο |ca. 5 km  
 δέκα |as far as, until ἔθον τὰς πηγὰς τοῦ Τίγρητος ποταμοῦ.  
 |thence δ' ἐπορεύθησαν |cottage; post ὅρως |ca. 5 km  
 |15 ἐπὶ τὸν Τηλεβόαν ποταμόν. οὗτος δ' ἦν  
 καλὸς μὲν, μέγας δ' οὐ· κῶμαι δὲ πολλαὶ περὶ τὸν ποταμόν

to be seen pursuing their flight. The detachment which came to meet Xenophon's men, carried away by their valour, advanced further than they had need to, and had to cross back again in the rear of Xenophon's men, and of these too a few were wounded.

#### 4.4

The passage effected, they fell into line about mid-day, and marched through Armenian territory, one long plain with smooth rolling hillocks, not less than five parasangs in distance; for owing to the wars of this people with the Carduchians there were no villages near the river. The village eventually reached was large, and possessed a palace belonging to the satrap, and most of the houses were crowned with turrets; provisions were plentiful.

From this village they marched two stages—ten parasangs—until they had surmounted the sources of the river Tigris; and from this point they marched three stages—fifteen parasangs—to the river Teleboas. This was a fine stream, though not large, and there were many villages

*vocabulary*

ἀναβάλλω delay; lift up ~ballistic  
 ἀπέχω ward off, drive off, refrain, be at  
 some distance  
 βασίλεια noblewoman  
 βασίλειος kingly  
 διαλέγω go through, debate ~legion  
 διασκηνέω go to one's tent, leave  
 someone else's  
 Ἕλλην Greek  
 ἐντεῦθεν thence  
 ἐπήκοος listening  
 ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable  
 ἐρμηνεύς -ος (m) interpreter  
 ἐρωτάω ask about something  
 ἑσπέρα evening, west  
 ἕωθεν at first light  
 καίω burn ~caustic  
 κώμη village  
 μεστός full

παρακολουθέω dog, follow, trace  
 παρασάγγης -ου (m, 1) Persian unit,  
 ca. 5 km  
 πεντεκαίδεκα 15  
 πέριξ all around  
 προπέμπω send, send ahead ~pomp  
 προσελαύνω go to, approach ~elastic  
 προσέρχομαι come forward, surrender,  
 come in  
 σπένδω libate; (mid) make a treaty  
 ~spontaneous  
 στάδιον 200 meters (pl also masc)  
 στάδιος (adj) standing upright, firm;  
 (pl noun) 200 meters  
 σταθμός cottage; post  
 στρατοπεδεύω encamp or take up  
 station ~strategy  
 ὑπαρχος subordinate  
 χιών χιόνος (f, 3) snow

ἦσαν. ὁ δὲ τόπος οὗτος Ἀρμενία ἐκαλεῖτο ἢ πρὸς ἐσπέραν. ὕπαρχος δ' ἦν αὐτῆς Τιρίβαζος, ὁ καὶ βασιλεῖ φίλος γενόμενος, καὶ ὁπότε παρείη, οὐδεὶς ἄλλος βασιλέα ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον ἀνέβαλλεν. οὗτος προσήλασεν ἱππέας ἔχων, καὶ προπέμψας ἐρμηνέα εἶπεν ὅτι βούλοιτο διαλεχθῆναι τοῖς ἄρχουσι. τοῖς δὲ στρατηγοῖς ἔδοξεν ἀκοῦσαι· καὶ προσελθόντες εἰς ἐπήκοον ἡρώτων τί θέλει. ὁ δὲ εἶπεν ὅτι σπείσασθαι βούλοιτο ἐφ' ᾧ μήτε αὐτὸς τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἀδικεῖν μήτε ἐκείνους καίειν τὰς οἰκίας λαμβάνειν τε τὰπιτήδεια ὅσων δέοιντο. ἔδοξε ταῦτα τοῖς στρατηγοῖς καὶ ἐσπείσαντο ἐπὶ τούτοις.

Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμοὺς τρεῖς διὰ πεδίου παρασάγγας πεντεκαίδεκα· καὶ Τιρίβαζος παρηκολούθει ἔχων τὴν ἑαυτοῦ δύναμιν ἀπέχων ὥς δέκα σταδίου· καὶ ἀφίκοντο εἰς βασιλεια καὶ κώμας περίξ πολλὰς πολλῶν τῶν ἐπιτηδείων μεστάς. στρατοπεδευομένων δ' αὐτῶν γίγνεται τῆς νυκτὸς χιῶν πολλή· καὶ ἔωθεν ἔδοξε διασκηνῆσαι τὰς τάξεις καὶ τοὺς στρατηγοὺς κατὰ



ἦσαν. ὁ δὲ τόπος οὗτος Ἀρμενία ἐκαλεῖτο ἢ πρὸς |evening, west  
|subordinate ἦν αὐτῆς Τιρίβαζος, ὁ καὶ βασιλεῖ φίλος  
γενόμενος, καὶ ὁπότε παρείη, οὐδεὶς ἄλλος βασιλέα ἐπὶ  
τὸν ἵππον |delay; sing οὗτος |go to, approach ἵππας ἔχων,  
καὶ |send, ahead send|interpreter ἵπεν ὅτι βούλοιτο |go through, debate  
τοῖς ἄρχουσι. τοῖς δὲ στρατηγοῖς ἔδοξεν ἀκούσαι· καὶ  
|come forward, surren-|listening |ask τί θέλει. ὁ δὲ εἶπεν  
|der, come in ὅτι |libate; (mid) βούλοιτο ἐφ' ᾧ μήτε αὐτὸς τοὺς |Greek  
|make a treaty ἀδικεῖν μήτε ἐκείνους |burn τὰς οἰκίας λαμβάνειν τε  
|fit, suitable ὅσων δέοιντο. ἔδοξε ταῦτα τοῖς στρατηγοῖς  
καὶ |libate; (mid) ἐπὶ τούτοις.  
|make a treaty |thence δ' ἐπορεύθησαν |cottage; post ῥεῖς διὰ πεδίου  
|ca. 5 km |15 καὶ Τιρίβαζος |dog, follow, trace  
ἔχων τὴν ἑαυτοῦ δύναμιν |ward off, drive off, refrain, 'δίους'  
|be at some distance καὶ ἀφίκοντο εἰς βασίλεια καὶ |village |all around. ἅλλας  
πολλῶν τῶν |fit, suitable |full |encamp or take up sta- δ'  
|tion αὐτῶν γίγνεται τῆς νυκτὸς |snow πολλή· καὶ |at first light ἔε  
διασκηνῆσαι τὰς τάξεις καὶ τοὺς στρατηγοὺς κατὰ

about it. The district was named Western Armenia. The lieutenant-governor of it was Tiribazus, the king's friend, and whenever the latter paid a visit, he alone had the privilege of mounting the king upon his horse. This officer rode up to the Hellenes with a body of cavalry, and sending forward an interpreter, stated that he desired a colloquy with the leaders. The generals resolved to hear what he had to say; and advancing on their side to within speaking distance, they demanded what he wanted. He replied that he wished to make a treaty with them, in accordance with which he on his side would abstain from injuring the Hellenes, if they would not burn his houses, but merely take such provisions as they needed. This proposal satisfied the generals, and a treaty was made on the terms suggested.

From this place they marched three stages—fifteen parasangs—through plain country, Tiribazus the while keeping close behind with his own forces more than a mile off. Presently they reached a palace with villages clustered round about it, which were full of supplies in great variety. But while they were encamping in the night, there was a heavy fall of snow, and in the morning it was resolved

*vocabulary*

ἄλσεινός sun-exposed, warm  
 ἄπλετος boundless, immense,  
 abundant  
 ἀποκρύπτω hide away ~cryptic  
 ἀποσκεδάννυμι (ῥ) dismiss; scatter  
 ἀσταφίς raisins  
 ἀσφαλής safe, easy, steady, careful  
 ἀφαιρέω take away ~heresy  
 γυμνός naked, unarmed  
 διαιθριάζω (weather) to clear up  
 διασκηγέω go to one's tent, leave  
 someone else's  
 διασκηγνῶ pitch like tents at intervals  
 ἔλαιον oil, olive oil ~olive  
 ἐνταῦθα there, here  
 ἐντεῦθεν thence  
 ἐπιπίπτω fall upon, attack  
 ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable  
 εὐώδης fragrant  
 ἱερεῖον animal victim ~hieroglyph  
 καθοράω look down ~panorama  
 καίω burn ~caustic  
 κατάκειμαι lie down  
 κώμη village  
 νυκτερεύω pass the night  
 νύκτωρ by night

ξύλον piece of wood ~xylophone  
 ὄκνος shrinking, hesitation  
 ὄπλον tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
 ~hoplite  
 ὄσπριον bean, legume  
 παλαιός old ~paleo  
 παντοδαπής of every kind, manifold  
 παντοδαπός of every kind, manifold  
 παραρρέω flow past, slip by  
 πυρά pyre ~pyre  
 σησάμινος made of sesame  
 σῖτος grain, bread, food ~parasite  
 στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
 σύειος porcine  
 συμποδίζω bind, entangle  
 συνάγω assemble; join in battle  
 ~demagogue  
 συνέρχομαι come together  
 σχίζω split ~schism  
 τάχα quickly, soon; perhaps  
 ~tachometer  
 τάχος -ους (n, 3) speed ~tachometer  
 ὑποζύγιον beast of burden ~zygote  
 χιών χιόνος (f, 3) snow  
 χρῆμα unguent  
 χρίω (ι) anoint ~Christ

τὰς κόμας· οὐ γὰρ ἐώρων πολέμιον οὐδένα καὶ ἀσφαλὲς  
 ἐδόκει εἶναι διὰ τὸ πλῆθος τῆς χιόνος. ἐνταῦθα εἶχον  
 τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ὅσα ἐστὶν ἀγαθὰ, ἱερεῖα, σίτον, οἶνους  
 παλαιοὺς εὐώδεις, ἀσταφίδας, ὄσπρια παντοδαπά. τῶν  
 δὲ ἀποσκεδαννυμένων τινὲς ἀπὸ τοῦ στρατοπέδου ἔλεγον  
 ὅτι κατῖδοιεν νύκτωρ πολλὰ πυρὰ φαίνοντα. ἐδόκει δὴ  
 τοῖς στρατηγοῖς οὐκ ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι διασκηνοῦν, ἀλλὰ  
 συναγαγεῖν τὸ στράτευμα πάλιν. ἐντεῦθεν συνῆλθον·  
 καὶ γὰρ ἐδόκει διαιθριάζειν. νυκτερευόντων δ' αὐτῶν  
 ἐνταῦθα ἐπιπίπτει χιὼν ἄπλετος, ὥστε ἀπέκρυψε καὶ τὰ  
 ὄπλα καὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους κατακειμένους· καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια  
 συνεπόδισεν ἡ χιὼν· καὶ πολλὸς ὄκνος ἦν ἀνίστασθαι·  
 κατακειμένων γὰρ ἀλεινὸν ἦν ἡ χιὼν ἐπιπεπτωκυῖα  
 ὅτῳ μὴ παραρρυνεῖη. ἐπεὶ δὲ Ξενοφὼν ἐτόλμησε γυμνὸς  
 ἀναστὰς σχίζειν ξύλα, τάχ' ἀναστὰς τις καὶ ἄλλος ἐκείνου  
 ἀφελόμενος ἔσχιζεν. ἐκ δὲ τούτου καὶ ἄλλοι ἀναστάντες  
 πῦρ ἔκαιον καὶ ἐχρίοντο· πολὺ γὰρ ἐνταῦθα ἠύρισκετο  
 χρίμα, ᾧ ἐχρῶντο ἀντ' ἐλαίου, σύειον καὶ σησάμινον καὶ

τὰς κόμας· οὐ γὰρ ἑώρων πολέμιον οὐδένα καὶ ἀσφαλὲς  
 ἔδόκει εἶναι διὰ τὸ πλῆθος τῆς |snow . ἔνταῦθα εἶχον  
 τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ὅσα ἐστὶν ἀγαθά, |animal, σῖτον, οἶνους  
 παλαιούς |fragrant , |raisins , |bean, παντοδαπά. τῶν  
 |legume  
 δὲ |dismiss; scatter τινὲς ἀπὸ τοῦ στρατοπέδου ἔλεγον  
 ὅτι |look down |by night πολλὰ |pyre φαίνοντα. ἔδόκει δὴ  
 τοῖς στρατηγοῖς οὐκ ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι διασκηνοῦν, ἀλλὰ  
 συναγαγεῖν τὸ στράτευμα πάλιν. ἐντεῦθεν συνῆλθον·  
 καὶ γὰρ ἔδόκει |(weather) to |pass the night δ' αὐτῶν  
 |clear up  
 ἐνταῦθα |fall upon, |snow |boundless, -- im- |hide away καὶ τὰ  
 |attack |mense, abundant  
 ὅπλα καὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους |lie down καὶ τὰ |beast of burden  
 |συμποδίζω?: , |snow καὶ πολὺς |hesitation ἀνίστασθαι·  
 |bind, entangle;  
 or συμποδίζω?:  
 |lie down, entangle γὰρ |sun-exposed, warm |snow ἐπιπεπτωκυῖα  
 ὅτῳ μὴ |flow past, slip by...· εἰ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἐτόλμησε γυμνὸς  
 ἀναστὰς |split ξύλα, τάχ' ἀναστὰς τις καὶ ἄλλος ἐκείνου  
 ἀφελόμενος |split . ἐκ δὲ τούτου καὶ ἄλλοι ἀναστάντες  
 πῦρ ἔκαιον καὶ |anoint πολὺ γὰρ ἐνταῦθα ἠύρισκετο  
 |unguent , ἔχρωντο αὐτ' ἐλαίου, |porcine καὶ |made of sesame .

to billet out the different regiments, with their generals, throughout the villages. There was no enemy in sight, and the proceeding seemed prudent, owing to the quantity of snow. In these quarters they had for provisions all the good things there are—sacrificial beasts, corn, old wines with an exquisite bouquet, dried grapes, and vegetables of all sorts. But some of the stragglers from the camp reported having seen an army, and the blaze of many watchfires in the night. Accordingly the generals concluded that it was not prudent to separate their quarters in this way, and a resolution was passed to bring the troops together again. After that they reunited, the more so that the weather promised to be fine with a clear sky; but while they lay there in open quarters, during the night down came so thick a fall of snow that it completely covered up the stacks of arms and the men themselves lying down. It cramped and crippled the baggage animals; and there was great unreadiness to get up, so gently fell the snow as they lay there warm and comfortable, and formed a blanket, except where it slipped off the sleepers' shoulders; and it was not until Xenophon roused himself to get up, and, without his cloak on, began to split wood, that quickly first one and then another got up, and taking the log away from him, fell to splitting. Thereat the rest followed suit, got up, and began kindling fire and oiling their bodies, for there was a scented unguent to be found there in abundance, which they used instead of oil. It was made from

*vocabulary*

ἀληθεύω speak truth; be true  
 ἄμυγδάλινος of almonds  
 ἀποσκεδάννυμι (ῥ) dismiss; scatter  
 ἀτασθαλία recklessness  
 διασκηνέω go to one's tent, leave  
 someone else's  
 ἐμπίμπρημι burn up ~pyre  
 ἐμπρήθω burn up  
 ἐντεῦθεν thence  
 ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable  
 ἐρωτάω ask about something  
 ἡδονή pleasure  
 καθοράω look down ~panorama  
 κραυγή screaming, shouting  
 κώμη village  
 μύρον oil, perfume  
 ὅπόσος as many as, how many, how

## great

Πέρσης Persian  
 πικρός sharp, bitter ~picric  
 ποδαπός from what country, of what  
 sort?  
 πυρά pyre ~pyre  
 σκηνέω camp  
 σκηνόω camp  
 στέγη roof, ceiling, chamber  
 στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
 στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
 mercenary ~strategy  
 συλλαμβάνω seize, capture;  
 understand ~epilepsy  
 συλλέγω collect, assemble ~legion  
 τερμίνθινος tree similar to a pistachio  
 τόξον bow ~toxic  
 φαρέτρα quiver

ἀμυγδάλινον ἐκ τῶν πικρῶν καὶ τερμίνθινον. ἐκ δὲ τῶν αὐτῶν τούτων καὶ μύρον ηὔρισκετο.

Μετὰ ταῦτα ἐδόκει πάλιν διασκηνητέον εἶναι τὰς κώμας εἰς στέγας. ἔνθα δὴ οἱ στρατιῶται σὺν πολλῇ κραυγῇ καὶ ἡδονῇ ἦσαν ἐπὶ τὰς στέγας καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια· ὅσοι δὲ ὅτε τὸ πρότερον ἀπῆσαν τὰς οἰκίας ἐνέπρησαν ὑπὸ ἀτασθαλίας, δίκην ἐδίδοσαν κακῶς σκηνοῦντες. ἐντεῦθεν ἔπεμψαν νυκτὸς Δημοκράτην Τημνίτην ἄνδρας δόντες ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη ἔνθα ἔφασαν οἱ ἀποσκεδαννύμενοι καθορᾶν τὰ πυρά· οὗτος γὰρ ἐδόκει καὶ πρότερον πολλὰ ἤδη ἀληθεῦσαι τοιαῦτα, τὰ ὄντα τε ὥς ὄντα καὶ τὰ μὴ ὄντα ὥς οὐκ ὄντα. πορευθεὶς δὲ τὰ μὲν πυρὰ οὐκ ἔφη ἰδεῖν, ἄνδρα δὲ συλλαβὼν ἤκεν ἄγων ἔχοντα τόξον Περσικὸν καὶ φαρέτραν καὶ σάγαριν οἶανπερ καὶ αἱ Ἀμαζόνες ἔχουσιν. ἐρωτώμενος δὲ ποδαπὸς εἶη Πέρσης μὲν ἔφη εἶναι, πορεύεσθαι δ' ἀπὸ τοῦ Τιριβάζου στρατοπέδου, ὅπως ἐπιτήδεια λάβοι. οἱ δὲ ἡρώτων αὐτὸν τὸ στράτευμα ὅποσον τε εἶη καὶ ἐπὶ τίνι συνειλεγμένον. ὁ δὲ εἶπεν ὅτι



|of almonds ἐκ τῶν |sharp καὶ |tree similar to ἐκ δὲ τῶν  
|a pistachio  
αὐτῶν τούτων καὶ |oil, perfume ἵκετο.

Μετὰ ταῦτα ἐδόκει πάλιν διασκηνητέον εἶναι τὰς |village  
εἰς |roof, ceiling, ἦτα δὴ οἱ |soldier, σὺν πολλῇ |screaming,  
|chamber |mercenary |shouting  
καὶ |pleasure, ἵσαν ἐπὶ τὰς |roof, ceiling, τὰ |fit, suitable ὅσοι  
|chamber  
δὲ ὅτε τὸ πρότερον ἀπῆσαν τὰς οἰκίας ἐνέπρησαν ὑπὸ  
|recklessness , δίκην ἐδίδοσαν κακῶς σκηνοῦντες. |thence  
ἔπεμψαν νυκτὸς Δημοκράτην Τημνίτην ἄνδρας δόντες  
ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη ἔνθα ἔφασαν οἱ |dismiss; scatter |look down  
τὰ |pyre οὗτος γὰρ ἐδόκει καὶ πρότερον πολλὰ ἤδη  
|speak truth; τοιαῦτα, τὰ ὄντα τε ὡς ὄντα καὶ τὰ μὴ ὄντα  
|be true  
ὡς οὐκ ὄντα. πορευθεὶς δὲ τὰ μὲν |pyre οὐκ ἔφη ἰδεῖν,  
ἄνδρα δὲ |seize, capture; ἐν ἄγων ἔχοντα |bow Περσικὸν  
|understand  
καὶ |quiver καὶ σάγαριν οἶανπερ καὶ αἱ Ἀμαζόνες  
ἔχουσιν. |ask δὲ |from what coun- ἑρσης μὲν ἔφη  
|try, of what sort?  
εἶναι, πορεύεσθαι δ' ἀπὸ τοῦ Τιριβάζου στρατοπέδου,  
ὅπως |fit, suitable λάβοι. οἱ δὲ |ask αὐτὸν τὸ |army  
|as/how many/great... ἐπὶ τίνι |collect, assemble . ὁ δὲ εἶπεν ὅτι

pig's fat, sesame, bitter almonds, and turpentine. There was a sweet oil also to be found, made of the same ingredients.

After this it was resolved that they must again separate their quarters and get under cover in the villages. At this news the soldiers, with much joy and shouting, rushed upon the covered houses and the provisions; but all who in their blind folly had set fire to the houses when they left them before, now paid the penalty in the poor quarters they got. From this place one night they sent off a party under Democrates, a Temenite, up into the mountains, where the stragglers reported having seen watchfires. The leader selected was a man whose judgement might be depended upon to verify the truth of the matter. With a happy gift to distinguish between fact and fiction, he had often been successfully appealed to. He went and reported that he had seen no watchfires, but he had got a man, whom he brought back with him, carrying a Persian bow and quiver, and a sagaris or battleaxe like those worn by the Amazons. When asked «from what country he came,” the prisoner answered that he was «a Persian, and was going from the army of Tiribazus to get provisions.” They next asked him «how large the army was, and for what object it had been collected.” His answer was that «it consisted of Tiribazus

*vocabulary*

**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured ~helix  
**ἀνακράζω** yell, scream  
**ἄρτοκόπος** baker  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**ἐκπωμα** -τος (n, 3) drinking cup  
**Ἑλλήν** Greek  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**ἐπίθεσις** -εως (f) attack  
**ἡγεμών** -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide, chief ~hegemony  
**ἡλόω** sharpen  
**θέω** run, run for  
**θόρυβος** noise, clamor  
**καθοράω** look down ~panorama  
**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon  
**κλίνη** (i) bed, couch ~clinic  
**κλίνω** (i) lean, recline ~incline  
**μισθοφόρος** mercenary  
**μοναχὴ** kind of cloth  
**μοναχός** unique, solitary, a monk

**οἰνοχόος** -ῶ cupbearer ~wine  
**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless  
**ὀπλίτης** -ου (i, m, 1) hoplite, heavy infantryman ~hoplite  
**πελταστής** -οῦ (m, 1) light troops ~pelt  
**πορεία** gait, march  
**πρόειμι** to have been before, earlier ~ion  
**σκηνή** tent; stage  
**στενός** narrow  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**συνάγω** assemble; join in battle ~demagogue  
**ὑπερβάλλω** cause to go beyond; delay ~ballistic  
**ὑπερβολή** mountain pass; excess  
**ὑπομένω** stay behind, await ~remain  
**φάσκω** declare, promise, think ~fame  
**φύλαξ** -χος (m) guard; sentry ~phylactery

Τιριβάζος εἶη ἔχων τήν τε ἑαυτοῦ δύναμιν καὶ μισθοφόρους  
 Χάλυβας καὶ Ταόχους· παρεσκευάσθαι δὲ αὐτὸν ἔφη ὡς  
 ἐπὶ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ τοῦ ὄρους ἐν τοῖς στενοῖς ἥπερ μοναχῇ  
 εἶη πορεία, ἐνταῦθα ἐπιθησόμενον τοῖς Ἑλλήσιν.

Ἀκούσασι τοῖς στρατηγοῖς ταῦτα ἔδοξε τὸ στράτευμα  
 συναγαγεῖν· καὶ εὐθὺς φύλακας καταλιπόντες καὶ  
 στρατηγὸν ἐπὶ τοῖς μένουσι Σοφαίνετον Στυμφάλιον  
 ἐπορεύοντο ἔχοντες ἡγεμόνα τὸν ἀλόντα ἄνθρωπον.  
 ἐπειδὴ δὲ ὑπερέβαλλον τὰ ὄρη, οἱ πελτασταὶ προϊόντες  
 καὶ κατιδόντες τὸ στρατόπεδον οὐκ ἔμειναν τοὺς ὀπλίτας,  
 ἀλλ' ἀνακραγόντες ἔθρον ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. οἱ δὲ  
 βάρβαροι ἀκούσαντες τὸν θόρυβον οὐχ ὑπέμειναν, ἀλλ'  
 ἔφευγον· ὅμως δὲ καὶ ἀπέθανόν τινες τῶν βαρβάρων καὶ  
 ἵπποι ἥλωσαν εἰς εἴκοσι καὶ ἡ σκηνὴ ἡ Τιριβάζου ἐάλω  
 καὶ ἐν αὐτῇ κλῖναι ἀργυρόποδες καὶ ἐκπώματα καὶ οἱ  
 ἀρτοκόποι καὶ οἱ οἰνοχόοι φάσκοντες εἶναι. ἐπειδὴ δὲ  
 ἐπίθοντο ταῦτα οἱ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν στρατηγοί, ἐδόκει αὐτοῖς  
 ἀπιέναι τὴν ταχίστην ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον, μή τις ἐπίθεσις

Τιρίβαζος εἷη ἔχων τήν τε ἑαυτοῦ δύναμιν καὶ |mercenary

Χάλυβας καὶ Ταόχους· παρεσκευάσθαι δὲ αὐτὸν ἔφη ὡς

ἐπὶ τῇ |mountain οὐ ὄρους ἐν τοῖς |narrow ἥπερ μοναχῇ  
|pass; excess

εἷη |gait, |there, here' τιθησόμενον τοῖς |Greek  
|march

Ἀκούσασι τοῖς στρατηγοῖς ταῦτα ἔδοξε τὸ |army

συναγαγεῖν· καὶ εὐθὺς |guard; καταλιπόντες καὶ  
|sentry

στρατηγὸν ἐπὶ τοῖς μένουσι Σοφαίνετον Στυμφάλιον

ἐπορεύοντο ἔχοντες |leader τὸν |be captured' θρωπον.

ἐπειδὴ δὲ |cause to go be- τὰ ὄρη, οἱ |light troops |to have been  
|yond; delay |before, earlier

καὶ |look down τὸ στρατόπεδον οὐκ ἔμειναν τοὺς |hoplite, heavy  
|infantryman

ἀλλ' |yell, scream |run ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. οἱ δὲ

|non-Greek ἀκούσαντες τὸν |noise, οὐχ |stay behind, await'  
|clamor

ἔφευγον· ὅμως δὲ καὶ ἀπέθανόν τινες τῶν |non-Greek καὶ

ἵπποι |sharpen εἰς εἴκοσι καὶ ἡ |tent; ἡ Τιριβάζου |be captured  
|stage

καὶ ἐν αὐτῇ κλῖναι ἀργυρόποδες καὶ |drinking cup καὶ οἱ

|baker καὶ οἱ |cupbearer |declare, promise, u. ἐπειδὴ δὲ  
|think

ἐπύθοντο ταῦτα οἱ τῶν |hoplite, heavy πηγοί, ἐδόκει αὐτοῖς  
|infantryman

ἀπιέναι τὴν ταχίστην ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον, μή τις |attack

at the head of his own forces, and aided by some Chalybian and Taochian mercenaries. Tiribazus had got it together," he added, «meaning to attack the Hellenes on the high mountain pass, in a defile which was the sole passage."

When the generals heard this news, they resolved to collect the troops, and they set off at once, taking the prisoner to act as guide, and leaving a garrison behind with Sophaenetus the Stymphalian in command of those who remained in the camp. As soon as they had begun to cross the hills, the light infantry, advancing in front and catching sight of the camp, did not wait for the heavy infantry, but with a loud shout rushed upon the enemy's entrenchment. The natives, hearing the din and clatter, did not care to stop, but took rapidly to their heels. But, for all their expedition, some of them were killed, and as many as twenty horses were captured, with the tent of Tiribazus, and its contents, silver-footed couches and goblets, besides certain persons styling themselves the butlers and bakers. As soon as the generals of the heavy infantry division had learnt the news, they resolved to return to the camp with all speed, for fear of an attack being made on

*vocabulary*

**ἄκρον** crest, extremity ~acute  
**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme ~acute  
**ἀνακαλέω** call, summon, recall  
**ἀποκαίω** burn off  
**αὐθήμερος** on the same day  
**βρέχω** soak; it rains  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἐρῆμος** empty  
**ἡγεμῶν** -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide, chief ~hegemony  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch, overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy  
**καταλείβω** drip  
**καταλείπω** leave behind, abandon ~eclipse  
**καταστρατοπεδεύω** encamp, station  
**μάντις** -ος (m) seer ~mantis  
**ὀμφαλός** navel, nub ~umbilicus

**ὅπη** wherever, however  
**παντάπασιν** altogether; yes, certainly  
**παρασάγγης** -ου (m, 1) Persian unit, ca. 5 km  
**πεντεκαίδεκα** 15  
**πηγή** headwaters, fountain  
**πήγνυμι** (ῥ) stick, set, build ~fang  
**πηγός** stout, mighty  
**πνέω** breathe, blow ~apnea  
**πρόσω** forward, in the future; far  
**σάλπιγξ** -γος (f) trumpet  
**σταθμός** cottage; post  
**στενός** narrow  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**συλλέγω** collect, assemble ~legion  
**συσκευάζω** pack up  
**ὑπερβάλλω** cause to go beyond; delay ~ballistic  
**ὑστεραίῳς** the next; later  
**χιών** χιόνος (f, 3) snow

γένοιτο τοῖς καταλελειμμένοις. καὶ εὐθὺς ἀνακαλεσάμενοι τῇ σάλπιγγι ἀπῆσαν, καὶ ἀφίκοντο αὐθημερὸν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον.

## 4.5

Τῇ δ' ὑστεραία ἐδόκει πορευτέον εἶναι ὅπῃ δύναιτο τάχιστα πρὶν ἢ συλλεγῆναι τὸ στράτευμα πάλιν καὶ καταλαβεῖν τὰ στενά. συσκευασάμενοι δ' εὐθὺς ἐπορεύοντο διὰ χιόνος πολλῆς ἡγεμόνας ἔχοντες πολλούς· καὶ αὐθημερὸν ὑπερβαλόντες τὸ ἄκρον ἐφ' ᾧ ἔμελλεν ἐπιτίθεσθαι Τυρίβαζος κατεστρατοπεδεύσαντο. ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμούς ἐρήμους τρεῖς παρασάγγας πεντεκαίδεκα ἐπὶ τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμόν, καὶ διέβαινον αὐτὸν βρεχόμενοι πρὸς τὸν ὀμφαλόν. ἐλέγοντο δ' οὐδὲ πηγαὶ πρόσω εἶναι. ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο διὰ χιόνος πολλῆς καὶ πεδίου σταθμούς τρεῖς παρασάγγας πεντεκαίδεκα. ὁ δὲ τρίτος ἐγένετο χαλεπὸς καὶ ἄνεμος βορρᾶς ἐναντίος ἔπνει παντάπασιν ἀποκαίων πάντα καὶ πηγνὺς τοὺς ἀνθρώπους. ἔνθα δὴ τῶν μάντεών τις εἶπε



γένοιτο τοῖς καταλελειμένοις. καὶ εὐθὺς |call, summon, recall  
 τῇ |trumpet ἀπῆσαν, καὶ ἀφίκοντο αὐθημερὸν ἐπὶ τὸ  
 στρατόπεδον.

4.5

Τῇ δ' |the next; later ἔκει πορευτέον εἶναι |wherever, |ινο  
 |however  
 τάχιστα πρὶν ἢ |collect, τὸ |army πάλιν καὶ  
 |assemble  
 |seize, understand, narrow |pack up δ' εὐθὺς  
 |catch, overtake; (mp)  
 |happen  
 ἐπορεύοντο διὰ |snow πολλῆς ἡγεμόνας ἔχοντες πολλούς·  
 καὶ αὐθημερὸν |cause to go be- τὸ ἄκρον ἐφ' ᾧ ἔμελλεν  
 |yond; delay  
 ἐπιτίθεσθαι Τιρίβαζος |encamp, station |thence  
 δ' ἐπορεύθησαν |cottage; post ῥήμους τρεῖς |ca. 5 km

|15 ἐπὶ τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμόν, καὶ |pass over, cross  
 αὐτὸν |soak; it rains πρὸς τὸν |navel, nub. ἐλέγοντο δ'  
 οὐδὲ πηγαὶ |forward, in the fu-|thence ἐπορεύοντο διὰ  
 |ture; far  
 |snow πολλῆς καὶ πεδίου |cottage; post .ρεῖς |ca. 5 km

|15 . ὁ δὲ τρίτος ἐγένετο χαλεπὸς καὶ ἄνεμος  
 βορρᾶς ἐναντίος |breath, |altogether; yes, |burn off πάντα καὶ  
 |blow |certainly  
 |stick, set, build ἰνθρώπους. ἔνθα δὲ τῶν |seer τις εἶπε

the remnant left behind. The recall was sounded and the retreat commenced; the camp was reached the same day.

#### 4.5

The next day it was resolved that they should set off with all possible speed, before the enemy had time to collect and occupy the defile. Having got their kit and baggage together, they at once began their march through deep snow with several guides, and, crossing the high pass the same day on which Tiribazus was to have attacked them, got safely into cantonments. From this point they marched three desert stages—fifteen parassangs—to the river Euphrates, and crossed it in water up to the waist. The sources of the river were reported to be at no great distance. From this place they marched through deep snow over a flat country three stages—fifteen parasangs. The last of these marches was trying, with the north wind blowing in their teeth, drying up everything and benumbing the men. Here one of the seers suggested to them to

*vocabulary*

ἄγνοέω be ignorant of ~gnostic  
 ἀνδράποδον -ς slave ~androgynous  
 βάθος -ους (n, 3) depth, height  
 βόθρος pit, grotto, trench  
 βουλιμιάω (ιι) be ravenous  
 βρωτός food, meat  
 δάπεδον floor, prepared ground  
 διαγίγνομαι go through; subsist  
 ~genus  
 διατήκω melt, soak, soften  
 ἐμπειρος experienced  
 ἐντεῦθεν thence  
 ἔπειμι lie upon; approach ~ion  
 καίω burn ~caustic  
 καταλαμβάνω seize, understand, catch,  
 overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy  
 λάσκω cry, crack, ring  
 λήγω cease, (+gen+ppl) cause to cease  
 ~lax  
 μεταδίδωμι give part of ~donate  
 μετρέω measure, traverse ~metric  
 ξύλον piece of wood ~xylophone

ὀπισθοφυλακέω guard the rear  
 ὀργυιά fathom, arm's length  
 ὀψέ late, in evening ~epitaph  
 ὀψίζω be late, out late  
 πάθος -ους (n, 3) an experience,  
 passion, condition  
 πάλαι long ago ~paleo  
 πάλη wrestling ~Pallas  
 πάλλω shake, brandish ~Pallas  
 περιφανής conspicuous, notorious  
 πρόσσειμι approach, draw near; add  
 ~ion  
 προσήμι be allowed near  
 πυρός (ῶ) wheat  
 σαφής clear, understandable  
 σταθμάομαι judge, conclude  
 σταθμόομαι judge, conclude  
 σταθμός cottage; post  
 στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
 mercenary ~strategy  
 σφαγιάζομαι sacrifice an animal  
 ὑποζύγιον beast of burden ~zygote  
 χιών χιόνος (f, 3) snow

σφαγιάσασθαι τῷ ἀνέμῳ, καὶ σφαγιάζεται· καὶ πᾶσι δὴ περιφανῶς ἔδοξεν λῆξαι τὸ χαλεπὸν τοῦ πνεύματος. ἦν δὲ τῆς χιόνος τὸ βάθος ὀργυιὰ· ὥστε καὶ τῶν ὑποζυγίων καὶ τῶν ἀνδραπόδων πολλὰ ἀπώλετο καὶ τῶν στρατιωτῶν ὡς τριάκοντα.

Διεγένοντο δὲ τὴν νύκτα πῦρ καίοντες· ξύλα δ' ἦν ἐν τῷ σταθμῷ πολλά· οἱ δὲ ὀψὲ προσιόντες ξύλα οὐκ εἶχον. οἱ οὖν πάλαι ἦκοντες καὶ τὸ πῦρ καίοντες οὐ προσίεσαν πρὸς τὸ πῦρ τοὺς ὀψίζοντας, εἰ μὴ μεταδοῖεν αὐτοῖς πυροὺς ἢ ἄλλο τι εἴ τι ἔχοιεν βρωτόν. ἔνθα δὴ μετεδίδουσιν ἀλλήλοις ὧν εἶχον ἕκαστοι. ἔνθα δὲ τὸ πῦρ ἐκαίετο, διατηκομένης τῆς χιόνος βόθροι ἐγένοντο μεγάλοι ἔστε ἐπὶ τὸ δάπεδον· οὗ δὴ παρῇν μετρεῖν τὸ βάθος τῆς χιόνος.

Ἐντεῦθεν δὲ τὴν ἐπιούσαν ἡμέραν ὅλην ἐπορεύοντο διὰ χιόνος, καὶ πολλοὶ τῶν ἀνθρώπων ἐβουλιμίαςαν. Ξενοφῶν δ' ὀπισθοφυλακῶν καὶ καταλαμβάνων τοὺς πίπτοντας τῶν ἀνθρώπων ἡγνόει ὅτι τὸ πάθος εἴη. ἐπειδὴ δὲ εἶπέ τις αὐτῷ τῶν ἐμπείρων ὅτι σαφῶς βουλιμῶσι κἄν

|sacrifice an animal ὃ ἀνέμω, καὶ σφαγιάζεται· καὶ πᾶσι δὴ

|conspicuous, notorious ἔδοξεν λῆξαι τὸ χαλεπὸν τοῦ πνεύματος. ἦν δὲ

τῆς |snow τὸ |depth, |fathom, arm's length ὧν |beast of burden ὡς

τῶν |slave πολλὰ ἀπώλετο καὶ τῶν στρατιωτῶν

ὥς τριάκοντα.

|go through; subsist, νύκτα πῦρ καίοντες· ξύλα δ' ἦν ἐν τῷ

σταθμῷ πολλά· οἱ δὲ |late προσιόντες ξύλα οὐκ εἶχον. οἱ

οὖν πάλαι ἦκοντες καὶ τὸ πῦρ καίοντες οὐ |be allowed near ὧς

τὸ πῦρ τοὺς |be late, out late, ὧς |give part of αὐτοῖς |wheat ἢ

ἄλλο τι εἴ τι ἔχοιεν |food, meat ἔνθα δὲ |give part of ἀλλήλοις

ὧν εἶχον ἕκαστοι. ἔνθα δὲ τὸ πῦρ ἐκαίετο, |melt, soak, soften

τῆς |snow |pit, grotto, trench ὧς μεγάλοι ἔστε ἐπὶ τὸ |floor

οὗ δὲ παρῆν |measure, τὸ |depth, τῆς |snow  
|traverse |height

Ἐντεῦθεν δὲ τὴν ἐπιούσαν ἡμέραν ὅλην ἐπορεύοντο

διὰ |snow, καὶ πολλοὶ τῶν ἀνθρώπων |be ravenous

Ξενοφῶν δ' |guard the rear καὶ καταλαμβάνων τοὺς

πίπτοντας τῶν ἀνθρώπων ἡγνόει ὅτι τὸ |an experience, pas-  
|sion, condition

δὲ εἰπέ τις αὐτῷ τῶν |experienced ὅτι σαφῶς |be ravenous καὶ

do sacrifice to Boreas, and sacrifice was done. The effect was obvious to all in the diminished fierceness of the blast. But there was six feet of snow, so that many of the baggage animals and slaves were lost, and about thirty of the men themselves.

They spent the whole night in kindling fire; for there was fortunately no dearth of wood at the halting-place; only those who came late into camp had no wood. Accordingly those who had arrived a good while and had kindled fires were not for allowing these late-comers near the fires, unless they would in return give a share of their corn or of any other victuals they might have. Here then a general exchange of goods was set up. Where the fire was kindled the snow melted, and great trenches formed themselves down to the bare earth, and here it was possible to measure the depth of the snow.

Leaving these quarters, they marched the whole of the next day over snow, and many of the men were afflicted with «boulimia” (or hunger-faintness). Xenophon, who was guarding the rear, came upon some men who had dropt down, and he did not know what ailed them; but some one who was experienced in such matters suggested to him that they had evidently got boulimia; and

*vocabulary*

**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not needing ~Sp. sin  
**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some distance  
**ἄσιτος** (ι) not eating ~parasite  
**βουλιμιάω** (ιι) be ravenous  
**βρωτός** food, meat  
**διαδίδωμι** distribute, send out  
**διαπέμπω** send out/over  
**διατελέω** accomplish; keep doing ~apostle  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**ἐρμηνεύς** -ος (m) interpreter  
**ἔρουμα** -τος (n, 3) protection ~serve  
**ἐρωτάω** ask about something  
**ἐφέπω** drive, meet, follow ~sequel  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch, overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy  
**κνέφας** -ος (n, 3) dark, dusk  
**κραίνω** accomplish; (rare) rule  
**κρήνη** well, spring

**κώμαρχος** village leader  
**κώμη** village  
**νυκτερεύω** pass the night  
**ὀψέ** late, in evening ~epitaph  
**παρασάγγης** -ου (m, 1) Persian unit, ca. 5 km  
**περίειμι** be superior to; be left over; still exist  
**περιτρέχω** run about  
**Περσίς** Persian (language)  
**σατράπης** -ου (m, 1) satrap, Persian governor  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier, mercenary ~strategy  
**στρατοπεδεύω** encamp or take up station ~strategy  
**συλλέγω** collect, assemble ~legion  
**συνεισέρχομαι** enter with  
**ὕδροφορέω** carry water  
**ὕδροφόρος** water carrier  
**ὕποζυγιον** beast of burden ~zygote

τι φάγωσιν ἀναστήσονται, περιῶν περὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια, εἴ  
 πού τι ὁράῃ βρωτόν, διεδίδου καὶ διέπεμπε διδόντας τοὺς  
 δυναμένους περιτρέχειν τοῖς βουλμιώσιν. ἐπειδὴ δέ τι  
 ἐμφάγοιεν, ἀνίσταντο καὶ ἐπορεύοντο.

Πορευομένων δὲ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἀμφὶ κνέφας πρὸς κώμην  
 ἀφικνεῖται, καὶ ὕδροφορούσας ἐκ τῆς κώμης πρὸς τῇ  
 κρήνῃ γυναῖκας καὶ κόρας καταλαμβάνει ἔμπροσθεν τοῦ  
 ἐρύματος. αὐται ἡρώτων αὐτοὺς τίνες εἶεν. ὁ δ' ἐρμηνεύς  
 εἶπε Περσιιστὶ ὅτι παρὰ βασιλέως πορεύονται πρὸς τὸν  
 σατράπην. αἱ δὲ ἀπεκρίναντο ὅτι οὐκ ἐνταῦθα εἴη, ἀλλ'  
 ἀπέχει ὅσον παρασάγγην. οἱ δ', ἐπεὶ ὁψέ ἦν, πρὸς  
 τὸν κώμαρχον συνεισέρχονται εἰς τὸ ἔρυμα σὺν ταῖς  
 ὕδροφόροις. Χειρίσοφος μὲν οὖν καὶ ὅσοι ἐδυνήθησαν  
 τοῦ στρατεύματος ἐνταῦθα ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο, τῶν δ'  
 ἄλλων στρατιωτῶν οἱ μὴ δυνάμενοι διατελέσαι τὴν ὁδὸν  
 ἐνυκτέρευσαν ἄσιτοι καὶ ἄνευ πυρός· καὶ ἐνταῦθά τινες  
 ἀπώλοντο τῶν στρατιωτῶν.

Ἐφείποντο δὲ τῶν πολεμίων συνειλεγμένοι τινὲς καὶ



τι φάγῳσιν ἀναστήσονται, |be superior to; be left|beast of burden  
|over; still exist  
πού τι ὀρώη |food, meat|distribute, .... |send out/over |όντας τοὺς  
|send out  
δυναμένους |run about τοῖς |be ravenous . ἐπειδὴ δέ τι  
ἐμφάγοιεν, ἀνίσταντο καὶ ἐπορεύοντο.

Πορευομένων δὲ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἀμφὶ |dark, dusk, ὅς |village  
ἀφικνεῖται, καὶ |carry water ἐκ τῆς |village πρὸς τῇ  
κρήνῃ γυναικας καὶ κόρας |seize, understand, catch, |θεν τοῦ  
|overtake; (mp) happen  
|protection . αὗται ἡρώτων αὐτοὺς τίνες εἶεν. ὁ δ' |interpreter  
εἶπε |Persian (language) ἡρὰ βασιλέως πορεύονται πρὸς τὸν  
|satrap . αἱ δὲ ἀπεκρίναντο ὅτι οὐκ ἐνταῦθα εἴη, ἀλλ'  
ἀπέχει ὅσον |ca. 5 km . οἱ δ', ἐπεὶ |late ἦν, πρὸς  
τὸν |village |enter with εἰς τὸ |protection ἔν ταῖς  
|leader  
|water carrier . Χειρίσοφος μὲν οὖν καὶ ὅσοι ἐδυνήθησαν  
τοῦ |army ἐνταῦθα |encamp or take up sta- , τῶν δ'  
|tion  
ἄλλων στρατιωτῶν οἱ μὴ δυνάμενοι |accomplish; τὴν ὁδὸν  
|keep doing  
|pass the night |not eating ἔ |away from; not hav- ἔνταῦθά τινες  
|ing; not needing  
ἀπώλονται τῶν στρατιωτῶν.

ἐφέπω?: drive, meet, follow; or collect, assemble τινὲς καὶ  
ἐφέπω?: drive, meet, follow

if they got something to eat, they would revive. Then he went the round of the baggage train, and laying an embargo on any eatables he could see, doled out with his own hands, or sent off other able-bodied agents to distribute to the sufferers, who as soon as they had taken a mouthful got on their legs again and continued the march.

On and on they marched, and about dusk Cheirisophus reached a village, and surprised some women and girls who had come from the village to fetch water at the fountain outside the stockade. These asked them who they were. The interpreters answered for them in Persian: «They were on their way from the king to the satrap;» in reply to which the women gave them to understand that the satrap was not at home, but was away a parasang farther on. As it was late they entered with the water-carriers within the stockade to visit the headman of the village. Accordingly Cheirisophus and as many of the troops as were able got into cantonments there, while the rest of the soldiers—those namely who were unable to complete the march—had to spend the night out, without food and without fire; under the circumstances some of the men perished.

On the heels of the army hung perpetually

*vocabulary*

**ἀποσήπομαι** rot off  
**ἀρπάζω** carry off, seize ~harpoon  
**ἀρχαῖος** ancient, from the beginning  
 ~oligarch  
**ἀτμίζω** emit smoke, steam  
**αὐτόθι** on the spot  
**δάκτυλος** finger, toe  
**εἰκάζω** liken; conjecture  
**εἰσδύω** take part in  
**ἐκλείπω** leave out, pass over  
**ἐκτρέπω** turn aside  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**ἐπικουρήμα** protection, remedy  
**ἐπιλείπω** fail, not work ~eclipse  
**ἡσυχία** peace and quiet  
**ἱμάς** -ντος (ī, m, 3) strap  
**καρβάτινος** moccasin  
**κινέω** (ī) set in motion, move, remove  
 ~kinetic  
**κοιμάω** put to sleep; (pass) lie down,

have sex  
**κρήνη** well, spring  
**μηδέποτε** never  
**νάπη** valley  
**νεόδαρτος** newly stripped off  
 ~dermatology  
**ὀπισθοφύλαξ** rear guard ~phylactery  
**πλησίος** near, neighboring  
**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
 mercenary ~strategy  
**τήχω** melt  
**ὑποδέω** bind under the feet  
**ὑπόδημα** -τος (n, 3) sandals  
**ὑποζύγιον** beast of burden ~zygote  
**ὑπολείπω** leave as a leftover; leave a  
 person behind ~eclipse  
**ὑπολύω** free from ~loose  
**χιών** χιόνος (f, 3) snow  
**χωρίον** area; downwards  
**ψυχος** -εος (n, 3) coolness  
 ~psychology

τὰ μὴ δυνάμενα τῶν ὑποζυγίων ἥρπαζον καὶ ἀλλήλοις ἐμάχοντο περὶ αὐτῶν. ἐλείποντο δὲ τῶν στρατιωτῶν οἳ τε διεφθαρμένοι ὑπὸ τῆς χιόνος τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς οἳ τε ὑπὸ τοῦ ψύχους τοὺς δακτύλους τῶν ποδῶν ἀποσεσηπότες. ἦν δὲ τοῖς μὲν ὀφθαλμοῖς ἐπικούρημα τῆς χιόνος εἴ τις μέλαν τι ἔχων πρὸ τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν ἐπορεύετο, τῶν δὲ ποδῶν εἴ τις κινοῖτο καὶ μηδέποτε ἡσυχίαν ἔχοι καὶ εἰς τὴν νύκτα ὑπολύοιτο· ὅσοι δὲ ὑποδεδεμένοι ἐκοιμῶντο, εἰσεδύνοντο εἰς τοὺς πόδας οἱ ἱμάντες καὶ τὰ ὑποδήματα περιεπήγνυντο· καὶ γὰρ ἦσαν, ἐπειδὴ ἐπέλιπε τὰ ἀρχαῖα ὑποδήματα, καρβάτιναι πεποιημένοι ἐκ τῶν νεοδάρτων βοῶν. διὰ τὰς τοιαύτας οὖν ἀνάγκας ὑπελείποντό τινες τῶν στρατιωτῶν· καὶ ἰδόντες μέλαν τι χωρίον διὰ τὸ ἐκλελοιπέναι αὐτόθι τὴν χιόνα εἵκαζον τετηκέναι· καὶ ἐτετήκει διὰ κρήνην τινὰ ἣ πλησίον ἦν ἀτμίζουσα ἐν νάπη. ἐνταῦθ' ἐκτραπόμενοι ἐκάθηντο καὶ οὐκ ἔφασαν πορεύεσθαι.

Ὁ δὲ Ξενοφὼν ἔχων ὀπισθοφύλακας ὡς ᾔσθετο, ἐδείτο

τὰ μὴ δυνάμενα τῶν |beast of bur-|carry off, seize` ἀλλήλοις  
 |den  
 ἐμάχοντο περὶ αὐτῶν. ἐλείποντο δὲ τῶν στρατιωτῶν οἷ  
 τε διεφθαρμένοι ὑπὸ τῆς |snow τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς οἷ τε ὑπὸ  
 τοῦ |coolness τοὺς |finger, toe τῶν ποδῶν |rot off  
 ἦν δὲ τοῖς μὲν ὀφθαλμοῖς |protection, τῆς |snow εἴ τις  
 |remedy  
 μέλαν τι ἔχων πρὸ τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν ἐπορεύετο, τῶν δὲ  
 ποδῶν εἴ τις κινοῖτο καὶ |never |peace and quiet :αἱ εἰς  
 τὴν νύκτα |free from ὅσοι δὲ |bind under the feet μῶντο,  
 εἰσεδύνοντο εἰς τοὺς πόδας οἱ |strap καὶ τὰ |sandals  
 περιεπήγνυντο· καὶ γὰρ ἦσαν, ἐπειδὴ |fail, not work |ancient, from the be-  
 |ginning  
 |sandals , |moccasin πεποιημένοι ἐκ τῶν |newly  
 |stripped  
 βοῶν. διὰ τὰς τοιαύτας οὖν ἀνάγκας |leave (food, person) off  
 τῶν στρατιωτῶν· καὶ ἰδόντες μέλαν τι χωρίον διὰ τὸ  
 ἐκλελοιπέναι |on the spot, |snow |liken; |melt καὶ  
 |conjecture  
 |melt διὰ |well, τινὰ ἢ πλησίον ἦν |emit smoke, steam  
 |spring  
 |valley ἐνταῦθ' |turn aside ἐκάθηντο καὶ οὐκ ἔφασαν  
 πορεύεσθαι.

Ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἔχων |rear guard ὥς ᾗσθητο, ἐδεῖτο

bands of the enemy, snatching away disabled baggage animals and fighting with each other over the carcasses. And in its track not seldom were left to their fate disabled soldiers, struck down with snow-blindness or with toes mortified by frostbite. As to the eyes, it was some alleviation against the snow to march with something black before them; for the feet, the only remedy was to keep in motion without stopping for an instant, and to loose the sandal at night. If they went to sleep with the sandals on, the thong worked into the feet, and the sandals were frozen fast to them. This was partly due to the fact that, since their old sandals had failed, they wore untanned brogues made of newly-flayed ox-hides. It was owing to some such dire necessity that a party of men fell out and were left behind, and seeing a black-looking patch of ground where the snow had evidently disappeared, they conjectured it must have been melted; and this was actually so, owing to a spring of some sort which was to be seen steaming up in a dell close by. To this they had turned aside and sat down, and were loth to go a step further.

But Xenophon, with his rearguard, perceived them, and begged

*vocabulary*

**ἀνακράζω** yell, scream  
**ἀναπαύω** cause to cease ~pause  
**ἀπολείπω** leave behind, fail ~eclipse  
**ἀπολιμπάνω** leave behind, fail  
**ἀσθενέω** be weak, sick  
**ἀσπίς** -δος (f) shield ~spit  
**ἄτε** as if; since  
**ἄω** aor: to sate ~sate  
**διέρχομαι** pierce, traverse  
**ἐκκαλύπτω** disclose, reveal  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**ἐξάνιστημι** raise, bring/send out  
**ἔπειμι** lie upon; approach ~ion  
**θόρυβος** noise, clamor  
**κάμνω** toil, be tired, acquire by toil; be troubled; be sick  
**κράτιστος** best  
**κρούω** hit, clap, knock  
**μηχανή** machine; mechanism, way  
**νάπη** valley  
**ὀπισθοφύλαξ** rear guard ~phylactery  
**οὐδαμοῦ** nowhere

**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near; add  
 ~ion  
**σκότος** darkness, shadow ~shadow  
**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)  
**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm;  
 (pl noun) 200 meters  
**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
 mercenary ~strategy  
**συλλέγω** collect, assemble ~legion  
**τελευτάω** bring about, finish ~apostle  
**τελευτή** conclusion, fulfilment ~apostle  
**τέσσαρες** four ~trapezoid  
**τέχνη** craft, art, plan, contrivance  
 ~technology  
**τρέχω** run, spin  
**ὕγιαίνω** be healthy  
**ὕστεραῖος** the next; later  
**φθέγγομαι** make a sound, utter  
 ~diphthong  
**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch  
 ~phylactery  
**χαλεπαίνω** be violent, rage  
**χιών** χιόνος (f, 3) snow

αὐτῶν πάσῃ τέχνῃ καὶ μηχανῇ μὴ ἀπολείπεσθαι, λέγων ὅτι ἔπονται πολλοὶ πολέμοι συνειλεγμένοι, καὶ τελευτῶν ἐχαλέπαινε. οἱ δὲ σφάττειν ἐκέλευον· οὐ γὰρ ἂν δύνασθαι πορευθῆναι.

Ἐνταῦθα ἔδοξε κράτιστον εἶναι τοὺς ἐπομένους πολεμίους φοβῆσαι, εἴ τις δύναιτο, μὴ ἐπίοιεν τοῖς κάμνουσι. καὶ ἦν μὲν σκότος ἤδη, οἱ δὲ προσῆσαν πολλῷ θορύβῳ ἀμφὶ ὧν εἶχον διαφερόμενοι. ἔνθα δὴ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες, ἅτε ὑγιαίνοντες, ἐξαναστάντες ἔδραμον εἰς τοὺς πολεμίους· οἱ δὲ κάμνοντες ἀνακραγόντες ὅσον ἐδύναντο μέγιστον τὰς ἀσπίδας πρὸς τὰ δόρατα ἔκρουσαν. οἱ δὲ πολέμοι δείσαντες ἤκαν ἑαυτοὺς κατὰ τῆς χιόνος εἰς τὴν νάπην, καὶ οὐδεὶς ἔτι οὐδαμοῦ ἐφθέγγετο.

Καὶ Ξενοφῶν μὲν καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ εἰπόντες τοῖς ἀσθενούσιν ὅτι τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἥξουσὶ τινες ἐπ' αὐτούς, πορευόμενοι πρὶν τέτταρα στάδια διελθεῖν ἐντυγχάνουσιν ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ ἀναπαυομένοις ἐπὶ τῆς χιόνος τοῖς στρατιώταις ἐγκεκαλυμμένοις, καὶ οὐδὲ φυλακὴ οὐδεμία καθειστήκει·



αὐτῶν πάσῃ |craft καὶ |machine; mecha- ολείπεσθαι, λέγων  
 |nism, way  
 ὅτι ἔπονται πολλοὶ πολέμοι |collect, assemble καὶ τελευτῶν  
 |be violent, rage λί δὲ σφάττειν ἐκέλευον· οὐ γὰρ ἂν δύνασθαι  
 πορευθῆναι.

|there, here ἴδοξε |best εἶναι τοὺς ἐπομένους πολεμίους  
 φοβῆσαι, εἴ τις δύναιτο, μὴ |lie upon; âp-|toil, acquire, καὶ  
 |proach |be tired  
 ἦν μὲν |darkness ἴδῃ, οἱ δὲ |approach πολλῶ |noise, ἀμφὶ  
 |clamor  
 ὧν εἶχον διαφερόμενοι. ἔνθα δὲ οἱ |rear guard , ἅτε  
 |be healthy , |raise, bring/send|run, spin εἰς τοὺς πολεμίους·  
 |out  
 οἱ δὲ |toil, acquire,|yell, scream ὅσον ἐδύναντο μέγιστον  
 |be tired  
 τὰς |shield πρὸς τὰ δόρατα |hit, clap, knock· δὲ πολέμοι  
 δείσαντες ἦκαν ἑαυτοὺς κατὰ τῆς |snow εἰς τὴν |valley ,  
 καὶ οὐδεὶς ἔτι |nowhere |make a sound, utter

Καὶ Ξενοφῶν μὲν καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ εἰπόντες τοῖς  
 ἀσθενούσιν ὅτι τῇ |the next; later, νυσί τινες ἐπ' αὐτούς,  
 πορευόμενοι πρὶν |four στάδια |pierce, ἐντυγχάνουσιν  
 |traverse  
 ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ |cause to cease ἐπὶ τῆς |snow τοῖς στρατιώταις  
 |disclose, reveal , καὶ οὐδὲ |guard, οὐδεμία καθειστήκει·  
 |prison,  
 |watch

and implored them by all manner of means not to be left behind, telling them that the enemy were after them in large packs pursuing; and he ended by growing angry. They merely bade him put a knife to their throats; not one step farther would they stir.

Then it seemed best to frighten the pursuing enemy if possible, and prevent their falling upon the invalids. It was already dusk, and the pursuers were advancing with much noise and hubbub, wrangling and disputing over their spoils. Then all of a sudden the rearguard, in the plenitude of health and strength, sprang up out of their lair and run upon the enemy, whilst those weary wights bawled out as loud as their sick throats could sound, and clashed their spears against their shields; and the enemy in terror hurled themselves through the snow into the dell, and not one of them ever uttered a sound again.

Xenophon and his party, telling the sick folk that next day people would come for them, set off, and before they had gone half a mile they fell in with some soldiers who had laid down to rest on the snow with their cloaks wrapped round them, but never a

*vocabulary*

**ἄδειπνος** without dinner

**ἀναγκάζω** force, compel

**ἀναπαύω** cause to cease ~pause

**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not needing ~Sp. sin

**ἀπαγγέλλω** announce, order, promise  
~angel

**ἀσθενέω** be weak, sick

**ἀσφαλής** safe, easy, steady, careful

**αὐλίζομαι** live, lodge at

**διαλαγχάνω** divide, share

**διέρχομαι** pierce, traverse

**ἐνταῦθα** there, here

**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism

**ἰσχυρός** (ὁ) strong, forceful, violent

**κωλύω** (ὁ) hinder, prevent

**κώμη** village

**παραπέμπω** send via; escort ~pomp

**πελταστής** -οῦ (m, 1) light troops  
~pelt

**προΐημι** send forth, abandon

**σκέπτομαι** look, look at, watch  
~skeptic

**σκηνέω** camp

**σκηνόω** camp

**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)

**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm;  
(pl noun) 200 meters

**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy

**συγγίγνομαι** associate with, meet, have  
sex ~genus

**τελευταῖος** last, final

**ὑποχωρέω** recoil ~heir

**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch  
~phylactery

καὶ ἀνίστασαν αὐτούς. οἱ δ' ἔλεγον ὅτι οἱ ἔμπροσθεν οὐχ ὑποχωροῖεν. ὁ δὲ παριῶν καὶ παραπέμπων τῶν πελταστῶν τοὺς ἰσχυροτάτους ἐκέλευε σκέψασθαι τί εἴη τὸ κωλύον. οἱ δὲ ἀπήγγελλον ὅτι ὅλον οὕτως ἀναπαύοιτο τὸ στράτευμα. ἐνταῦθα καὶ οἱ περὶ Ξενοφῶντα ἠϋλίσθησαν αὐτοῦ ἄνευ πυρὸς καὶ ἄδειπνοι, φυλακὰς οἷας ἐδύναντο καταστησάμενοι. ἐπεὶ δὲ πρὸς ἡμέραν ἦν, ὁ μὲν Ξενοφῶν πέμψας πρὸς τοὺς ἀσθενοῦντας τοὺς νεωτάτους ἀναστήσαντας ἐκέλευεν ἀναγκάζειν προϊέναι. ἐν δὲ τούτῳ Χειρίσοφος πέμπει τῶν ἐκ τῆς κόμης σκειφομένους πῶς ἔχοιεν οἱ τελευταῖοι. οἱ δὲ ἄσμενοι ἰδόντες τοὺς μὲν ἀσθενοῦντας τούτοις παρέδωκαν κομίζειν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον, αὐτοὶ δὲ ἐπορεύοντο, καὶ πρὶν εἴκοσι στάδια διεληλυθέναι ἦσαν πρὸς τῇ κόμῃ ἔνθα Χειρίσοφος ἠϋλίζετο. ἐπεὶ δὲ συνεγένοντο ἀλλήλοις, ἔδοξε κατὰ τὰς κόμας ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι τὰς τάξεις σκηνοῦν. καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν αὐτοῦ ἔμενεν, οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι διαλαχόντες ὥς ἐώρων κόμας ἐπορεύοντο ἕκαστοι τοὺς ἑαυτῶν ἔχοντες.

καὶ ἀνίστασαν αὐτούς. οἱ δ' ἔλεγον ὅτι οἱ ἔμπροσθεν

οὐχ |recoil . ὁ δὲ παριῶν καὶ |send via; escort τῶν

|light troops τοὺς |strong, forceful, ἐκέλευε |look, look at, wácht,  
|violent

τὸ |hinder, οἱ δὲ |announce, or- ὅτι ὅλον οὕτως |cause to cease  
|prevent |der, promise

τὸ |army |there, here καὶ οἱ περὶ Ξενοφῶντα

|live, lodge at αὐτοῦ |away from; not hav- |without , |guard,  
|ing; not needing |dinner |prison,  
οἷας ἐδύναντο καταστησάμενοι. ἐπεὶ δὲ πρὸς ἡμέραν  
|watch

ἦν, ὁ μὲν Ξενοφῶν πέμψας πρὸς τοὺς ἀσθενούντας τοὺς

νεωτάτους ἀναστήσαντας ἐκέλευεν |force, compel |send forth, abandon

ἐν δὲ τούτῳ Χειρίσοφος πέμπει τῶν ἐκ τῆς |village

|look, look at, watch ἔχουσιν οἱ |last, final οἱ δὲ |be pleased, enjoy

ιδόντες τοὺς μὲν ἀσθενούντας τούτοις παρέδωσαν κομίζειν

ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον, αὐτοὶ δὲ ἐπορεύοντο, καὶ πρὶν εἴκοσι

στάδια |pierce, traverse ἦσαν πρὸς τῇ |village ἔνθα Χειρίσοφος

|live, lodge ἐπεὶ δὲ |associate with, ἀλλήλοισι, ἔδοξε κατὰ  
|at |meet, have sex

τὰς |village |safe, easy, καὶ τὰς τάξεις σκηνοῦν. καὶ  
|steady, careful

Χειρίσοφος μὲν αὐτοῦ ἔμενεν, οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι |divide, share ἄς

εἰώρων |village ἐπορεύοντο ἕκαστοι τοὺς ἑαυτῶν ἔχοντες.

guard was established, and they made them get up. Their explanation was that those in front would not move on. Passing by this group he sent forward the strongest of his light infantry in advance, with orders to find out what the stoppage was. They reported that the whole army lay reposing in such fashion. That being so, Xenophon's men had nothing for it but to bivouac in the open air also, without fire and supperless, merely posting what pickets they could under the circumstances. But as soon as it drew towards day, Xenophon despatched the youngest of his men to the sick folk behind, with orders to make them get up and force them to proceed. Meanwhile Cheirisophus had sent some of his men quartered in the village to enquire how they fared in the rear; they were overjoyed to see them, and handed over the sick folk to them to carry into camp, while they themselves continued their march forward, and ere twenty furlongs were past reached the village in which Cheirisophus was quartered. As soon as the two divisions were met, the resolution was come to that it would be safe to billet the regiments throughout the villages; Cheirisophus remained where he was, while the rest drew lots for the villages in sight, and then, with their several detachments, marched off to their respective destinations.

It was here that Polycrates, an Athenian

*vocabulary*

**αἴξ** αἰγός (m) goat  
**ἄκρατος** (αἶ) pure, unmixed ~crater  
**γαμέω** marry, take as a lover ~bigamy  
**γόνυ** γουνός (n, 3) knee ~polygon  
**δασμός** portion, tax, tribute  
**ἐγκειμαι** lie wrapped in  
**εἴσοδος** (f) entrance ~odometer  
**ἐκγονος** offspring, descendant ~genus  
**ἐλαχύς** small; comp.: less ~light  
**ἐνατος** ninth  
**ἐνδον** in the house of; within  
**ἐνιμι** be in ~ion  
**ἐπιχέω** pour over  
**ἐπτακαίδεκα** 17  
**εὐζωνος** well-girded ~zone  
**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism  
**θέω** run, run for  
**θηράω** hunt, chase  
**ἰσοχειλῆς** level with the brim  
**κάλαμος** reed  
**κατάγειος** at ground level;  
 underground  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch,  
 overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy  
**κλίμαξ** -κος (f) ladder, staircase  
 ~climax

**κρατήρ** -ος (m) mixing bowl for wine  
**κριθή** (ι) barley plant  
**κριθίνος** (ι) made from barley  
**κτῆνος** -ους (n, 3) herd animal  
**κωμάρχης** -ου (m, 1) village leader  
**κώμαρχος** village leader  
**κώμη** village  
**κωμήτης** -ου (m, 1) villager, homeboy  
**λαγχάνω** be allotted; (esp. λελα-  
 forms) allot; receive  
**λαγώς** -ω (m, 2) hare ~lagomorph  
**λαγώς** hare ~lagomorph  
**λοχαγός** (ᾱ) captain  
**οἴχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone  
**ὄρνις** -θος (ι, f) bird ~ornithology  
**ὀρυκτός** dug out  
**ὄσπριον** bean, legume  
**πυρός** (υ) wheat  
**πῶλος** (f) foal ~foal  
**πῶμα** -τος (n, 3) cover; drink ~pastor  
**συμμανθάνω** learn with, share  
 knowledge  
**ὑποζύγιον** beast of burden ~zygote  
**φρέαρ** well  
**χιλός** (ι) fodder  
**χιλόω** (ι) graze

Ἐνθα δὴ Πολυκράτης Ἀθηναῖος λοχαγὸς ἐκέλευσεν ἀφίεναι ἑαυτόν· καὶ λαβὼν τοὺς εὐζώνους, θέων ἐπὶ τὴν κώμην ἦν εἰλήχει Ξενοφῶν καταλαμβάνει πάντας ἔνδον τοὺς κωμήτας καὶ τὸν κώμαρχον, καὶ πώλους εἰς δασμὸν βασιλεῖ τρεφομένους ἑπτακαίδεκα, καὶ τὴν θυγατέρα τοῦ κωμάρχου ἐνάτην ἡμέραν γεγαμημένην· ὁ δ' ἀνὴρ αὐτῆς λαγῶς ὥχετο θηράσων καὶ οὐχ ἦλω ἐν τῇ κώμῃ.

Αἱ δ' οἰκίαι ἦσαν κατάγειοι, τὸ μὲν στόμα ὥσπερ φρέατος, κάτω δ' εὐρείαι· αἱ δὲ εἵσοδοι τοῖς μὲν ὑποζυγίοις ὀρυκταί, οἱ δὲ ἄνθρωποι κατέβαινον ἐπὶ κλίμακος. ἐν δὲ ταῖς οἰκίαις ἦσαν αἶγες, οἶες, βόες, ὄρνιθες, καὶ τὰ ἔκγονα τούτων· τὰ δὲ κτήνη πάντα χιλῶ ἔνδον ἐτρέφοντο. ἦσαν δὲ καὶ πυροὶ καὶ κριθαὶ καὶ ὄσπρια καὶ οἶνος κρίθινος ἐν κρατῆρσιν. ἐνήσαν δὲ καὶ αὐταὶ αἱ κριθαὶ ἰσοχειεῖς, καὶ κάλαμοι ἐνέκειντο, οἱ μὲν μείζους οἱ δὲ ἐλάττους, γόνατα οὐκ ἔχοντες· τούτους ἔδει ὅποτε τις διψήῃ λαβόντα εἰς τὸ στόμα μύζειν. καὶ πάνν ἄκρατος ἦν, εἰ μὴ τις ὕδωρ ἐπιχέοι· καὶ πάνν ἡδὺν συμμαθόντι τὸ πῶμα ἦν.



Ἐνθα δὴ Πολυκράτης Ἀθηναῖος |captain ἐκέλευσεν  
 ἀφίεναι ἑαυτόν· καὶ λαβὼν τοὺς |well-girded θεῶν ἐπὶ τὴν  
 |village ἦν εἰλήχει Ξενοφῶν καταλαμβάνει πάντας ἔνδον  
 τοὺς |villager, καὶ τὸν |village , καὶ |foal εἰς |portion,  
 |homeboy |leader |tax, tribute  
 βασιλεῖ τρεφομένους |17 , καὶ τὴν θυγατέρα τοῦ  
 κωμάρχου |ninth ἡμέραν γεγαμημένην· ὁ δ' ἀνὴρ αὐτῆς  
 λαγῶς ὥχετο |hunt, καὶ οὐχ ἦλω ἐν τῇ |village.  
 |chase

Αἱ δ' οἰκίαι ἦσαν |at ground level; μὲν στόμα ὥσπερ φρέατος,  
 |underground  
 κάτω δ' εὐρεῖαι· αἱ δὲ |entrance τοῖς μὲν |beast of bur-|dug out ,  
 |den  
 οἱ δὲ ἄνθρωποι κατέβαινον ἐπὶ κλίμακος. ἐν δὲ ταῖς  
 οἰκίαις ἦσαν αἶγες, οἶες, βόες, ὄρνιθες, καὶ τὰ |offspring  
 τούτων· τὰ δὲ κτήνη πάντα χιλῶ ἔνδον ἐτρέφοντο. ἦσαν  
 δὲ καὶ |wheat καὶ |barley καὶ |bean, καὶ οἶνος |made from barley  
 |plant |legume  
 |mixing bowl|be in δὲ καὶ αὐταὶ αἱ |barley |level with the brim  
 |for wine |plant  
 |reed |lie wrapped in , μὲν μείζους οἱ δὲ ἐλάττους, γόνατα  
 οὐκ ἔχοντες· τούτους ἔδει ὅποτε τις διψήῃ λαβόντα εἰς  
 τὸ στόμα μύζειν. καὶ πάνν |pure ἦν, εἰ μὴ τις  
 ὕδωρ |pour over καὶ πάνν ἡδὺν συμμαθόντι τὸ |cover; ἦν.  
 |drink

and captain of a company, asked for leave of absence; and putting himself at the head of the active men of the division, he ran to the village which had been allotted to Xenophon. He surprised within it the villagers with their headman, and seventeen young horses which were being reared as a tribute for the king, and, last of all, the headman's own daughter, a young bride only eight days wed. Her husband had gone off to chase hares, and so he escaped being taken with the other villagers.

The houses were underground structures with an aperture like the mouth of a well by which to enter, but they were broad and spacious below. The entrance for the beasts of burden was dug out, but the human occupants descended by a ladder. In these dwellings were to be found goats and sheep and cattle, and cocks and hens, with their various progeny. The flocks and herds were all reared under cover upon green food. There were stores within of wheat and barley and vegetables, and wine made from barley in great big bowls; the grains of barley malt lay floating in the beverage up to the lip of the vessel, and reeds lay in them, some longer, some shorter, without joints; when you were thirsty you must take one of these into your mouth, and suck. The beverage without admixture of water was very strong, and of a delicious flavour to certain palates, but the taste must

*vocabulary*

ἄρνειος lamb, sheep  
 ἄρτος bread, loaf  
 ἄφθονος ungrudging, plentiful  
 διασκηγέω go to one's tent, leave  
 someone else's  
 ἐξηγέομαι lead forth; set out, describe  
 ~hegemony  
 ἐπειμι lie upon; approach ~ion  
 ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable  
 ἐρίφειος of a kid  
 εὐθυμέω (ῥ) to be of good cheer  
 εὖωχέω fete, feed well  
 θαρρέω be of good heart  
 θαρσέω be of good heart  
 καταλαμβάνω seize, understand, catch,  
 overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy  
 κατορύσσω bury  
 κοιμάω put to sleep; (pass) lie down,  
 have sex  
 κρέας -ως (n) meat ~creatine  
 κρίθινος (ι) made from barley  
 κώμαρχος village leader  
 κώμη village

μόσχειος veal, calf-skin  
 ὁμός same ~homoeoteric  
 ὁμοῦ together  
 ὁμόω unite ~homoeoteric  
 ὅπου where  
 ὀρνίθειος (ι) of birds  
 οὐδαμόθεν from no place  
 πανταχοῦ everywhere; completely  
 παρατίθημι put near, put at risk  
 ~thesis  
 πύρινος (ῥ) fiery; wheaten  
 στερέω steal, take  
 στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
 στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
 mercenary ~strategy  
 σύνδειπνον common meal or banquet  
 τράπεζα a table ~trapezoid  
 ὑπισχνέομαι promise, agree to do  
 ~ischemia  
 φιλοφρονέομαι treat kindly, favor  
 φυλακή guard, prison, watch  
 ~phylactery  
 χοίρειος pork

Ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν τὸν ἄρχοντα τῆς κώμης ταύτης σύνδειπνον ἐποιήσατο καὶ θαρρεῖν αὐτὸν ἐκέλευε λέγων ὅτι οὔτε τῶν τέκνων στερήσοιτο τήν τε οἰκίαν αὐτοῦ ἀντεμπλήσαντες τῶν ἐπιτηδείων ἀπίαςιν, ἣν ἀγαθόν τι τῷ στρατεύματι ἐξηγησάμενος φαίνεται ἔστ' ἂν ἐν ἄλλῳ ἔθνει γένωνται. ὁ δὲ ταῦτα ὑπισχνεῖτο, καὶ φιλοφρονούμενος οἶνον ἔφρασεν ἔνθα ἦν κατορωρυγμένος. ταύτην μὲν τὴν νύκτα διασκηνήσαντες οὕτως ἐκοιμήθησαν ἐν πᾶσιν ἀφθόνοις πάντες οἱ στρατιῶται, ἐν φυλακῇ ἔχοντες τὸν κώμαρχον καὶ τὰ τέκνα αὐτοῦ ὁμοῦ ἐν ὀφθαλμοῖς.

Τῇ δ' ἐπιούσῃ ἡμέρᾳ Ξενοφῶν λαβὼν τὸν κώμαρχον πρὸς Χειρίσοφον ἐπορεύετο· ὅπου δὲ παρίοι κώμην, ἐτρέπετο πρὸς τοὺς ἐν ταῖς κώμαις καὶ κατελάμβανε πανταχοῦ εὐωχουμένους καὶ εὐθυμουμένους, καὶ οὐδαμῶθεν ἀφίεσαν πρὶν παραθεῖναι αὐτοῖς ἄριστον· οὐκ ἦν δ' ὅπου οὐ παρετίθεσαν ἐπὶ τὴν αὐτὴν τράπεζαν κρέα ἄρνια, ἐρίφεια, χοίρεια, μόςχεια, ὀρνίθια, σὺν πολλοῖς ἄρτοις τοῖς μὲν πυρίνοις τοῖς δὲ κριθίνους. ὁπότε δέ τις

Ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν τὸν ἄρχοντα τῆς |village ταύτης σύνδειπνον  
 ἐποιήσατο καὶ θαρρεῖν αὐτὸν ἐκέλευε λέγων ὅτι οὔτε τῶν  
 τέκνων |steal, take τήν τε οἰκίαν αὐτοῦ ἀντεμπλήσαντες  
 τῶν |fit, suitable ἀπίασιν, ἦν ἀγαθόν τι τῷ |army  
 |lead forth; set φαίνεται ἔστ' ἂν ἐν ἄλλῳ ἔθνει γένωνται.  
 |out, describe  
 ὁ δὲ ταῦτα |promise, , καὶ |treat kindly, favor οἶνον  
 |agree  
 ἔφρασεν ἔνθα ἦν |bury . ταύτην μὲν τὴν νύκτα  
 διασκηνήσαντες οὕτως ἐκοιμήθησαν ἐν πᾶσιν |ungrudging,  
 |plentiful  
 πάντες οἱ στρατιῶται, ἐν φυλακῇ ἔχοντες τὸν |village  
 |leader  
 καὶ τὰ τέκνα αὐτοῦ ὁμοῦ ἐν ὀφθαλμοῖς.

Τῇ δ' ἐπιούσῃ ἡμέρᾳ Ξενοφῶν λαβὼν τὸν |village πρὸς  
 |leader  
 Χειρίσοφον ἐπορεύετο· ὅπου δὲ παρίοι |village , ἐτρέπετο  
 πρὸς τοὺς ἐν ταῖς |village καὶ |seize, under-|everywhere;  
 |stand, catch|completely  
 |fete, feed well καὶ |to be of good cheer, |overtake; (mp)  
 |happen from no place' ζῆσαν  
 πρὶν |put near, put αὐτοῖς ἄριστον· οὐκ ἦν δ' ὅπου οὐ  
 |at risk  
 |put near, put at ἐπὶ τὴν αὐτὴν |a table |meat |lamb, ,  
 |risk |sheep  
 |of a kid , |pork , |veal, calf-|of birds , σὺν πολλοῖς ἄρτοις  
 |skin  
 τοῖς μὲν |fiery; τοῖς δὲ |made from barley - δέ τις  
 |wheaten

be acquired.

Xenophon made the headman of the village his guest at supper, and bade him keep a good heart; so far from robbing him of his children, they would fill his house full of good things in return for what they took before they went away; only he must set them an example, and discover some blessing or other for the army, until they found themselves with another tribe. To this he readily assented, and with the utmost cordiality showed them the cellar where the wine was buried. For this night then, having taken up their several quarters as described, they slumbered in the midst of plenty, one and all, with the headman under watch and ward, and his children with him safe in sight.

But on the following day Xenophon took the headman and set off to Cheirisophus, making a round of the villages, and at each place turning in to visit the different parties. Everywhere alike he found them faring sumptuously and merry-making. There was not a single village where they did not insist on setting a breakfast before them, and on the same table were spread half a dozen dishes at least, lamb, kid, pork, veal, fowls, with various sorts of bread, some of wheat and some of barley. When, as an act of

*vocabulary*

**ἀνατρέφω** bring up  
**ἀνερωτάω** question  
**βαρβαρικός** non-Greek  
**δασμός** portion, tax, tribute  
**δείκνυμι** (ὕ) show, point out  
**διακονέω** (ᾱ) serve, minister to  
**ἔλκω** drag, pull, hoist; rape  
**ἐνός** speechless, dumbfounded  
**ἐνθεν** thence, whence  
**ἐντίθημι** load; mp: take to heart  
 ~thesis  
**ἐπικύπτω** bend over  
**ἐρμηνεύς** -ος (m) interpreter  
**ἔρωτάω** ask about something  
**καταθύω** sacrifice, offer  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch,  
 overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy  
**κοινός** communal, ordinary  
**κρατήρ** -ος (m) mixing bowl for wine

**κώμαρχος** village leader  
**ξηρός** dry, the land ~xeriscape  
**οἰκέτης** -ου (m, f) household; house  
 slave  
**οἶχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone  
**ὅπου** where  
**παλαιός** old ~paleo  
**πλησίος** near, neighboring  
**προπίνω** (ι) present; toast  
**ρόφέω** wolf down  
**σκηνέω** camp  
**σκηνώ** camp  
**στέφανος** ring  
**στεφανώ** crown  
**στολή** equipment  
**συγγενεύς** inborn, kin to  
**συγγενής** inborn, kin to  
**φιλοφρονέομαι** treat kindly, favor  
**χιλός** (ι) fodder  
**χιλόω** (ι) graze

φιλοφρονούμενός τω βούλοιτο προπιεῖν, εἵλκεν ἐπὶ τὸν κρατῆρα, ἔνθεν ἐπικύψαντα ἔδει ῥοφούντα πίνειν ὥσπερ βοῦν. καὶ τῷ κωμάρχῳ ἐδίδουσιν λαμβάνειν ὅ τι βούλοιτο. ὁ δὲ ἄλλο μὲν οὐδὲν ἐδέχετο, ὅπου δέ τινα τῶν συγγενῶν ἴδοι, πρὸς ἑαυτὸν αἰεὶ ἐλάμβανεν.

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἦλθον πρὸς Χειρίσοφον, κατελάμβανον κακείνους σκηνοῦντας ἐστεφανωμένους τοῦ ξηροῦ χιλοῦ στεφάνοις, καὶ διακονοῦντας Ἀρμενίους παῖδας σὺν ταῖς βαρβαρικαῖς στολαῖς· τοῖς παισὶν ἐδείκνυσαν ὥσπερ ἐνεοῖς ὅ τι δέοι ποιεῖν. ἐπεὶ δ' ἀλλήλους ἐφιλοφρονήσαντο Χειρίσοφος καὶ Ξενοφῶν, κοινῇ δὴ ἀνηρώτων τὸν κώμαρχον διὰ τοῦ Περσίζοντος ἐρμηνέως τίς εἴη ἡ χώρα. ὁ δ' ἔλεγεν ὅτι Ἀρμενία. καὶ πάλιν ἡρώτων τίνι οἱ ἵπποι τρέφονται. ὁ δ' ἔλεγεν ὅτι βασιλεῖ δασμός· τὴν δὲ πλησίον χώραν ἔφη εἶναι Χάλυβας, καὶ τὴν ὁδὸν ἔφραζεν ἥ εἴη. καὶ αὐτὸν τότε μὲν ὥχετο ἄγων ὁ Ξενοφῶν πρὸς τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ οἰκέτας, καὶ ἵππον ὃν εἰλήφει παλαιότερον δίδωσι τῷ κωμάρχῳ ἀναθρέψαντι καταθῦσαι, ὅτι ἤκουεν αὐτὸν ἱερὸν εἶναι



|treat kindly, favor τῷ βούλοιτο |present; |drag, pull, τὸν  
|toast |hoist; rape

|mixing bowl ἵ for|bend over ἔδει |wolf down πίνειν ὥσπερ  
|wine

βοῦν. καὶ τῷ |village |ἐδίδοσαν λαμβάνειν ὅ τι βούλοιτο.  
|leader

ὁ δὲ ἄλλο μὲν οὐδὲν ἐδέχετο, |where ἴε τινα τῶν συγγενῶν

ἴδοι, πρὸς ἑαυτὸν αἰεὶ ἐλάμβανεν.

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἦλθον πρὸς Χειρίσοφον, |seize, understand, catch, οὐς  
|overtake; (mp) happen

σκηνοῦντας |crown τοῦ |dry, the land |ring ,

καὶ |serve, minister Ἀρμενίου παιδας σὺν ταῖς |non-Greek  
|to

|equipment τοῖς παισὶν |show ὥσπερ |speechless, ἵοι  
|dumbfounded

ποιεῖν. ἐπεὶ δ' ἀλλήλους |treat kindly, favor Χειρίσοφος

καὶ Ξενοφῶν, κοινῇ δὲ |question τὸν |village |διὰ τοῦ  
|leader

Περσίζοντος |interpreter τίς εἴη ἡ χώρα. ὁ δ' ἔλεγεν ὅτι

Ἀρμενία. καὶ πάλιν |ask τίνι οἱ ἵπποι τρέφονται. ὁ

δ' ἔλεγεν ὅτι βασιλεῖ |portion, ἣν δὲ |near χώραν ἔφη  
|tax, tribute

εἶναι Χάλυβας, καὶ τὴν ὁδὸν ἔφραζεν ἥ εἴη. καὶ αὐτὸν τότε

μὲν |come, go ὧν ὁ Ξενοφῶν πρὸς τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ |household;  
|house slave

καὶ ἵππον ὃν εἰλήφει |old δίδωσι τῷ |village  
|leader

|bring up |sacrifice, , ὅτι ἤκουεν αὐτὸν ἱερὸν εἶναι  
|offer

courtesy, any one wished to drink his neighbour's health, he would drag him to the big bowl, and when there, he must duck his head and take a long pull, drinking like an ox. The headman, they insisted everywhere, must accept as a present whatever he liked to have. But he would accept nothing, except where he espied any of his relations, when he made a point of taking them off, him or her, with himself.

When they reached Cheirisophus they found a similar scene. There too the men were feasting in their quarters, garlanded with whisps of hay and dry grass, and Armenian boys were playing the part of waiters in barbaric costumes, only they had to point out by gesture to the boys what they were to do, like deaf and dumb. After the first formalities, when Cheirisophus and Xenophon had greeted one another like bosom friends, they interrogated the headman in common by means of the Persian-speaking interpreter. «What was the country?» they asked: he replied, «Armenia.” And again, «For whom are the horses being bred?» «They are tribute for the king,” he replied. «And the neighbouring country?» «Is the land of the Chalybes,” he said; and he described the road which led to it. So for the present Xenophon went off, taking the headman back with him to his household and friends. He also made him a present of an oldish horse which he had got; he had heard that the headman was a priest of

*vocabulary*

ἀναζεύγνυμι (ὑ) yoke again  
 ἄνευ away from; not having; not  
 needing ~Sp. sin  
 ἄρτι at the same time  
 γαστήρ -έρος (f) belly ~gastric  
 εἰσφορέω carry into ~bear  
 ἐνταῦθα there, here  
 ἡβάσκω reach puberty  
 ἡγεμῶν -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide,  
 chief ~hegemony  
 κακῶ harm, disfigure ~cacophony  
 καταδύω enter, sink  
 καταλείπω leave behind, abandon  
 ~eclipse  
 καταλιμπάνω leave behind, abandon  
 κώμαρχος village leader

κώμη village  
 λοχαγέω (ᾱ) lead a company  
 λοχαγός (ᾱ) captain  
 μείων less, smaller  
 μέχρι as far as, until  
 ὄγδοος eighth ~octopus  
 οἰκέτης -ου (m, 1) household; house  
 slave  
 περιαιρέω strip off  
 πορεία gait, march  
 πῶλος (f) foal ~foal  
 σταθμάομαι judge, conclude  
 σταθμόομαι judge, conclude  
 σταθμός cottage; post  
 ὑποζύγιον beast of burden ~zygote  
 χαλεπαίνω be violent, rage  
 χιών χιόνος (f, 3) snow

τοῦ Ἡλίου, δεδιὼς μὴ ἀποθάνῃ· ἐκεκάκωτο γὰρ ὑπὸ τῆς πορείας· αὐτὸς δὲ τῶν πῶλων λαμβάνει, καὶ τῶν ἄλλων στρατηγῶν καὶ λοχαγῶν ἔδωκεν ἐκάστῳ πῶλον. ἦσαν δ' οἱ ταύτῃ ἵπποι μείονες μὲν τῶν Περσικῶν, θυμοειδέστεροι δὲ πολὺ. ἐνταῦθα δὴ καὶ διδάσκει ὁ κώμαρχος περὶ τοὺς πόδας τῶν ἵππων καὶ τῶν ὑποζυγίων σακία περιελεῖν, ὅταν διὰ τῆς χιόνος ἄγωσιν· ἄνευ γὰρ τῶν σακίων κατεδύοντο μέχρι τῆς γαστρούς.

#### 4.6

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἡμέρα ἦν ὀγδόη, τὸν μὲν ἡγεμόνα παραδίδωσι Χειρισόφῳ, τοὺς δὲ οἰκέτας καταλείπει τῷ κωμάρχῳ, πλὴν τοῦ υἱοῦ τοῦ ἄρτι ἡβάσκοντος· τοῦτον δὲ Πλεισθένει Ἀμφιπολίτῃ δίδωσι φυλάττειν, ὅπως εἰ καλῶς ἡγήσοιτο, ἔχων καὶ τοῦτον ἀπίοι. καὶ εἰς τὴν οἰκίαν αὐτοῦ εἰσεφόρησαν ὥς ἐδύναντο πλείστα, καὶ ἀναζεύξαντες ἐπορεύοντο. ἡγείτο δ' αὐτοῖς ὁ κώμαρχος λελυμένος διὰ χιόνος· καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν ἐν τῷ τρίτῳ σταθμῷ, καὶ Χειρίσοφος αὐτῷ ἐχαλεπάνθη ὅτι οὐκ εἰς κώμας ἤγαγεν.

τοῦ Ἥλιου, δεδιὼς μὴ ἀποθάνῃ· |harm, disfigure ἔρ ὑπὸ τῆς  
 |gait, αὐτὸς δὲ τῶν |foal λαμβάνει, καὶ τῶν ἄλλων  
 |march  
 στρατηγῶν καὶ λοχαγῶν ἔδωκεν ἑκάστῳ |foal ἦσαν δ'  
 οἱ ταύτῃ ἵπποι |less, μὲν τῶν Περσικῶν, θυμοειδέστεροι  
 |smaller  
 δὲ πολὺ. |there, here ἣ καὶ διδάσκει ὁ |village περὶ τοὺς  
 |leader  
 πόδας τῶν ἵππων καὶ τῶν |beast of burden...ία |strip off  
 ὅταν διὰ τῆς |snow ἄγωσιν· |away from; not hav- κίων  
 |ing; not needing  
 |enter, sink |as far |as,|belly  
 |until

#### 4.6

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἡμέρα ἦν |eighth, τὸν μὲν |leader παραδίδωσι  
 Χειρισόφῳ, τοὺς δὲ |household; |ταλείπει τῷ |village  
 |house slave |leader  
 πλὴν τοῦ υἱοῦ τοῦ |at the|reach puberty τοῦτον δὲ Πλεισθέναι  
 |same  
 |time  
 Ἀμφιπολίτῃ δίδωσι φυλάττειν, ὅπως εἰ καλῶς ἡγήσοιτο,  
 ἔχων καὶ τοῦτον ἀπίοι. καὶ εἰς τὴν οἰκίαν αὐτοῦ  
 |carry into ὥς ἐδύναντο πλείστα, καὶ |yoke again  
 ἐπορεύοντο. ἡγεῖτο δ' αὐτοῖς ὁ |village λελυμένος διὰ  
 |leader  
 |snow καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν ἐν τῷ τρίτῳ σταθμῷ, καὶ Χειρίσοφος  
 αὐτῷ |be violent, rage ἵ οὐκ εἰς |village ἤγαγεν.

the sun, and so he could fatten up the beast and sacrifice him; otherwise he was afraid it might die outright, for it had been injured by the long marching. For himself he took his pick of the colts, and gave a colt apiece to each of his fellow-generals and officers. The horses here were smaller than the Persian horses, but much more spirited. It was here too that their friend the headman explained to them, how they should wrap small bags or sacks around the feet of the horses and other cattle when marching through the snow, for without such precautions the creatures sank up to their bellies.

#### 4.6

When a week had passed, on the eighth day Xenophon delivered over the guide (that is to say, the village headman) to Cheirisophus. He left the headman's household safe behind in the village, with the exception of his son, a lad in the bloom of youth. This boy was entrusted to Episthenes of Amphipolis to guard; if the headman proved himself a good guide, he was to take away his son also at his departure. They finally made his house the repository of all the good things they could contrive to get together; then they broke up their camp and commenced to march, the headman guiding them through the snow unfettered. When they had reached the third stage Cheirisophus flew into a rage with him, because he had not brought them to any villages. The headman pleaded

*vocabulary*

**ἀμέλεια** indifference, negligence  
**ἀπαντάω** encounter, come upon  
**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some distance  
**ἀποδιδράσκω** escape  
**διάφορος** different; difference; disagreeing; balance, bill  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἐραμαι** love, aor. fall in love; long for, covet ~erotic  
**εὖρος** -εος (n, 3) width; (caps) the east wind  
**ἡγεμών** -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide, chief ~hegemony  
**καθοράω** look down ~panorama  
**κάκωσις** -τος (f) mistreatment; suffering  
**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon  
**κατεῖδον** look upon  
**κέρας** -τος (n, 3) horn; military unit ~ceratopsia  
**λόχος** ambush, band, childbirth ~lie

**οἴκαδε** homeward ~economics  
**οἴχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone  
**ὀπισθοφύλαξ** rear guard ~phylactery  
**παίζω** play ~pediatrician  
**παίω** hit  
**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon, recommend, encourage  
**παράγω** deflect; bring forward  
**παρασάγγης** -ου (m, 1) Persian unit, ca. 5 km  
**πιστός** faithful; trustworthy  
**πλεθριαῖος** 30 m in size ~plethora  
**πλησιάζω** bring/be near; have sex  
**πορεία** gait, march  
**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)  
**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters  
**σταθμός** cottage; post  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**συγκαλέω** call together ~gallo  
**ὑπερβολή** mountain pass; excess  
**φάλαγξ** -γος (f) rank of battle ~phalanx

ὁ δ' ἔλεγεν ὅτι οὐκ εἶεν ἐν τῷ τόπῳ τούτῳ. ὁ δὲ Χειρίσοφος αὐτὸν ἔπαισεν, ἔδῃσε δ' οὔ. ἐκ δὲ τούτου ἐκείνος τῆς νυκτὸς ἀποδρὰς ὥχετο καταλιπὼν τὸν υἱόν. τοῦτό γε δὴ Χειρισόφῳ καὶ Ξενοφῶντι μόνον διάφορον ἐν τῇ πορείᾳ ἐγένετο, ἡ τοῦ ἡγεμόνος κάκωσις καὶ ἀμέλεια. Πλεισθένης δὲ ἡράσθη τοῦ παιδὸς καὶ οἴκαδε κομίσας πιστοτάτῳ ἐχρήτο.

Μετὰ τοῦτο ἐπορεύθησαν ἑπτὰ σταθμούς ἀνὰ πέντε παρασάγγας τῆς ἡμέρας παρὰ τὸν Φᾶσιν ποταμόν, εὖρος πλεθριαῖον. ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν σταθμούς δύο παρασάγγας δέκα· ἐπὶ δὲ τῇ εἰς τὸ πεδῖον ὑπερβολῇ ἀπήντησαν αὐτοῖς Χάλυβες καὶ Τάοχοι καὶ Φασιανοί. Χειρίσοφος δ' ἐπεὶ κατείδε τοὺς πολεμίους ἐπὶ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ, ἐπαύσατο πορευόμενος, ἀπέχων εἰς τριάκοντα σταδίους, ἵνα μὴ κατὰ κέρας ἄγων πλησιάσῃ τοῖς πολεμίους· παρήγγειλε δὲ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις παράγειν τοὺς λόχους, ὅπως ἐπὶ φάλαγγος γένοιτο τὸ στράτευμα. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦλθον οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες, συνεκάλεσε στρατηγούς καὶ



ὁ δ' ἔλεγεν ὅτι οὐκ εἶεν ἐν τῷ τόπῳ τούτῳ. ὁ δὲ Χειρίσοφος  
 αὐτὸν ἔπαισεν, ἔδῃσε δ' οὐ. ἐκ δὲ τούτου ἐκείνος τῆς  
 νυκτὸς |escape |come, |leave behind, τὸν υἱόν. τοῦτό γε δὴ  
 |go |abandon  
 Χειρισόφῳ καὶ Ξενοφῶντι μόνον διάφορον ἐν τῇ |gait,  
 |march  
 ἐγένετο, ἣ τοῦ |leader |mistreatment; |indifference, |λειτουργίας  
 |suffering |negligence  
 δὲ |love; long for παιδὸς καὶ |homeward μίσας |faithful;  
 |trustworthy  
 ἐχρήτητο.

Μετὰ τοῦτο ἐπορεύθησαν ἑπτὰ |cottage; post ἵνα πέντε  
 |ca. 5 km τῆς ἡμέρας παρὰ τὸν Φᾶσιν ποταμόν,  
 |width; |30 m in size |thence ἐπορεύθησαν |cottage; post ἵνα  
 (caps)  
 the east |ca. 5 km δέκα· ἐπὶ δὲ τῇ εἰς τὸ πεδίον |mountain  
 wind |pass; excess  
 |encounter, come upon Χάλυβες καὶ Τάοχοι καὶ Φασιανοί.  
 Χειρίσοφος δ' ἐπεὶ κατείδε τοὺς πολεμίους ἐπὶ τῇ

|mountain , ἐπαύσατο πορευόμενος, |ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some  
 |pass; excess |distance  
 σταδίου, ἵνα μὴ κατὰ |horn; ἄγων |bring/be near; οἷς  
 |military |have sex  
 πολεμίους· |transmit; order, |unit ἄλλοις |deflect; bring ὕς  
 |recommend, encourage |forward  
 |ambush, band, ἐπὶ |rank of battle, ἵνοιτο τὸ |army ἐπεὶ  
 |childbirth  
 δὲ ἦλθον οἱ |rear guard , |call together στρατηγούς καὶ

that there were none in this part. Cheirisophus struck him, but forgot to bind him, and the end of it was that the headman ran away in the night and was gone, leaving his son behind him. This was the sole ground of difference between Cheirisophus and Xenophon during the march, this combination of ill-treatment and neglect in the case of the guide. As to the boy, Episthenes conceived a passion for him, and took him home with him, and found in him the most faithful of friends.

After this they marched seven stages at the rate of five parasangs a day, to the banks of the river Phasis, which is a hundred feet broad: and thence they marched another couple of stages, ten parasangs; but at the pass leading down into the plain there appeared in front of them a mixed body of Chalybes and Taochians and Phasianians. When Cheirisophus caught sight of the enemy on the pass at a distance of about three or four miles, he ceased marching, not caring to approach the enemy with his troops in column, and he passed down the order to the others: to deploy their companies to the front, that the troops might form into line. As soon as the rearguard had come up, he assembled the generals and officers, and addressed them: «The

*vocabulary*

ἄγωνίζομαι contend, exert oneself  
 ἀποβάλλω throw away, lose  
 ἀριστάω eat lunch ~aristocrat  
 ἀριστοποιέω (ᾱ) make breakfast  
 αὔριον tomorrow  
 διατρίβω (ιῖ) wear down, delay  
 ~tribology  
 εἰκός likely  
 εἴτε if, whenever; either/or  
 ἐλάχιστος smallest, shortest, fewest  
 ἐξοπλίζω prepare, arm ~hoplite  
 ἐπὶ when, after  
 θαρρέω be of good heart  
 θαρσαλέος bold, over-bold  
 θαρσέω be of good heart

κράτιστος best  
 λοχαγός (ᾱ) captain  
 παραγγέλλω transmit; order, summon,  
 recommend, encourage  
 προσγίγνομαι become ally to  
 σκεπτέος thing to consider, one who  
 must consider  
 σκέπτομαι look, look at, watch  
 ~skeptic  
 στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
 mercenary ~strategy  
 τήμερον today  
 τραῦμα -τος (n, 3) injury  
 ὑπερβάλλω cause to go beyond; delay  
 ~ballistic  
 ὑπερβολή mountain pass; excess

λοχαγούς, καὶ ἔλεξεν ὦδε.

«Οἱ μὲν πολέμιοι, ὡς ὀράτε, κατέχουσι τὰς ὑπερβολὰς τοῦ ὄρους· ὥρα δὲ βουλευέσθαι ὅπως ὡς κάλλιστα ἀγωνιούμεθα. ἐμοὶ μὲν οὖν δοκεῖ παραγγεῖλαι μὲν ἀριστοποιεῖσθαι τοῖς στρατιώταις, ἡμᾶς δὲ βουλευέσθαι εἴτε τήμερον εἴτε αὔριον δοκεῖ ὑπερβάλλειν τὸ ὄρος.»

«Ἐμοὶ δέ γε,» ἔφη ὁ Κλεάνωρ, «δοκεῖ, ἐπὰν τάχιστα ἀριστήσωμεν, ἐξοπλισμένους ὡς κράτιστα ἰέναι ἐπὶ τοὺς ἄνδρας. εἰ γὰρ διατρίψομεν τὴν τήμερον ἡμέραν, οἳ τε νῦν ἡμᾶς ὀρώντες πολέμιοι θαρραλεώτεροι ἔσονται καὶ ἄλλους εἰκὸς τούτων θαρρούντων πλείους προσγενέσθαι.»

Μετὰ τοῦτον Ξενοφῶν εἶπεν· «Ἐγὼ δ' οὕτω γιγνώσκω. εἰ μὲν ἀνάγκη ἐστὶ μάχεσθαι, τοῦτο δεῖ παρασκευάσασθαι, ὅπως ὡς κράτιστα μαχούμεθα· εἰ δὲ βουλόμεθα ὡς ῥᾶστα ὑπερβάλλειν, τοῦτό μοι δοκεῖ σκεπτέον εἶναι, ὅπως ὡς ἐλάχιστα μὲν τραύματα λάβωμεν, ὡς ἐλάχιστα δὲ σώματα ἀνδρῶν ἀποβάλωμεν. τὸ μὲν οὖν ὄρος ἐστὶ

|captain , καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε.

«Οἱ μὲν πολέμοι, ὡς ὀράτε, κατέχουσι τὰς |mountain  
|pass; excess  
τοῦ ὄρους· ὥρα δὲ βουλευέσθαι ὅπως ὡς κάλλιστα

|contend, exert. ἐμοὶ μὲν οὖν δοκεῖ |transmit; order, summon, recom-  
|oneself |mend, encourage  
|make breakfast τοῖς |soldier, , ἡμᾶς δὲ βουλευέσθαι  
|mercenary

|if, |today |if, |tomorrow κεῖ |cause to go be- τὸ ὄρος.»  
|when- |when- |yond; delay  
|ever;  
|ει-Εἰ μὲν δὲ γε |ει- ἔφη ὁ Κλεάνωρ, «δοκεῖ, |when, τάχιστα  
|ther/or |ther/or |after

|eat lunch , |prepare, arm ὡς |best ἵεναι ἐπὶ τοὺς  
ἄνδρας. εἰ γὰρ |wear down, delay, |today ἡμέραν, οἳ τε  
νῦν ἡμᾶς ὀρώντες πολέμοι |bold ἔσσονται καὶ  
ἄλλους |likely τούτων θαρρούντων πλείους |become ally to .»

Μετὰ τοῦτον Ξενοφῶν εἶπεν· «Ἐγὼ δ' οὕτω γιγνώσκω.  
εἰ μὲν ἀνάγκη ἐστὶ μάχεσθαι, τοῦτο δεῖ παρασκευάσασθαι,  
ὅπως ὡς |best μαχούμεθα· εἰ δὲ βουλόμεθα ὡς

ῥᾶστα |cause to go be-, τοῦτό μοι δοκεῖ σκεπτέον εἶναι, ὅπως  
|yond; delay  
ὡς |smallest, shortèst, |injury λάβωμεν, ὡς |smallest, short-  
|fewest |est, fewest  
σώματα ἀνδρῶν |throw away, lose . ὁ μὲν οὖν ὄρος ἐστὶ

enemy, as you see, are in occupation of the mountain pass, it is time we should consider how we are to make the best fight to win it. My opinion is, that we should give orders to the troops to take their morning meal, whilst we deliberate whether we should cross the mountains to-day or to-morrow.”

«My opinion,” said Cleanor, «is, that as soon as we have breakfasted, we should arm for the fight and attack the enemy, without loss of time, for if we fritter away to-day, the enemy who are now content to look at us, will grow bolder, and with their growing courage, depend upon it, others more numerous will join them.”

After him Xenophon spoke: «This,” he said, «is how I see the matter; if fight we must, let us make preparation to sell our lives dearly, but if we desire to cross with the greatest ease, the point to consider is, how we may get the fewest wounds and throw away the smallest number of good men. Well then, that part of the mountain which is

*vocabulary***ἄδύνατος** unable; impossible**ἄθροος** grouped**αἴσθησις** -εως (f) sense perception**ἄμαχεί** unresisted**ἄρπάζω** carry off, seize ~harpoon**ἐνθεν** thence, whence**ἐντίθημι** load; mp: take to heart

~thesis

**ἔξιμι** go forth; is possible ~ion**ἑξήκοντα** sixty**ἐρῆμος** empty**ἐρημόω** raze, bereave; desert, isolate**εὐμενής** kind**ἰσχυρός** (ῶ) strong, forceful, violent**κλέπτω** steal**κλοπή** theft, fraud**κρείσσων** more powerful; better**νύκτωρ** by night**όμαλής** level, even**όμαλός** smooth ~homoerotic**όρθιος** shrill; steep, straight**ούδαμοῦ** nowhere**προσβάλλω** hit, attack, approach;

attach, offer ~ballistic

**προσποιέω** give over to; pretend

~poet

**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm;

(pl noun) 200 meters

**συμβάλλω** pit against; compare; mp:

meet, fall in with ~ballistic

**τραχύς** (ᾱ) rough ~trachea**φανερός** visible, conspicuous ~photon**φθάζω** do first, outstrip**φθάνω** (ᾱ) do first, outstrip**χωρίον** area; downwards

τὸ ὀρώμενον πλέον ἢ ἑφ' ἐξήκοντα στάδια, ἄνδρες δ' οὐδαμοῦ φυλάττοντες ἡμᾶς φανεροί εἰσιν ἀλλ' ἢ κατ' αὐτὴν τὴν ὁδόν· πολὺ οὖν κρεῖττον τοῦ ἐρήμου ὄρους καὶ κλέψαι τι πειρᾶσθαι λαθόντας καὶ ἄρπάσαι φθάσαντας, εἰ δυναίμεθα, μᾶλλον ἢ πρὸς ἰσχυρὰ χωρία καὶ ἀνθρώπους παρεσκευασμένους μάχεσθαι. πολὺ γὰρ ῥᾶον ὄρθιον ἀμαχεῖ ἵεναι ἢ ὁμαλὲς ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν πολεμίων ὄντων, καὶ νύκτωρ ἀμαχεῖ μᾶλλον ἢ τὰ πρὸ ποδῶν ὀρώη τις ἢ μεθ' ἡμέραν μαχόμενος, καὶ ἡ τραχεῖα τοῖς ποσὶν ἀμαχεῖ ἰοῦσιν εὐμενεστέρα ἢ ἡ ὁμαλὴ τὰς κεφαλὰς βαλλομένοις. καὶ κλέψαι δ' οὐκ ἀδύνατόν μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι, ἐξὸν μὲν νυκτὸς ἵεναι, ὥς μὴ ὀρᾶσθαι, ἐξὸν δ' ἀπελθεῖν τοσοῦτον ὥς μὴ αἰσθησιν παρέχειν. δοκοῦμεν δ' ἂν μοι ταύτῃ προσποιούμενοι προσβάλλειν ἐρημοτέρῳ ἢ τῷ ὄρει χρῆσθαι· μένοιεν γὰρ ἂν αὐτοῦ μᾶλλον ἄθροοι οἱ πολέμιοι.

«Ἀτὰρ τί ἐγὼ περὶ κλοπῆς συμβάλλομαι; ὑμᾶς γὰρ ἔγωγε, ὦ Χειρίσοφε, ἀκούω τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους ὅσοι



τὸ ὀρώμενον πλέον ἢ ἑξήκοντα <sup>|sixty</sup> στάδια, ἄνδρες δ' <sup>|nowhere</sup> φυλάττοντες ἡμᾶς <sup>|visible, |conspicuous</sup> οὐκ ἔστιν ἄλλ' ἢ κατ' αὐτὴν τὴν ὁδόν· πολὺ οὖν κρείττον τοῦ ἐρήμου ὄρους καὶ <sup>|steal</sup> τι πειράσθαι λαθόντας καὶ <sup>|carry off, seize</sup> ἄπαντας, εἰ δυναίμεθα, μᾶλλον ἢ πρὸς <sup>|strong, |area; downwards, |forceful, |violent</sup> ὑποσκευασμένους μάχεσθαι. πολὺ γὰρ ῥᾶον <sup>|shrill; steep, |straight</sup> ἀνίστασθαι ἢ <sup>|level, even</sup> ἐκείνους θέναι καὶ ἔνθεν πολεμίων ὄντων, καὶ <sup>|by night</sup> ἀνίστασθαι μᾶλλον ἢ τὰ πρὸ ποδῶν ὀρώη τις ἢ μεθ' ἡμέραν μαχόμενος, καὶ ἡ <sup>|rough</sup> τοῖς ποσὶν ἀνίστασθαι <sup>|kind</sup> ἢ ἡ <sup>|smooth</sup> τὰς κεφαλὰς βαλλομένοις. καὶ <sup>|steal</sup> οὐκ ἔστιν ἡμῶν <sup>|unable; |impossible</sup> μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι, <sup>|go forth; |is possible</sup> νυκτὸς ἵεναι, ὥς μὴ ὀράσθαι, <sup>|go forth; |is possible</sup> πελθεῖν τοσοῦτον ὥς μὴ <sup>|sense perception</sup> ἡσυχάζειν. δοκοῦμεν δ' ἂν μοι ταύτῃ <sup>|give over to; pre-tend</sup> ὑποτασσάμεθα, <sup>|hit, attack, approach; |attach, offer</sup> ὅτε ἂν τῷ ὄρει χρῆσθαι μένοιεν γὰρ ἂν αὐτοῦ μᾶλλον <sup>|grouped</sup> οἱ πολέμοι.

«Ἀτὰρ τί ἐγὼ περὶ <sup>|theft, |fraud</sup> τῆς ἀντιπαράθεσης γὰρ <sup>|pit against; compare; |mp: meet, fall in with</sup> ἐγώ γε, ὦ Χειρίσοφε, ἀκούω τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους ὅσοι

visible stretches nearly seven miles. Where are the men posted to intercept us? except at the road itself, they are nowhere to be seen. It is much better to try if possible to steal a point of this desert mountain unobserved, and before they know where we are, secure the prize, than to fly at a strong position and an enemy thoroughly prepared. Since it is much easier to march up a mountain without fighting than to tramp along a level when assailants are at either hand; and provided he has not to fight, a man will see what lies at his feet much more plainly even at night than in broad daylight in the midst of battle; and a rough road to feet that roam in peace may be pleasanter than a smooth surface with the bullets whistling about your ears. Nor is it so impossible, I take it, to steal a march, since it is open to us to go by night, when we cannot be seen, and to fall back so far that they will never notice us. In my opinion, however, if we make a feint of attacking here, we shall find the mountain chain all the more deserted elsewhere, since the enemy will be waiting for us here in thicker swarm.

«But what right have I to be drawing conclusions about stealing in your presence, Cheirisophus? for you Lacedaemonians, as I have often been told, you who

*vocabulary*

**ἄβατος** untrodden; impassable

**αἰσχρός** shameful

**γυμνής** light infantry; serf

**δειπνέω** eat, dine

**δημόσιος** public, the state

**εἴπερ** if indeed

**ἐνεδρεύω** ambush, trap

**ἐπειδάν** when, after

**ἐπιδείκνυμι** (ὅ) display, exhibit

**ἐτοῖμος** ready; fulfilled

**ἡγεμών** -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide,  
chief ~hegemony

**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch,  
overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy

**κλέπτω** steal

**κλώψ** thief

**κράτιστος** best

**κωλύω** (ὅ) hinder, prevent

**μαστιγόω** (ἰ) whip

**μελετάω** pursue, attend to, exercise

**νόμιμος** customary, legal, natural

**ὀπισθοφύλαξ** rear guard ~phylactery

**παιδεία** child-rearing, education

**πληγή** a hit ~plectrum

**τοίνυν** well, then

ἐστὲ τῶν ὁμοίων εὐθὺς ἐκ παίδων κλέπτειν μελετᾶν, καὶ οὐκ αἰσχρὸν εἶναι ἀλλὰ καλὸν κλέπτειν ὅσα μὴ κωλύει νόμος. ὅπως δὲ ὡς κράτιστα κλέπτητε καὶ πειρᾶσθε λανθάνειν, νόμιμον ἄρα ὑμῖν ἐστίν, ἐὰν ληφθῇτε κλέπτοντες, μαστιγοῦσθαι. νῦν οὖν μάλα σοι καιρὸς ἐστίν ἐπιδείξασθαι τὴν παιδείαν, καὶ φυλάξασθαι μὴ ληφθῶμεν κλέπτοντες τοῦ ὄρους, ὥς μὴ πληγὰς λάβωμεν.»

«Ἀλλὰ μέντοι,» ἔφη ὁ Χειρίσοφος, «καγὼ ὑμᾶς τοὺς Ἀθηναίους ἀκούω δεινοὺς εἶναι κλέπτειν τὰ δημόσια, καὶ μάλα ὄντος δεινοῦ κινδύνου τῷ κλέπτοντι, καὶ τοὺς κρατίστους μέντοι μάλιστα, εἴπερ ὑμῖν οἱ κράτιστοι ἄρχειν ἀξιοῦνται· ὥστε ὥρα καὶ σοὶ ἐπιδείκνυσθαι τὴν παιδείαν.»

«Ἐγὼ μὲν τοίνυν,» ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, «ἔτοιμός εἰμι τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλακας ἔχων, ἐπειδὰν δειπνήσωμεν, ἵεναι καταληψόμενος τὸ ὄρος. ἔχω δὲ καὶ ἡγεμόνας· οἱ γὰρ γυμνήτες τῶν ἐπομένων ἡμῖν κλωπῶν ἔλαβόν τινας ἐνεδρεύσαντες· τούτων καὶ πυνθάνομαι ὅτι οὐκ ἄβατόν

ἐστὲ τῶν ὁμοίων εὐθὺς ἐκ παίδων |steal |pursue, attend to, ex-  
|ercise

καὶ οὐκ |shameful εἶναι ἀλλὰ καλὸν |steal ὅσα μὴ

|hinder, νόμος. ὅπως δὲ ὥς |best |steal καὶ  
|prevent

πειράσθε λανθάνειν, |customary, ὅτι ὑμῖν ἐστίν, ἐὰν ληφθῇτε  
|legal, natural

|steal , |whip νῦν οὖν μάλα σοι καιρὸς ἐστίν

|display, exhibit τὴν |child-rearing, φυλάξασθαι μὴ ληφθῶμεν  
|education

|steal τοῦ ὅρους, ὥς μὴ πληγὰς λάβωμεν.»

«Ἄλλὰ μέντοι,» ἔφη ὁ Χειρίσοφος, «κάγὼ ὑμᾶς τοὺς

Ἀθηναίους ἀκούω δεινοὺς εἶναι |steal τὰ |public, the state

καὶ μάλα ὄντος δεινοῦ κινδύνου τῷ |steal , καὶ τοὺς

|best μέντοι μάλιστα, |if indeed ὑμῖν οἱ |best

ἄρχειν ἀξιοῦνται· ὥστε ὥρα καὶ σοὶ |display, exhibit τὴν

|child-rearing,  
|education

«Ἐγὼ μὲν |well, then ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, «ἔτοιμός εἰμι

τοὺς |rear guard ἔχων, |when, |eat, dine , ἵεναι  
|after

|seize, understand, catch, ὅρος. ἔχω δὲ καὶ ἡγεμόνας· οἱ  
|overtake; (mp) happen

γὰρ |light τῶν ἐπομένων ἡμῖν |thief ἔλαβόν τινας  
|infantry;

|ambush, trap τούτων καὶ πυνθάνομαι ὅτι οὐκ |untrodden;  
|impassable

belong to the 'peers,' practise stealing from your boyhood up; and it is no disgrace but honourable rather to steal, except such things as the law forbids; and in order, I presume, to stimulate your sense of secretiveness, and to make you master thieves, it is lawful for you further to get a whipping if you are caught. Now then you have a fine opportunity of displaying your training. But take care we are not caught stealing over the mountain, or we shall catch it ourselves."

«For all that," retorted Cheirisophus, «I have heard that you Athenians are clever hands at stealing the public moneys; and that too though there is a fearful risk for the person so employed; but, I am told, it is your best men who are addicted to it; if it is your best men who are thought worthy to rule. So it is a fine opportunity for yourself also, Xenophon, to exhibit your education."

«And I," replied Xenophon, «am ready to take the rear division, as soon as we have supped, and seize the mountain chain. I have already got guides, for the light troops laid an ambushade, and seized some of the cut-purse vagabonds who hung on our rear. I am further informed by them that the mountain is not inaccessible, but is

*vocabulary*

**αἶξ** αἰγός (m) goat  
**ἄκρα** at the edge, extreme ~acute  
**ἄκρη** at the edge, extreme  
**ἄκρις** -ός (f) hilltop ~acute  
**ἄκρον** crest, extremity ~acute  
**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme ~acute  
**ἀναπαύω** cause to cease ~pause  
**ἅπαξ** once  
**ἀριστάω** eat lunch ~aristocrat  
**βατός** passable; speeding  
**γυμνής** light infantry; serf  
**δειπνέω** eat, dine  
**ἐλπίζω** (mid, pf) hope, expect; (act)  
 cause to do so (rare) ~voluptuary  
**ἐπειδάν** when, after  
**καίω** burn ~caustic  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch,

overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy  
**νέμω** to allot, to pasture ~nemesis  
**οἶχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone  
**ὀπισθοφυλακία** command of the rear  
**ὀπλίτης** -ου (ī, m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
 infantryman ~hoplite  
**προάγω** lead forward, advance  
**προσάγω** bring to a place  
 ~demagogue  
**πυρά** pyre ~pyre  
**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)  
**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm;  
 (pl noun) 200 meters  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**σύνθημα** -τος (n, 3) agreed signal  
**συντίθημι** hearken, mark ~thesis  
**ὑποζύγιον** beast of burden ~zygote

ἔστι τὸ ὄρος, ἀλλὰ νέμεται αἰξί καὶ βουσίν· ὥστε ἐάνπερ ἅπαξ λάβωμέν τι τοῦ ὄρους, βατὰ καὶ τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις ἔσται. ἐλπίζω δὲ οὐδὲ τοὺς πολεμίους μενεῖν ἔτι, ἐπειδὴν ἴδωσιν ἡμᾶς ἐν τῷ ὁμοίῳ ἐπὶ τῶν ἄκρων· οὐδὲ γὰρ νῦν ἐθέλουσι καταβαίνειν εἰς τὸ ἴσον ἡμῖν.»

Ὁ δὲ Χειρίσοφος εἶπε· «Καὶ τί δεῖ σὲ ἵεναι καὶ λιπεῖν τὴν ὀπισθοφυλακίαν; ἀλλὰ ἄλλους πέμψον, ἂν μὴ τινες ἐθέλοντες ἀγαθοὶ φαίνωνται.» ἐκ τούτου Ἀριστώνυμος Μεθυδριεὺς ἔρχεται ὀπλίτας ἔχων καὶ Ἀριστέας ὁ Χῖος γυμνήτας καὶ Νικόμαχος Οἰταῖος γυμνήτας· καὶ σύνθημα ἐποιήσαντο, ὅποτε ἔχοιεν τὰ ἄκρα, πυρὰ καίειν πολλά. ταῦτα συνθέμενοι ἡρίστων· ἐκ δὲ τοῦ ἀρίστου προήγαγεν ὁ Χειρίσοφος τὸ στράτευμα πᾶν ὥς δέκα σταδίους πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους, ὅπως ὥς μάλιστα δοκοίη ταύτη προσάξειν.

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἐδείπνησαν καὶ νύξ ἐγένετο, οἱ μὲν ταχθέντες ᾤχοντο, καὶ καταλαμβάνουσι τὸ ὄρος, οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι αὐτοῦ ἀνεπαύοντο. οἱ δὲ πολέμοι ἐπεὶ ἦσθοντο τὸ ὄρος



ἐστι τὸ ὄρος, ἀλλὰ |distribute|goat καὶ βουσίν· ὥστε ἐάνπερ  
 |once λάβωμέν τι τοῦ ὄρους, |passable;...| τοῖς |beast of burden  
 |speeding  
 ἔσται. |(mid, pf) ὁπὲρ, expect; |λεμίους μενεῖν ἔτι, |when,  
 |(act) cause to do so (rare) |after  
 ἰδῶσιν ἡμᾶς ἐν τῷ ὁμοίῳ ἐπὶ τῶν ἄκρων· οὐδὲ γὰρ νῦν  
 ἐθέλουσι καταβαίνειν εἰς τὸ ἴσον ἡμῖν.»

Ὁ δὲ Χειρίσοφος εἶπε· «Καὶ τί δεῖ σὲ ἰέναι καὶ λιπεῖν  
 τὴν |command of the rear ἄλλους πέμψον, ἂν μὴ τινες  
 ἐθέλοντες ἀγαθοὶ φαίνωνται.» ἐκ τούτου Ἀριστώνυμος  
 Μεθυδριεὺς ἔρχεται |hoplite, heavy ν καὶ Ἀριστέας ὁ Χῖος  
 |infantryman  
 |light καὶ Νικόμαχος Οἰταῖος |light καὶ |agreed  
 |infantry; |infantry; |signal  
 |serf ἐποιήσαντο, ὅποτε ἔχοιεν τὰ ἄκρα, |pyre |burn πολλά.

ταῦτα |hearken, |eat lunch ἐκ δὲ τοῦ ἀρίστου |lead forward,  
 |mark |advance  
 ὁ Χειρίσοφος τὸ |army πᾶν ὡς δέκα σταδίου  
 πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους, ὅπως ὡς μάλιστα δοκοίη ταύτη  
 |bring to a place

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ |eat, dine καὶ νύξ ἐγένετο, οἱ μὲν ταχθέντες  
 |come, go, καὶ |seize, understand, catch, ὅρος, οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι αὐτοῦ  
 |overtake; (mp) happen  
 |cause to cease οἱ δὲ πολέμοι ἐπεὶ ἦσθοντο τὸ ὄρος

grazed by goats and cattle, so that if we can once get hold of any portion of it, there will be no difficulty as regards our animals—they can cross. As to the enemy, I expect they will not even wait for us any longer, when they once see us on a level with themselves on the heights, for they do not even at present care to come down and meet us on fair ground.” Cheirisophus answered: «But why should you go and leave your command in the rear? Send others rather, unless a band of volunteers will present themselves.” Thereupon Aristonymus the Methydrian came forward with some heavy infantry, and Nicomachus the Oeteian with another body of light troops, and they made an agreement to kindle several watch-fires as soon as they held the heights. The arrangements made, they breakfasted; and after breakfast Cheirisophus advanced the whole army ten furlongs closer towards the enemy, so as to strengthen the impression that he intended to attack them at that point.

But as soon as they had supped and night had fallen, the party under orders set off and occupied the mountain, while the main body rested where they were. Now as soon as the enemy perceived that the mountain was taken, they banished all

*vocabulary*

**ἄκρα** at the edge, extreme ~acute  
**ἄκρη** at the edge, extreme  
**ἄκρις** -ός (f) hilltop ~acute  
**ἄκρον** crest, extremity ~acute  
**ἄνω** (ἄ) accomplish, pass, waste;  
 upwards, out to sea  
**ἀπαντάω** encounter, come upon  
**ἀχρεῖος** serving no purpose ~chresard  
**βάδην** step by step ~basis  
**γέμω** be full of  
**γέρον** wicker object  
**δρόμος** running, racing ground  
 ~hippodrome  
**Ἑλλήν** Greek  
**ἔπειμι** lie upon; approach ~ion  
**ἐφέπω** drive, meet, follow ~sequel  
**ἡσάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be  
 overcome; (active) defeat  
**ἡττάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be  
 overcome; (active) defeat  
**θέω** run, run for

**θύω** (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω  
**καίω** burn ~caustic  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch,  
 overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy  
**κόπτω** beat, cut, strike  
**κώμη** village  
**μάχαιρα** knife, dagger  
**ὁμός** same ~homoerotic  
**ὁμοῦ** together  
**ὁμόω** unite ~homoerotic  
**ὀπλίτης** -ου (ī, m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
 infantryman ~hoplite  
**πάμπολυς** very great  
**παρατάσσω** place beside  
**πελταστής** -οῦ (m, 1) light troops  
 ~pelt  
**προσδοκάω** expect  
**πυρά** pyre ~pyre  
**συμμίγνυμι** mix with ~mix  
**τρόπαιον** victory monument  
**ὑπερβολή** mountain pass; excess

ἐχόμενον, ἐγρηγόρεσαν καὶ ἔκαιον πυρὰ πολλὰ διὰ νυκτός.  
ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἡμέρα ἐγένετο Χειρίσοφος μὲν θυσάμενος ἦγε  
κατὰ τὴν ὁδόν, οἱ δὲ τὸ ὄρος καταλαβόντες κατὰ τὰ ἄκρα  
ἐπῆσαν. τῶν δὲ πολεμίων τὸ μὲν πολὺ ἔμενεν ἐπὶ τῇ  
ὑπερβολῇ τοῦ ὄρους, μέρος δ' αὐτῶν ἀπήντα τοῖς κατὰ  
τὰ ἄκρα. πρὶν δὲ ὁμοῦ εἶναι τοὺς πολλοὺς ἀλλήλοις,  
συμμιγνύασιν οἱ κατὰ τὰ ἄκρα, καὶ νικῶσιν οἱ Ἕλληνες  
καὶ διώκουσιν. ἐν τούτῳ δὲ καὶ οἱ ἐκ τοῦ πεδίου οἱ  
μὲν πελτασταὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων δρόμῳ ἔθεον πρὸς τοὺς  
παρατεταγμένους, Χειρίσοφος δὲ βάδην ταχὺ ἐφείπετο  
σὺν τοῖς ὀπλίταις. οἱ δὲ πολέμοι οἱ ἐπὶ τῇ ὁδῷ ἐπειδὴ  
τὸ ἄνω ἐώρων ἡττώμενον, φεύγουσι· καὶ ἀπέθανον μὲν  
οὐ πολλοὶ αὐτῶν, γέρρα δὲ πάμπολλα ἐλήφθη· ἃ οἱ  
Ἕλληνες ταῖς μαχαίραις κόπτοντες ἀχρεῖα ἐποιοῦν. ὥς δ'  
ἀνέβησαν, θύσαντες καὶ τρόπαιον στησάμενοι κατέβησαν  
εἰς τὸ πεδίον, καὶ εἰς κώμας πολλῶν καὶ ἀγαθῶν γεμούσας  
ἦλθον.

ἐχόμενον, ἐγρηγόρεσαν καὶ |burn |pyre πολλά διὰ νυκτός.  
 ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἡμέρα ἐγένετο Χειρίσοφος μὲν |rush; sacrifice, γε  
 κατὰ τὴν ὁδόν, οἱ δὲ τὸ ὄρος |seize, understand, catch, ἂ ἄκρα  
 |overtake; (mp) happen  
 |lie upon; approach ἔπολεμίων τὸ μὲν πολὺ ἔμενεν ἐπὶ τῇ  
 |mountain τοῦ ὄρους, μέρος δ' αὐτῶν |encounter, come upon  
 |pass; excess  
 τὰ ἄκρα. πρὶν δὲ ὁμοῦ εἶναι τοὺς πολλοὺς ἀλλήλοις,  
 |mix with οἱ κατὰ τὰ ἄκρα, καὶ νικῶσιν οἱ |Greek  
 καὶ διώκουσιν. ἐν τούτῳ δὲ καὶ οἱ ἐκ τοῦ πεδίου οἱ  
 μὲν |light troops τῶν |Greek |running |run πρὸς τοὺς  
 |place beside , Χειρίσοφος δὲ |step by step ἔφεπῳ?: drive, meet,  
 |follow; or ἐφεπῳ?:  
 σὺν τοῖς |hoplite, heavy δὲ πολέμοι οἱ ἐπὶ τῇ ὁδῷ ἐπείδη  
 |infantryman |drive, meet, follow  
 τὸ ἄνω ἐώρων ἡττώμενον, φεύγουσι καὶ ἀπέθανον μὲν  
 οὐ πολλοὶ αὐτῶν, |wicker δὲ πάμπολλα ἐλήφθη· ἃ οἱ  
 |object  
 |Greek ταῖς |knife |beat, cut, |serving no purpose ἔς δ'  
 |strike  
 ἀνέβησαν, |rush; sacrifice ἔστησαν |victory |monument  
 εἰς τὸ πεδίον, καὶ εἰς |village πολλῶν καὶ ἀγαθῶν |be full of  
 ἦλθον.

thought of sleep, and kept many watch-fires blazing throughout the night. But at break of day Cheirisophus offered sacrifice, and began advancing along the road, while the detachment which held the mountain advanced *pari passu* by the high ground. The larger mass of the enemy, on his side, remained still on the mountain-pass, but a section of them turned to confront the detachment on the heights. Before the main bodies had time to draw together, the detachment on the height came to close quarters, and the Hellenes were victorious and gave chase. Meanwhile the light division of the Hellenes, issuing from the plain, were rapidly advancing against the serried lines of the enemy, whilst Cheirisophus followed up with his heavy infantry at quick march. But the enemy on the road no sooner saw their higher division being worsted than they fled, and some few of them were slain, and a vast number of wicker shields were taken, which the Hellenes hacked to pieces with their short swords and rendered useless. So when they had reached the summit of the pass, they sacrificed and set up a trophy, and descending into the plain, reached villages abounding in good things of every kind.

*vocabulary*

**ἄθροός** grouped  
**ἀνακομίζω** take back/away  
**ἀποκάμνω** tire out  
**ἀπότομος** cut off; severe  
**αὐτόσε** to the very place  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**ἐπιλείπω** fail, not work ~eclipse  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἔρωτάω** ask about something  
**ἰσχυρός** (ῥ) strong, forceful, violent  
**κοινός** communal, ordinary  
**κτῆνος** -ους (n, 3) herd animal  
**κύκλος** circle, wheel ~cycle  
**κωλύω** (ῥ) hinder, prevent  
**οἰκέω** inhabit ~economics  
**ὀπισθοφύλαξ** rear guard ~phylactery  
**ὀπλίτης** -ου (ῥ, m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
 infantryman ~hoplite

**παρασάγγης** -ου (m, 1) Persian unit,  
 ca. 5 km  
**πάροδος** (f) detour, side way,  
 mountain pass  
**πελταστής** -οῦ (m, 1) light troops  
 ~pelt  
**περίστημι** be around; turn out  
 ~station  
**προσβάλλω** hit, attack, approach;  
 attach, offer ~ballistic  
**πρόσεμι** approach, draw near; add  
 ~ion  
**σταθμός** cottage; post  
**στρατιά** army ~strategy  
**συνέρχομαι** come together  
**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military  
 unit  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

## 4.7

Ἐκ δὲ τούτων ἐπορεύθησαν εἰς Ταόχους σταθμούς πέντε παρασάγγας τριάκοντα· καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐπέλειπε· χωρία γὰρ ὄκουν ἰσχυρὰ οἱ Τάοχοι, ἐν οἷς καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἅπαντα εἶχον ἀνακεκομισμένοι. ἐπεὶ δ' ἀφίκοντο πρὸς χωρίον ὃ πόλιν μὲν οὐκ εἶχεν οὐδ' οἰκίας, συνεληλυθότες δ' ἦσαν αὐτόσε καὶ ἄνδρες καὶ γυναῖκες καὶ κτήνη πολλά, Χειρίσοφος μὲν οὖν πρὸς τοῦτο προσέβαλλεν εὐθὺς ἡκων· ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἡ πρώτη τάξις ἀπέκαμνεν, ἄλλη προσήει καὶ αὐθις ἄλλη· οὐ γὰρ ἦν ἀθρόοις περιστῆναι, ἀλλ' ἀπότομον ἦν κύκλω. ἐπειδὴ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἦλθε σὺν τοῖς ὀπισθοφύλαξι καὶ πελτασταῖς καὶ ὀπλίταις, ἐνταῦθα δὴ λέγει Χειρίσοφος· «Εἰς καλὸν ἦκετε· τὸ γὰρ χωρίον αἰρετέον· τῇ γὰρ στρατιᾷ οὐκ ἔστι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, εἰ μὴ ληψόμεθα τὸ χωρίον.» ἐνταῦθα δὴ κοινῇ ἐβουλευόντο· καὶ τοῦ Ξενοφῶντος ἐρωτῶντος τί τὸ κωλύον εἴη εἰσελθεῖν, εἶπεν ὁ Χειρίσοφος· «Μία αὕτη πάροδος ἐστὶν ἣν ὁρᾷς· ὅταν δέ τις ταύτῃ περᾶται



## 4.7

Ἐκ δὲ τούτων ἐπορεύθησαν εἰς Ταόχους |cottage; post..έντε  
 |ca. 5 km τριάκοντα· καὶ τὰ |fit, suitable |fail, not work  
 χωρία γὰρ |inhabit |strong, force-Τάοχοι, ἐν οἷς καὶ τὰ  
 |ful, violent  
 |fit, suitable ἅπαντα εἶχον |take back/away ἐπεὶ δ'  
 ἀφίκοντο πρὸς χωρίον ὃ πόλιν μὲν οὐκ εἶχεν οὐδ'  
 οἰκίας, |come together δ' ἦσαν |to the very place. ὄρες καὶ  
 γυναιῖκες καὶ |herd animal·λά, Χειρίσοφος μὲν οὖν πρὸς  
 τοῦτο |hit, attack, approach; ἤκων· ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἡ πρώτη τάξις  
 |attach, offer  
 |tire out , ἄλλη |approach καὶ αὖθις ἄλλη· οὐ γὰρ ἦν  
 |grouped |be around; turn 'out' |cut off; severe,· |circle, ἐπειδὴ  
 |wheel  
 δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἦλθε σὺν τοῖς |rear guard καὶ |light troops  
 καὶ |hoplite, |there, here ἡ λέγει Χειρίσοφος· «Εἰς καλὸν  
 |heavy in-  
 |fantryman ἤκετε· τὸ γὰρ χωρίον αἰρετέον· τῇ γὰρ |army οὐκ ἔστι  
 τὰ |fit, suitable , εἰ μὴ ληψόμεθα τὸ χωρίον.» |there, here ἡ  
 κοινῇ ἐβουλεύοντο· καὶ τοῦ Ξενοφώντος ἐρωτῶντος τί  
 τὸ |hinder, εἴη εἰσελθεῖν, εἶπεν ὁ Χειρίσοφος· «Μία αὕτη  
 |prevent  
 |detour, pass· τιν ἦν ὁρᾶς· ὅταν δέ τις ταύτῃ πειράται

## 4.7

After this they marched into the country of the Taochians five stages—thirty parasangs—and provisions failed; for the Taochians lived in strong places, into which they had carried up all their stores. Now when the army arrived before one of these strong places—a mere fortress, without city or houses, into which a motley crowd of men and women and numerous flocks and herds were gathered—Cheirisophus attacked at once. When the first regiment fell back tired, a second advanced, and again a third, for it was impossible to surround the place in full force, as it was encircled by a river. Presently Xenophon came up with the rearguard, consisting of both light and heavy infantry, whereupon Cheirisophus halted him with the words: «In the nick of time you have come; we must take this place, for the troops have no provisions, unless we take it.” Thereupon they consulted together, and to Xenophon’s inquiry, «What it was which hindered their simply walking in?” Cheirisophus replied, «There is just this one narrow approach which you see, but when we attempt to pass it by they roll down volleys of

*vocabulary*

**ἀναλίσκω** (αἶ) consume, spend on  
**δασύς** hairy, brushy  
**δείκνυμι** (ὀ) show, point out  
**διαλείπω** leave a gap, space apart  
**διατίθηναι** arrange; set out goods for sale ~thesis  
**διέρχομαι** pierce, traverse  
**ἐνθεν** thence, whence  
**ἐντίθηναι** load; mp: take to heart ~thesis  
**ἐπειδὴν** when, after  
**ἡμίπλεθρον** 15 meters  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch, overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy  
**κυλίνδω** roll ~cylinder  
**κωλύω** (ὀ) hinder, prevent  
**λίθεος** made of stone ~monolith  
**λίθος** (f) stone ~monolith

**λωφάω** stop, find respite from  
**ὀπλίζω** prepare, arm ~hoplite  
**παρατρέχω** run past  
**παρίηναι** dangle; pass over, allow ~jet  
**πέτρα** rock, cliff, reef ~petrified  
**πίτυς** pine  
**πλέθρον** 30 meters or its square ~plethora  
**πλευρά** rib, side ~pleurisy  
**πρόσευμι** approach, draw near; add ~ion  
**προσίηναι** be allowed near  
**σκέλος** -εος (n, 3) leg ~scoliosis  
**συντρίβω** pulverize  
**σχεδόν** near, approximately at ~ischemia  
**ὑπερέχω** be over; protect  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

παριέναι, κυλίνδουσι λίθους ὑπὲρ ταύτης τῆς ὑπερεχούσης πέτρας· ὅς δ' ἂν καταληφθῇ, οὕτω διατίθεται.» ἅμα δ' ἔδειξε συντετριμμένους ἀνθρώπους καὶ σκέλη καὶ πλευράς. «Ἦν δὲ τοὺς λίθους ἀναλώσωσιν,» ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, «ἄλλο τι ἢ οὐδὲν κωλύει παριέναι; οὐ γὰρ δὴ ἐκ τοῦ ἐναντίου ὀρώμεν εἰ μὴ ὀλίγους τούτους ἀνθρώπους, καὶ τούτων δύο ἢ τρεῖς ὥπλισμένους. τὸ δὲ χωρίον, ὥς καὶ σὺ ὀρᾷς, σχεδὸν τρία ἡμίπλεθρά ἐστιν ὃ δεῖ βαλλομένους διελθεῖν· τούτου δὲ ὅσον πλέθρον δασὺ πίτυσι διαλειπούσαις μεγάλαις, ἀνθ' ὧν ἐστηκότες ἄνδρες τί ἂν πάσχοιεν ἢ ὑπὸ τῶν φερομένων λίθων ἢ ὑπὸ τῶν κυλινδομένων; τὸ λοιπὸν οὖν γίγνεται ὥς ἡμίπλεθρον, ὃ δεῖ ὅταν λωφήσωσιν οἱ λίθοι παραδραμεῖν.»

«Ἀλλὰ εὐθύς,» ἔφη ὁ Χειρίσοφος, «ἐπειδὰν ἀρξώμεθα εἰς τὸ δασὺ προσιέναι, φέρονται οἱ λίθοι πολλοί.»

«Αὐτὸ ἄν,» ἔφη, «τὸ δέον εἶη· θάττον γὰρ ἀναλώσουσι τοὺς λίθους. ἀλλὰ πορευώμεθα ἔνθεν ἡμῖν μικρόν τι παραδραμεῖν ἔσται, ἣν δυνώμεθα, καὶ ἀπελθεῖν ῥάδιον,

|dangle; |roll λίθους ὑπὲρ ταύτης τῆς |be over; protect  
 |pass over,  
 |allow  
 |rock ὅς δ' ἂν |seize, understand, |arrange; set out ἅμα  
 |catch, overtake; (mp) |goods for sale  
 δ' ἔδειξε |pulverize |happen ἀνθρώπους καὶ |leg καὶ  
 |rib, side «Ἦν δὲ τοὺς λίθους |consume, ,» ἔφη ὁ  
 |spend on  
 Ξενοφῶν, «ἄλλο τι ἢ οὐδὲν |hinder, |dangle; pass ἵ γὰρ δὴ ἐκ  
 |prevent |over, allow  
 τοῦ ἐναντίου ὁρῶμεν εἰ μὴ ὀλίγους τούτους ἀνθρώπους,  
 καὶ τούτων δύο ἢ τρεῖς |prepare, arm τὸ δὲ χωρίον,  
 ὡς καὶ σὺ ὁρᾷς, |about τρία |15 meters ἔστιν ὃ δεῖ  
 βαλλομένους |pierce, τούτου δὲ ὅσον |30 meters |hairy,  
 |traverse |or its |brushy  
 |pine |leave a gap, μεγάλαις, ἀνθ' ὧν ἐστὶ |square  
 |space apart ἱκανοὶ ἄνδρες  
 τί ἂν πάσχοιεν ἢ ὑπὸ τῶν φερομένων λίθων ἢ ὑπὸ τῶν  
 |roll , τὸ λοιπὸν οὖν γίγνεται ὡς |15 meters , ὃ  
 δεῖ ὅταν |stop, find οἱ λίθοι |run past .»  
 |respite from  
 «Ἀλλὰ εὐθύς,» ἔφη ὁ Χειρίσοφος, «ἐπειδὴν ἀρξώμεθα εἰς  
 τὸ |hairy, ..ροσιέναι, φέρονται οἱ λίθοι πολλοί.»  
 |brushy  
 «Αὐτὸ ἄν,» ἔφη, «τὸ δέον εἶη· θᾶπτον γὰρ |consume,  
 |spend on  
 τοὺς λίθους. ἀλλὰ πορευώμεθα ἔνθεν ἡμῖν μικρόν τι  
 |run past ἔσται, ἣν δυνώμεθα, καὶ ἀπελθεῖν ράδιον,

stones from yonder overhanging crag," pointing up, «and this is the state in which you find yourself, if you chance to be caught;" and he pointed to some poor fellows with their legs or ribs crushed to bits. «But when they have expended their ammunition," said Xenophon, «there is nothing else, is there, to hinder our passing? Certainly, except yonder handful of fellows, there is no one in front of us that we can see; and of them, only two or three apparently are armed, and the distance to be traversed under fire is, as your eyes will tell you, about one hundred and fifty feet as near as can be, and of this space the first hundred is thickly covered with great pines at intervals; under cover of these, what harm can come to our men from a pelt of stones, flying or rolling? So then, there is only fifty feet left to cross, during a lull of stones." «Ay," said Cheirisophus, «but with our first attempt to approach the bush a galling fire of stones commences." «The very thing we want," said the other, «for they will use up their ammunition all the quicker; but let us select a point from which we shall have only a brief space to run across, if we can, and from which it will be

*vocabulary*

**ἄθροος** grouped  
**ἄμαξα** wagon  
**ἀναλίσκω** (αἶ) consume, spend on  
**ἀναχάζω** pull back; (mp) back off;  
 grieve ~heir  
**ἀσφαλής** safe, easy, steady, careful  
**βῆμα** -τος (n, 3) step, pace  
**δένδρον** tree  
**ἐβδομήκοντα** 70  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**εὐπέτης** flying well  
**ἐφίστημι** set; (mp) come/be near,  
 direct, stop ~station  
**ἡγεμονία** authority, rule  
**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider

~theater  
**λίθεος** made of stone ~monolith  
**λίθος** (f) stone ~monolith  
**λοχαγέω** (ᾱ) lead a company  
**λοχαγός** (ᾱ) captain  
**λόχος** ambush, band, childbirth ~lie  
**μηχανάομαι** build, contrive  
 ~mechanism  
**ὀπισθοφύλαξ** rear guard ~phylactery  
**παρατρέχω** run past  
**πέτρα** rock, cliff, reef ~petrified  
**πλησίος** near, neighboring  
**προδρομή** sally  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

ἦν βουλώμεθα.»

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο Χειρίσοφος καὶ Ξενοφῶν καὶ Καλλίμαχος Παρράσιος λοχαγός· τούτου γὰρ ἡ ἡγεμονία ἦν τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων λοχαγῶν ἐκείνῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ· οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι λοχαγοὶ ἔμενον ἐν τῷ ἀσφαλεῖ. μετὰ τοῦτο οὖν ἀπῆλθον ὑπὸ τὰ δένδρα ἄνθρωποι ὡς ἐβδομήκοντα, οὐχ ἀθρόοι ἀλλὰ καθ' ἓνα, ἕκαστος φυλαττόμενος ὡς ἐδύνατο. Ἀγασίας δὲ ὁ Στυμφάλιος καὶ Ἀριστώνυμος Μεθυδριεὺς καὶ οὗτοι τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων λοχαγοὶ ὄντες, καὶ ἄλλοι δέ, ἐφέστασαν ἔξω τῶν δένδρων· οὐ γὰρ ἦν ἀσφαλῶς ἐν τοῖς δένδροις ἐστάναι πλέον ἢ τὸν ἓνα λόχον. ἔνθα δὲ Καλλίμαχος μηχανᾶται τι· προὔτρεχεν ἀπὸ τοῦ δένδρου ὑφ' ᾧ ἦν αὐτὸς δύο ἢ τρία βήματα· ἐπειδὴ δὲ οἱ λίθοι φέροντο, ἀνέχαζεν εὐπετῶς· ἐφ' ἐκάστης δὲ τῆς προδρομῆς πλέον ἢ δέκα ἅμαξαι πετρῶν ἀνηλίσκοντο. ὁ δὲ Ἀγασίας ὡς ὀρᾷ τὸν Καλλίμαχον ᾧ ἐποίει τὸ στράτευμα πᾶν θεώμενον, δείσας μὴ οὐ πρῶτος παραδράμῃ εἰς τὸ χωρίον, οὐδὲ τὸν Ἀριστώνυμον πλησίον



ἦν βουλώμεθα.»

|thence ἐπορεύοντο Χειρίσοφος καὶ Ξενοφῶν καὶ  
 Καλλίμαχος Παρράσιος |captain τούτου γὰρ ἡ |authority, rule  
 ἦν τῶν |rear guard λοχαγῶν ἐκείνῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ· οἱ  
 δὲ ἄλλοι |captain ἔμενον ἐν τῷ |safe, easy, τὰ τοῦτο  
 |steady, careful  
 οὖν ἀπῆλθον ὑπὸ τὰ |tree ἄνθρωποι ὥς |70  
 οὐχ |grouped ἰλλὰ καθ' ἓνα, ἕκαστος φυλαττόμενος ὥς  
 ἐδύνατο. Ἀγασίας δὲ ὁ Στυμφάλιος καὶ Ἀριστώνυμος  
 Μεθυδριεὺς καὶ οὗτοι τῶν |rear guard |captain ὄντες,  
 καὶ ἄλλοι δέ, |set; (mp) come/be near, |tree οὐ γὰρ ἦν  
 |direct, stop  
 ἀσφαλῶς ἐν τοῖς |tree ἐστάναι πλέον ἢ τὸν ἓνα  
 |ambush, band, δὴ Καλλίμαχος |build, τι· προύτρεχεν  
 |childbirth |contrive  
 ἀπὸ τοῦ |tree ὑφ' ᾧ ἦν αὐτὸς δύο ἢ τρία |step, pace  
 ἐπειδὴ δὲ οἱ λίθοι φέροντο, |pull back |flying well ἐφ'  
 ἐκάστης δὲ τῆς |sally πλέον ἢ δέκα |wagon |rock  
 |consume, ὁ δὲ Ἀγασίας ὥς ὀρᾷ τὸν Καλλίμαχον ᾧ  
 |spend on  
 ἐποίει τὸ |army πᾶν θεώμενον, δείσας μὴ οὐ πρῶτος  
 |run past εἰς τὸ |area; downwards· Ἀριστώνυμον |near

easier to get back, if we wish.”

Thereupon Cheirisophus and Xenophon set out with Callimachus the Parrhasian, the captain in command of the officers of the rearguard that day; the rest of the captains remained out of danger. That done, the next step was for a party of about seventy men to get away under the trees, not in a body, but one by one, every one using his best precaution; and Agasis the Stymphalian, and Aristonymous the Methydrian, who were also officers of the rearguard, were posted as supports outside the trees; for it was not possible for more than a single company to stand safely within the trees. Here Callimachus hit upon a pretty contrivance—he ran forward from the tree under which he was posted two or three paces, and as soon as the stones came whizzing, he retired easily, but at each excursion more than ten wagon-loads of rocks were expended. Agasias, seeing how Callimachus was amusing himself, and the whole army looking on as spectators, was seized with the fear that he might miss his chance of being first to run the gauntlet of the enemy’s fire and

*vocabulary*

**ἀντιποιέω** do in return; (mid) seek,  
claim

**ἄνωθεν** from above, the beginning

**ἅπαξ** once

**ἀρετή** goodness, excellence

**διαγωνίζομαι** contend against

**εἰστρέχω** run in

**εἴτα** then, therefore, next

**ἐνταῦθα** there, here

**ἐντεῦθεν** thence

**ἐπιλαμβάνω** take, attack, seize

**ἐπισπάω** drag along

**ἐρίζω** struggle, contend

**θέαμα** -τος (*ᾱα*, n, 3) sight, spectacle

**θέω** run, run for

**ῥιγος** rim

**κωλύω** (*ῶ*) hinder, prevent

**λοχαγός** (*ᾱ*) captain

**οἴχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone

**ὄνος** (f) donkey ~onager

**παιδίον** young child; slave

**παρέρχομαι** pass, escape

**πέτρα** rock, cliff, reef ~petrified

**πέτρος** rock ~petrified

**πρόβατον** cattle, flocks, herds

**ρίπτω** hurl

**σταθμός** cottage; post

**στολή** equipment

**χωρέω** withdraw, give way to (+dat)

~heir

**χωρίον** area; downwards

**ὡσαύτως** in the same way

ὄντα παρακαλέσας οὐδὲ Εὐρύλοχον τὸν Λουσιέα, ἐταίρους ὄντας, οὐδὲ ἄλλον οὐδένα χωρεῖ αὐτός, καὶ παρέρχεται πάντας. ὁ δὲ Καλλίμαχος ὡς ὄρᾳ αὐτὸν παριόντα, ἐπιλαμβάνεται αὐτοῦ τῆς ἵτιος· ἐν δὲ τούτῳ παραθεῖ αὐτοὺς Ἀριστώνυμος Μεθυδριεύς, καὶ μετὰ τοῦτον Εὐρύλοχος Λουσιεύς· πάντες γὰρ οὗτοι ἀντεποιοῦντο ἀρετῆς καὶ διηγωνίζοντο πρὸς ἀλλήλους· καὶ οὕτως ἐρίζοντες αἰροῦσι τὸ χωρίον. ὡς γὰρ ἅπαξ εἰσέδραμον, οὐδεὶς πέτρος ἄνωθεν ἠνέχθη.

Ἐνταῦθα δὴ δεινὸν ἦν θέαμα. αἱ γὰρ γυναῖκες ρίπτουσαι τὰ παιδιά εἶτα ἑαυτὰς ἐπικατερρίπτουν, καὶ οἱ ἄνδρες ὡσαύτως. ἐνταῦθα δὴ καὶ Αἰνείας Στυμφάλιος λοχαγὸς ἰδὼν τινα θέοντα ὡς ρίψοντα ἑαυτὸν στολὴν ἔχοντα καλὴν ἐπιλαμβάνεται ὡς κωλύσων· ὁ δὲ αὐτὸν ἐπισπᾶται, καὶ ἀμφοτέροι ὥχοντο κατὰ τῶν πετρῶν φερόμενοι καὶ ἀπέθανον. ἐντεῦθεν ἄνθρωποι μὲν πάνυ ὀλίγοι ἐλήφθησαν, βόες δὲ καὶ ὄνοι πολλοὶ καὶ πρόβατα.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ Χαλύβων σταθμοὺς ἑπτὰ

ὄντα παρακαλέσας οὐδὲ Εὐρύλοχον τὸν Λουσιέα, ἐταίρους  
 ὄντας, οὐδὲ ἄλλον οὐδένα |withdraw, 'give way to|pass, escape  
 (+dat)  
 πάντας. ὁ δὲ Καλλίμαχος ὥς ὀρᾷ αὐτὸν παριόντα,  
 ἐπιλαμβάνεται αὐτοῦ τῆς |rim ἐν δὲ τούτῳ παραθεῖ  
 αὐτοὺς Ἀριστάνυμος Μεθυδριεύς, καὶ μετὰ τοῦτον  
 Εὐρύλοχος Λουσιεύς· πάντες γὰρ οὗτοι |do in return;  
 (mid) seek, claim  
 |excellence καὶ |contend against πρὸς ἀλλήλους· καὶ οὕτως  
 |struggle, αἰροῦσι τὸ |area; downwards ` , |once |run in  
 contend  
 οὐδεῖς |rock |from above, ἤ.  
 |the beginning  
 |there, here δὴ δεινὸν ἦν |sight, εἰ γὰρ γυναῖκες |hurl  
 |spectacle  
 τὰ |young |then, there-`s ἐπικατερρίπτουν, καὶ οἱ ἄνδρες  
 child; |fore, next  
 slave  
 |in the same|there, here δὴ καὶ Αἰνείας Στυμφάλιος |captain  
 |way  
 ἰδὼν τινα |run ὥς |hurl ἐαυτὸν |equipment ἔχοντα  
 καλὴν ἐπιλαμβάνεται ὥς |hinder, ὁ δὲ αὐτὸν ἐπισπᾶται,  
 |prevent  
 καὶ ἀμφότεροι ὥχοντο κατὰ τῶν |rock φερόμενοι  
 καὶ ἀπέθανον. |thence ἄνθρωποι μὲν πάνυ ὀλίγοι  
 ἐλήφθησαν, βόες δὲ καὶ |donkey λλοὶ καὶ |cattle, flocks,  
 |herds  
 |thence ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ Χαλύβων |cottage; post-`τα

get into the place. So, without a word of summons to his neighbour, Aristonymous, or to Eurylochos of Lusia, both comrades of his, or to any one else, off he set on his own account, and passed the whole detachment. But Callimachus, seeing him tearing past, caught hold of his shield by the rim, and in the meantime Aristonymous the Methydrian ran past both, and after him Eurylochos of Lusia; for they were one and all aspirants to valour, and in that high pursuit, each was the eager rival of the rest. So in this strife of honour, the three of them took the fortress, and when they had once rushed in, not a stone more was hurled from overhead.

And here a terrible spectacle displayed itself: the women first cast their infants down the cliff, and then they cast themselves after their fallen little ones, and the men likewise. In such a scene, Aeneas the Stymphalian, an officer, caught sight of a man with a fine dress about to throw himself over, and seized hold of him to stop him; but the other caught him to his arms, and both were gone in an instant headlong down the crags, and were killed. Out of this place the merest handful of human beings were taken prisoners, but cattle and asses in abundance and flocks of sheep.

From this place they marched through the Chalybes seven stages, fifty

*vocabulary*

**ἄλκιμος** brave; sturdily made  
 ~Alexander  
**ἀνακομίζω** take back/away  
**ἀποτέμνω** cut off, sever ~tonsure  
**αὐτόθεν** from that place  
**διατρέφω** support, maintain  
**διέρχομαι** pierce, traverse  
 Ἑλλήν Greek  
**ἐμμένω** stay put, be faithful, fixed  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἐπισιτίζομαι** (ἰλ.) take supplies  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**εὐρος** -εος (n, 3) width; (caps) the east  
 wind  
**ζώνη** girdle; waist, loins ~zone  
**ἦτρον** belly  
**θώραξ** -ηκος (m) breastplate ~thorax  
**κνημὶς** -δος (ī, f) greave  
**κράνος** -εος (n, 3) helmet; ship's ram  
**κτῆνος** -ους (n, 3) herd animal  
**κώμη** village  
**λίνεος** linen

**λόγχη** spear point; lot  
**μαχαίριον** knife  
**μέχρι** as far as, until  
**ξυλή** curved knife  
**οἰκέω** inhabit ~economics  
**ὄχυρός** strong, secure  
**ὄχυρόω** fortify  
**παρασάγγης** -ου (m, 1) Persian unit,  
 ca. 5 km  
**παρέρχομαι** pass, escape  
**πεντεκαίδεκα** 15  
**πῆχυς** forearm, cubit  
**πλέθρον** 30 meters or its square  
 ~plethora  
**πόλισμα** buildings of a city  
**πτέρυξ** -γος (f) wing ~archeopteryx  
**πυκνός** dense, frequent; shrewd  
**σπάρτον** rope  
**σταθμός** cottage; post  
**στρέφω** turn, veer ~atrophy  
**τέσσαρες** four ~trapezoid  
**χορεύω** dance

παρασάγγας πεντήκοντα. οὗτοι ἦσαν ὧν διήλθον  
 ἀλκιμώτατοι, καὶ εἰς χεῖρας ἦσαν. εἶχον δὲ θώρακας  
 λινοὺς μέχρι τοῦ ἥτρου, ἀντὶ δὲ τῶν πτερύγων σπάρτα  
 πυκνὰ ἐστραμμένα. εἶχον δὲ καὶ κνημίδας καὶ κράνη καὶ  
 παρὰ τὴν ζώνην μαχαίριον ὅσον ξυήλην Λακωνικὴν, ᾧ  
 ἔσφαττον ὧν κρατεῖν δύναιντο, καὶ ἀποτεμόντες ἂν τὰς  
 κεφαλὰς ἔχοντες ἐπορεύοντο, καὶ ἦδον καὶ ἐχόρευον ὅποτε  
 οἱ πολέμοι αὐτοὺς ὄψεσθαι ἔμελλον. εἶχον δὲ καὶ δόρυ ὡς  
 πεντεκαίδεκα πήχεων μίαν λόγχην ἔχον. οὗτοι ἐνέμενον  
 ἐν τοῖς πολίσμασιν· ἐπεὶ δὲ παρέλθοιεν οἱ Ἕλληνες,  
 εἶποντο ἀεὶ μαχούμενοι. ὥκουν δὲ ἐν τοῖς ὀχυροῖς, καὶ τὰ  
 ἐπιτήδεια ἐν τούτοις ἀνακεκομισμένοι ἦσαν· ὥστε μηδὲν  
 λαμβάνειν αὐτόθεν τοὺς Ἕλληνας, ἀλλὰ διετράφησαν  
 τοῖς κτήνεσιν ἃ ἐκ τῶν Ταόχων ἔλαβον. ἐκ τούτων  
 οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ Ἄρπασον ποταμόν, εὖρος  
 τεττάρων πλέθρων. ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ Σκυθηνῶν  
 σταθμοὺς τέτταρας παρασάγγας ἑκοσι διὰ πεδίου εἰς  
 κόμας· ἐν αἷς ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο.



|ca. 5 km      πεντήκοντα.      οὔτοι ἦσαν ὧν διήλθον  
 |brave; sturdily, καὶ εἰς χεῖρας ἦσαν. εἶχον δὲ |breastplate  
 |made  
 |linen      μέχρι τοῦ |belly , ἀντὶ δὲ τῶν |wing      σπάρτα  
 πυκνὰ ἐστραμμένα. εἶχον δὲ καὶ |greave      καὶ |helmet; ship's ram  
 παρὰ τὴν |girdle; |knife      ὅσον |curved Λακωνικὴν, ᾧ  
 |waist      |knife  
 ἔσφαττον ὧν κρατεῖν δύναιτο, καὶ |cut off, sever      ἂν τὰς  
 κεφαλὰς ἔχοντες ἐπορεύοντο, καὶ ἦδον καὶ |dance      ὅποτε  
 οἱ πολέμοι αὐτοὺς ὄψεσθαι ἔμελλον. εἶχον δὲ καὶ δόρυ ὡς  
 |15      |forearm, μίαν |spear      ἔχον. οὔτοι |stay put, be faithful,  
 |cubit      |point;  
 ἐν τοῖς |buildings of a city. ἂν δὲ παρέλθοιεν οἱ |Greek ,  
 |lot  
 εἶποντο αἰὲ μαχόμενοι. ἄκουσιν δὲ ἐν τοῖς ὀχυροῖς, καὶ τὰ  
 ἐπιτήδεια ἐν τούτοις |take back/away      ἦσαν· ὥστε μηδὲν  
 λαμβάνειν |from that place. |Greek , ἀλλὰ |support,  
 |maintain  
 τοῖς κτήνεσιν ἃ ἐκ τῶν Ταόχων ἔλαβον. ἐκ τούτων  
 οἱ |Greek      ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ Ἄρπασον ποταμόν, |width; (caps) the  
 |east wind  
 τεττάρων |30 meters or |thence      ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ Σκυθηνῶν  
 |its square  
 |cottage; post . ἑτταρας |ca. 5 km      εἴκοσι διὰ πεδίου εἰς  
 |village      ἐν αἷς ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο.

parasangs. These were the bravest men whom they encountered on the whole march, coming cheerily to close quarters with them. They wore linen cuirasses reaching to the groin, and instead of the ordinary «wings” or basques, a thickly-plaited fringe of cords. They were also provided with greaves and helmets, and at the girdle a short sabre, about as long as the Laconian dagger, with which they cut the throats of those they mastered, and after severing the head from the trunk they would march along carrying it, singing and dancing, when they drew within their enemy’s field of view. They carried also a spear fifteen cubits long, lanced at one end. This folk stayed in regular townships, and whenever the Hellenes passed by they invariably hung close on their heels fighting. They had dwelling-places in their fortresses, and into them they had carried up their supplies, so that the Hellenes could get nothing from this district, but supported themselves on the flocks and herds they had taken from the Taochians. After this the Hellenes reached the river Harpasus, which was four hundred feet broad. Hence they marched through the Scythenians four stages—twenty parasangs—through a long level country to more villages, among which they halted three days,

*vocabulary***αἷθω** set on fire ~ether**ἀπαγγέλλω** announce, order, promise  
~angel**γέρρον** wicker object**δασύς** hairy, brushy**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous**διέρχομαι** pierce, traverse**Ἑλλήν** Greek**ἐμβάλλω** throw in; inspire a mental  
state ~ballistic**ἐνέδρα** ambush, trickery**ἐντεῦθεν** thence**εὐδαίμων** blessed with a good genius**εὐνοία** good will, gift**ζωγρέω** capture, give quarter; revive  
~zoo**ἡγεμών** -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide,

chief ~hegemony

**καθοράω** look down ~panorama**καίω** burn ~caustic**κραυγή** screaming, shouting**ὅθεν** whence**οἰκέω** inhabit ~economics**οἰκουμένη** inhabited**ὀπισθεν** behind, hereafter**ὀπισθοφύλαξ** rear guard ~phylactery**παρακελεύομαι** recommend,  
encourage**παρασάγγης** -ου (m, 1) Persian unit,  
ca. 5 km**πέμπτος** fifth ~pentagon**σταθμός** cottage; post**τέσσαρες** four ~trapezoid**φθείρω** destroy, ruin**χωρίον** area; downwards

Ἐντεῦθεν διήλθον σταθμοὺς τέτταρας παρασάγγας εἴκοσι πρὸς πόλιν μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα καὶ οἰκουμένην ἣ ἐκαλεῖτο Γυμνιάς. ἐκ ταύτης τῆς χώρας ὁ ἄρχων τοῖς Ἑλλησιν ἡγεμόνα πέμπει, ὅπως διὰ τῆς ἑαυτῶν πολεμίας χώρας ἄγοι αὐτούς. ἐλθὼν δ' ἐκεῖνος λέγει ὅτι ἄξι αὐτοὺς πέντε ἡμερῶν εἰς χωρίον ὅθεν ὄψονται θάλατταν· εἰ δὲ μή, τεθνάναι ἐπηγγείλατο. καὶ ἡγούμενος ἐπειδὴ ἐνέβαλλεν εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ πολεμίαν, παρεκελεύετο αἰθεῖν καὶ φθείρειν τὴν χώραν· ᾧ καὶ δῆλον ἐγένετο ὅτι τούτου ἕνεκα ἔλθοι, οὐ τῆς τῶν Ἑλλήνων εὐνοίας.

Καὶ ἀφικνουῦνται ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος τῇ πέμπτῃ ἡμέρᾳ· ὄνομα δὲ τῷ ὄρει ἦν Θήχης. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ πρῶτοι ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ τοῦ ὄρους καὶ κατείδον τὴν θάλατταν, κραυγὴ πολλὴ ἐγένετο. ἀκούσας δὲ ὁ Ξενοφῶν καὶ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες ᾤθησαν ἔμπροσθεν ἄλλους ἐπιτίθεσθαι πολεμίους· εἶποντο γὰρ ὀπισθεν ἐκ τῆς καιομένης χώρας, καὶ αὐτῶν οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες ἀπέκτεινάν τέ τινας καὶ ἐζώγρησαν ἐνέδραν ποιησάμενοι, καὶ γέρρα ἔλαβον δασειῶν βοῶν

|thence | Pierce, |cottage; |four |ca. 5 km |είκοσι  
 |traverse |post  
 πρὸς πόλιν μεγάλην καὶ |blessed with a·αὶ οἰκουμένην ἢ  
 |good genius  
 ἐκαλεῖτο Γυμνιάς. ἐκ ταύτης τῆς χώρας ὁ ἄρχων τοῖς  
 |Greek |leader πέμπει, ὅπως διὰ τῆς ἐαυτῶν πολεμίας  
 χώρας ἄγοι αὐτούς. ἐλθὼν δ' ἐκεῖνος λέγει ὅτι ἄξει αὐτοὺς  
 πέντε ἡμερῶν εἰς |area; |whence, 'ονται θάλατταν· εἰ δὲ μή,  
 |down-  
 τεθνάναι ἐπηγγέλατό. καὶ ἡγούμενος ἐπειδὴ |throw in; inspire  
 |wards  
 εἰς τὴν ἐαυτοῦ πολεμίαν, παρεκελεύετο |set on fire ` |destroy, ruin  
 τὴν χώραν· ὧ καὶ |visible, 'το ὅτι τούτου ἔνεκα ἔλθοι,  
 |conspicuous  
 οὐ τῆς τῶν |Greek |good will, gift

Καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος τῇ |fifth ἡμέρα· ὄνομα  
 δὲ τῷ ὄρει ἦν Θήχης. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ πρῶτοι ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ  
 τοῦ ὄρους καὶ |look down τὴν θάλατταν, |screaming, .ολλή  
 |shouting  
 ἐγένετο. ἀκούσας δὲ ὁ Ξενοφῶν καὶ οἱ |rear guard  
 ᾤθησαν ἔμπροσθεν ἄλλους ἐπιτίθεσθαι πολεμίους·  
 εἶποντο γὰρ |behind, ἐκ τῆς |burn χώρας, καὶ αὐτῶν  
 |hereafter  
 οἱ |rear guard ἀπέκτεινάν τέ τινας καὶ |capture  
 |ambush, ποιησάμενοι, καὶ |wicker ἔλαβον |hairy, βοῶν  
 |trickery |object |brushy

and got in supplies.

Passing on from thence in four stages of twenty parasangs, they reached a large and prosperous well-populated city, which went by the name of Gymnias, from which the governor of the country sent them a guide to lead them through a district hostile to his own. This guide told them that within five days he would lead them to a place from which they would see the sea, «and,” he added, «if I fail of my word, you are free to take my life.” Accordingly he put himself at their head; but he no sooner set foot in the country hostile to himself than he fell to encouraging them to burn and harry the land; indeed his exhortations were so earnest, it was plain that it was for this he had come, and not out of the good-will he bore the Hellenes.

On the fifth day they reached the mountain, the name of which was Theches. No sooner had the men in front ascended it and caught sight of the sea than a great cry arose, and Xenophon, in the rearguard, catching the sound of it, conjectured that another set of enemies must surely be attacking in front; for they were followed by the inhabitants of the country, which was all aflame; indeed the rearguard had killed some and captured others alive by laying an ambushade; they had taken also about

*vocabulary*

**αἰχμάλωτος** captive ~acute  
**ἄκρον** crest, extremity ~acute  
**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme ~acute  
**ἀναλαμβάνω** take up, recover, resume  
**ἀνατίθηναι** consecrate, lay on, impute;  
 (mp) reproach  
**ἀποπέμπω** send away ~pomp  
**βακτηρία** cane, wand  
**βοά** din, a shout  
**βοάω** shout  
**βοεύς** βοῦος (m) leather rope ~bovine  
**γέρον** wicker object  
**δακρύω** weep  
**δέρμα** -τος (n, 3) skin, hide  
 ~dermatology  
**διακελεύομαι** give orders to, encourage  
**δρόμος** running, racing ground  
 ~hippodrome  
**ἐγγύς** near  
**Ἑλλήν** Greek  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**ἐξαπίνης** suddenly

**ἐπιεῖμι** lie upon; approach ~ion  
**ἡγεμών** -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide,  
 chief ~hegemony  
**θέω** run, run for  
**κατατέμνω** cut up  
**κοινός** communal, ordinary  
**κοινώω** make common; cooperate  
**κολωνός** hill, mound  
**λίθος** (f) stone ~monolith  
**λοχαγός** (ἄ) captain  
**ὀπισθοφύλαξ** rear guard ~phylactery  
**παραβοηθέω** come to aid  
**παρεγγυάω** entrust; pass an order  
**περιβάλλω** act: excel; mid: put on  
 clothing ~ballistic  
**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
 mercenary ~strategy  
**τάχα** quickly, soon; perhaps  
 ~tachometer  
**ὄποζύγιον** beast of burden ~zygote  
**φιάλη** jar ~vial  
**ὠμοβόειος** raw (hide)

ὠμοβόεια ἀμφὶ τὰ εἴκοσιν.

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ βοὴ πλείων τε ἐγίνετο καὶ ἐγγύτερον καὶ οἱ αἰὲ ἐπιόντες ἔθεον δρόμῳ ἐπὶ τοὺς αἰὲ βοῶντας καὶ πολλῶ μείζων ἐγίνετο ἢ βοὴ ὅσω δὴ πλείους ἐγίνοντο, ἐδόκει δὴ μείζον τι εἶναι τῷ Ξενοφῶντι, καὶ ἀναβὰς ἐφ' ἵππον καὶ Λύκιον καὶ τοὺς ἱππέας ἀναλαβὼν παρεβοήθει· καὶ τάχα δὴ ἀκούουσι βοῶντων τῶν στρατιωτῶν «Θάλαττα θάλαττα» καὶ παρεγγυώντων.

Ἐνθα δὲ ἔθεον πάντες καὶ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες, καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια ἡλαύνετο καὶ οἱ ἵπποι. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο πάντες ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον, ἐνταῦθα δὲ περιέβαλλον ἀλλήλους καὶ στρατηγοὺς καὶ λοχαγοὺς δακρύοντες. καὶ ἐξαπίνης ὅτου δὴ παρεγγνήσαντος οἱ στρατιῶται φέρουσι λίθους καὶ ποιοῦσι κολωνὸν μέγαν. ἐνταῦθα ἀνέτιθέσαν δερμάτων πλῆθος ὠμοβοείων καὶ βακτηρίας καὶ τὰ αἰχμάλωτα γέρρα, καὶ ὁ ἡγεμὼν αὐτός τε κατέτεμνε τὰ γέρρα καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις διεκελεύετο. μετὰ ταῦτα τὸν ἡγεμόνα οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀποπέμπουσι δῶρα δόντες ἀπὸ κοινοῦ ἵππον καὶ φιάλην



|raw (hide) ἀμφὶ τὰ εἵκοσιν.

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ βοῇ πλείων τε ἐγίγνετο καὶ |near καὶ οἱ

αἰὲ ἐπιόντες |run |running ὑπὲρ τοὺς αἰὲ βοῶντας καὶ πολλῶ

μείζων ἐγίγνετο ἢ βοῇ ὅσῳ δὴ πλείους ἐγίγνοντο, ἐδόκει

δὴ μείζον τι εἶναι τῷ Ξενοφῶντι, καὶ ἀναβὰς ἐφ' ἵππον

καὶ Λύκιον καὶ τοὺς ἱππέας |take up, re-|come to aid καὶ  
|cover, resume

|quickly, ἄσῳ; ὕουσι βοῶντων τῶν στρατιωτῶν «Θάλαττα  
|perhaps

θάλαττα» καὶ |entrust; pass an.  
|order

Ἐνθα δὲ |run πάντες καὶ οἱ |rear guard , καὶ τὰ

|beast of burdēn ἔνετο καὶ οἱ ἵπποι. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο πάντες

ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον, |there, here ὧ |excel; don ἀλλήλους καὶ

στρατηγούς καὶ |captain |weep . καὶ |suddenly ὅτου

δὲ |entrust; pass an or- οἱ στρατιῶται φέρουσι λίθους καὶ  
|der

ποιοῦσι |hill, μέγαν. |there, here|consecrate, |skin, hide  
|mound lay on,

πλήθος |raw (hide) καὶ |cane, wand|impute; (mp)  
|reproach |captive

|wicker, καὶ ὁ ἡγεμὼν αὐτός τε |cut up τὰ |wicker καὶ τοῖς  
|object |object

ἄλλοις διεκελεύετο. μετὰ ταῦτα τὸν ἡγεμόνα οἱ |Greek

|send away δῶρα δόντες ἀπὸ κοινοῦ ἵππον καὶ |jar

twenty wicker shields, covered with the raw hides of shaggy oxen.

But as the shout became louder and nearer, and those who from time to time came up, began racing at the top of their speed towards the shouters, and the shouting continually recommenced with yet greater volume as the numbers increased, Xenophon settled in his mind that something extraordinary must have happened, so he mounted his horse, and taking with him Lycius and the cavalry, he galloped to the rescue. Presently they could hear the soldiers shouting and passing on the joyful word, «The sea! the sea!”

Thereupon they began running, rearguard and all, and the baggage animals and horses came galloping up. But when they had reached the summit, then indeed they fell to embracing one another — generals and officers and all — and the tears trickled down their cheeks. And on a sudden, some one, whoever it was, having passed down the order, the soldiers began bringing stones and erecting a great cairn, whereon they dedicated a host of untanned skins, and staves, and captured wicker shields, and with his own hand the guide hacked the shields to pieces, inviting the rest to follow his example. After this the Hellenes dismissed the guide with a present raised from the common store, to wit,

*vocabulary*

**αἰτέω** ask for ~etiology  
**ἀντιπέρα** (αἶ) on the other side of  
 ~pierce  
**ἀργύρεος** silver ~Argentina  
**ἀριστερός** left-hand  
**γέρον** wicker object  
**δακτύλιος** ring  
**δαρεικός** Persian coin  
**δασύς** hairy, brushy  
**δείκνυμι** (ὄ) show, point out  
**δένδρος** tree  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis  
**διάβασις** -εως (f) crossing, passage  
 ~basis  
**διακελεύομαι** give orders to, encourage  
**Ἑλλήν** Greek  
**ἐμβάλλω** throw in; inspire a mental  
 state ~ballistic  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἐσπέρα** evening, west  
**κόπτω** beat, cut, strike  
**κώμη** village  
**λίθος** (f) stone ~monolith

**λόγχη** spear point; lot  
**μάκρων** -ος (m, 3) longhead (ethnic  
 term)  
**οἶχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone  
**ὀρίζω** divide; ordain, define ~horizon  
**παρασάγγης** -ου (m, 1) Persian unit,  
 ca. 5 km  
**παρατάσσω** place beside  
**παχύς** thick, stout, clotted ~pachyderm  
**προσέρχομαι** come forward, surrender,  
 come in  
**πυκνός** dense, frequent; shrewd  
**πυκνώω** thicken, close  
**σκευή** equipment  
**σκηνέω** camp  
**σπεύδω** 'push on,' get going, hurry  
 ~repudiate  
**σταθμός** cottage; post  
**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
 mercenary ~strategy  
**τρίχινος** of hair  
**χιτών** -ος (m, 3) tunic, armor  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

ἀργυρᾶν καὶ σκευὴν Περσικὴν καὶ δαρεικοὺς δέκα· ἥτει δὲ μάλιστα τοὺς δακτυλίους, καὶ ἔλαβε πολλοὺς παρὰ τῶν στρατιωτῶν. κώμην δὲ δείξας αὐτοῖς οὗ σκηνήσουσι καὶ τὴν ὁδὸν ἣν πορεύσονται εἰς Μάκρωνας, ἐπεὶ ἐσπέρα ἐγένετο, ὥχετο τῆς νυκτὸς ἀπιών.

## 4.8

Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν οἱ Ἕλληνες διὰ Μακρόνων σταθμοὺς τρεῖς παρασάγγας δέκα. τῇ πρώτῃ δὲ ἡμέρᾳ ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν ὃς ὠρίζε τὴν τῶν Μακρόνων καὶ τὴν τῶν Σκυθινῶν. εἶχον δ' ὑπὲρ δεξιῶν χωρίον οἶον χαλεπώτατον καὶ ἐξ ἀριστερᾶς ἄλλον ποταμόν, εἰς ὃν ἐνέβαλλεν ὁ ὀρίζων, δι' οὗ ἔδει διαβῆναι. ἦν δὲ οὗτος δασὺς δένδρεσι παχέσι μὲν οὔ, πυκνοῖς δέ. ταῦτ' ἐπεὶ προσῆλθον οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔκοπτον, σπεύδοντες ἐκ τοῦ χωρίου ὡς τάχιστα ἐξελεῖν. οἱ δὲ Μάκρωνες ἔχοντες γέρρα καὶ λόγχας καὶ τριχίνους χιτῶνας κατ' ἀντιπέραν τῆς διαβάσεως παρατεταγμένοι ἦσαν καὶ ἀλλήλοις διεκελεύοντο καὶ λίθους εἰς τὸν ποταμὸν

|silver καὶ |equipment <sup>†</sup>ερσικὴν καὶ |Persian coin δέκα ἥτει  
 δὲ μάλιστα τοὺς |ring , καὶ ἔλαβε πολλοὺς παρὰ  
 τῶν στρατιωτῶν. |village δὲ δείξας αὐτοῖς οὗ |camp  
 καὶ τὴν ὁδὸν ἣν πορεύονται εἰς |longhead  
 (ethnic term) , ἐπεὶ ἐσπέρα  
 ἐγένετο, ὥχετο τῆς νυκτὸς ἀπιών.

## 4.8

|thence δ' ἐπορεύθησαν οἱ |Greek διὰ |longhead  
 (ethnic term)  
 |cottage; post ρεῖς |ca. 5 km δέκα. τῇ πρώτῃ δὲ ἡμέρᾳ  
 ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν ὃς |divide; ordain, de-|longhead  
 fine (ethnic term)  
 καὶ τὴν τῶν Σκυθηνῶν. εἶχον δ' ὑπὲρ δεξιῶν χωρίον  
 οἶον χαλεπώτατον καὶ ἐξ |left-hand ἄλλον ποταμόν,  
 εἰς ὃν ἐνέβαλλεν ὁ |divide; , or- ' οὗ ἔδει |pass over, cross,  
 daïn, define  
 δὲ οὗτος |hairy, |tree |thick, stout, ν οὔ, πυκνοῖς δέ.  
 |brushy |clotted  
 ταῦτ' ἐπεὶ προσῆλθον οἱ |Greek |beat, cut, |'push on,' get  
 |strike |going, hurry  
 ἐκ τοῦ χωρίου ὡς τάχιστα ἐξελθεῖν. οἱ δὲ |longhead  
 (ethnic term)  
 ἔχοντες |wicker καὶ |spear καὶ |of hair χιτῶνας κατ'  
 |object |point;  
 |on the other side of |crossing, |place beside ἦσαν καὶ  
 |passage  
 ἀλλήλοις διεκελεύοντο καὶ λίθους εἰς τὸν ποταμὸν

a horse, a silver bowl, a Persian dress, and ten darics; but what he most begged to have were their rings, and of these he got several from the soldiers. So, after pointing out to them a village where they would find quarters, and the road by which they would proceed towards the land of the Macrones, as evening fell, he turned his back upon them in the night and was gone.

## 4.8

From this point the Hellenes marched through the country of the Macrones three stages—ten parasangs, and on the first day they reached the river, which formed the boundary between the land of the Macrones and the land of the Scythenians. Above them, on their right, they had a country of the sternest and ruggedest character, and on their left another river, into which the frontier river discharges itself, and which they must cross. This was thickly fringed with trees which, though not of any great bulk, were closely packed. As soon as they came up to them, the Hellenes proceeded to cut them down in their haste to get out of the place as soon as possible. But the Macrones, armed with wicker shields and lances and hair tunics, were already drawn up to receive them opposite the crossing. They were cheering one another on, and kept up a steady pelt of stones into

*vocabulary***ἀντιτάσσω** set against**βαρβαρικός** non-Greek**βλάπτω** break, make fail**διαλέγω** go through, debate ~legion**δουλεύω** serve, be a slave**Ἕλλην** Greek**ἐντεῦθεν** thence**ἐξικνέομαι** arrive at**ἔρωτάω** ask about something**κωλύω** (ὄ) hinder, prevent**λόγχη** spear point; lot**μάκρων** -ος (m, 3) longhead (ethnic term)**πελταστής** -οῦ (m, 1) light troops

~pelt

**πιστός** faithful; trustworthy**προσέρχομαι** come forward, surrender, come in**ρίπτω** hurl**τοίνυν** well, then**φάσκω** declare, promise, think ~fame**χρήζω** need ~chresard

ἔρριπτον· ἔξικνουῦντο γὰρ οὐδ' ἔβλαπτον οὐδέν.

Ἐνθα δὴ προσέρχεται Ξενοφῶντι τῶν πελταστῶν ἀνὴρ Ἀθήνησι φάσκων δεδουλευκέναι, λέγων ὅτι γιγνώσκοι τὴν φωνὴν τῶν ἀνθρώπων. «καὶ οἶμαι,» ἔφη, «ἐμὴν ταύτην πατρίδα εἶναι· καὶ εἰ μή τι κωλύει, ἐθέλω αὐτοῖς διαλεχθῆναι.»

«Ἄλλ' οὐδὲν κωλύει,» ἔφη, «ἀλλὰ διαλέγου καὶ μάθε πρῶτον τίνες εἰσίν.» οἱ δ' εἶπον ἐρωτήσαντος ὅτι Μάκρωνες. «Ἐρώτα τοίνυν,» ἔφη, «αὐτοὺς τί ἀντιτετάχεται καὶ χρήζουσιν ἡμῖν πολέμιοι εἶναι.»

Οἱ δ' ἀπεκρίναντο «Ὅτι καὶ ὑμεῖς ἐπὶ τὴν ἡμετέραν χώραν ἔρχεσθε. λέγειν ἐκέλευον οἱ στρατηγοὶ ὅτι οὐ κακῶς γε ποιήσουντες, ἀλλὰ βασιλεῖ πολεμήσαντες ἀπερχόμεθα εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα, καὶ ἐπὶ θάλατταν βουλόμεθα ἀφικέσθαι. ἡρώτων ἐκεῖνοι εἰ δοῖεν ἂν τούτων τὰ πιστά. οἱ δ' ἔφασαν καὶ δοῦναι καὶ λαβεῖν ἐθέλειν. ἐντεῦθεν διδόασιν οἱ Μάκρωνες βαρβαρικὴν λόγχην τοῖς Ἕλλησιν, οἱ δὲ



|hurl                    |arrive at           γὰρ οὐδ' οὐδ' |break, make fail ' '.

Ἐνθα δὲ |come forward, sur- ρφῶντι τῶν |light troops    ἀνὴρ  
|render, come in

Ἀθήνησι |declare,    |serve, be a slave , λέγων ὅτι γιγνώσκοι  
|promise,  
|think

τὴν φωνὴν τῶν ἀνθρώπων. «καὶ οἶμαι,» ἔφη, «ἐμὴν  
ταύτην πατρίδα εἶναι· καὶ εἰ μὴ τι |hinder, , ἐθέλω αὐτοῖς  
|prevent

|go through, debate

«Ἄλλ' οὐδὲν |hinder, ,» ἔφη, «ἀλλὰ |go through, debate ' 'γε  
|prevent

πρῶτον τίνες εἰσίν.» οἱ δ' εἶπον |ask                    ὅτι

|longhead                    «|ask                    |well, then    ἔφη, «αὐτοὺς τί  
(ethnic term)

|set against            καὶ |need            ἡμῖν πολέμοι εἶναι.»

Οἱ δ' ἀπεκρίναντο «Ὅτι καὶ ὑμεῖς ἐπὶ τὴν ἡμετέραν χώραν  
ἔρχεσθε. λέγειν ἐκέλευον οἱ στρατηγοὶ ὅτι οὐ κακῶς γε  
ποιήσοντες, ἀλλὰ βασιλεῖ πολεμήσαντες ἀπερχόμεθα εἰς  
τὴν Ἑλλάδα, καὶ ἐπὶ θάλατταν βουλόμεθα ἀφικέσθαι.

|ask            ἐκεῖνοι εἰ δοῖεν ἂν τούτων τὰ |faithful;  
|trustworthy

ἔφασαν καὶ δοῦναι καὶ λαβεῖν ἐθέλειν. |thence            διδώσιν

οἱ |longhead            |non-Greek            |spear            τοῖς |Greek , οἱ δὲ  
(ethnic term)                                    |point;  
|lot

the river, though they failed to reach the other side or do any harm.

At this juncture one of the light infantry came up to Xenophon; he had been, he said, a slave at Athens, and he wished to tell him that he recognised the speech of these people. «I think,” said he, «that this must be my native country, and if there is no objection I will have a talk with them.” «No objection at all,” replied Xenophon, «pray talk to them, and ask them first, who they are.” In answer to this question they said, «they were Macrones.” «Well, then,” said he, «ask them why they are drawn up in battle and want to fight with us.” They answered, «Because you are invading our country.” The generals bade him say: «If so, it is with not intention certainly of doing it or you any harm: but we have been at war with the king, and are now returning to Hellas, and all we want is to reach the sea.” The others asked, «Were they willing to give them pledges to that effect?” They replied: «Yes, they were ready to give and receive pledges to that effect.” Then the Macrones gave a barbaric lance to the Hellenes, and the Hellenes a Hellenic

*vocabulary*

**ἀγωνίζομαι** contend, exert oneself  
**ἀθυμία** (ῥ) despondency  
**ἀναμίγνυμι** mix ~mix  
**ἄνοδος** impassable; ascent  
**ἀντιπαρατάσσομαι** stand in array  
 against  
**δένδρον** tree  
**διαβιβάζω** carry over  
**διασπάω** tear apart ~spatula  
**Ἑλληγν** Greek  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**εὐοδος** easily passable  
**ἡώς ἡῶθι** (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene  
**λόχος** ambush, band, childbirth ~lie

**μάκρων** -ος (m, 3) longhead (ethnic  
 term)  
**ὁδοποιέω** make a path  
**ὄρθιος** shrill; steep, straight  
**ὄριον** boundary  
**παράγω** deflect; bring forward  
**παρατάσσω** place beside  
**πιστός** faithful; trustworthy  
**προσάγω** bring to a place  
 ~demagogue  
**προσβατός** accessible  
**συλλέγω** collect, assemble ~legion  
**φάλαγξ** -γος (f) rank of battle  
 ~phalanx

Ἕλληνες ἐκείνοις Ἑλληνικὴν· ταῦτα γὰρ ἔφασαν πιστὰ εἶναι· θεοὺς δ' ἐπεμαρτύραντο ἀμφοτέρω.

Μετὰ δὲ τὰ πιστὰ εὐθὺς οἱ Μάκρωνες τὰ δένδρα συνεξέκοπτον τὴν τε ὁδὸν ὥδοποιοῦν ὥς διαβιβάσοντες ἐν μέσοις ἀναμεμιγμένοι τοῖς Ἕλλησι, καὶ ἀγορὰν οἷαν ἐδύναντο παρεῖχον, καὶ παρήγαγον ἐν τρισὶν ἡμέραις ἕως ἐπὶ τὰ Κόλχων ὄρια κατέστησαν τοὺς Ἕλληνας. ἐνταῦθα ἦν ὄρος μέγα, προσβατὸν δέ· καὶ ἐπὶ τούτου οἱ Κόλχοι παρατεταγμένοι ἦσαν. καὶ τὸ μὲν πρῶτον οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀντιπαρετάξαντο φάλαγγα, ὥς οὕτως ἄξοντες πρὸς τὸ ὄρος· ἔπειτα δὲ ἔδοξε τοῖς στρατηγοῖς βουλευσασθαι συλλεγείσιν ὅπως ὥς κάλλιστα ἀγωνιοῦνται.

Ἔλεξεν οὖν Ξενοφῶν ὅτι δοκοίη παύσαντας τὴν φάλαγγα λόχους ὀρθίους ποιῆσαι· «ἢ μὲν γὰρ φάλαγξ διασπασθήσεται εὐθύς· τῇ μὲν γὰρ ἄνοδον τῇ δὲ εὐδοὸν εὐρήσομεν τὸ ὄρος· καὶ εὐθύς τοῦτο ἀθυμίαν ποιήσει ὅταν τεταγμένοι εἰς φάλαγγα ταύτην διεσπασμένην ὀρώσιν. ἔπειτα ἦν μὲν ἐπὶ πολλῶν τεταγμένοι προσάγωμεν,

|Greek *ἐκείνοις Ἑλληνικὴν· ταῦτα γὰρ ἔφασαν πιστὰ εἶναι· θεοὺς δ' ἐπεμαρτύραντο ἀμφοτέρω.*

Μετὰ δὲ τὰ πιστὰ εὐθύς οἱ |longhead τὰ |tree  
 |  
 (ethnic term)  
 συνεξέκοπτον τήν τε ὁδὸν |make a path ὥς |carry over  
 ἐν μέσοις |mix τοῖς |Greek , καὶ ἀγορὰν οἶαν  
 ἐδύναντο παρεῖχον, καὶ |deflect; bring ἐν τρισὶν ἡμέραις ἕως  
 |forward  
 ἐπὶ τὰ Κόλχων |boundary ἵστησαν τοὺς |Greek . |there, here  
 ἦν ὄρος μέγα, |accessible δέ· καὶ ἐπὶ τούτου οἱ Κόλχοι  
 |place beside ἦσαν. καὶ τὸ μὲν πρῶτον οἱ |Greek

stand in array |rank of battle |*οὕτως ἄζοντες πρὸς τὸ*  
against  
*ὄρος· ἔπειτα δὲ ἔδοξε τοῖς στρατηγοῖς βουλεύσασθαι*

|                      |                  |                           |
|----------------------|------------------|---------------------------|
| collect,<br>assemble | ὅπως ὡς κάλλιστα | contend, exert<br>oneself |
|----------------------|------------------|---------------------------|

Ἔλεξεν οὖν Ξενοφῶν ὅτι δοκοίη πᾶσαντας τὴν

|                     |                  |  |  |
|---------------------|------------------|--|--|
| rank of bat-<br>tle | ambush,<br>band, | shrill; steep, <i>ῆσαι· «ῆ μὲν γὰρ</i> | rank of battle                             |
| tear apart          | child-<br>birth  | <i>εὐθύς· τῇ μὲν γὰρ</i>               | impassable; δὲ easily<br> ascend  passable |

εὐρήσομεν τὸ ὄρος· καὶ εὐθὺς τοῦτο |despondency...ήσει ὅταν

τεταγμένοι εἰς |rank of battle ὑτὴν |tear apart ὁρώσιν.

ἔπειτα ἦν μὲν ἐπὶ πολλῶν τεταγμένοι bring to a place

lance to them: «for these,” they said, «would serve as pledges,” and both sides called upon the gods to witness.

After the pledges were exchanged, the Macrones fell to vigorously hewing down trees and constructing a road to help them across, mingling freely with the Hellenes and fraternising in their midst, and they afforded them as good as market as they could, and for three days conducted them on their march, until they had brought them safely to the confines of the Colchians. At this point they were confronted by a great mountain chain, which however was accessible, and on it the Colchians were drawn up for battle. In the first instance, the Hellenes drew up opposite in line of battle, as though they were minded to assault the hill in that order; but afterwards the generals determined to hold a council of war, and consider how to make the fairest fight.

Accordingly Xenophon said: «I am not for advancing in line, but advise to form companies by columns. To begin with, the line,” he urged, «would be scattered and thrown into disorder at once; for we shall find the mountain full of inequalities, it will be pathless here and easy to traverse there. The mere fact of first having formed in line, and then seeing the line thrown into disorder, must exercise a disheartening effect. Again, if we

*vocabulary***ἄθροός** grouped**ἄκρον** crest, extremity ~acute**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme ~acute**βέλος** -εος (n, 3) missile ~ballistic**διακόπτω** cut through, interrupt**διαλείπω** leave a gap, space apart**ἐμπίπτω** fall into; attack ~petal**ἐνθεν** thence, whence**ἐντίθημι** load; mp: take to heart

~thesis

**ἔσχατος** farthest, last**εὐοδός** easily passable**θαυμαστός** wonderful; admirable**κέρας** -τος (n, 3) horn; military unit

~ceratopsia

**κράτιστος** best**λόχος** ambush, band, childbirth ~lie**μηκέτι** no more**ὄρθιος** shrill; steep, straight**περισσεύω** be supernumerary, abound**περισσός** prodigious, superfluous**πη** somewhere, somehow**πιέζω** press, squeeze ~piezoelectric**πλησίος** near, neighboring**πρόσεμι** approach, draw near; add

~ion

**προσίημι** be allowed near**φάλαγξ** -γος (f) rank of battle

~phalanx

**χωρίον** area; downwards

περιττεύουσιν ἡμῶν οἱ πολέμοι καὶ τοῖς περιττοῖς  
 χρήσονται ὅ τι ἂν βούλωνται· ἐὰν δὲ ἐπ' ὀλίγων  
 τεταγμένοι ὦμεν, οὐδὲν ἂν εἴη θαυμαστὸν εἰ διακοπεῖη  
 ἡμῶν ἡ φάλαγξ ὑπὸ ἀθρόων καὶ βελῶν καὶ ἀνθρώπων  
 πολλῶν ἐμπεσόντων· εἰ δέ πη τοῦτο ἔσται, τῇ ὅλῃ  
 φάλαγγι κακὸν ἔσται. ἀλλὰ μοι δοκεῖ ὀρθίους τοὺς λόχους  
 ποιησαμένους τοσοῦτον χωρίον κατασχεῖν διαλιπόντας  
 τοῖς λόχοις ὅσον ἔξω τοὺς ἐσχάτους λόχους γενέσθαι  
 τῶν πολεμίων κεράτων· καὶ οὕτως ἐσόμεθα τῆς τε τῶν  
 πολεμίων φάλαγγος ἔξω οἱ ἐσχατοὶ λόχοι, καὶ ὀρθίους  
 ἄγοντες οἱ κράτιστοι ἡμῶν πρῶτοι προσίασιν, ἥ τε ἂν  
 εὖοδον ἦ, ταύτῃ ἕκαστος ἄξει ὁ λόχος. καὶ εἷς τε τὸ  
 διαλείπον οὐ ράδιον ἔσται τοῖς πολεμίοις εἰσελθεῖν ἔνθεν  
 καὶ ἔνθεν λόχων ὄντων, διακόψαι τε οὐ ράδιον ἔσται λόχον  
 ὀρθιον προσιόντα. ἂν τέ τις πιέζηται τῶν λόχων, ὁ  
 πλησίον βοηθήσει. ἦν τε εἷς πη δυνηθῇ τῶν λόχων ἐπὶ  
 τὸ ἄκρον ἀναβῆναι, οὐδεὶς μηκέτι μείνη τῶν πολεμίων.»

Ταῦτα ἔδοξε, καὶ ἐποιοῦν ὀρθίους τοὺς λόχους. Ξενοφῶν



|be supernumer- |ary, abound ἡμῶν οἱ πολέμοι καὶ τοῖς περιττοῖς  
 χρήσονται ὅ τι ἂν βούλωνται· ἐὰν δὲ ἐπ' ὀλίγων  
 τεταγμένοι ὦμεν, οὐδὲν ἂν εἴη |wonderful; |cut through,  
 |admirable |interrupt ἡμῶν ἡ |rank of battle` |grouped καὶ βελῶν καὶ ἀνθρώπων  
 πολλῶν |fall into; attack εἰ δέ πη τοῦτο ἔσται, τῇ ὅλῃ  
 |rank of battle...ὸν ἔσται. ἀλλὰ μοι δοκεῖ |shrill; |steep, |ambush, band,  
 |straight |childbirth ποιησαμένους τοσοῦτον χωρίον κατασχεῖν |leave a gap,  
 |space apart τοῖς |ambush, |band, ἔξω τοὺς |farthest |ambush, band, |θαι  
 |childbirth τῶν πολεμίων κεράτων· καὶ οὕτως ἐσόμεθα τῆς τε τῶν  
 πολεμίων |rank of battle...ὡ οἱ |farthest |ambush, ... |shrill; steep,  
 |band, child- |straight ἄγοντες οἱ κράτιστοι ἡμῶν πρῶτοι προσίασιν, ἥ τε ἂν  
 |easily |ἥ, ταύτῃ ἕκαστος ἄξει ὁ |ambush, band, |ἔς τε τὸ  
 |passable |childbirth |leave a gap, οὐ ράδιον ἔσται τοῖς πολεμίοις εἰσελθεῖν ἔνθεν  
 |space apart καὶ ἔνθεν |ambush, ... |band, |cut through, ... |ambush, band,  
 |childbirth |interrupt οὐ ράδιον ἔσται |childbirth  
 |shrill; steep, σιόντα. ἂν τέ τις |press, τῶν |ambush, band,  
 |straight |squeeze |childbirth πλησίον βοηθήσει. ἣν τε εἰς πη δυνηθῇ τῶν |ambush, |band,  
 |childbirth τὸ ἄκρον ἀναβῆναι, οὐδεὶς |no more, μείνη τῶν πολεμίων.»

Ταῦτα ἔδοξε, καὶ ἐποίουν |shrill; |steep, |ambush, |band, |ῶν  
 |straight |childbirth

advance several deep, the enemy will none the less overlap us, and turn their superfluous numbers to account as best they like; while, if we march in shallow order, we may fully expect our line to be cut through and through by the thick rain of missiles and rush of men, and if this happen anywhere along the line, the whole line will equally suffer. No; my notion is to form columns by companies, covering ground sufficient with spaces between the companies to allow the last companies of each flank to be outside the enemy's flanks. Thus we shall with our extreme companies be outside the enemy's line, and the best men at the head of their columns will lead the attack, and every company will pick its way where the ground is easy; also it will be difficult for the enemy to force his way into the intervening spaces, when there are companies on both sides; nor will it be easy for him to cut in twain any individual company marching in column. If, too, any particular company should be pressed, the neighbouring company will come to the rescue, or if at any point any single company succeed in reaching the height, from that moment not one man of the enemy will stand his ground."

This proposal was carried, and they formed into columns by companies. Then Xenophon,

*vocabulary*

**ἀντιπαραθέω** outflank, run alongside  
**διασπάω** tear apart ~spatula  
**ἐμποδών** getting in the way  
**ἑξακόσιοι** 600  
**εὐώνυμος** honored; left-hand  
**κατεσθίω** devour ~eat  
**κενός** empty, vain  
**λόχος** ambush, band, childbirth ~lie  
**ὀγδοήκοντα** eighty ~octopus  
**ὀπλίτης** -ου (ī, m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
 infantryman ~hoplite  
**ὄρθιος** shrill; steep, straight  
**παιανίζω** (ᾱ) chant in victory  
**πάλαι** long ago ~paleo  
**πάλη** wrestling ~Pallas

**πάλλω** shake, brandish ~Pallas  
**παρεγγυάω** entrust; pass an order  
**πελταστής** -οῦ (m, 1) light troops  
 ~pelt  
**σπεύδω** 'push on,' get going, hurry  
 ~repudiate  
**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
 mercenary ~strategy  
**σχεδόν** near, approximately at  
 ~ischemia  
**τοξότης** -ου (m, 1) archer ~toxic  
**τριχῇ** in thirds; triply  
**φάλαγξ** -γος (f) rank of battle  
 ~phalanx  
**ὠμός** raw

δὲ ἀπιὼν ἐπὶ τὸ εὐώνυμον ἀπὸ τοῦ δεξιοῦ ἔλεγε τοῖς στρατιώταις· «Ἄνδρες, οὗτοί εἰσιν οὓς ὁράτε μόνοι ἔτι ἡμῖν ἐμποδὼν τὸ μὴ ἤδη εἶναι ἔνθα πάλαι σπεύδομεν· τούτους, ἣν πῶς δυνώμεθα, καὶ ὤμους δεῖ καταφαγεῖν.»

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐν ταῖς χώραις ἕκαστοι ἐγένοντο καὶ τοὺς λόχους ὀρθίους ἐποίησαντο, ἐγένοντο μὲν λόχοι τῶν ὀπλιτῶν ἀμφὶ τοὺς ὀγδοήκοντα, ὁ δὲ λόχος ἕκαστος σχεδὸν εἰς τοὺς ἑκατόν· τοὺς δὲ πελταστὰς καὶ τοὺς τοξότας τριχῇ ἐποίησαντο, τοὺς μὲν τοῦ εὐωνύμου ἔξω, τοὺς δὲ τοῦ δεξιοῦ, τοὺς δὲ κατὰ μέσον, σχεδὸν ἑξακοσίους ἑκάστους.

Ἐκ τούτου παρηγγύησαν οἱ στρατηγοὶ εὐχεσθαι· εὐξάμενοι δὲ καὶ παιανίσαντες ἐπορεύοντο. καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν καὶ Ξενοφῶν καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτοῖς πελτασταὶ τῆς τῶν πολεμίων φάλαγγος ἔξω γενόμενοι ἐπορεύοντο· οἱ δὲ πολέμοι ὥς εἶδον αὐτούς, ἀντιπαραθέοντες οἱ μὲν ἐπὶ τὸ δεξιὸν οἱ δὲ ἐπὶ τὸ εὐώνυμον διεσπάρσθησαν, καὶ πολὺ τῆς αὐτῶν φάλαγγος ἐν τῷ μέσῳ κενὸν ἐποίησαν. οἱ δὲ κατὰ τὸ Ἀρκαδικὸν πελτασταί, ὧν ἦρχεν Αἰσχίνης

δὲ ἀπὼν ἐπὶ τὸ |honored; left-hand ἡ δεξιῷ ἔλεγε τοῖς

|soldier,                      «Ἄνδρες, οὗτοί εἰσιν οὓς ὁράτε μόνοι ἔτι  
|mercenary

ἡμῖν |getting in the way, ἥδη εἶναι ἔνθα πάλαι |‘push on,’ get  
|going, hurry

τούτους, ἥν πως δυνώμεθα, καὶ |raw      δεῖ |devour      »

Ἐπεὶ δ’ ἐν ταῖς χώραις ἕκαστοι ἐγένοντο καὶ τοὺς |ambush,      band,  
|childbirth

|shrill; steep, οἰήσαντο, ἐγένοντο μὲν |ambush,      |hoplite, heavy  
|straight      band,      child-infantryman

ἀμφὶ τοὺς |eighty      , ὁ δὲ |ambush,      band, about      εἰς  
|childbirth

τοὺς ἑκατόν· τοὺς δὲ |light troops      καὶ τοὺς |archer      |in thirds; triply

ἐποιήσαντο, τοὺς μὲν τοῦ |honored; left-hand οὓς δὲ τοῦ

δεξιῷ, τοὺς δὲ κατὰ μέσον, |about      |600      ἑκάστους.

Ἐκ τούτου |entrust; pass an      οἱ στρατηγοὶ εὐχεσθαι·  
|order

εὐξάμενοι δὲ καὶ |chant in victory ἐπορεύοντο.      καὶ

Χειρίσοφος μὲν καὶ Ξενοφῶν καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτοῖς |light troops

τῆς τῶν πολεμίων |rank of battle ὥς γενόμενοι ἐπορεύοντο·

οἱ δὲ πολέμοι ὥς εἶδον αὐτούς, |outflank, run along-      οἱ μὲν  
|side

ἐπὶ τὸ δεξιὸν οἱ δὲ ἐπὶ τὸ |honored;      |tear apart      , καὶ  
|left-hand

πολὺ τῆς αὐτῶν |rank of battle τῷ μέσῳ |empty, vain ἔησαν.

οἱ δὲ κατὰ τὸ Ἀρκαδικὸν |light troops , ὧν ἦρχεν Αἰσχίνης

returning from the right wing to the left, addressed the soldiers. «Men,” he said, «these men whom you see in front of you are the sole obstacles still interposed between us and the haven of our hopes so long deferred. We will swallow them up whole, without cooking, if we can.”

The several divisions fell into position, the companies were formed into columns, and the result was a total of something like eighty companies of heavy infantry, each company consisting on an average of a hundred men. The light infantry and bowmen were arranged in three divisions—two outside to support the left and the right respectively, and the third in the centre—each division consisting of about six hundred men.

Before starting, the generals passed the order to offer prayer; and with the prayer and battle hymn rising from their lips they commenced their advance. Cheirisophus and Xenophon, and the light infantry with them, advanced outside the enemy’s line to right and left, and the enemy, seeing their advance, made an effort to keep parallel and confront them, but in order to do so, as he extended partly to right and partly to left, he was pulled to pieces, and there was a large space or hollow left in the centre of his line. Seeing them separate thus, the light

*vocabulary***ἀθυμία** (ῥ) despondency**ἀνακράζω** yell, scream**ἀναφρονέω** come back to one's senses**αὐτόθι** on the spot**ἄφρων** senseless, unthinking ~frenzy**διαχωρέω** pass through; divide**Ἑλλήν** Greek**ἐμέω** vomit ~emetic**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable**θέω** run, run for**κηρίον** honeycomb**κώμη** village**μαίνομαι** be berserk ~maenad**μεθύω** be soaked, drunk ~mead**ὀπλιτικός** (ι) of a hoplite**ὀρθός** upright, straight; correct, just

~orthogonal

**σμήνος** -ους (n, 3) swarm**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,

mercenary ~strategy

**στρατοπεδεύω** encamp or take up

station ~strategy

**σφόδρα** very much**τέταρτος** fourth ~trapezoid**τροπή** rout, turning of an enemy

~trophy

**ὑστεραίῳς** the next; later**φαρμακοποσία** drinking medicine**φυγή** flight, means of escape ~fugitive

ὁ Ἀκαρνάν, νομίσαντες φεύγειν ἀνακραγόντες ἔθρον· καὶ οὗτοι πρῶτοι ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος ἀναβαίνουνσι· συνεφείπετο δὲ αὐτοῖς καὶ τὸ Ἀρκαδικὸν ὀπλιτικόν, ὦν ἦρχε Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ὀρχομένιος.

Οἱ δὲ πολέμοι, ὥς ἤρξαντο θεῖν, οὐκέτι ἔστησαν, ἀλλὰ φυγῇ ἄλλος ἄλλη ἐτράπετο. οἱ δὲ Ἑλληνες ἀναβάντες ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο ἐν πολλαῖς κώμαις καὶ τὰπιτήδεια πολλὰ ἐχούσαις. καὶ τὰ μὲν ἄλλα οὐδὲν ὅ τι καὶ ἐθαύμασαν· τὰ δὲ σμήνη πολλὰ ἦν αὐτόθι, καὶ τῶν κηρίων ὅσοι ἔφαγον τῶν στρατιωτῶν πάντες ἄφρονές τε ἐγίγνοντο καὶ ἤμουν καὶ κάτω διεχώρει αὐτοῖς καὶ ὀρθὸς οὐδεὶς ἐδύνατο ἵστασθαι, ἀλλ' οἱ μὲν ὀλίγον ἐδηδοκότες σφόδρα μεθύουσιν ἐώκεσαν, οἱ δὲ πολὺν μαινομένοις, οἱ δὲ καὶ ἀποθνήσκουσιν. ἔκειντο δὲ οὕτω πολλοὶ ὥσπερ τροπῆς γεγενημένης, καὶ πολλή ἦν ἀθυμία. τῇ δ' ὑστεραία ἀπέθανε μὲν οὐδεὶς, ἀμφὶ δὲ τὴν αὐτὴν πῶς ὥραν ἀνεφρόνουν· τρίτη δὲ καὶ τετάρτη ἀνίσταντο ὥσπερ ἐκ φαρμακοποσίας.



ὁ Ἀκαρνάν, νομίσαντες φεύγειν |yell, scream |run καὶ  
οὔτοι πρῶτοι ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος ἀναβαίνουσι· συνεφείπετο δὲ  
αὐτοῖς καὶ τὸ Ἀρκαδικὸν |of a hoplite, ὦν ἦρχε Κλεάνωρ ὁ  
Ὅρχομένιος.

Οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι, ὥς ἤρξαντο |run, οὐκέτι ἔστησαν,  
ἀλλὰ |flight, means : ἄλλη ἐτράπετο. οἱ δὲ |Greek  
|of escape  
ἀναβάντες |encamp or take up ἐν πολλαῖς |village καὶ  
|station  
|fit, suitable πολλὰ ἐχούσαις. καὶ τὰ μὲν ἄλλα οὐδὲν  
ὅ τι καὶ ἐθαύμασαν· τὰ δὲ |swarm πολλὰ ἦν |on the spot  
καὶ τῶν |honeycomb οἱ ἔφαγον τῶν |soldier, πάντες  
|mercenary  
|senseless, : ἐ ἐγίνοντο καὶ |vomit καὶ κάτω |pass through; divide  
|unthinking  
αὐτοῖς καὶ |upright, straight; ὕνατο ἵστασθαι, ἀλλ' οἱ μὲν  
|correct, just  
ὀλίγον ἐδηδοκότες |very much|be soaked, drunk .σαν, οἱ δὲ  
πολὺν |be berserk , οἱ δὲ καὶ ἀποθνήσκουσιν. ἔκειτο  
δὲ οὕτω πολλοὶ ὥσπερ |rout, γεγενημένης, καὶ πολλή  
|turning  
ἦν ἀθυμία. τῇ δ' |the next; later ἔθανε μὲν οὐδεῖς,  
ἀμφὶ δὲ τὴν αὐτὴν πως ὥραν |come back to τρίτη  
|one's senses  
δὲ καὶ |fourth ἀνίσταντο ὥσπερ ἐκ φαρμακοποσίας.

infantry attached to the Arcadian battalion, under command of Aeschines, an Arcarnanian, mistook the movement for flight, and with a loud shout rushed on, and these were the first to scale the mountain summit; but they were closely followed up by the Arcadian heavy infantry, under command of Cleanor of Orchomenus.

When they began running in that way, the enemy stood their ground no longer, but betook themselves to flight, one in one direction, one in another, and the Hellenes scaled the hill and found quarters in numerous villages which contained supplies in abundance. Here, generally speaking, there was nothing to excite their wonderment, but the numbers of bee-hives were indeed astonishing, and so were certain properties of the honey. The effect upon the soldiers who tasted the combs was, that they all went for the nonce quite off their heads, and suffered from vomiting and diarrhoea, with a total inability to stand steady on their legs. A small dose produced a condition not unlike violent drunkenness, a large one an attack very like a fit of madness, and some dropped down, apparently at death's door. So they lay, hundreds of them, as if there had been a great defeat, a prey to the cruellest despondency. But the next day, none had died; and almost at the same hour of the day at which they had eaten they recovered their senses, and on the third or fourth day got on their legs again like convalescents after

*vocabulary***ἀγών** -ος (m, 3) gathering place

~agony

**ἀέκων** unwilling**ἄκων** javelin; unwilling ~acme**ἄλφιτον** barley meal**ἀποθύω** make a sacrifice re a vow**ἀποικία** colony**γυμνικός** of gymnastics**δρόμος** running, racing ground

~hippodrome

**Ἑλλην** Greek**ἐνταῦθα** there, here**ἐντεῦθεν** thence**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee**θύσια** sacrifice**κατακαίνω** kill**κώμη** village**ληίζομαι** plunder ~lucre**ξένιος** of hospitality ~xenophobe**ξυήλη** curved knife**οἰκέω** inhabit ~economics**οἶκοθεν** from home, from one's own resources ~economics**οἰκουμένη** inhabited**παρασάγγης** -ου (m, 1) Persian unit, ca. 5 km**πατάσσω** beat (heart); strike**πλησίος** near, neighboring**προστατέω** be boss of; defend**σκηνέω** camp**σκηνόω** camp**σταθμός** cottage; post**συνδιαπράσσω** also accomplish, (mp) negotiate**συνδιαπράττω** also accomplish, (mp) negotiate**σωτήρ** -ος (m) savior

Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν δύο σταθμούς παρασάγγας  
 ἑπτά, καὶ ἦλθον ἐπὶ θάλατταν εἰς Τραπεζοῦντα πόλιν  
 Ἑλληνίδα οἰκουμένην ἐν τῷ Εὐξείνῳ Πόντῳ, Σινωπέων  
 ἀποικίαν, ἐν τῇ Κόλχων χώρα. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας  
 ἀμφὶ τὰς τριάκοντα ἐν ταῖς τῶν Κόλχων κώμασι·  
 κἀντεῦθεν ὁρμώμενοι ἐλήζοντο τὴν Κολχίδα. ἀγορὰν δὲ  
 παρεῖχον τῷ στρατοπέδῳ Τραπεζούντιοι, καὶ ἐδέξαντό  
 τε τοὺς Ἕλληνας καὶ ξένια ἔδοσαν βούς καὶ ἄλφιτα καὶ  
 οἶνον. συνδιεπράττοντο δὲ καὶ ὑπὲρ τῶν πλησίον Κόλχων  
 τῶν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ μάλιστα οἰκούντων, καὶ ξένια καὶ παρ'  
 ἐκείνων ἦλθον βόες. μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο τὴν θυσίαν ἣν ἠϋξάντο  
 παρεσκευάζοντο· ἦλθον δ' αὐτοῖς ἱκανοὶ βόες ἀποθῦσαι τῷ  
 Διὶ τῷ σωτήρι καὶ τῷ Ἡρακλεῖ ἡγεμόσυνα καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις  
 θεοῖς ἃ ἠϋξάντο.

Ἐποίησαν δὲ καὶ ἀγῶνα γυμνικὸν ἐν τῷ ὄρει ἔνθαπερ  
 ἐσκήνουν. εἶλοντο δὲ Δρακόντιον Σπαρτιάτην, ὃς ἔφυγε  
 παῖς ὢν οἴκοθεν, παῖδα ἄκων κατακανὼν ξυήλῃ πατάξας,  
 δρόμου τ' ἐπιμεληθῆναι καὶ τοῦ ἀγῶνος προστατῆσαι.

|thence δ' ἐπορεύθησαν δύο |cottage; post |ca. 5 km

έπτά, καὶ ἦλθον ἐπὶ θάλατταν εἰς Τραπεζοῦντα πόλιν

Ἑλληνίδα οἰκουμένην ἐν τῷ Εὐξεινῷ Πόντῳ, Σινωπέων

|colony , ἐν τῇ Κόλχων χώρα. |there, here , μιναν ἡμέρας

ἀμφὶ τὰς τριάκοντα ἐν ταῖς τῶν Κόλχων |village

|thence ὀρμώμενοι |λῆζομαι?: plunder; or ἡδᾶ. ἀγορὰν δὲ  
|λῆζομαι?: plunder

παρεῖχον τῷ στρατοπέδῳ Τραπεζούντιοι, καὶ ἐδέξαντό

τε τοὺς |Greek καὶ |of hospitality , βοῦς καὶ |barley meal ὅ

οῖνον. συνδιεπράττοντο δὲ καὶ ὑπὲρ τῶν |near Κόλχων

τῶν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ μάλιστα |inhabit , καὶ |of hospitality ῥ'

ἐκείνων ἦλθον βόες. μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο τὴν |sacrifice ἦν ἠϋξάντο

παρεσκευάζοντο· ἦλθον δ' αὐτοῖς ἱκανοὶ βόες |make a sacri-  
|fice re a vow

Διὶ τῷ |savior καὶ τῷ Ἡρακλεῖ ἡγεμόσυνα καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις

θεοῖς ἃ ἠϋξάντο.

Ἐποίησαν δὲ καὶ |gathering|of gymnastics τῷ ὄρει ἔνθα περ  
|place

ἐσκήνουν. εἶλοντο δὲ Δρακόντιον Σπαρτιάτην, ὃς ἔφυγε

παῖς ὢν |from home ἰῖδα ἄκων |kill |curved |beat (heart); strike  
|knife

|running τ' |take care of, καὶ τοῦ |gathering |be boss of; defend  
|oversee |place

a severe course of medical treatment.

From this place they marched on two stages—seven parasangs—and reached the sea at Trapezus, a populous Hellenic city on the Euxine Sea, a colony of the Sinopeans, in the territory of the Colchians. Here they halted about thirty days in the villages of the Colchians, which they used as a base of operations to ravage the whole territory of Colchis. The men of Trapezus supplied the army with a market, entertained them, and gave them, as gifts of hospitality, oxen and wheat and wine. Further, they negotiated with them in behalf of their neighbours the Colchians, who dwelt in the plain for the most part, and from this folk also came gifts of hospitality in the shape of cattle. And now the Hellenes made preparation for the sacrifice which they had vowed, and a sufficient number of cattle came in for them to offer thank-offerings for safe guidance to Zeus the Saviour, and to Heracles, and to the other gods, according to their vows.

They instituted also a gymnastic contest on the mountain side, just where they were quartered, and chose Dracontius, a Spartan (who had been banished from home when a lad, having unintentionally slain another boy with a blow of his dagger), to superintend the course, and be president of the games.

As soon as

*vocabulary*

**ἀγωνίζομαι** contend, exert oneself  
**αἰχμάλωτος** captive ~acute  
**ἀνιάζω** bother, grieve  
**ἀνιάω** (ι) vex  
**ἄνω** (ᾱ) accomplish, pass, waste;  
 upwards, out to sea  
**ἀποστρέφω** turn back, turn off course  
 ~atrophy  
**ἄτε** as if; since  
**ἄω** aor: to sate ~sate  
**βάδην** step by step ~basis  
**βωμός** altar; stand, pedestal  
**γέλως** laughter  
**δασύς** hairy, brushy  
**δείκνυμι** (υ) show, point out  
**δέρμα** -τος (n, 3) skin, hide  
 ~dermatology  
**δόλιχος** the long course, in racing  
**δρόμος** running, racing ground  
 ~hippodrome  
**ἑξήκοντα** sixty  
**θέα** (ᾱ) seeing, sight, viewpoint  
**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider

~theater

**θέω** run, run for  
**θύσῖα** sacrifice  
**ἰσχυρός** (υ) strong, forceful, violent  
**καλινδέομαι** roll, wallow  
**καταπίπτω** fall down ~petal  
**κραυγή** screaming, shouting  
**λόφος** neck, crest on a helmet, hilltop  
**μόλις** with difficulty, barely  
**ὅπου** where  
**ὄρθιος** shrill; steep, straight  
**παγκράτιον** 'all-in' contest  
**παλαίω** wrestle ~Pallas  
**πάλη** wrestling ~Pallas  
**παρακέλευσις** -εως (f) cheering on  
**πρανής** (ᾱ) prone; precipitous  
**προσδοκάω** expect  
**πυγμή** boxing  
**σκληρός** hard  
**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)  
**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm;  
 (pl noun) 200 meters  
**τρέχω** run, spin  
**φιλονικία** (ι) rivalry, competition

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἡ θυσία ἐγένετο, τὰ δέρματα παρέδωσαν τῷ Δρακοντίῳ, καὶ ἡγεῖσθαι ἐκέλευον ὅπου τὸν δρόμον πεποιηκὼς εἴη. ὁ δὲ δείξας οὐπὲρ ἐστηκότες ἐτύγχανον, «Οὗτος ὁ λόφος,» ἔφη, «κάλλιστος τρέχειν ὅπου ἄν τις βούληται.» «Πῶς οὖν,» ἔφασαν, «δυνήσονται παλαίειν ἐν σκληρῷ καὶ δασεῖ οὕτως;» ὁ δ' εἶπε· «Μᾶλλον τι ἀνιάσεται ὁ καταπεσών.» ἡγωνίζοντο δὲ παῖδες μὲν στάδιον τῶν αἰχμαλώτων οἱ πλείστοι, δόλιχον δὲ Κρηῆτες πλείους ἢ ἐξήκοντα ἔθεον, πάλιν δὲ καὶ πυγμὴν καὶ παγκράτιον ἕτεροι, καὶ καλὴ θέα ἐγένετο· πολλοὶ γὰρ κατέβησαν καὶ ἅτε θεωμένων τῶν ἐταίρων πολλὴ φιλονικία ἐγίνετο. ἔθεον δὲ καὶ ἵπποι καὶ ἔδει αὐτοὺς κατὰ τοῦ πρανοῦς ἐλάσαντας ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ ἀποστρέψαντας πάλιν πρὸς τὸν βωμὸν ἄγειν. καὶ κάτω μὲν οἱ πολλοὶ ἐκαλινδοῦντο· ἄνω δὲ πρὸς τὸ ἰσχυρῶς ὀρθιον μόλις βάδην ἐπορεύοντο οἱ ἵπποι· ἔνθα πολλὴ κραυγὴ καὶ γέλως καὶ παρακέλευσις ἐγίνετο.



Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἡ θυσία ἐγένετο, τὰ |skin, hide παρέδωσαν  
 τῷ Δρακοντίῳ, καὶ ἡγεῖσθαι ἐκέλευον |where τὸν |running  
 πεποιηκῶς εἶη. ὁ δὲ |show οὐπερ ἐστηκότες ἐτύγγανον,  
 «Οὗτος ὁ |neck, crest on a, «κάλλιστος |run, spin |where ἄν  
 |helmet, hilltop  
 τις βούληται.» «Πῶς οὖν,» ἔφασαν, «δυνήσονται  
 |wrestle ἐν |hard καὶ |hairy, οὕτως;» ὁ δ' εἶπε·  
 |brushy  
 «Μᾶλλον τι ἀνιάσεται ὁ |fall down .» |contend, ex- δὲ  
 |ert oneself  
 παῖδες μὲν στάδιον τῶν |captive οἱ πλείστοι, |the long course, in  
 |racing  
 δὲ Κρήτες πλείους ἢ |sixty |run , |wrestling ἔειπε καὶ  
 |boxing καὶ |'all-in' contest ἕτεροι, καὶ καλὴ θέα ἐγένετο·  
 πολλοὶ γὰρ κατέβησαν καὶ ἅτε θεωμένων τῶν ἐταίρων  
 πολλὴ φιλονικία ἐγίγνετο. |run δὲ καὶ ἵπποι καὶ ἔδει  
 αὐτοὺς κατὰ τοῦ |prone; precipitous τας ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ  
 |turn back πάλιν πρὸς τὸν |altar ἄγειν. καὶ κάτω  
 μὲν οἱ πολλοὶ |roll, wallow ἄνω δὲ πρὸς τὸ ἰσχυρῶς  
 |shrill; |with |step by step ,ρεύοντο οἱ ἵπποι· ἔνθα πολλὰ  
 |steep, |diffi-  
 |straight culty  
 |screaming |barely laughter .αὶ |cheering on ἐγίγνετο.  
 |shouting

the sacrifices were over, they handed over the hides of the beasts to Dracontius, and bade him lead the way to his racecourse. He merely waved his hand and pointed to where they were standing, and said, «There, this ridge is just the place for running, anywhere, everywhere.” «But how,” it was asked, «will they manage to wrestle on the hard scrubby ground?” «Oh! worse knocks for those who are thrown,” the president replied. There was a mile race for boys, the majority being captive lads; and for the long race more than sixty Cretans competed; there was wrestling, boxing, and the pankration. Altogether it was a beautiful spectacle. There was a large number of entries, and the emulation, with their companions, male and female, standing as spectators, was immense. There was horse-racing also; the riders had to gallop down a steep incline to the sea, and then turn and come up again to the altar, and on the descent more than half rolled head over heels, and then back they came toiling up the tremendous steep, scarcely out of a walking pace. Loud were the shouts, the laughter, and the cheers.

*vocabulary*

**ἀνάβασις** -τος (f) going up, mounting,  
 going inland  
**ἀναθορυβέω** cheer, yell  
**ἀποθύω** make a sacrifice re a vow  
**βαδίζω** walk, proceed  
**δηλώω** show, disclose  
**ἐκτείνω** stretch out ~tend  
**Ἑλλήν** Greek  
**ἐπιθυμέω** (ὅ) wish, covet  
**θύω** (ὅ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω  
**μέχρι** as far as, until  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
 ~hoplite

**πόνος** toil, suffering ~osteopenia  
**πορεία** gait, march  
**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
 mercenary ~strategy  
**συνέρχομαι** come together  
**συσκευάζω** pack up  
**σωτήριος** saving  
**τοίνυν** well, then  
**τρέχω** run, spin  
**φιλία** friendship ~philanthropy  
**φίλιος** friendly  
**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch  
 ~phylactery

## 5

## 5.1

Ὅσα μὲν δὴ ἐν τῇ ἀναβάσει τῇ μετὰ Κύρου ἔπραξαν οἱ Ἕλληνες, καὶ ἐν τῇ πορείᾳ τῇ μέχρι ἐπὶ θάλατταν τὴν ἐν τῷ Εὐξείνῳ Πόντῳ, καὶ ὡς εἰς Τραπεζοῦντα Ἑλληνίδα πόλιν ἀφίκοντο, καὶ ὡς ἀπέθυσαν ἃ εὔξαντο σωτήρια θύειν ἔνθα πρῶτον εἰς φιλίαν γῆν ἀφίκοντο, ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ δεδήλωται.

Ἐκ δὲ τούτου ξυνελθόντες ἐβουλεύοντο περὶ τῆς λοιπῆς πορείας· ἀνέστη δὲ πρῶτος Λέων Θούριος καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε. «Ἐγὼ μὲν τοίνυν,» ἔφη, «ὦ ἄνδρες, ἀπείρηκα ἤδη ξυσκευαζόμενος καὶ βαδίζων καὶ τρέχων καὶ τὰ ὄπλα φέρων καὶ ἐν τάξει ὦν καὶ φυλακὰς φυλάττων καὶ μαχόμενος, ἐπιθυμῶ δὲ ἤδη παυσάμενος τούτων τῶν πόνων, ἐπεὶ θάλατταν ἔχομεν, πλεῖν τὸ λοιπὸν καὶ ἐκταθεῖς ὥσπερ Ὀδυσσεὺς ἀφικέσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα.» ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες οἱ στρατιῶται ἀνεθορύβησαν ὡς εἰ

## 5

## 5.1

Ὅσα μὲν δὴ ἐν τῇ |going up, mount- τὰ Κύρου ἔπραξαν οἱ  
|ing, going inland

|Greek , καὶ ἐν τῇ |gait, τῇ |as far as, until ἄτταν τὴν ἐν  
|march

τῷ Εὐξείνῳ Πόντῳ, καὶ ὥς εἰς Τραπεζοῦντα Ἑλληνίδα

πόλιν ἀφίκοντο, καὶ ὥς |make a sacri- εὔξαντο |saving  
|fice re a vow

|rush; sacrifice, ὅτον εἰς φιλίαν γῆν ἀφίκοντο, ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν

λόγῳ |show,  
|disclose

Ἐκ δὲ τούτου |come together ἐβουλεύοντο περὶ τῆς λοιπῆς

|gait, ἀνέστη δὲ πρῶτος Λέων Θούριος καὶ ἔλεξεν  
|march

ὦδε. «Ἐγὼ μὲν |well, then ἔφη, «ὦ ἄνδρες, ἀπείρηκα

ἤδη |pack up καὶ |walk, καὶ |run, spin καὶ τὰ  
|proceed

|tool φέρων καὶ ἐν τάξει ὦν καὶ |guard, φυλάττων  
|prison,

καὶ μαχόμενος, |wish, δὲ ἤδη παυσάμενος τούτων  
|covet

τῶν |toil, suffering ἥθαλattan ἔχομεν, πλεῖν τὸ λοιπὸν καὶ

|stretch out ὕσπερ Ὀδυσσεὺς ἀφικέσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα.»

ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες οἱ |soldier, |cheer, yell ὥς εὔ  
|mercenary

## 5

## 5.1

Is given of all that the Hellenes did, and how they fared on the march up with Cyrus; and also of all that befell them on their march subsequently, until they reached the seaboard of the Euxine Sea, or Pontus, and the Hellenic city of Trapezus, where they duly offered the sacrifice for safe deliverance which they had vowed to offer as soon as they set foot on a friendly soil.)

After this they met and took counsel concerning the remainder of the march. The first speaker was Antileon of Thurii. He rose and said: «For my part, sirs, I am weary by this time of getting kit together and packing up for a start, of walking and running and carrying heavy arms, and of tramping along in line, or mounting guard, and doing battle. The sole desire I now have is to cease from all these pains, and for the future, since here we have the sea before us, to sail on and on, 'stretched out in sleep,' like Odysseus, and so to find myself in Hellas.» When they heard these remarks, the soldiers showed their approval

*vocabulary*

**ἀμελέω** disregard; (impers.) of course  
**ἀμελής** careless  
**ἀναμένω** wait for ~remain  
**ἀφύλακτος** unguarded ~phylactery  
**εἴπερ** if indeed  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**εὐπορία** ease, abundance  
**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism  
**μονή** staying, delaying  
**ναυαρχέω** be admiral  
**ναυάρχης** -ου (m, 1) admiral  
**ὄνέω** help, please, be available

**ὄνομαι** blame ~name  
**περιμένω** wait for  
**πλανάω** lead astray; (mp) wander  
 ~plankton  
**πορίζω** bring about, provide  
**προνομή** foraging  
**στέλλω** prepare, send, furl ~apostle  
**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
 mercenary ~strategy  
**τριήρης** trireme ~row  
**ψηφίζω** count, vote  
**ὠνέομαι** buy

λέγει· καὶ ἄλλος ταῦτ' ἔλεγε, καὶ πάντες οἱ παριόντες. ἔπειτα δὲ Χειρίσοφος ἀνέστη καὶ εἶπεν ὧδε. «Φίλος μοί ἐστιν, ὦ ἄνδρες, Ἀναξίβιος, ναυαρχῶν δὲ καὶ τυγχάνει. ἦν οὖν πέμψητέ με, οἶομαι ἂν ἐλθεῖν καὶ τριήρεις ἔχων καὶ πλοῖα τὰ ἡμᾶς ἄξοντα· ὑμεῖς δὲ εἵπερ πλεῖν βούλεσθε, περιμένετε ἔστ' ἂν ἐγὼ ἔλθω· ἤξω δὲ ταχέως.» ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα οἱ στρατιῶται ἥσθησάν τε καὶ ἐψηφίσαντο πλεῖν αὐτὸν ὡς τάχιστα.

Μετὰ τοῦτον Ξενοφῶν ἀνέστη καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε. «Χειρίσοφος μὲν δὴ ἐπὶ πλοῖα στέλλεται, ἡμεῖς δὲ ἀναμενοῦμεν. ὅσα μοι οὖν δοκεῖ καιρὸς εἶναι ποιεῖν ἐν τῇ μονῇ, ταῦτα ἐρῶ. πρῶτον μὲν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια δεῖ πορίζεσθαι ἐκ τῆς πολεμίας· οὔτε γὰρ ἀγορὰ ἔστιν ἱκανὴ οὔτε ὅτου ὠνησόμεθα εὐπορία εἰ μὴ ὀλίγοις τισίν· ἡ δὲ χώρα πολεμία· κίνδυνος οὖν πολλοὺς ἀπόλλυσθαι, ἦν ἀμελῶς τε καὶ ἀφυλάκτως πορεύησθε ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἀλλὰ μοι δοκεῖ σὺν προνομαῖς λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἄλλως δὲ μὴ πλανᾶσθαι, ὡς σῶζισθε, ἡμᾶς δὲ τούτων



λέγει· καὶ ἄλλος ταῦτ' ἔλεγε, καὶ πάντες οἱ παριόντες.  
 ἔπειτα δὲ Χειρίσοφος ἀνέστη καὶ εἶπεν ὧδε. «Φίλος  
 μοί ἐστιν, ὦ ἄνδρες, Ἀναξίβιος, ναυαρχῶν δὲ καὶ  
 τυγχάνει. ἦν οὖν πέμψητέ με, οἶομαι ἂν ἐλθεῖν καὶ  
 |trireme ἔχων καὶ πλοῖα τὰ ἡμᾶς ἄξοντα· ὑμεῖς δὲ |if indeed  
 πλεῖν βούλεσθε, |wait for ἔστ' ἂν ἐγὼ ἔλθω· ἥξω δὲ  
 ταχέως.» ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα οἱ |soldier, |be pleased, enjoy  
 |mercenary  
 καὶ |count, vote πλεῖν αὐτὸν ὡς τάχιστα.

Μετὰ τοῦτον Ξενοφῶν ἀνέστη καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε.  
 «Χειρίσοφος μὲν δὴ ἐπὶ πλοῖα |prepare, send, furl ~; δὲ  
 |wait for . ὅσα μοι οὖν δοκεῖ καιρὸς εἶναι ποιεῖν  
 ἐν τῇ |staying, |fit, suitable δεῖ  
 |delaying  
 |bring about, ἐκ τῆς πολεμίας· οὔτε γὰρ ἀγορὰ ἔστιν ἱκανή  
 |provide  
 οὔτε ὅτου ὠνησόμεθα |ease, abundance, ὀλίγοις τισίν· ἡ δὲ  
 χώρα πολεμία· κίνδυνος οὖν πολλοὺς ἀπόλλυσθαι, ἦν  
 ἀμελῶς τε καὶ |unguarded πορεύησθε ἐπὶ τὰ |fit, suitable .  
 ἀλλὰ μοι δοκεῖ σὺν |foraging λαμβάνειν τὰ |fit, suitable ,  
 ἄλλως δὲ μὴ |lead astray; ὡς σώζησθε, ἡμᾶς δὲ τούτων  
 |(mp) wander

with loud cries of «well said,” and then another spoke to the same effect, and then another, and indeed all present. Then Cheirisophus got up and said: «I have a friend, sirs, who, as good hap will have it, is now high admiral, Anaxibius. If you like to send me to him, I think I can safely promise to return with some men of war and other vessels which will carry us. All you have to do, if you are really minded to go home by sea, is to wait here till I come. I will be back ere long.” The soldiers were delighted at these words, and voted that Cheirisophus should set sail on his mission without delay.

After him, Xenophon got up, and spoke as follows: «Cheirisophus, it is agreed, sets out in search of vessels, and we are going to await him. Let me tell you what, in my opinion, it is reasonable to do while we are waiting. First of all, we must provide ourselves with necessities from hostile territory, for there is not a sufficient market, nor, if there were, have we, with a few solitary exceptions, the means of purchase. Now, the district is hostile, so that if you set off in search of provisions without care and precaution, the chances are that many of us will be lost. To meet this risk, I propose that we should organise foraging parties to capture provisions, and, for the rest, not roam about the country at random. The organisation of the

*vocabulary*

**ἄδηλος** invisible, unknown  
**ἄπειρος** untested; infinite  
**βέλτιστος** best, noblest  
**ἐγχειρέω** lay hands on, try, attack  
**ἐκπορεύω** bring/go out  
**ἐννοέω** consider  
**ἔξιμι** go forth; is possible ~ion  
**ἐξίημι** send forth, allow forth ~jet  
**ἐπιβουλεύω** plot, plan, harm  
 ~volunteer  
**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee  
**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand  
 ~station  
**θηράω** hunt, chase

**λεία** booty  
**λεῖος** smooth  
**ληίζομαι** plunder ~lucre  
**μερίζω** allot, divide  
**ὅποι** to which place  
**ποῖ** whither? how long?  
**σαφής** clear, understandable  
**σκοπᾶω** watch, observe  
**σκοπέω** behold, consider  
**συμπαρασχευάζω** help prepare  
**σχολή** rest, leisure  
**τοίνυν** well, then  
**ὑπερβάθηναι** post, watch over  
**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch  
 ~phylactery

ἐπιμελείσθαι.» ἔδοξε ταῦτα. «Ἔτι τοίνυν ἀκούσατε καὶ τάδε. ἐπὶ λείαν γὰρ ὑμῶν ἐκπορεύονται τινες. οἶομαι οὖν βέλτιστον εἶναι ἡμῖν εἰπεῖν τὸν μέλλοντα ἐξιέναι, φράζειν δὲ καὶ ὅποι, ἵνα καὶ τὸ πλῆθος εἰδῶμεν τῶν ἐξιόντων καὶ τῶν μενόντων καὶ συμπαρασκευάζωμεν, ἐάν τι δέῃ, καὶ βοηθησαί τισι καιρὸς ᾗ, εἰδῶμεν ὅποι δεήσει βοηθεῖν, καὶ ἐάν τις τῶν ἀπειροτέρων ἐγχειρῇ ποι, συμβουλεύωμεν πειρώμενοι εἰδέναι τὴν δύναμιν ἐφ' οὓς ἂν ἴωσιν.» ἔδοξε καὶ ταῦτα.

«Ἐννοεῖτε δὴ καὶ τόδε,» ἔφη. «σχολὴ τοῖς πολεμίοις λήξεσθαι, καὶ δικαίως ἡμῖν ἐπιβουλεύουσιν· ἔχομεν γὰρ τὰ ἐκείνων· ὑπερκάθηνται δὲ ἡμῶν. φυλακὰς δὴ μοι δοκεῖ δεῖν περὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον εἶναι· ἐὰν οὖν κατὰ μέρος μερισθέντες φυλάττωμεν καὶ σκοπῶμεν, ἥττον ἂν δύναιντο ἡμᾶς θηρᾶν οἱ πολέμοι. ἔτι τοίνυν τάδε ὁράτε. εἰ μὲν ἡπιστάμεθα σαφῶς ὅτι ἤξει πλοῖα Χειρίσοφος ἄγων ἱκανά, οὐδὲν ἂν ἔδει ὧν μέλλω λέγειν· νῦν δ' ἐπεὶ τοῦτο ἄδηλον, δοκεῖ μοι πειρᾶσθαι πλοῖα

|take care of, » ἔδοξε ταῦτα. «Ἔτι |well, then ὀύσατε καὶ  
|oversee

τάδε. ἐπὶ λείαν γὰρ ὑμῶν ἐκπορεύονται τινες. οἶομαι οὖν

|best, εἶναι ἡμῖν εἰπεῖν τὸν μέλλοντα ἐξιέναι, φράζειν  
|noblest

δὲ καὶ |to which place τὸ πλῆθος εἰδῶμεν τῶν |go forth;  
|is possible

καὶ τῶν μενόντων καὶ συμπαρασκευάζομεν, εἴαν τι δέη,

καὶ βοηθῆσαί τισι καιρὸς ἦ, εἰδῶμεν |to which place, ]ηθεῖν,

καὶ εἴαν τις τῶν |untested; |try, attack...οι, συμβουλευόμεν  
|infinite

πειρώμενοι εἰδέναι τὴν δύναμιν ἐφ' οὓς ἂν ἴωσιν.» ἔδοξε

καὶ ταῦτα.

«|consider δὴ καὶ τόδε,» ἔφη. «|rest, τοῖς πολεμίοις  
|leisure

|ληίζομαι?: plunder; or ὥς ἡμῖν |plot, plan, harm ἔχομεν γὰρ  
|ληίζομαι?: plunder

τὰ ἐκείνων· |post, watch over δὲ ἡμῶν. |guard, δὴ μοι  
|prison,  
|watch

δοκεῖ δεῖν περὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον εἶναι· εἴαν οὖν κατὰ

μέρος |allot, divide φυλάττωμεν καὶ σκοπῶμεν, ἥττον ἂν

δύναιντο ἡμᾶς |hunt, οἱ πολέμοι. ἔτι |well, then ὁδε ὀράτε.  
|chase

εἰ μὲν |know |clear, under- ᾗξει πλοῖα Χειρίσοφος ἄγων  
|standable

ικανά, οὐδὲν ἂν ἔδει ὦν μέλλω λέγειν· νῦν δ' ἐπεὶ τοῦτο

|invisible, ]οκεῖ μοι πειρᾶσθαι πλοῖα  
|unknown

matter should be left to us.” (The resolution was passed.) «Please listen to another proposal;” he continued: «Some of you, no doubt, will be going out to pillage. It will be best, I think, that whoever does so should in each case before starting inform us of his intent, and in what direction he means to go, so that we may know the exact number of those who are out and of those who stop behind. Thus we shall be able to help in preparing and starting the expedition where necessary; and in case of aid or reinforcements being called for, we shall know in what direction to proceed; or, again, if the attempt is to be undertaken by raw or less expert hands, we may throw in the weight of our experience and advice by endeavouring to discover the strength of those whom they design to attack.” This proposal was also carried.

«Here is another point,” he continued, «to which I would draw your attention. Our enemies will not lack leisure to make raids upon us: nor is it unnatural, that they should lay plots for us; for we have appropriated what is theirs; they are seated over us ever on the watch. I propose then that we should have regular outposts round the camp. If we take it in succession to do picket and outlook duty, the enemy will be less able to harry us. And here is another point for your observation; supposing we knew for certain that Cheirisophus must return with a sufficient number of vessels, there would be no need of the remark, but as that is still problematical, I propose that we should try to get together vessels on the spot also. If he comes and finds us already

*vocabulary***αἰτέω** ask for ~etiology**ἀνακράζω** yell, scream**ἀπαλλαξείω** wish to get rid of**ἀπαλλάσσω** free from, remove; be freed, depart**ἀπορέω** be confused, distressed**ἀρκέω** satisfy; ward off, defend; suffice**αὐτόθεν** from that place**ἄφθονος** ungrudging, plentiful**ἄφροσύνη** folly ~frenzy**δύσπορος** hard to pass, get**εἰκός** likely**ἐκπεραίνω** finish off**ἐνθάδε** here, hither**ἐννοέω** consider**ἐνταῦθα** there, here**ἐντέλλω** (mp) command**ἐπιψηφίζω** put to a vote**ἡώς ἡῶθι** (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene**κατάγω** lead down/home; land  
~demagogue**κοινός** communal, ordinary**κοινόω** make common; cooperate**κομιδή** care, tending, providing for**ναῦλον** harp**ναῦλος** fare**ὁδοιπορέω** walk over**ὁδοποιέω** make a path**οἰκέω** inhabit ~economics**παραλύω** detach, disable**παραπλέω** sail past ~float**πηδάλιον** rudder**συμπαρασχευάζω** help prepare**τοίνυν** well, then**ώφελέω** help, be useful

συμπαρασκευάζειν καὶ αὐτόθεν. ἦν μὲν γὰρ ἔλθῃ,  
 ὑπαρχόντων ἐνθάδε ἐν ἀφθονωτέροις πλευσόμεθα· ἦν  
 δὲ μὴ ἄγῃ, τοῖς ἐνθάδε χρησόμεθα. ὁρῶ δὲ ἐγὼ  
 πλοῖα πολλάκις παραπλέοντα· εἰ οὖν αἰτησάμενοι παρὰ  
 Τραπεζουντίων μακρὰ πλοῖα κατάγομεν καὶ φυλάττομεν  
 αὐτά, τὰ πηδάλια παραλυόμενοι, ἕως ἂν ἱκανὰ τὰ  
 ἄξοντα γένηται, ἴσως ἂν οὐκ ἀπορήσαιμεν κομιδῆς οἷας  
 δεόμεθα.» ἔδοξε καὶ ταῦτα. «Ἐννοήσατε δ',» ἔφη, «εἰ  
 εἰκὸς καὶ τρέφειν ἀπὸ κοινοῦ οὓς ἂν καταγάγωμεν ὅσον  
 ἂν χρόνον ἡμῶν ἔνεκεν μένωσι, καὶ ναῦλον ξυνθέσθαι,  
 ὅπως ὠφελοῦντες καὶ ὠφελῶνται.» ἔδοξε καὶ ταῦτα.  
 «Δοκεῖ τοίνυν μοι,» ἔφη, «ἦν ἄρα καὶ ταῦτα ἡμῖν μὴ  
 ἐκπεραίνηται ὥστε ἀρκεῖν πλοῖα, τὰς ὁδοὺς ἅς δυσπόρους  
 ἀκούομεν εἶναι ταῖς παρὰ θάλατταν οἰκούσαις πόλεσιν  
 ἐντείλασθαι ὁδοποιεῖν· πείσονται γὰρ καὶ διὰ τὸ φοβεῖσθαι  
 καὶ διὰ τὸ βούλεσθαι ἡμῶν ἀπαλλαγῆναι.»

Ἐνταῦθα δὲ ἀνέκραγον ὡς οὐ δέοι ὁδοιπορεῖν. ὁ δὲ ὡς  
 ἔγνω τὴν ἀφροσύνην αὐτῶν, ἐπειψήφισε μὲν οὐδέν,



συμπαρασκευάζειν καὶ |from that place, ' μὲν γὰρ ἔλθῃ,  
 ὑπαρχόντων |here, ἐν |ungrudging, πλευσόμεθα· ἦν  
 |hither |plentiful  
 δὲ μὴ ἄγῃ, τοῖς |here, χρησόμεθα. ὁρῶ δὲ ἐγὼ  
 |hither  
 πλοῖα |often |sail past εἰ οὖν |ask for παρὰ  
 Τραπεζουντίων μακρὰ πλοῖα |lead down/home; land ' ττοίμεν  
 αὐτά, τὰ |rudder |detach, disable , ἕως ἂν ἱκανὰ τὰ  
 ἄξοντα γένηται, ἴσως ἂν οὐκ |be confused, dis- |care, οἷας  
 |tressed |tending  
 δεόμεθα.» ἔδοξε καὶ ταῦτα. «|consider δ',» ἔφη, «εἰ  
 |likely καὶ τρέφειν ἀπὸ κοινοῦ οὓς ἂν |lead down/home; land  
 ἂν χρόνον ἡμῶν ἔνεκεν μένωσι, καὶ ναῦλον ξυνηέσθαι,  
 ὅπως |help, be useful : αὶ |help, be useful . ἔδοξε καὶ ταῦτα.  
 «Δοκεῖ |well, then ν,» ἔφη, «ἦν ἄρα καὶ ταῦτα ἡμῖν μὴ  
 |finish off ὥστε |satisfy; ward off, ἀς ὁδοὺς ἄς |hard to pass, get  
 |defend; suffice  
 ἀκούομεν εἶναι ταῖς παρὰ θάλατταν |inhabit πόλεσιν  
 ἐντείλασθαι |make a path εἴσονται γὰρ καὶ διὰ τὸ φοβεῖσθαι  
 καὶ διὰ τὸ βούλεσθαι ἡμῶν ἀπαλλαγῆναι.»  
 |there, here δὲ |yell, scream ὡς οὐ δέοι |walk over . ὁ δὲ ὡς  
 ἔγνω τὴν |folly αὐτῶν, |put to a vote , ἐν οὐδέν,

provided for here, we shall have more ships than we need, that is all; while, if he fails to bring them, we shall have the local supply to fall back upon. I see ships sailing past perpetually, so we have only to ask the loan of some war-ships from the men of Trapezus, and we can bring them into port, and safeguard them with their rudders unshipped, until we have enough to carry us. By this course I think we shall not fail of finding the means of transport requisite." That resolution was also passed. He proceeded: «Consider whether you think it equitable to support by means of a general fund the ships' companies which we so impress, while they wait here for our benefit, and to agree upon a fare, on the principle of repaying kindnesses in kind." That too was passed. «Well then," said he, «in case, after all, our endeavours should not be crowned with success, and we find that we have not vessels enough, I propose that we should enjoin on the cities along the seaboard the duty of constructing and putting in order the roads, which we hear are impassable. They will be only too glad to obey, no doubt, out of mere terror and their desire to be rid of us."

This last proposal was met by loud cries and protestations against the idea of going by land at all. So, perceiving their infatuation, he did not put the question to the vote, but

*vocabulary*

ἀγώγιμος portable, seizable, laden

ἀμελέω disregard; (impers.) of course

ἀπαλλάσσω free from, remove; be freed, depart

ἀποδιδράσκω escape

ἐκὼν willingly, on purpose; giving in too easily

Ἑλλήν Greek

ἐξάγω lead out ~demagogue

ἐξαιρέω pick, steal; dedicate; destroy ~heresy

ἔξειμι go forth; is possible ~ion

ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable

εὖπορος easily passed; rich

ἐφίστημι set; (mp) come/be near, direct, stop ~station

κατάγω lead down/home; land

~demagogue

λεία booty

λεῖος smooth

λόχος ambush, band, childbirth ~lie

ὁδοποιέω make a path

οἶχομαι come, go, leave, be gone

ὁπόσος as many as, how many, how great

παραγωγή leading past, misleading

πεντηκόντορος 50-oared ship

περίοικος dwelling around

πολυπραγμονέω be too busy, meddle

συλλέγω collect, assemble ~legion

σῶς safe, alive

τριακόντορος (f) 30-oared ship

φύλαξ -χος (m) guard; sentry

~phylactery

χωρίον area; downwards

τὰς δὲ πόλεις ἐκούσας ἔπεισεν ὁδοποιεῖν, λέγων ὅτι  
 θᾶπτον ἀπαλλάσσονται, ἣν εὖποροι γένωνται αἱ ὁδοί.  
 ἔλαβον δὲ καὶ πεντηκόντορον παρὰ τῶν Τραπεζουντίων, ἥ  
 ἐπέστησαν Δέξιππον Λάκωνα περίοικον. οὗτος ἀμελήσας  
 τοῦ συλλέγειν πλοῖα ἀποδρὰς ὥχετο ἔξω τοῦ Πόντου,  
 ἔχων τὴν ναῦν. οὗτος μὲν οὖν δίκαια ἔπαθεν ὕστερον· ἐν  
 Θράκῃ γὰρ παρὰ Σεύθῃ πολυπραγμονῶν τι ἀπέθανεν ὑπὸ  
 Νικάνδρου τοῦ Λάκωνος. ἔλαβον δὲ καὶ τριακόντορον,  
 ἥ ἐπεστάθῃ Πολυκράτης Ἀθηναῖος, ὃς ὁπόσα λαμβάνοι  
 πλοῖα κατήγεν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. καὶ τὰ μὲν ἀγώγιμα εἴ  
 τι ἦγον ἐξαιρούμενοι φύλακας καθίστασαν, ὅπως σῶα εἴη,  
 τοῖς δὲ πλοίοις ἐχρήσαντο εἰς παραγωγὴν. ἐν ᾧ δὲ ταῦτα  
 ἦν ἐπὶ λείαν ἐξῆσαν οἱ Ἕλληνες, καὶ οἱ μὲν ἐλάμβανον οἱ  
 δὲ καὶ οὐ. Κλεαίνετος δ' ἐξαγαγὼν καὶ τὸν ἑαυτοῦ καὶ  
 ἄλλον λόχον πρὸς χωρίον χαλεπὸν αὐτός τε ἀπέθανε καὶ  
 ἄλλοι πολλοὶ τῶν σὺν αὐτῷ.

## 5.2

Ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια οὐκέτι ἦν λαμβάνειν ὥστε

τὰς δὲ πόλεις |willingly ἔπεισεν |make a path λέγων ὅτι

θᾶπτον |free from, remove; be easily γένωνται αἱ ὁδοί.  
|freed, depart |passed;

ἔλαβον δὲ καὶ |50-oared ship |rich παρὰ τῶν Τραπεζουντίων, ἥ

|set; (mp) come/be ἱππον Λάκωνα |dwelling οὗτος |disregard  
|near, direct, stop |around

τοῦ |collect, πλοῖα |escape |come, go ὕξω τοῦ Πόντου,  
|assemble

ἔχων τὴν ναῦν. οὗτος μὲν οὖν δίκαια ἔπαθεν ὕστερον· ἐν

Θράκη γὰρ παρὰ Σεύθῃ |be too busy, meddle ἰ ἀπέθανεν ὑπὸ

Νικάνδρου τοῦ Λάκωνος. ἔλαβον δὲ καὶ |30-oared ship ,

ἥ |set; (mp) come/be κράτης Ἀθηναῖος, ὅς |as/how many/great  
|near, direct, stop

πλοῖα |lead down/home; land ὅπεδον. καὶ τὰ μὲν |portable, seiz-  
|able, laden

τι ἦγον |pick, steal; ded-guard; καθίστασαν, ὅπως σῶα εἶη,  
|icate; destroy |sentry

τοῖς δὲ πλοίοις ἐχρήσαντο εἰς |leading past, ἐν ᾧ δὲ ταῦτα  
|misleading

ἦν ἐπὶ λείαν |go forth; is Greek , καὶ οἱ μὲν ἐλάμβανον οἱ  
|possible

δὲ καὶ οὗ. Κλεαίνετος δ' |lead out καὶ τὸν ἑαυτοῦ καὶ

ἄλλον |ambush, band, area; downwards ἂν αὐτός τε ἀπέθανε καὶ  
|childbirth

ἄλλοι πολλοὶ τῶν σὺν αὐτῷ.

## 5.2

Ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ |fit, suitable οὐκέτι ἦν λαμβάνειν ὥστε

eventually persuaded the cities voluntarily to construct roads by the suggestion, «If you get your roads in good order, we shall all the sooner be gone.” They further got a fifty-oared galley from the Trapezuntines, and gave the command of it to Dexippus, a Laconian, one of the perioeci. This man altogether neglected to collect vessels on the offing, but slunk off himself, and vanished, ship and all, out of Pontus. Later on, however, he paid the penalty of his misdeeds. He became involved in some meddling and making in Thrace at the court of Seuthes, and was put to death by the Laconian Nicander. They also got a thirty-oared galley, the command of which was entrusted to Polycrates, an Athenian, and that officer brought into harbour to the camp all the vessels he could lay his hands on. If these were laden, they took out the freights and appointed guards to keep an eye on their preservation, whilst they used the ships themselves for transport service on the coast. While matters stood at this point, the Hellenes used to make forays with varying success; sometimes they captured prey and sometimes they failed. On one occasion Cleanetus led his own and another company against a strong position, and was killed himself, with many others of his party.

## 5.2

The time came when it was no longer possible to capture provisions, going

*vocabulary*

ἄθροός grouped  
 ἄκρον crest, extremity ~acute  
 ἄκρος at the edge, extreme ~acute  
 ἀλώσιμος easy to take  
 ἄνω (ἄ) accomplish, pass, waste;  
 upwards, out to sea  
 ἀπαυθυμερίζω do on the same day  
 ἄτε as if; since  
 ἄω aor: to sate ~sate  
 βαθύς high, deep ~bathysphere  
 διαβαίνω pass over, cross ~basis  
 διαφεύγω escape, survive  
 δύσβατος impassable  
 ἐκπίπτω fall out of ~petal  
 ἐκπίτνω fall out of  
 Ἑλλήν Greek  
 ἐμπύμπρημι burn up ~pyre  
 ἕξ six ~hexagon  
 ἐξάγω lead out ~demagogue  
 ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable  
 ἡγεμών -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide,  
 chief ~hegemony  
 ἡμισυς half ~hemisphere  
 ἰσχυρός (ῶ) strong, forceful, violent

καταλιμπάνω leave behind, abandon  
 κτήνος -ους (n, 3) herd animal  
 μητρόπολις -εως (f) mother city  
 ὀπλίτης -ου (ī, m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
 infantryman ~hoplite  
 ὀπόθεν whence  
 ὅποῖος whatever kind  
 ὄρεινός mountainous  
 πελταστής -οῦ (m, 1) light troops  
 ~pelt  
 πολεμικός warlike, hostile ~polemic  
 πρόβατον cattle, flocks, herds  
 πρόθυμος (ῶ) willing, eager ~fume  
 προσδοκάω expect  
 πρόσοδος (f) approach, procession; a  
 rent  
 προτρέχω run forth, outrun  
 στάδιον 200 meters (pl also masc)  
 στάδιος (adj) standing upright, firm;  
 (pl noun) 200 meters  
 στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
 ὑπερχάθημαι post, watch over  
 ὕς pig ~sow  
 χαράδρα torrent, gorge  
 χωρίον area; downwards

ἀπανθημερίζειν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον, ἐκ τούτου λαβὼν  
 Ξενοφῶν ἡγεμόνας τῶν Τραπεζουντίων ἐξάγει εἰς  
 Δρίλας τὸ ἥμισυ τοῦ στρατεύματος, τὸ δὲ ἥμισυ  
 κατέλιπε φυλάττειν τὸ στρατόπεδον· οἱ γὰρ Κόλχοι,  
 ἄτε ἐκπεπτωκότες τῶν οἰκιῶν, πολλοὶ ἦσαν ἀθρόοι καὶ  
 ὑπερεκάθηντο ἐπὶ τῶν ἄκρων. οἱ δὲ Τραπεζούντιοι ὀπόθεν  
 μὲν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ῥάδιον ἦν λαβεῖν οὐκ ἦγον· φίλοι γὰρ  
 αὐτοῖς ἦσαν· εἰς δὲ τοὺς Δρίλας προθύμως ἦγον, ὅφ' ὧν  
 κακῶς ἔπασχον, εἰς χωρία τε ὀρεινὰ καὶ δύσβατα καὶ  
 ἀνθρώπους πολεμικωτάτους τῶν ἐν τῷ Πόντῳ.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσαν ἐν τῇ ἄνω χώρα οἱ Ἕλληνες, ὅποια τῶν  
 χωρίων τοῖς Δρίλαις ἀλώσιμα εἶναι ἐδόκει ἐμπιμπράντες  
 ἀπῆσαν· καὶ οὐδὲν ἦν λαμβάνειν εἰ μὴ ὕς ἢ βοῦς ἢ ἄλλο τι  
 κτήνος τὸ πῦρ διαπεφευγός. ἐν δὲ ἦν χωρίον μητρόπολις  
 αὐτῶν· εἰς τοῦτο πάντες ξυνερρηήκεσαν. περὶ δὲ τοῦτο ἦν  
 χαράδρα ἰσχυρῶς βαθεῖα, καὶ πρόσοδοι χαλεπαὶ πρὸς τὸ  
 χωρίον. οἱ δὲ πελτασταὶ προδραμόντες στάδια πέντε ἢ ἑξ  
 τῶν ὀπλιτῶν, διαβάντες τὴν χαράδραν, ὀρῶντες πρόβατα



|do on the same day ἔτι τὸ στρατόπεδον, ἐκ τούτου λαβὼν  
 Ξενοφῶν ἡγεμόνας τῶν Τραπεζουντίων |lead out εἰς  
 Δρίλας τὸ |half τοῦ |army , τὸ δὲ |half  
 κατέλιπε φυλάττειν τὸ στρατόπεδον· οἱ γὰρ Κόλχοι,  
 ἅτε ἐκπεπτωκότες τῶν οἰκιῶν, πολλοὶ ἦσαν |grouped καὶ  
 |post, watch over ἐπὶ τῶν ἄκρων. οἱ δὲ Τραπεζούντιοι |whence  
 μὲν τὰ |fit, suitable ῥάδιον ἦν λαβεῖν οὐκ ἦγον· φίλοι γὰρ  
 αὐτοῖς ἦσαν· εἰς δὲ τοὺς Δρίλας |willing, ἦγον, ὑφ' ὧν  
 |eager  
 κακῶς ἔπασχον, εἰς χωρία τε ὀρευνὰ καὶ |impassable καὶ  
 ἀνθρώπους |warlike, hostile τῶν ἐν τῷ Πόντῳ.  
 Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσαν ἐν τῇ ἄνω χώρᾳ οἱ |Greek , |whatever kind  
 χωρίων τοῖς Δρίλαις |easy to take εἶναι ἐδόκει |burn up  
 ἀπῆσαν· καὶ οὐδὲν ἦν λαμβάνειν εἰ μὴ ὕς ἢ βοὺς ἢ ἄλλο τι  
 |herd animal τῷρ |escape, survive. ἐν δὲ ἦν χωρίον |mother city  
 αὐτῶν· εἰς τοῦτο πάντες ξυnerpnykēσαν. περὶ δὲ τοῦτο ἦν  
 χαράδρα |strong, |high, deep ἡ |approach, pro- ἐπαὶ πρὸς τὸ  
 |forceful, |cession; a rent  
 |violent  
 χωρίον. οἱ δὲ |light troops |run forth, outrun τάδια πέντε ἢ ἑξ  
 τῶν |hoplite, , |pass over, cross ὁρῶντες |cattle, flocks,  
 |heavy in- |gorge |herds  
 |fantryman

and returning to the camp in one day. In consequence of this, Xenophon took some guides from the Trapezuntines and led half the army out against the Drilae, leaving the other half to guard the camp. That was necessary, since the Colchians, who had been ousted from their houses, were assembled thickly, and sat eyeing them from the heights above; on the other hand the Trapezuntines, being friendly to the native inhabitants, were not for leading the Hellenes to places where it was easy to capture provisions. But against the Drilae, from whom they personally suffered, they would lead them with enthusiasm, up into mountainous and scarcely accessible fortresses, and against the most warlike people of any in the Pontus.

But when the Hellenes had reached the uplands, the Drilae set fire to all their fastnesses which they thought could be taken easily, and beat a retreat; and except here and there a stray pig or bullock or other animal which had escaped the fire there was nothing to capture; but there was one fastness which served as their metropolis: into this the different streams of people collected; round it ran a tremendously deep ravine, and the approaches to the place were difficult. So the light infantry ran forward five or six furlongs in advance of the heavy infantry, and crossed the ravine; and seeing quantities

*vocabulary*

**ἀναβάλλω** delay; lift up ~ballistic  
**ἀναβολεύς** -ος (m) groom, stirrup, lever  
**ἀναβολή** mound; delay  
**ἀπάγω** lead away, back ~demagogue  
**ἀποτρέχω** run away  
**ἄφοδος** departure, return; toilet, shit  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis  
**δισχίλιοι** 2000 ~kilo-  
**δορυφόρος** spear-bearing  
**ἐξορμάω** veer off course ~hormone  
**ἐπεξέρχομαι** sally  
**ἐπικειμαι** impose; shut a door  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἐπιχειρέω** do, try, attack ~chiral  
**ἰσχυρός** (ū) strong, forceful, violent  
**κατάβασις** -εως (f) way down  
**κρείσσων** more powerful; better  
**λοχαγέω** (ᾱ) lead a company

**λοχαγός** (ᾱ) captain  
**μεστός** full  
**ξύλινος** wooden  
**ὀπλίτης** -ου (ī, m, 1) hoplite, heavy infantryman ~hoplite  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle ~hoplite  
**πότερος** which, whichever of two  
**προσάγω** bring to a place ~demagogue  
**προσβάλλω** hit, attack, approach; attach, offer ~ballistic  
**πυκνός** dense, frequent; shrewd  
**σκόλοψ** -πος (m) palisade, stake  
**σκοπέω** behold, consider  
**τάφος** (f) ditch, trench ~epitaph  
**τύρσις** tower, castle  
**χαράδρα** torrent, gorge  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

πολλά καὶ ἄλλα χρήματα προσέβαλλον πρὸς τὸ χωρίον·  
 ξυνείποντο δὲ καὶ δορυφόροι πολλοὶ οἱ ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια  
 ἐξωρμημένοι· ὥστε ἐγένοντο οἱ διαβάντες πλείους ἢ  
 δισχίλιοι ἄνθρωποι. ἐπεὶ δὲ μαχόμενοι οὐκ ἐδύναντο  
 λαβεῖν τὸ χωρίον καὶ γὰρ τάφρος ἦν περὶ αὐτὸ εὐρεία  
 ἀναβεβλημένη καὶ σκόλοπες ἐπὶ τῆς ἀναβολῆς καὶ τύρσεις  
 πυκναὶ ξύλιναι πεποιημέναι, ἀπιέναι δὴ ἐπεχείρουν· οἱ δὲ  
 ἐπέκειντο αὐτοῖς. ὥς δὲ οὐκ ἐδύναντο ἀποτρέχειν ἦν γὰρ  
 ἐφ' ἐνὸς ἢ κατάβασις ἐκ τοῦ χωρίου εἰς τὴν χαράδραν,  
 πέμπουσι πρὸς Ξενοφῶντα· ὁ δὲ ἡγείτο τοῖς ὀπλίταις.  
 ὁ δὲ ἐλθὼν λέγει ὅτι ἔστι χωρίον χρημάτων πολλῶν  
 μεστόν· τοῦτο οὔτε λαβεῖν δυνάμεθα· ἰσχυρὸν γάρ ἐστιν·  
 οὔτε ἀπελθεῖν ράδιον· μάχονται γὰρ ἐπεξεληλυθότες καὶ  
 ἡ ἄφοδος χαλεπή.

Ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Ξενοφῶν προσαγαγὼν πρὸς τὴν  
 χαράδραν τοὺς μὲν ὀπλίτας θέσθαι ἐκέλευσε τὰ ὅπλα,  
 αὐτὸς δὲ διαβὰς σὺν τοῖς λοχαγοῖς ἐσκοπεῖτο πότερον εἴη  
 κρεῖττον ἀπαγαγεῖν καὶ τοὺς διαβεβηκότας ἢ καὶ

πολλὰ καὶ ἄλλα χρήματα |hit, attack, approach; |attach, offer τὸ χωρίον·  
 ξυνείποντο δὲ καὶ |spear-bearing πολλοὶ οἱ ἐπὶ τὰ |fit, suitable  
 ἐξωρμημένοι· ὥστε ἐγένοντο οἱ |pass over, cross· εἰούς ἦ  
 |2000 ἄνθρωποι. ἐπεὶ δὲ μαχόμενοι οὐκ ἐδύναντο  
 λαβεῖν τὸ χωρίον καὶ γὰρ |ditch ἦν περὶ αὐτὸ εὐρεία  
 |delay; sing καὶ |palisade, ἐπὶ τῆς ἀναβολῆς καὶ |tower,  
 |stake castle  
 |dense, |wooden πεποιημένοι, ἀπιέναι δὲ |do, try, attack οἱ δὲ  
 |frequent;  
 |shrewd  
 |impose; shut a door ὥς δὲ οὐκ ἐδύναντο |run away ἦν γὰρ  
 ἐφ' ἐνὸς ἡ |way down ἐκ τοῦ χωρίου εἰς τὴν |torrent,  
 |gorge  
 πέμπουσι πρὸς Ξενοφῶντα· ὁ δὲ ἡγείτο τοῖς |hoplite, heavy  
 |infantryman  
 ὁ δὲ ἐλθὼν λέγει ὅτι ἔστι χωρίον χρημάτων πολλῶν  
 |full τοῦτο οὔτε λαβεῖν δυνάμεθα· |strong, force· ἐστίν·  
 |ful, violent  
 οὔτε ἀπελθεῖν ῥάδιον· μάχονται γὰρ |sally καὶ  
 ἡ |departure, re- ἡ.  
 |turn; toilet,  
 |shit  
 Ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Ξενοφῶν |bring to a place πρὸς τὴν  
 |torrent, τοὺς μὲν |hoplite, heavy |tool  
 |gorge |infantryman  
 αὐτὸς δὲ |pass over, cross· ἵς λοχαγοῖς |behold, |which, ἣ  
 |consider |whichever  
 κρεῖττον |lead away, back· τοὺς |pass over, cross ἦ καὶ

of sheep and other things, proceeded to attack the place. Close at their heels followed a number of those who had set out on the foray armed with spears, so that the storming party across the ravine amounted to more than two thousand. But, finding that they could not take the place by a coup de main, as there was a trench running round it, mounded up some breadth, with a stockade on the top of the earthwork and a close-packed row of wooden bastions, they made an attempt to run back, but the enemy fell upon them from the rear. To get away by a sudden rush was out of the question, since the descent from the fortress into the ravine only admitted of moving in single file. Under the circumstances they sent to Xenophon, who was in command of the heavy infantry. The messenger came and delivered his message: «There is a fastness choke full of all sorts of stores, but we cannot take it, it is too strong; nor can we easily get away; the enemy rush out and deliver battle, and the return is difficult.»

On hearing this, Xenophon pushed forward his heavy infantry to the edge of the ravine, and there ordered them to take up a position, while he himself with the officers crossed over to determine whether it were better to withdraw the party already across, or to bring over the heavy infantry also, on the supposition

*vocabulary***ἀγωνίζομαι** contend, exert oneself**ἀκοντίζω** throw, (+gen) at ~acute**ἀκροβολίζομαι** fight with missiles**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured ~helix**ἀναχωρίζω** force back**ἀνδραγαθία** bravery**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not  
needing ~Sp. sin**ἀντιποιέω** do in return; (mid) seek,  
claim**ἀπάγω** lead away, back ~demagogue**ἀποδείκνυμι** (ō) show, point out;  
appoint; (mid) declare**γυμνής** light infantry; serf**διαβιβάζω** carry over**διφθέρα** leather**ἔξοδος** (f) leaving, way out**ἐπιβάλλω** throw upon, head for  
~ballistic**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable**κράτιστος** best**λίθος** (f) stone ~monolith**λοχαγέω** (ᾱ) lead a company**λοχαγός** (ᾱ) captain**λόχος** ambush, band, childbirth ~lie**μάντις** -ος (m) seer ~mantis**μεστός** full**νευρά** bowstring ~neuro**ὀπλίτης** -ου (ī, m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
infantryman ~hoplite**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon,  
recommend, encourage**πελταστής** -οῦ (m, 1) light troops  
~pelt**πλησίος** near, neighboring**σημαίνω** give orders to; show; mark  
~semaphore**τοξεύω** shoot an arrow at ~toxic**τοξότης** -ου (m, 1) archer ~toxic**χωρίον** area; downwards

τοὺς ὀπλίτας διαβιβάζειν, ὡς ἀλόντος ἂν τοῦ χωρίου.  
 ἐδόκει γὰρ τὸ μὲν ἀπαγαγεῖν οὐκ εἶναι ἄνευ πολλῶν  
 νεκρῶν, ἐλεῖν δ' ἂν ὄντο καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ τὸ χωρίον,  
 καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ξυνεχώρησε τοῖς ἱεροῖς πιστεύσας·  
 οἱ γὰρ μάντιες ἀποδεδειγμένοι ἦσαν ὅτι μάχη μὲν  
 ἔσται, τὸ δὲ τέλος καλὸν τῆς ἐξόδου. καὶ τοὺς μὲν  
 λοχαγοὺς ἔπεμπε διαβιβάσοντας τοὺς ὀπλίτας, αὐτοὺς  
 δ' ἔμενεν ἀναχωρίσας ἅπαντας τοὺς πελταστάς, καὶ  
 οὐδένα εἶα ἀκροβολίζεσθαι. ἐπεὶ δ' ἦκον οἱ ὀπλίται,  
 ἐκέλευσε τὸν λόχον ἕκαστον ποιῆσαι τῶν λοχαγῶν ὡς  
 ἂν κράτιστα οἴηται ἀγωνιεῖσθαι· ἦσαν γὰρ οἱ λοχαγοὶ  
 πλησίον ἀλλήλων οἱ πάντα τὸν χρόνον ἀλλήλοις περὶ  
 ἀνδραγαθίας ἀντεποιοῦντο. καὶ οἱ μὲν ταῦτ' ἐποιοῦν·  
 ὁ δὲ τοῖς πελτασταῖς πᾶσι παρήγγειλε διηγκυλωμένους  
 ἶεναι, ὡς, ὁπότεν σημήνη, ἀκοντίζειν, καὶ τοὺς τοξότας  
 ἐπιβεβληθῆναι ἐπὶ ταῖς νευραῖς, ὡς, ὁπότεν σημήνη,  
 τοξεύειν δεῖσον, καὶ τοὺς γυμνήτας λίθων ἔχειν μεστὰς  
 τὰς διφθέρας· καὶ τοὺς ἐπιτηδείους ἔπεμψε τούτων



τοὺς ὀπλίτας |carry over , ὥς |be captured` , τοῦ χωρίου.  
 ἐδόκει γὰρ τὸ μὲν |lead away, back` c εἶναι |away from;`nōt having; not  
 needing  
 νεκρῶν, ἐλεῖν δ' ἂν ᾤοντο καὶ οἱ |captain τὸ χωρίον,  
 καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ξυνεχώρησε τοῖς ἱεροῖς πιστεύσας·  
 οἱ γὰρ |seer |show, point out; ap-σαν ὅτι μάχη μὲν  
 |point; (mid) declare  
 ἔσται, τὸ δὲ τέλος καλὸν τῆς |leaving, way out τοὺς μὲν  
 |captain ἔπεμπε |carry over τοὺς ὀπλίτας, αὐτὸς  
 δ' ἔμενεν |force back ἅπαντας τοὺς |light troops , καὶ  
 οὐδένα εἶα |fight with missiles . ἐπεὶ δ' ἦκον οἱ ὀπλίται,  
 ἐκέλευσε τὸν |ambush,`band, ν ποιῆσαι τῶν λοχαγῶν ὥς  
 childbirth  
 ἂν |best οὔηται |contend, exert ἦσαν γὰρ οἱ |captain  
 |oneself  
 πλησίον ἀλλήλων οἱ πάντα τὸν χρόνον ἀλλήλοις περὶ  
 ἀνδραγαθίας |do in return; καὶ οἱ μὲν ταῦτ' ἐποιοῦν·  
 |(mid) seek, claim  
 ὁ δὲ τοῖς |light troops πᾶσι παρήγγειλε διηγκυλωμένους  
 ἰέναι, ὥς, ὁπόταν |give , |throw, (+gen) at ` τοὺς |archer  
 |orders  
 |throw upon ἐπὶ τοῖς |to; show; ὥς, ὁπόταν |give orders to; show;  
 |mark |bowstring |mark  
 |shoot an arrow at , καὶ τοὺς |light λίθων ἔχειν |full  
 |infantry;  
 τὰς |leather καὶ τοὺς ἐπιτηδείους ἔπεμψε τούτων  
 |serf

that the fortress might be taken. In favour of the latter opinion it was agreed that the retreat must cost many lives, and the officers were further disposed to think, they could take the place. Xenophon consented, relying on the victims, for the seers had announced, that there would be a battle, but that the result of the expedition would be good. So he sent the officers to bring the heavy troops across, while he himself remained, having drawn off all the light infantry and forbidden all sharp-shooting at long range. As soon as the heavy infantry had arrived, he ordered each captain to form his company, in whatever way he hoped to make it most effective in the coming struggle. Side by side together they stood, these captains, not for the first time to-day competitors for the award of manly virtue. While they were thus employed, he—the general—was engaged in passing down his order along the ranks of the light infantry and archers respectively to march with the javelin on its thong and the arrow to the string, ready at the word «shoot” to discharge their missiles, while the light troops were to have their wallets well stocked with slingstones; lastly, he despatched his adjutants to see to the proper carrying out

*vocabulary*

ἄκρον crest, extremity ~acute  
 ἄκρος at the edge, extreme ~acute  
 ἀλίσκομαι be captured ~helix  
 ἀρπάζω carry off, seize ~harpoon  
 βέλος -εος (n, 3) missile ~ballistic  
 δρόμος running, racing ground  
 ~hippodrome  
 εἰστρέχω run in  
 ἐλελίζω shake; turn, rally ~helix  
 ἔλκω drag, pull, hoist; rape  
 ἐπιμελέομαι take care of, oversee  
 θέω run, run for  
 ἰσχυρός (ῥ) strong, forceful, violent  
 κατακωλύω hinder from  
 κατατίθημι put down, deposit, lay  
 aside ~thesis  
 κραυγή screaming, shouting  
 λίθεος made of stone ~monolith  
 λίθος (f) stone ~monolith  
 λόγχη spear point; lot  
 λοχαγός (ᾱ) captain  
 μεταξύ between  
 μηνοειδής crescent-shaped  
 ὁμός same ~homoerotic  
 ὁμοῦ together  
 ὁμῶ unite ~homoerotic

ὀπλίτης -ου (ι, m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
 infantryman ~hoplite  
 ὄπλον tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
 ~hoplite  
 ὀπόσος as many as, how many, how  
 great  
 παιανίζω (ᾱ) chant in victory  
 παρατάσσω place beside  
 πελταστής -οῦ (m, 1) light troops  
 ~pelt  
 προσφέρω present; resemble; add  
 πύλη gate ~Thermopylae  
 σάλπιγξ -γος (f) trumpet  
 σταύρωμα palisade  
 σφενδόνη sling  
 τάξις -εως (f) arrangement, military  
 unit  
 τόξευμα -τος (n, 3) arrow  
 τῦρσις tower, castle  
 ὑπολόχαγος (ᾱ) under-lieutenant  
 φθέγγομαι make a sound, utter  
 ~diphthong  
 χείρων worse, more base, inferior,  
 weaker  
 χιτῶν -ος (m, 3) tunic, armor  
 χωρίον area; downwards  
 ψιλός (ι) naked, bare ~epsilon

ἐπιμεληθῆναι.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ πάντα παρεσκεύαστο καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ καὶ οἱ ὑπολόχαγοι καὶ οἱ ἀξιούντες τούτων μὴ χείρους εἶναι πάντες παρατεταγμένοι ἦσαν, καὶ ἀλλήλους μὲν δὴ ξυνεώρων μνηνοειδῆς γὰρ διὰ τὸ χωρίον ἡ τάξις ἦν· ἐπεὶ δ' ἐπαιάνισαν καὶ ἡ σάλπιγξ ἐφθέγγετο, ἅμα τε τῷ Ἐνναλίῳ ἠλέλιξαν καὶ ἔθρον δρόμῳ οἱ ὀπλῖται, καὶ τὰ βέλη ὁμοῦ ἐφέρετο, λόγchai, τοξεύματα, σφειδόναι, πλείστοι δ' ἐκ τῶν χειρῶν λίθοι, ἦσαν δὲ οἱ καὶ πῦρ προσέφερον. ὑπὸ δὲ τοῦ πλήθους τῶν βελῶν ἔλιπον οἱ πολέμοι τά τε σταυρώματα καὶ τὰς τύρσεις· ὥστε Ἀγασίας Στυμφάλιος καταθέμενος τὰ ὄπλα ἐν χιτῶνι μόνον ἀνέβη, καὶ ἄλλος ἄλλον εἶλκε, καὶ ἄλλος ἀνεβεβήκει, καὶ ἠλώκει τὸ χωρίον, ὡς ἐδόκει. καὶ οἱ μὲν πελτασταὶ καὶ οἱ ψιλοὶ ἐσδραμόντες ἤρπαζον ὅ τι ἕκαστος ἐδύνατο· ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν στὰς κατὰ τὰς πύλας ὁπόσους ἐδύνατο κατεκώλυε τῶν ὀπλιτῶν ἕξω· πολέμοι γὰρ ἄλλοι ἐφαίνοντο ἐπ' ἄκροις τισὶν ἰσχυροῖς. οὐ πολλοῦ δὲ χρόνου μεταξὺ γενομένου κραυγῇ τε ἐγένετο

|take care of,  
|oversee

Ἐπεὶ δὲ πάντα παρεσκεύαστο καὶ οἱ |captain καὶ οἱ  
|under-lieutenant καὶ οἱ ἀξιοῦντες τούτων μὴ |worse, more base  
πάντες |place beside ἦσαν, καὶ ἀλλήλους μὲν δὴ  
ξυνεώρων |crescent-shaped διὰ τὸ χωρίον ἢ τάξις ἦν· ἐπεὶ δ'  
|chant in victory ἢ |trumpet |make a sound, utter τῷ Ἐνναλίῳ  
|shake; turn αἰ |run |running οἱ ὀπλῖται, καὶ τὰ |missile μοῦ  
ἐφέρετο, |spear , |arrow , |sling , πλείστοι δ' ἐκ  
τῶν χειρῶν |lot λίθοι, ἦσαν δὲ οἱ καὶ πῦρ προσέφερον. ὑπὸ  
δὲ τοῦ πλήθους τῶν |missile ἔλιπον οἱ πολέμοι τά τε  
|palisade καὶ τὰς |tower, ὥστε Ἀγασίας Στυμφάλιος  
|castle  
|put down τὰ ὄπλα ἐν χιτῶνι μόνον ἀνέβη, καὶ ἄλλος  
ἄλλον εἶλκε, καὶ ἄλλος ἀνεβεβήκει, καὶ |be captured χωρίον,  
ὥς ἐδόκει. καὶ οἱ μὲν |light troops καὶ οἱ |naked, |run in  
|bare  
|carry off, seize ἕκαστος ἐδύνατο· ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν στὰς κατὰ  
τὰς πύλας |as/how many/great |hinder from τῶν ὀπλιτῶν ἔξω·  
πολέμοι γὰρ ἄλλοι ἐφαίνοντο ἐπ' ἄκροις τισὶν ἰσχυροῖς.  
οὐ πολλοῦ δὲ χρόνου |between γενομένου |screaming, - ἐγένετο  
|shouting

of these orders.

And now the preparations were complete: the officers and lieutenants and all others claiming to be peers of these, were drawn up in their several places. With a glance each was able to command the rest in the crescent-like disposition which the ground invited. Presently the notes of the battle hymn arose, the clarion spoke, and with a thrilling cry in honour of the warrior-god, commenced a rush of the heavy infantry at full speed under cover of a storm of missiles, lances, arrows, bullets, but most of all stones hurled from the hand with ceaseless pelt, while there were some who brought firebrands to bear. Overwhelmed by this crowd of missiles, the enemy left their stockades and their bastion towers, which gave Agasias the Stymphalian and Philoxenus of Pellene a chance not to be missed; laying aside their heavy arms, up they went in bare tunics only, and one hauled another up, and meantime another had mounted, and the place was taken, as they thought. Then the peltasts and light troops rushed in and began snatching what each man could. Xenophon the while, posted at the gates, kept back as many of the hoplites as he could, for there were other enemies now visible on certain strong citadel heights; and after a lapse of no long time a shout arose within,

*vocabulary*

**ἄκρα** at the edge, extreme ~acute  
**ἄκρη** at the edge, extreme  
**ἄκρῑς** -ός (f) hilltop ~acute  
**ἄκρον** crest, extremity ~acute  
**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme ~acute  
**ἀνάλωτος** impregnable  
**ἀσφαλής** safe, easy, steady, careful  
**ἄφοδος** departure, return; toilet, shit  
**διαιρέω** divide, distinguish, distribute  
**διαρπάζω** make prey of ~harpoon  
**εἰσωθέω** thrust into  
**ἐκκομίζω** remove; bury a corpse  
**ἐκπίπτω** fall out of ~petal  
**ἐκτρέχω** run out  
**Ἑλλήν** Greek  
**ἐνδον** in the house of; within  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**ἐρωτάω** ask about something  
**θύρετρα** -ου (n, 2) door ~door

**κατακλείω** enclose; shut up  
**κῆρυξ** -κος (m) henchman, functionary  
**λοχαγός** (ᾱ) captain  
**ὀπλίτης** -ου (ī, m, 1) hoplite, heavy infantryman ~hoplite  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle ~hoplite  
**παίω** hit  
**παντάπασιν** altogether; yes, certainly  
**σκοπέω** behold, consider  
**σταυρός** stake ~station  
**σταύρωμα** palisade  
**σωτηρία** saving, preservation  
**τάχα** quickly, soon; perhaps ~tachometer  
**τιτρώσκω** wound, bring to grief ~trauma  
**χωρίον** area; downwards  
**ώθισμός** thrusting, jostling

ἔνδον καὶ ἔφευγον οἱ μὲν καὶ ἔχοντες ἃ ἔλαβον, τάχα δέ τις καὶ τετρωμένος· καὶ πολὺς ἦν ὠθισμὸς ἀμφὶ τὰ θύρετρα. καὶ ἐρωτώμενοι οἱ ἐκπίπτοντες ἔλεγον ὅτι ἄκρα τέ ἐστιν ἔνδον καὶ οἱ πολέμιοι πολλοί, οἳ παίουσιν ἐκδεδραμηκότες τοὺς ἔνδον ἀνθρώπους.

Ἐνταῦθα ἀνειπεῖν ἐκέλευσε Τολμίδην τὸν κήρυκα ἰέναι εἴσω τὸν βουλόμενόν τι λαμβάνειν. καὶ ἵενται πολλοὶ εἴσω, καὶ νικῶσι τοὺς ἐκπίπτοντας οἱ εἰσωθούμενοι καὶ κατακλείουσι τοὺς πολεμίους πάλιν εἰς τὴν ἄκραν. καὶ τὰ μὲν ἔξω τῆς ἄκρας πάντα διηρπάσθη, καὶ ἐξεκομίσαντο οἱ Ἕλληνες· οἱ δὲ ὀπλίται ἔθεντο τὰ ὄπλα, οἱ μὲν περὶ τὰ σταυρώματα, οἱ δὲ κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν τὴν ἐπὶ τὴν ἄκραν φέρουσιν. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἐσκόπουν εἰ οἷόν τε εἶη τὴν ἄκραν λαβεῖν· ἦν γὰρ οὕτως σωτηρία ἀσφαλής, ἄλλως δὲ πάνυ χαλεπὸν ἐδόκει εἶναι ἀπελθεῖν· σκοπουμένοις δὲ αὐτοῖς ἔδοξε παντάπασιν ἀνάλωτον εἶναι τὸ χωρίον. ἐνταῦθα παρεσκευάζοντο τὴν ἄφοδον, καὶ τοὺς μὲν σταυροὺς ἕκαστοι τοὺς καθ' αὐτοὺς διήρουν, καὶ



|in the house ῥευγον οἱ μὲν καὶ ἔχοντες ἂ ἔλαβον, |quickly, 'soon;  
|of; within |perhaps

καὶ |wound, bring καὶ πολὺς ἦν |thrusting, ἀμφὶ τὰ |door  
|to grief |jostling

καὶ ἐρωτώμενοι οἱ |fall out of ἔλεγον ὅτι ἄκρα τέ ἐστιν

|in the house πολέμιοι πολλοί, οἳ |hit |run out  
|of; within

τοὺς |in the house ὕπους.  
|of; within

|there, here ἀνειπεῖν ἐκέλευσε Τολμίδην τὸν |henchman, 'αι  
|functionary

εἴσω τὸν βουλόμενόν τι λαμβάνειν. καὶ ἵενται πολλοὶ

εἴσω, καὶ νικῶσι τοὺς |fall out of οἱ |thrust into καὶ

|enclose; shut up οὺς πολεμίους πάλιν εἰς τὴν ἄκραν. καὶ τὰ

μὲν ἔξω τῆς ἄκρας πάντα |make prey of καὶ |remove; inter

οἱ |Greek οἱ δὲ |hoplite, heavy το τὰ |tool , οἱ μὲν περὶ  
|infantryman

τὰ |palisade , οἱ δὲ κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν τὴν ἐπὶ τὴν ἄκραν

φέρουσιν. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν καὶ οἱ |captain |behold, εἰ  
|consider

οἶόν τε εἴη τὴν ἄκραν λαβεῖν· ἦν γὰρ οὕτως σωτηρία

ἀσφαλής, ἄλλως δὲ πάνυ χαλεπὸν ἐδόκει εἶναι ἀπελθεῖν·

|behold, consider δὲ αὐτοῖς ἔδοξε |altogether; yes, |impregnable ἵναι  
|certainly

τὸ χωρίον. |there, here ἀρσκευάζοντο τὴν |departure, 're- ὡς  
|turn; toilet,

μὲν |stake ἕκαστοι τοὺς καθ' αὐτοὺς |shit  
|divide, , distin-  
|guish, distribute

and the men came running back, some still clutching what they had seized; and presently here and there a wounded man; and mighty was the jostling about the portals. To the questions which were put to them the outpouring fugitives repeated the same story: there was a citadel within and enemies in crowds were making savage sallies and beating the fellows inside.

At that Xenophon ordered Tolmides the herald to proclaim: «Enter all who are minded to capture aught.” In poured the surging multitude, and the counter-current of persons elbowing their passage in prevailed over the stream of those who issued forth, until they beat back and cooped up the enemy within the citadel again. So outside the citadel everything was sacked and pillaged by the Hellenes, and the heavy infantry took up their position, some about the stockades, others along the road leading up to the citadel. Xenophon and the officers meantime considered the possibility of taking the citadel, for if so, their safety was assured; but if otherwise, it would be very difficult to get away. As the result of their deliberations they agreed that the place was impregnable. Then they began making preparations for the retreat. Each set of men proceeded to pull down the palisading which faced themselves; further, they sent away all who were

*vocabulary*

**ἄκρα** at the edge, extreme ~acute  
**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme ~acute  
**ἀναλάμπω** flame up  
**ἄνωθεν** from above, the beginning  
**ἀπορέω** be confused, distressed  
**ἀποχωρέω** go away from, retreat  
**ἀριστερός** left-hand  
**ἀσφαλής** safe, easy, steady, careful  
**ἀχρεῖος** serving no purpose ~chresard  
**γέρρον** wicker object  
**ἐκπέμπω** send forth ~pomp  
**ἐνάπτω** clad, bind; set on fire  
**ἐνδίδωμι** hand over, lend, show, allow  
**ἐνδοθεν** from within  
**ἐνθεν** thence, whence  
**ἐντίθημι** load; mp: take to heart  
 ~thesis  
**ἐξαπίνης** suddenly

**ἔπειμι** lie upon; approach ~ion  
**ἐπιριπτεύω** throw on  
**καίω** burn ~caustic  
**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon  
**κνημὶς** -δος (ī, f) greave  
**κράνος** -εος (n, 3) helmet; ship's ram  
**λόγχη** spear point; lot  
**λοχαγός** (ᾱ) captain  
**μηχανή** machine; mechanism, way  
**ξύλινος** wooden  
**ξύλον** piece of wood ~xylophone  
**ὀπλίτης** -ου (ī, m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
 infantryman ~hoplite  
**πύλη** gate ~Thermopylae  
**σωτηρία** saving, preservation  
**τύχη** fortune, act of a god  
**φοβερός** frightful, afraid  
**φορτίον** burden, load

τοὺς ἀχρείους καὶ φορτία ἔχοντάς τε ἐξεπέμποντο καὶ τῶν  
ὀπλιτῶν τὸ πλῆθος, καταλιπόντες οἱ λοχαγοὶ οἷς ἕκαστος  
ἐπίστευεν.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἤρξαντο ἀποχωρεῖν, ἐπεξέθεον ἔνδοθεν πολλοὶ  
γέρρα καὶ λόγχας ἔχοντες καὶ κνημίδας καὶ κράνη  
Παφλαγονικά, καὶ ἄλλοι ἐπὶ τὰς οἰκίας ἀνέβαινον τὰς  
ἐνθεν καὶ ἐνθεν τῆς εἰς τὴν ἄκραν φερούσης ὁδοῦ· ὥστε  
οὐδὲ διώκειν ἀσφαλὲς ἦν κατὰ τὰς πύλας τὰς εἰς τὴν  
ἄκραν φερούσας. καὶ γὰρ ξύλα μεγάλα ἐπερρίπτουν  
ἄνωθεν, ὥστε χαλεπὸν ἦν καὶ μένειν καὶ ἀπιέναι· καὶ  
ἡ νύξ φοβερὰ ἦν ἡ ἐπιούσα. μαχομένων δὲ αὐτῶν καὶ  
ἀπορουμένων θεῶν τις αὐτοῖς μηχανὴν σωτηρίας δίδωσιν.  
ἐξαπίνης γὰρ ἀνέλαμβεν οἰκία τῶν ἐν δεξιᾷ ὅτου δὴ  
ἐνάψαντος. ὥς δ' αὕτη ξυνέπιπτεν, ἔφευγον οἱ ἀπὸ τῶν  
ἐν δεξιᾷ οἰκιῶν.

Ὡς δὲ ἔμαθεν ὁ Ξενοφῶν τοῦτο παρὰ τῆς τύχης, ἐνάπτειν  
ἐκέλευε καὶ τὰς ἐν ἀριστερᾷ οἰκίας, αἱ ξύλιναι ἦσαν, ὥστε  
καὶ ταχὺ ἐκαίοντο. ἔφευγον οὖν καὶ οἱ ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν

τοὺς |serving no pur-|burden, load τάς τε |send forth καὶ τῶν  
|pose  
|hoplite, heavy :λήθος, |leave behind, οἱ |captain οἷς ἕκαστος  
|infantryman |abandon  
ἐπίστευεν.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἤρξαντο |go away, ἐπεξέθειον ἔνδοθεν πολλοὶ  
|from, retreat  
|wicker καὶ |spear ἔχοντες καὶ |greave καὶ |helmet; ship's ram  
|object |point;  
|lot  
Παφλαγονικῶν, καὶ ἄλλοι ἐπὶ τὰς οἰκίας ἀνέβαινον τὰς  
ἐνθεν καὶ ἐνθεν τῆς εἰς τὴν ἄκραν φερούσης ὁδοῦ· ὥστε  
οὐδὲ διώκειν |safe, easy, κατὰ τὰς |gate τὰς εἰς τὴν  
|steady, careful  
ἄκραν φερούσας. καὶ γὰρ |piece of wood . |throw on  
|from above, γε χαλεπὸν ἦν καὶ μένειν καὶ ἀπιέναι· καὶ  
|the beginning  
ἦ νύξ |frightful, ἦν ἡ |lie upon; approach... ἴνων δὲ αὐτῶν καὶ  
|afraid  
|be confused, θεῶν τις αὐτοῖς |machine; mecha-,ρίας δίδωσιν.  
|distressed |nism, way  
|suddenly γὰρ |flame up οἰκία τῶν ἐν δεξιᾷ ὅτου δὴ  
|clad, bind; ὡς δ' αὕτη ξυνέπιπτεν, ἔφευγον οἱ ἀπὸ τῶν  
|set on fire  
ἐν δεξιᾷ οἰκίων.

Ὡς δὲ ἔμαθεν ὁ Ξενοφῶν τοῦτο παρὰ τῆς |fortune, |clad, bind;  
|act of a|set on fire  
ἐκέλευε καὶ τὰς ἐν |left-hand οἰκίας, αἱ |wooden ἦσαν, ὥστε  
καὶ ταχὺ |burn . ἔφευγον οὖν καὶ οἱ ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν

useless or who had enough to do to carry their burdens, with the mass of the heavy infantry accompanying them; the officers in each case leaving behind men whom they could severally depend on.

But as soon as they began to retreat, out rushed upon them from within a host of fellows, armed with wicker shields and lances, greaves and Paphlagonian helmets. Others might be seen scaling the houses on this side and that of the road leading into the citadel. Even pursuit in the direction of the citadel was dangerous, since the enemy kept hurling down on them great beams from above, so that to stop and to make off were alike dangerous, and night approaching was full of terrors. But in the midst of their fighting and their despair some god gave them a means of safety. All of a sudden, by whatsoever hand ignited, a flame shot up; it came from a house on the right hand, and as this gradually fell in, the people from the other houses on the right took to their heels and fled.

Xenophon, laying this lesson of fortune to heart, gave orders to set fire to the left-hand houses also, which being of wood burned quickly, with the result that the occupants of these also took to flight. The

*vocabulary*

ἄκρᾱ at the edge, extreme ~acute  
 ἄκρῃ at the edge, extreme  
 ἄκρῖς -ός (f) hilltop ~acute  
 ἄλλοτε at another time ~alien  
 βέλος -εος (n, 3) missile ~ballistic  
 δῆλος visible, conspicuous  
 διαφαίνω seem, show through  
 ~photon  
 διοράω see clearly, distinguish  
 Ἑλλῆν Greek  
 ἐνάπτω clad, bind; set on fire  
 ἐνέδρα ambush, trickery  
 ἐνταῦθα there, here  
 ἐξοδος (f) leaving, way out  
 ἐπείκειμαι impose; shut a door  
 ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable  
 κατάβασις -εως (f) way down  
 κατακαίω burn down ~caustic

λάσιος shaggy, overgrown ~lanolin  
 λυπέω (ἴ) annoy, distress  
 μόλις with difficulty, barely  
 ξύλον piece of wood ~xylophone  
 παραγγέλλω transmit; order, summon,  
 recommend, encourage  
 πέλτη shield, spear ~pelt  
 πέλτης -ου (m, 1) type of river fish  
 ~pelt  
 προανής (ᾱ) prone; precipitous  
 προσποιέω give over to; pretend  
 ~poet  
 σταύρωμα palisade  
 στενός narrow  
 τῦρσις tower, castle  
 ὕστεραῖος the next; later  
 χαράκωμα palisade  
 χωρίον area; downwards

οικιών. οἱ δὲ κατὰ στόμα δὴ ἔτι μόνοι ἐλύπουν καὶ δηλοῖ  
 ἦσαν ὅτι ἐπικείσονται ἐν τῇ ἐξόδῳ τε καὶ καταβάσει.  
 ἐνταῦθα παραγγέλλει φέρειν ξύλα ὅσοι ἐτύγχανον ἔξω  
 ὄντες τῶν βελῶν εἰς τὸ μέσον ἑαυτῶν καὶ τῶν πολεμίων.  
 ἐπεὶ δὲ ἱκανὰ ἤδη ἦν, ἐνήψαν· ἐνήπτον δὲ καὶ τὰς παρ'  
 αὐτὸ τὸ χαράκωμα οἰκίας, ὅπως οἱ πολέμοι ἀμφὶ ταῦτα  
 ἔχοιεν. οὕτω μόλις ἀπῆλθον ἀπὸ τοῦ χωρίου, πῦρ  
 ἐν μέσῳ ἑαυτῶν καὶ τῶν πολεμίων ποιησάμενοι. καὶ  
 κατεκαύθη πᾶσα ἡ πόλις καὶ αἱ οἰκίαι καὶ αἱ τύρσεις καὶ  
 τὰ σταυρώματα καὶ τᾶλλα πάντα πλὴν τῆς ἄκρας.

Τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ ἀπῆσαν οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔχοντες τὰ ἐπιτήδεια.  
 ἐπεὶ δὲ τὴν κατάβασιν ἐφοβοῦντο τὴν εἰς Τραπεζοῦντα  
 πρηνὴς γὰρ ἦν καὶ στενὴ, ψευδενέδραν ἐποιήσαντο·  
 καὶ ἀνὴρ Μυσὸς καὶ τοῦνομα τοῦτο ἔχων τῶν Κρητῶν  
 λαβὼν δέκα ἔμενεν ἐν λασίῳ χωρίῳ καὶ προσεποιεῖτο  
 τοὺς πολεμίους πειρᾶσθαι λανθάνειν· αἱ δὲ πέλται αὐτῶν  
 ἄλλοτε καὶ ἄλλοτε διεφαίνοντο χαλκαῖ οὖσαι. οἱ μὲν οὖν  
 πολέμοι ταῦτα διορῶντες ἐφοβοῦντο ὡς ἐνέδραν οὖσαν·  
 ἢ



οἰκιῶν. οἱ δὲ κατὰ στόμα δὴ ἔτι μόνοι |annoy, |distress και |visible, |conspicuous

ἦσαν ὅτι |impose; shut a door . ἡ |leaving, way out |way down .

|there, here |transmit; order, |summon, |piece of wood . ὕγχανον ἔξω  
|recommend, encourage

ὄντες τῶν |missile εἰς τὸ μέσον ἐαυτῶν καὶ τῶν πολεμίων.

ἐπεὶ δὲ ἱκανὰ ἤδη ἦν, |clad, bind; |clad, bind; ἔ καὶ τὰς παρ'  
|set on fire |set on fire

αὐτὸ τὸ |palisade οἰκίας, ὅπως οἱ πολέμοι ἀμφὶ ταῦτα

ἔχοιεν. οὕτω |with difficulty, |θον ἀπὸ τοῦ |area; downwards  
|barely

ἐν μέσῳ ἐαυτῶν καὶ τῶν πολεμίων ποιησάμενοι. καὶ

|burn down πᾶσα ἡ πόλις καὶ αἱ οἰκίαι καὶ αἱ |tower, |castle  
καὶ

τὰ |palisade καὶ τᾶλλα πάντα πλὴν τῆς ἄκρας.

Τῇ δὲ |the next; later ἀπῆσαν οἱ |Greek ἔχοντες τὰ |fit, suitable .

ἐπεὶ δὲ τὴν κατάβασιν ἐφοβοῦντο τὴν εἰς Τραπεζοῦντα

|prone; precipitous γὰρ ἦν καὶ |narrow ψευδενέδραν ἐποίησαντο·

καὶ ἀνὴρ Μυσὸς καὶ τοῦνομα τοῦτο ἔχων τῶν Κρητῶν

λαβὼν δέκα ἔμενεν ἐν λασίῳ |area; |down- |give over to;  
|wards |pretend

τοὺς πολεμίους πειρᾶσθαι λανθάνειν· αἱ δὲ πέλται αὐτῶν

|at another |at an- |seem, show through  
|time |other

πολέμοι τὰ |time διορῶντες ἐφοβοῦντο ὡς |ambush, |trickery  
οὐσαν·

ἡ

men immediately at their front were the sole annoyance now, and these were safe to fall upon them as they made their exit and in their descent. Here then the word was passed for all who were out of range to bring up logs of wood and pile them between themselves and the enemy, and when there was enough of these they set them on fire; they also fired the houses along the trench-work itself, so as to occupy the attention of the enemy. Thus they got off, though with difficulty, and escaped from the place by putting a fire between them and the enemy; and the whole city was burnt down, houses, turrets, stockading, and everything belonging to it except the citadel.

Next day the Hellenes were bent on getting back with the provisions; but as they dreaded the descent to Trapezus, which was precipitous and narrow, they laid a false ambuscade, and a Mysian, called after the name of his nation (Mysus), took ten of the Cretans and halted in some thick brushy ground, where he made a feint of endeavouring to escape the notice of the enemy. The glint of their light shields, which were of brass, now and again gleamed through the brushwood. The enemy, seeing it all through the thicket, were confirmed in their fears of an ambuscade. But the army meanwhile

*vocabulary*

**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured ~helix  
**ἀναλαμβάνω** take up, recover, resume  
**ἀναχωρέω** return, retreat ~heir  
**ἀντιτοξεύω** shoot arrows in return  
**ἀσθενέω** be weak, sick  
**βοάω** shout  
**δρόμος** running, racing ground  
 ~hippodrome  
**εἰσβιβάζω** put aboard  
**ἐκπίπτω** fall out of ~petal  
**ἐμβιβάζω** put aboard  
**ἐξανίστημι** raise, bring/send out  
**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**καλινδέομαι** roll, wallow  
**κράτος** strength, power; victory

~democracy  
**νάπη** valley  
**σημαίνω** give orders to; show; mark  
 ~semaphore  
**σκευή** equipment  
**σκεῦος** -εος (n, 3) thing, tool, vessel  
**σκευόω** prepare, collect  
**στρατιά** army ~strategy  
**σῶς** safe, alive  
**τεσσαράκοντα** forty ~trapezoid  
**τετταράκοντα** forty  
**τιτρώσκω** wound, bring to grief  
 ~trauma  
**ὕλη** (ῥ) forest, firewood  
**ὕληεις** (ῥ) wooded  
**ὑπέρχομαι** go under

δὲ στρατιὰ ἐν τούτῳ κατέβαινον. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐδόκει ἤδη ἱκανὸν ὑπελλυθέναι, τῷ Μυσῶ ἐσήμηνε φεύγειν ἀνὰ κράτος· καὶ ὃς ἐξαναστὰς φεύγει καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ. καὶ οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι Κρήτες ἀλίσκεσθαι γὰρ ἔφασαν τῷ δρόμῳ, ἐκπεσόντες ἐκ τῆς ὁδοῦ εἰς ὕλην κατὰ τὰς νάπας καλινδούμενοι ἐσώθησαν, ὁ Μυσὸς δὲ κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν φεύγων ἐβόα βοηθεῖν· καὶ ἐβοήθησαν αὐτῷ, καὶ ἀνέλαβον τετρωμένον. καὶ αὐτοὶ ἐπὶ πόδα ἀνεχώρουν βαλλόμενοι οἱ βοηθήσαντες καὶ ἀντιτοξεύοντές τινες τῶν Κρητῶν. οὕτως ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον πάντες σῶοι ὄντες.

## 5.3

Ἐπεὶ δὲ οὔτε Χειρίσοφος ἦκεν οὔτε πλοῖα ἱκανὰ ἦν οὔτε τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἦν λαμβάνειν ἔτι, ἐδόκει ἀπιτέον εἶναι. καὶ εἰς μὲν τὰ πλοῖα τοὺς τε ἀσθενοῦντας ἐνεβίβασαν καὶ τοὺς ὑπὲρ τετταράκοντα ἔτη καὶ παῖδας καὶ γυναῖκας καὶ τῶν σκευῶν ὅσα μὴ ἀνάγκη ἦν ἔχειν. καὶ Φιλήσιον καὶ Σοφαίνετον τοὺς πρεσβυτάτους τῶν στρατηγῶν εἰσβιβάσαντες τούτων ἐκέλευον ἐπιμελεῖσθαι· οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι

δὲ στρατιὰ ἐν τούτῳ κατέβαινεν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐδόκει ἤδη ἱκανὸν

|go under , τῷ Μυσῶ |give orders' to; 'ειν ἀνά |strength, .....  
|show; mark |power; vic-  
ὡς |raise, bring/send' γει καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ. καὶ οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι  
|out |tory

Κρήτες |be captured γὰρ ἔφασαν τῷ |running |fall out of

ἐκ τῆς ὁδοῦ εἰς ὕλην κατὰ τὰς |valley |roll, wallow

ἐσώθησαν, ὁ Μυσὸς δὲ κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν φεύγων |shout

βοηθεῖν· καὶ ἐβοήθησαν αὐτῷ, καὶ |take up|wound, bring-  
|recover, |to grief  
καὶ αὐτοὶ ἐπὶ πόδα |return, |resume  
|retreat βαλλόμενοι οἱ βοηθήσαντες

καὶ |shoot arrows in τινες τῶν Κρητῶν. οὕτως ἀφίκοντο  
|return

ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον πάντες σῶοι ὄντες.

### 5.3

Ἐπεὶ δὲ οὔτε Χειρίσοφος ἦκεν οὔτε πλοῖα ἱκανὰ ἦν οὔτε

τὰ |fit, suitable ἦν λαμβάνειν ἔτι, ἐδόκει ἀπιτέον εἶναι. καὶ

εἰς μὲν τὰ πλοῖα τοὺς τε ἀσθενοῦντας |put aboard καὶ

τοὺς ὑπὲρ τετταράκοντα ἔτη καὶ παῖδας καὶ γυναῖκας

καὶ τῶν σκευῶν ὅσα μὴ ἀνάγκη ἦν ἔχειν. καὶ Φιλήσιον

καὶ Σοφαίνετον τοὺς πρεσβυτάτους τῶν στρατηγῶν

|put aboard τούτων ἐκέλευον |take care of, οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι  
|oversee

was quietly making its descent; and when it appeared that they had crept down far enough, the signal was given to the Mysian to flee as fast as he could, and he, springing up, fled with his men. The rest of the party, that is the Cretans, saying, «We are caught if we race,” left the road and plunged into a wood, and tumbling and rolling down the gullies were saved. The Mysian, fleeing along the road, kept crying for assistance, which they sent him, and picked him up wounded. The party of rescue now beat a retreat themselves with their face to the foe, exposed to a shower of missiles, to which some of the Cretan bowmen responded with their arrows. In this way they all reached the camp in safety.

### 5.3

Now when Cheirisophus did not arrive, and the supply of ships was insufficient, and to get provisions longer was impossible, they resolved to depart. On board the vessels they embarked the sick, and those above forty years of age, with the boys and women, and all the baggage which the soldiers were not absolutely forced to take for their own use. The two eldest generals, Philesius and Sophaenetus, were put

*vocabulary*

**αἰχμάλωτος** captive ~acute

**ἀνάθημα** -τος (n, 3) consecrated gift

~thesis

**ἀνατίθῃμι** consecrate, lay on, impute;  
(mp) reproach

**ἄποικος** abroad, colonizing

**ἀργύριον** small coin

**ἀριθμός** number

**δέκατος** tenth ~decimal

**διαλαμβάνω** distribute

**ἐνταῦθα** there, here

**ἐξαίρῶ** pick, steal; dedicate; destroy

~heresy

**ἑξακόσιοι** 600

**ἐξέτασις** scrutiny

**ἐπιγράφω** scratch, graze ~photograph

**θησαυρός** treasury ~treasure

**νόσος** (f) plague, pestilence ~noisome

**ὁδοποιέω** make a path

**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle

~hoplite

**τριταῖος** on the third day

**χίλιοι** (ti) thousand ~kilo-

**χιών** χιόνος (f, 3) snow

ἐπορεύοντο· ἡ δὲ ὁδὸς ὥδοποιημένη ἦν. καὶ ἀφικνούνται πορευόμενοι εἰς Κερασοῦντα τριταῖοι πόλιν Ἑλληνίδα ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ Σινωπέων ἄποικον ἐν τῇ Κολχίδι χώρα. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας δέκα· καὶ ἐξέτασις σὺν τοῖς ὅπλοις ἐγίγνετο καὶ ἀριθμός, καὶ ἐγένοντο ὀκτακισχίλιοι καὶ ἑξακόσιοι. οὗτοι ἐσώθησαν. οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι ἀπώλοντο ὑπὸ τε τῶν πολεμίων καὶ χιόνος καὶ εἴ τις νόσφ.

Ἐνταῦθα καὶ διαλαμβάνουσι τὸ ἀπὸ τῶν αἰχμαλώτων ἀργύριον γενόμενον. καὶ τὴν δεκάτην, ἣν τῷ Ἀπόλλωνι ἐξείλον καὶ τῇ Ἐφεσίᾳ Ἀρτέμιδι, διέλαβον οἱ στρατηγοὶ τὸ μέρος ἕκαστος φυλάττειν τοῖς θεοῖς· ἀντὶ δὲ Χειρισόφου Νέων ὁ Ἀσιναῖος ἔλαβε.

Ξενοφῶν οὖν τὸ μὲν τοῦ Ἀπόλλωνος ἀνάθημα ποιησάμενος ἀνατίθησιν εἰς τὸν ἐν Δελφοῖς τῶν Ἀθηναίων θησαυρὸν καὶ ἐπέγραψε τό τε αὐτοῦ ὄνομα καὶ τὸ Προξένου, ὃς σὺν Κλεάρχῳ ἀπέθανεν· ξένος γὰρ ἦν αὐτοῦ. τὸ δὲ τῆς Ἀρτέμιδος τῆς Ἐφεσίας, ὅτ' ἀπῆει σὺν Ἀγησιλάῳ ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας τὴν εἰς Βοιωτοὺς ὁδόν,



ἐπορεύοντο· ἡ δὲ ὁδὸς |make a path ἦν. καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται  
 πορευόμενοι εἰς Κερασοῦντα |on the third day Ἑλληνίδα  
 ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ Σινωπέων |abroad, ἐν τῇ Κολχίδι χώρα.  
 |colonizing  
 |there, here ἔμειναν ἡμέρας δέκα· καὶ |scrutiny σὺν τοῖς  
 |tool ἐγίνετο καὶ |number , καὶ ἐγένοντο ὀκτακισχίλιοι  
 καὶ |600 . οὗτοι ἐσώθησαν. οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι ἀπώλοντο  
 ὑπὸ τε τῶν πολεμίων καὶ |snow καὶ εἴ τις |plague

|there, here καὶ |distribute τὸ ἀπὸ τῶν |captive  
 |small coin γενόμενον. καὶ τὴν |tenth , ἦν τῷ Ἀπόλλωνι  
 |pick, steal; dedī- Ἐφεσία Ἀρτέμιδι. |distribute οἱ στρατηγοὶ τὸ  
 |cate; destroy  
 μέρος ἕκαστος φυλάττειν τοῖς θεοῖς· ἀντὶ δὲ Χειρισόφου  
 Νέων ὁ Ἀσιναῖος ἔλαβε.

Ξενοφῶν οὖν τὸ μὲν τοῦ Ἀπόλλωνος |consecrated gift  
 ποιησάμενος |consecrate, lay 'on, 'im- ' Δελφοῖς τῶν Ἀθηναίων  
 |pute; (mp) reproach  
 |treasury καὶ |graze τό τε αὐτοῦ ὄνομα καὶ τὸ  
 Προξένου, ὃς σὺν Κλεάρχῳ ἀπέθανεν· ξένος γὰρ ἦν  
 αὐτοῦ. τὸ δὲ τῆς Ἀρτέμιδος τῆς Ἐφεσίας, ὅτ' ἀπήει σὺν  
 Ἀγσιλάῳ ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας τὴν εἰς Βοιωτοὺς ὁδόν,

in charge, and so the party embarked, while the rest resumed their march, for the road was now completely constructed. Continuing their march that day and the next, on the third they reached Cerasus, a Hellenic city on the sea, and a colony of Sinope, in the country of the Colchians. Here they halted ten days, and there was a review and numbering of the troops under arms, when there were found to be eight thousand six hundred men. So many had escaped; the rest had perished at the hands of the enemy, or by reason of the snow, or else disease.

At this time and place they divided the money accruing from the captives sold, and a tithe selected for Apollo and Artemis of the Ephesians was divided between the generals, each of whom took a portion to guard for the gods, Neon the Asinaean taking on behalf of Cheirisophus.

Out of the portion which fell to Xenophon he caused a dedicatory offering to Apollo to be made and dedicated among the treasures of the Athenians at Delphi. It was inscribed with his own name and that of Proxenus, his friend, who was killed with Clearchus. The gift for Artemis of the Ephesians was, in the first instance, left behind by him in Asia at the time when he left that part of the world himself with Agesilaus on the march into Boeotia. He

*vocabulary*

**ἀγρεύω** catch (prey, fish)  
**ἄγρέω** come!  
**ἄγρός** field, wild ~agriculture  
**ἀναιρέω** take up ~heresy  
**ἀνατίθηναι** consecrate, lay on, impute;  
 (mp) reproach  
**ἀργύριον** small coin  
**βωμός** altar; stand, pedestal  
**δεκατεύω** take a tenth  
**διαρρέω** flow through  
**ἐνιμι** be in ~ion  
**ἐνίηναι** put in; motivate ~jet  
**ἐορτή** holiday, feast  
**ἐπιστέλλω** send to, order  
**θεωρέω** be sent to consult an oracle;  
 observe, contemplate  
**θήρα** hunt ~fierce  
**θυσία** sacrifice  
**ἰχθύς** -ος (m) fish ~ichthyology  
**καταλείπω** leave behind, abandon

~eclipse  
**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon  
**κινδυνεύω** encounter danger; (+inf)  
 there is a danger that  
**κόγχη** mussel  
**μετέχω** partake of  
**ναός** (ᾱ) temple, shrine ~nostalgia  
**νεωκόρος** temple warden, patron  
**νεώς** νῶ (m, 2) temple, shrine  
**οἰκίζω** colonize, settle  
**ὀπόσος** as many as, how many, how  
 great  
**ὅπου** where  
**παρακαταθήκη** a deposit in trust  
**παραρρέω** flow past, slip by  
**πρόσχωρος** neighboring  
**χαρίζομαι** gratify ~charisma  
**χωρίον** area; downwards  
**ὠνέομαι** buy  
**ὠραίος** ripe; young adult

καταλείπει παρὰ Μεγαβύζῳ τῷ τῆς Ἀρτέμιδος νεωκόρῳ, ὅτι αὐτὸς κινδυνεύσων ἐδόκει ἶέναι, καὶ ἐπέστειλεν, ἣν μὲν αὐτὸς σωθῆ, αὐτῷ ἀποδοῦναι· ἣν δέ τι πάθῃ, ἀναθεῖναι ποιησάμενον τῇ Ἀρτέμιδι ὅ τι οἴοιτο χαριεῖσθαι τῇ θεῷ.

Ἐπειδὴ δ' ἔφευγεν ὁ Ξενοφῶν, κατοικοῦντος ἤδη αὐτοῦ ἐν Σκιλλοῦντι ὑπὸ τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων οἰκισθέντος παρὰ τὴν Ὀλυμπίαν ἀφικνέεται Μεγάβυζος εἰς Ὀλυμπίαν θεωρήσων καὶ ἀποδίδωσι τὴν παρακαταθήκην αὐτῷ. Ξενοφῶν δὲ λαβὼν χωρίον ὠνεῖται τῇ θεῷ ὅπου ἀνείλεν ὁ θεός. ἔτυχε δὲ διαρρέων διὰ τοῦ χωρίου ποταμὸς Σελινοῦς. καὶ ἐν Ἐφέσῳ δὲ παρὰ τὸν τῆς Ἀρτέμιδος νεῶν Σελινοῦς ποταμὸς παραρρεῖ. καὶ ἰχθύες τε ἐν ἀμφοτέροις ἔνεισι καὶ κόγχαι· ἐν δὲ τῷ ἐν Σκιλλοῦντι χωρίῳ καὶ θῆραι πάντων ὅποσα ἐστὶν ἀγρευόμενα θηρία.

Ἐποίησε δὲ καὶ βωμὸν καὶ ναὸν ἀπὸ τοῦ ἱεροῦ ἀργυρίου, καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν δὲ αἰὲ δεκατεύων τὰ ἐκ τοῦ ἀγροῦ ὥραϊα θυσίαν ἐποίει τῇ θεῷ, καὶ πάντες οἱ πολῖται καὶ οἱ πρόσχωροι ἄνδρες καὶ γυναῖκες μετεῖχον τῆς ἐορτῆς.

καταλείπει παρὰ Μεγαβύζῳ τῷ τῆς Ἀρτέμιδος |temple war-  
den, patron  
ὅτι αὐτὸς |encounter danger; '(+inf)' there is a|send to, order, ν μὲν  
danger that  
αὐτὸς σωθῇ, αὐτῷ ἀποδοῦναι· ἣν δέ τι πάθῃ, |consecrate, lay on, im-  
pute; (mp) reproach  
ποιησάμενον τῇ Ἀρτέμιδι ὅ τι οἴοιτο |gratify τῇ θεῷ.

Ἐπειδὴ δ' ἔφευγεν ὁ Ξενοφῶν, κατοικούντος ἤδη αὐτοῦ ἐν

Σκιλλοῦντι ὑπὸ τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων |colonize, settle παρὰ τὴν

Ὀλυμπίαν ἀφικνεῖται Μεγάβυζος εἰς Ὀλυμπίαν |be sent to consult an or-  
acle; observe, contem-  
plate  
καὶ ἀποδίδωσι τὴν |a deposit in trust αὐτῷ. Ξενοφῶν δὲ

λαβὼν |area; down-wards |buy τῇ θεῷ |where ἐνείλεν ὁ θεός. ἔτυχε  
δὲ |flow through ἃ τοῦ |area; downwards `ς Σελινοῦς. καὶ

ἐν Ἐφέσῳ δὲ παρὰ τὸν τῆς Ἀρτέμιδος |temple Σελινοῦς

ποταμὸς |flow past, slip by |fish τε ἐν ἀμφοτέροις ἔνεισι καὶ

|mussel ἐν δὲ τῷ ἐν Σκιλλοῦντι |area; down-wards |hunt πάντων  
wards

|as/how ὥς ὥς |catch (prey, fish), ὥς.  
|many/great

Ἐποίησε δὲ καὶ |altar καὶ |temple πρὸ τοῦ ἱεροῦ |small coin ,

καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν δὲ αἰὲ |take a tenth τὰ ἐκ τοῦ ἀγροῦ |ripe;  
young  
|sacrifice ἐποίει τῇ θεῷ, καὶ πάντες οἱ πολῖται καὶ οἱ  
adult

|neighboring ἄνδρες καὶ γυναῖκες |partake of τῆς |holiday,  
|feast

left it behind in charge of Megabyzus, the sacristan of the goddess, thinking that the voyage on which he was starting was fraught with danger. In the event of his coming out of it alive, he charged Megabyzus to restore to him the deposit; but should any evil happen to him, then he was to cause to be made and to dedicate on his behalf to Artemis, whatsoever thing he thought would be pleasing to the goddess.

In the days of his banishment, when Xenophon was now established by the Lacedaemonians as a colonist in Scillus, a place which lies on the main road to Olympia, Megabyzus arrived on his way to Olympia as a spectator to attend the games, and restored to him the deposit. Xenophon took the money and bought for the goddess a plot of ground at a point indicated to him by the oracle. The plot, it so happened, had its own Selinus river flowing through it, just as at Ephesus the river Selinus flows past the temple of Artemis, and in both streams fish and mussels are to be found. On the estate at Scillus there is hunting and shooting of all the beasts of the chase that are.

Here with the sacred money he built an altar and a temple, and ever after, year by year, tithed the fruits of the land in their season and did sacrifice to the goddess, while all the citizens and neighbours, men and women, shared in the festival. The

*vocabulary*

αἴξ αἰγός (m) goat  
 ἀλίσκομαι be captured ~helix  
 ἄλλος -εος (n, 3) grove, sacred place  
 ἄλφιτον barley meal  
 ἄρτος bread, loaf  
 γράμμα -τος (n, 3) writing, letter  
 δένδρον tree  
 εἰκάζω liken; conjecture  
 ἔλαφος (f) deer  
 ἐνιμι be in ~ion  
 ἐορτή holiday, feast  
 εὖωχέω fete, feed well  
 ἥμερος gentle; (animals) domesticated  
 θήρα hunt ~fierce  
 θηρεύω hunt, fish ~fierce  
 θύω (ō) rush; sacrifice ~θύω  
 κυπαρίσσινος of cypress wood  
 λάχος lot  
 λειμών -ος (m, 3) meadow ~limnic  
 μεστός full

ναός (ᾱ) temple, shrine ~nostalgia  
 νομεύς -ος (m) shepherd, herder  
 ~nemesis  
 νομή pasture; distribution  
 ξόανον wooden idol  
 ποιόω make of a certain quality  
 σκηνέω camp  
 σκηνόω camp  
 στάδιον 200 meters (pl also masc)  
 στάδιος (adj) standing upright, firm;  
 (pl noun) 200 meters  
 στήλη post, column  
 συνθηράω hunt together  
 τράγγημα fruit or sweetmeat  
 τρωκτός eaten raw  
 ὑποζύγιον beast of burden ~zygote  
 ὕς pig ~sow  
 φυτεύω plant, grow, cause, prepare  
 ~physics  
 χώρος place ~heir  
 ὠραίος ripe; young adult

παρείχε δὲ ἡ θεὸς τοῖς σκηνοῦσιν ἄλφιτα, ἄρτους, οἶνον,  
 τραγήματα, καὶ τῶν θυομένων ἀπὸ τῆς ἱερᾶς νομῆς  
 λάχος, καὶ τῶν θηρευομένων δέ. καὶ γὰρ θήραν ἐποιοῦντο  
 εἰς τὴν ἐορτὴν οἱ τε Ξενοφῶντος παῖδες καὶ οἱ τῶν ἄλλων  
 πολιτῶν, οἱ δὲ βουλόμενοι καὶ ἄνδρες ξυνεθήρων· καὶ  
 ἡλίσκετο τὰ μὲν ἐξ αὐτοῦ τοῦ ἱεροῦ χώρου, τὰ δὲ καὶ  
 ἐκ τῆς Φολόης, σύες καὶ δορκάδες καὶ ἔλαφοι. ἔστι δὲ  
 ἡ χώρα ἥ ἐκ Λακεδαίμονος εἰς Ὀλυμπίαν πορεύονται ὥς  
 εἴκοσι στάδιοι ἀπὸ τοῦ ἐν Ὀλυμπίᾳ Διὸς ἱεροῦ. ἐνὶ δ' ἐν  
 τῷ ἱερῷ χώρῳ καὶ λειμῶν καὶ ὄρη δένδρων μεστά, ἱκανὰ  
 σὺς καὶ αἰγας καὶ βοῦς τρέφειν καὶ ἵππους, ὥστε καὶ τὰ  
 τῶν εἰς τὴν ἐορτὴν ἰόντων ὑποζύγια εὐωχεῖσθαι. περὶ δὲ  
 αὐτὸν τὸν ναὸν ἄλσος ἡμέρων δένδρων ἐφυτεύθη ὅσα ἐστὶ  
 τρωκτὰ ὠραῖα. ὁ δὲ ναὸς ὥς μικρὸς μεγάλῳ τῷ ἐν Ἐφέσῳ  
 εἴκασται, καὶ τὸ ξόανον ἔοικεν ὥς κυπαρίττινον χρυσῷ  
 ὄντι τῷ ἐν Ἐφέσῳ. καὶ στήλη ἔστηκε παρὰ τὸν ναὸν  
 γράμματα ἔχουσα· ΙΕΡΟΣ Ο ΧΩΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΑΡΤΕΜΙΔΟΣ.  
 ΤΟΝ ΕΧΟΝΤΑ ΚΑΙ ΚΑΡΠΟΥΜΕΝΟΝ ΤΗΝ ΜΕΝ



παρείχε δὲ ἡ θεὸς τοῖς σκηνοῦσιν |barley meal, τους, οἶνον,  
 |fruit or sweetmeat. τῶν θυομένων ἀπὸ τῆς ἱερᾶς νομῆς  
 |lot , καὶ τῶν |hunt, fish δέ. καὶ γὰρ |hunt |make of a cer-  
 |tain quality  
 εἰς τὴν |holiday, οἳ τε Ξενοφῶντος παῖδες καὶ οἱ τῶν ἄλλων  
 |feast  
 πολιτῶν, οἱ δὲ βουλόμενοι καὶ ἄνδρες |hunt together καὶ  
 ἡλίσκετο τὰ μὲν ἐξ αὐτοῦ τοῦ ἱεροῦ |place , τὰ δὲ καὶ  
 ἐκ τῆς Φολόης, |pig καὶ δορκάδες καὶ |deer . ἔστι δὲ  
 ἡ χώρα ἣ ἐκ Λακεδαίμονος εἰς Ὀλυμπίαν πορεύονται ὡς  
 εἴκοσι στάδιοι ἀπὸ τοῦ ἐν Ὀλυμπίᾳ Διὸς ἱεροῦ. |be in' ἐν  
 τῷ ἱερῷ |place καὶ |meadow καὶ ὄρη δένδρων |full , ἱκανὰ  
 |pig καὶ |goat καὶ βουῖς τρέφειν καὶ ἵππους, ὥστε καὶ τὰ  
 τῶν εἰς τὴν |holiday, ἰόντων |beast offete, feed well περὶ δὲ  
 |feast |burden  
 αὐτὸν τὸν ναὸν |grove, |gentle; (animals)|plant, grow. ἐστὶ  
 |sacred |domesticated |cause, prepare  
 |place  
 |eaten raw|ripe; . οὗ δὲ ναὸς ὡς μικρὸς μεγάλῳ τῷ ἐν Ἐφέσῳ  
 |young  
 |adult  
 |likens; , καὶ τὸ |wooden idol ἐν ὡς |of cypress wood χρυσῷ  
 |conjecture  
 ὄντι τῷ ἐν Ἐφέσῳ. καὶ |post, ἕστηκε παρὰ τὸν ναὸν  
 |column  
 |writing, ἔχουσα· ΙΕΡΟΣ Ο ΧΩΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΑΡΤΕΜΙΔΟΣ.  
 |letter  
 ΤΟΝ ΕΧΟΝΤΑ ΚΑΙ ΚΑΡΠΟΥΜΕΝΟΝ ΤΗΝ ΜΕΝ

goddess herself provided for the banqueters meat and loaves and wine and sweetmeats, with portions of the victims sacrificed from the sacred pasture, as also of those which were slain in the chase; for Xenophon's own lads, with the lads of the other citizens, always made a hunting excursion against the festival day, in which any grown men who liked might join. The game was captured partly from the sacred district itself, partly from Pholoe, pigs and gazelles and stags. The place lies on the direct road from Lacedaemon to Olympia, about twenty furlongs from the temple of Zeus in Olympia, and within the sacred enclosure there is meadowland and wood-covered hills, suited to the breeding of pigs and goats and cattle and horses, so that even the sumpter animals of the pilgrims passing to the feast fare sumptuously. The shrine is girdled by a grove of cultivated trees, yielding dessert fruits in their season. The temple itself is a facsimile on a small scale of the great temple at Ephesus, and the image of the goddess is like the golden statue at Ephesus, save only that it is made, not of gold, but of cypress wood. Beside the temple stands a column bearing this inscription:—THE PLACE IS SACRED TO ARTEMIS. HE WHO HOLDS IT AND ENJOYS THE FRUITS OF IT IS BOUND TO SACRIFICE YEARLY A TITHE OF

*vocabulary*

διασώζω preserve through  
διίημι drive off, pass through  
Ἑλλην Greek  
ἐντεῦθεν thence  
ἐπέκεινα beyond, the far side  
ἐρμηνεύω translate  
ἐρωτάω ask about something

ὄριον boundary  
πότερος which, whichever of two  
πρόξενος public/foreign agent, patron  
συμμαχία alliance  
συνέρχομαι come together  
φίλιος friendly  
χωρίον area; downwards

ΔΕΚΑΤΗΝ ΚΑΤΑΘΥΕΙΝ ΕΚΑΣΤΟΥ ΕΤΟΥΣ. ΕΚ ΔΕ  
ΤΟΥ ΠΕΡΙΤΤΟΥ ΤΟΝ ΝΑΟΝ ΕΠΙΣΚΕΥΑΖΕΙΝ. ΑΝ  
ΔΕ ΤΙΣ ΜΗ ΠΟΙΗΙ ΤΑΥΤΑ ΤΗΙ ΘΕΩΙ ΜΕΛΗΣΕΙ.

## 5.4

Ἐκ Κερασούντος δὲ κατὰ θάλατταν μὲν ἐκομίζοντο οἵπερ  
καὶ πρόσθεν, οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι κατὰ γῆν ἐπορεύοντο. ἐπεὶ  
δὲ ἦσαν ἐπὶ τοῖς Μοσσυνοίκων ὁρίοις, πέμπουσιν εἰς  
αὐτοὺς Τιμησίθεον τὸν Τραπεζούντιον πρόξενον ὄντα  
τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων, ἐρωτῶντες πότερον ὥς διὰ φιλίας  
ἢ διὰ πολεμίας πορεύσονται τῆς χώρας. οἱ δὲ εἶπον  
ὅτι οὐ διήσοιεν· ἐπίστευον γὰρ τοῖς χωρίοις. ἐντεῦθεν  
λέγει ὁ Τιμησίθεος ὅτι πολέμοι εἰσιν αὐτοῖς οἱ ἐκ τοῦ  
ἐπέκεινα. καὶ ἐδόκει καλέσαι ἐκείνους, εἰ βούλιντο  
ξυμμαχίαν ποιήσασθαι· καὶ πεμφθεὶς ὁ Τιμησίθεος ἤκεν  
ἄγων τοὺς ἄρχοντας. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο, συνῆλθον οἱ  
τε τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων ἄρχοντες καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ τῶν  
Ἑλλήνων· καὶ ἔλεξε Ξενοφῶν, ἡρμήνευε δὲ Τιμησίθεος·  
«ὦ ἄνδρες Μοσσύνοικοι, ἡμεῖς βουλόμεθα διασωθῆναι

ΔΕΚΑΤΗΝ ΚΑΤΑΘΥΕΙΝ ΕΚΑΣΤΟΥ ΕΤΟΥΣ. ΕΚ ΔΕ  
ΤΟΥ ΠΕΡΙΤΤΟΥ ΤΟΝ ΝΑΟΝ ΕΠΙΣΚΕΥΑΖΕΙΝ. ΑΝ  
ΔΕ ΤΙΣ ΜΗ ΠΟΙΗΙ ΤΑΥΤΑ ΤΗΙ ΘΕΩΙ ΜΕΛΗΣΕΙ.

5.4

Ἐκ Κερασσῶντος δὲ κατὰ θάλατταν μὲν ἐκομίζοντο οἵπερ  
καὶ πρόσθεν, οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι κατὰ γῆν ἐπορεύοντο. ἐπεὶ  
δὲ ἦσαν ἐπὶ τοῖς Μοσσυνοίκων |boundary ἔμπουσιν εἰς  
αὐτοὺς Τιμησίθεον τὸν Τραπεζούντιον |public/foreign τα  
|agent, patron  
τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων, |ask |which, ὥς διὰ |friendly  
|whichever  
ἢ διὰ πολεμίας πορεύονται τῆς χώρας. οἱ δὲ εἶπον  
ὅτι οὐ |drive off, pass ἴστευον γὰρ τοῖς |area; down-|thence  
|through |wards  
λέγει ὁ Τιμησίθεος ὅτι πολέμοί εἰσιν αὐτοῖς οἱ ἐκ τοῦ  
|beyond, the far side ὅσοι καλέσαι ἐκείνους, εἰ βούλονται  
|alliance ποιήσασθαι· καὶ πεμφθεὶς ὁ Τιμησίθεος ἦκεν  
ἄγων τοὺς ἄρχοντας. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο, |come together  
τε τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων ἄρχοντες καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ τῶν  
|Greek καὶ ἔλεξε Ξενοφῶν, |translate δὲ Τιμησίθεος·  
«ὦ ἄνδρες Μοσσύνοικοι, ἡμεῖς βουλόμεθα |preserve  
|through

THE PRODUCE. AND FROM THE RESIDUE THEREOF TO KEEP IN REPAIR THE SHRINE. IF ANY MAN FAIL IN AUGHT OF THIS THE GODDESS HERSELF WILL LOOK TO IT THAT THE MATTER SHALL NOT SLEEP.

#### 5.4

From Cerasus they continued the march, the same portion of the troops being conveyed by sea as before, and the rest marching by land. When they had reached the frontiers of the Mossynoecians they sent to him Timesitheus the Trapezuntine, who was the proxenos of the Mossynoecians, to inquire whether they were to pass through their territory as friends or foes. They, trusting in their strongholds, replied that they would not give them passage. It was then that Timesitheus informed them that the Mossynoecians on the farther side of the country were hostile to these members of the tribe; and it was resolved to invite the former to make an alliance, if they wished it. So Timesitheus was sent, and came back with their chiefs. On their arrival there was a conference of the Mossynoecian chiefs and the generals of the Hellenes, and Xenophon made a speech which Timesitheus interpreted. He said: «Men of the Mossynoecians, our desire is to reach Hellas in safety; and since

*vocabulary*

**δεῦρο** here, come here!

**δίοδος** (f) passage, pass

**εἰσβάλλω** throw into ~ballistic

**ἐκβαίνω** come forth, disembark ~basis

**ἔξιμι** go forth; is possible ~ion

**κωλύω** (ō) hinder, prevent

**μονόξυλος** canoe

**οἴχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone

**πιστός** faithful; trustworthy

**πόθεν** from where?

**πότε** when?

**σκέπτομαι** look, look at, watch

~skeptic

**συμμαχία** alliance

**συμπράσσω** cooperate

**τιμωρέω** (i) (+dat) take vengeance,  
punish; aid one who has been attacked

**τριακόσιοι** three hundred ~three

**ὑπήκοος** heeding, subject

**ὑστεραίος** the next; later

πρὸς τὴν Ἑλλάδα πεζῇ· πλοῖα γὰρ οὐκ ἔχομεν· κωλύουσι δὲ οὗτοι ἡμᾶς οὓς ἀκούομεν ὑμῖν πολεμίους εἶναι. εἰ οὖν βούλεσθε, ἔξεστιν ὑμῖν ἡμᾶς λαβεῖν ξυμμάχους καὶ τιμωρήσασθαι εἴ τί ποτε ὑμᾶς οὗτοι ἠδίκησαν, καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν ὑμῶν ὑπηκόους εἶναι τούτους. εἰ δὲ ἡμᾶς ἀφήσετε, σκέψασθε πόθεν αὐθις ἂν τοσαύτην δύναμιν λάβοιτε ξύμμαχον.» πρὸς ταῦτα ἀπεκρίνατο ὁ ἄρχων τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων ὅτι καὶ βούλονται ταῦτα καὶ δέχονται τὴν ξυμμαχίαν. «Ἄγετε δὴ,» ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, «τί ἡμῶν δεήσεσθε χρήσασθαι, ἂν ξύμμαχοι ὑμῶν γενώμεθα, καὶ ὑμεῖς τί οἰοί τε ἔσεσθε ἡμῖν συμπράξαι περὶ τῆς διόδου;» οἱ δὲ εἶπον ὅτι ἱκανοὶ ἐσμεν εἰς τὴν χώραν εἰσβάλλειν ἐκ τοῦ ἐπὶ θάτερα τὴν τῶν ὑμῖν τε καὶ ἡμῖν πολεμίων, καὶ δεῦρο ὑμῖν πέμψαι ναῦς τε καὶ ἄνδρας οἵτινες ὑμῖν ξυμμαχοῦνται τε καὶ τὴν ὁδὸν ἡγήσονται.

Ἐπὶ τούτοις πιστὰ δόντες καὶ λαβόντες ὥχοντο. καὶ ἦκον τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἄγοντες τριακόσια πλοῖα μονόξυλα καὶ ἐν ἐκάστῳ τρεῖς ἄνδρας, ὧν οἱ μὲν δύο ἐκβάντες



πρὸς τὴν Ἑλλάδα πεζῇ· πλοῖα γὰρ οὐκ ἔχομεν· <sup>|hinder, prevent</sup>  
 δὲ οὗτοι ἡμᾶς οὓς ἀκούομεν ὑμῖν πολεμίους εἶναι. εἰ  
 οὖν βούλεσθε, ἔξεστιν ὑμῖν ἡμᾶς λαβεῖν ξυμμάχους καὶ  
<sup>|take vengeance, punish, aid</sup> εἰ τί ποτε ὑμᾶς οὗτοι ἠδίκησαν, καὶ τὸ  
<sup>|loipon ὑμῶν</sup> <sup>|heeding, subject</sup> εἶναι τούτους. εἰ δὲ ἡμᾶς ἀφήσετε,  
<sup>|look, look at, from where? watch</sup> ἂν τοσαύτην δύναμιν λάβοιτε  
 ξύμμαχον.» πρὸς ταῦτα ἀπεκρίνατο ὁ ἄρχων τῶν  
 Μοσσυνοίκων ὅτι καὶ βούλονται ταῦτα καὶ δέχονται τὴν  
<sup>|alliance</sup> «Ἄγετε δὴ,» ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, «τί ἡμῶν  
 δεήσεσθε χρήσασθαι, ἂν ξύμμαχοι ὑμῶν γενώμεθα, καὶ  
 ὑμεῖς τί οἰοί τε ἔσεσθε ἡμῖν <sup>|συμπράσσω?: -cooper-|passage, pass  
ate; or συμπράσσω?:  
cooperate</sup>  
 δὲ εἶπον ὅτι ἱκανοὶ ἐσμεν εἰς τὴν χώραν <sup>|throw into</sup> ἐκ τοῦ  
 ἐπὶ θάτερα τὴν τῶν ὑμῖν τε καὶ ἡμῖν πολεμίων, καὶ <sup>|here, come here!</sup>  
 ὑμῖν πέμψαι ναῦς τε καὶ ἄνδρας οἵτινες ὑμῖν ξυμμαχοῦνταί  
 τε καὶ τὴν ὁδὸν ἡγήσονται.  
 Ἐπὶ τούτοις <sup>|faithful; trustworthy</sup> ἐς καὶ λαβόντες <sup>|come, go</sup> καὶ ἦκον  
 τῇ <sup>|the next;|lead, |three</sup> πλοῖα <sup>|canoe</sup> καὶ ἐν  
<sup>|later |bring |hundred</sup>  
 ἐκάστω τρεῖς ἄνδρας, ὧν οἱ μὲν δύο <sup>|come forth</sup>

we have no vessels we must needs go by foot, but these people who, as we hear, are your enemies, prevent us. Will you take us for your allies? Now is your chance to exact vengeance for any wrong, which they at any time may have put upon you, and for the future they will be your subjects; but if you send us about our business, consider and ask yourselves from what quarter will you ever again obtain so strong a force to help you?" To this the chief of the Mossynoecians made answer: — that the proposal was in accordance with their wishes and they welcomed the alliance. «Good," said Xenophon, «but to what use do you propose to put us, if we become your allies? And what will you in turn be able to do to assist our passage?" They replied: «We can make an incursion into this country hostile to yourselves and us, from the opposite side, and also send you ships and men to this place, who will aid you in fighting and conduct you on the road."

On this understanding, they exchanged pledges and were gone. The next day they returned, bringing three hundred canoes, each hollowed out of a single trunk. There were three men in each, two of

*vocabulary*

ᾄδω sing

αείδω sing

ἄκρος at the edge, extreme ~acute

ἀντιστοιχέω stand with partners

ἀποπλέω sail away ~float

γέρον wicker object

γόνυ γουνός (n, 3) knee ~polygon

δασύς hairy, brushy

διέρχομαι pierce, traverse

ἐγγύς near

εἰκάζω liken; conjecture

ἐκτάσσω muster

Ἑλλήν Greek

ἐνδύω go into, put on

ἐντεῦθεν thence

ἐξάρχω take the lead in ~oligarch

ἐπίμαχος easily attacked

κισσός ivy

κισσόω wreath with ivy

κράνος -εος (n, 3) helmet; ship's ram

κρωβύλος topknot; tuft

λευκός white ~light

λίνεος linen

λόγχη spear point; lot

μητρόπολις -εως (f) mother city

ξύλον piece of wood ~xylophone

οικήω inhabit ~economics

ὀπίσθεν behind, hereafter

ὄπλον tool, weapon, ship's tackle

~hoplite

παλτός brandished, hurled

πάχος -εος (n, 3) thickness

~pachyderm

πέταλον leaf

ῥυθμός measured; symmetrical

σκύτινος (ϋ) of leather

στρωματόδεσμον sack; stuffing

σφαιροειδής round

τάξις -εως (f) arrangement, military

unit

τιανοειδής like a tiara

χιτωνίσκος short coat

χορός dance; chorus ~terpsichorean

χωρίον area; downwards

εἰς τάξιν ἔθεντο τὰ ὅπλα, ὁ δὲ εἰς ἔμενε. καὶ οἱ μὲν λαβόντες τὰ πλοῖα ἀπέπλευσαν, οἱ δὲ μένοντες ἐξετάζαντο ὧδε. ἔστησαν ὥσπερ ἀνὰ ἑκατὸν μάλιστα οἶον χοροὶ ἀντιστοιχοῦντες ἀλλήλοις, ἔχοντες γέρρα πάντες λευκῶν βοῶν δασέα, ἠκασμένα κιττοῦ πετάλω, ἐν δὲ τῇ δεξιᾷ παλτὸν ὡς ἔξπηχυ, ἔμπροσθεν μὲν λόγχην ἔχον, ὀπισθεν δὲ τοῦ ξύλου σφαιροειδές.

Χιτωνίσκους δὲ ἐνεδεδύκεσαν ὑπὲρ γονάτων, πάχος ὡς λινοῦ στρωματοδέσμου, ἐπὶ τῇ κεφαλῇ δὲ κράνη σκύτινα οἰάπερ τὰ Παφλαγονικά, κρωβύλον ἔχοντα κατὰ μέσον, ἐγγύτατα τιαροειδῇ· εἶχον δὲ καὶ σαγάρεις σιδηρᾶς. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξῆρχε μὲν αὐτῶν εἰς, οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι ἅπαντες ἐπορεύοντο ἄδοντες ἐν ῥυθμῷ, καὶ διελθόντες διὰ τῶν τάξεων καὶ διὰ τῶν ὅπλων τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐπορεύοντο εὐθὺς πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους ἐπὶ χωρίον ὃ ἐδόκει ἐπιμαχώτατον εἶναι. ὠκείτο δὲ τοῦτο πρὸ τῆς πόλεως τῆς Μητροπόλεως καλουμένης αὐτοῖς καὶ ἐχούσης τὸ ἀκρότατον τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων. καὶ περὶ τούτου ὁ πόλεμος

εἰς τάξιν ἔθεντο τὰ ὅπλα, ὁ δὲ εἰς ἔμενε. καὶ οἱ  
μὲν λαβόντες τὰ πλοῖα |sail away , οἱ δὲ μένοντες

|muster ὦδε. ἔστησαν ὥσπερ ἀνὰ ἑκατὸν μάλιστα οἶον

|dance; |stand with partners ἁλλήλοισι, ἔχοντες |wicker πάντες  
chorus |object

λευκῶν βοῶν |hairy, |liken; κιττοῦ |leaf , ἐν δὲ τῇ  
|brushy |conjecture

δεξιᾷ |brandished, |hurled ἔξπηχυ, ἔμπροσθεν μὲν |spear ἔχον,  
|point;  
|lot

ὀπισθεν δὲ τοῦ ξύλου |round

|short coat δὲ |go into, put on ὑπὲρ γονάτων, |thickness

ὥς |linen |sack; stuffing , ἐπὶ τῇ κεφαλῇ δὲ |helmet; ship's ram

|of leather οἰάπερ τὰ Παφλαγονικά, |topknot; tuft ἔχοντα

κατὰ μέσον, ἐγγύτατα |like a tiara εἶχον δὲ καὶ σαγάρεις

σιδηρᾶς. |thence |take the lead in τῶν εἰς, οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι

ἅπαντες ἐπορεύοντο ἄδοντες ἐν |measured; |... |pierce,  
|symmetrical |traverse

διὰ τῶν τάξεων καὶ διὰ τῶν ὀπλων τῶν |Greek

ἐπορεύοντο εὐθὺς πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους ἐπὶ χωρίον ὃ ἐδόκει

|easily attacked εἶναι. |inhabit δὲ τοῦτο πρὸ τῆς πόλεως

τῆς |mother city καλουμένης αὐτοῖς καὶ ἐχούσης τὸ

|at the edge, extrême Ἰσσυνοίκων. καὶ περὶ τούτου ὁ πόλεμος

whom disembarked and fell into rank, whilst the third remained. Then the one set took the boats and sailed back again, whilst the other two-thirds who remained marshalled themselves in the following way. They stood in rows of about a hundred each, like the rows of dancers in a chorus, standing vis a vis to one another, and all bearing wicker shields, made of white oxhide, shaggy, and shaped like an ivy leaf; in the right hand they brandished a javelin about six cubits long, with a lance in front, and rounded like a ball at the butt end of the shaft.

Their bodies were clad in short frocks, scarcely reaching to the knees and in texture closely resembling that of a linen bedclothes' bag; on their heads they wore leathern helmets just like the Paphlagonian helmet, with a tuft of hair in the middle, as like a tiara in shape as possible. They carried moreover iron battle-axes. Then one of them gave, as it were, the key-note and started, while the rest, taking up the strain and the step, followed singing and marking time. Passing through the various corps and heavy armed battalions of the Hellenes, they marched straight against the enemy, to what appeared the most assailable of his fortresses. It was situated in front of the city, or mother city, as it is called, which latter contains the high citadel of the Mossynoecians. This citadel was the real bone of contention, the occupants at

*vocabulary*

ᾄδω sing

αἰείδω sing

ἀθυμέω (ῥ) be disheartened

ἀποτέμνω cut off, sever ~tonsure

ἀποτρέπω divert from ~trophy

ἀρπαγή seizure; rape

ἄχθομαι be burdened with

βάρβαρος non-Greek

ἐγγύς near

ἐγκρατής firm, powerful

εἴτα then, therefore, next

ἐκτρέχω run out

Ἑλλην Greek

ἐπιδείκνυμι (ῥ) display, exhibit

ἔχθω (mp) be hated ~external

ἡσυχάζω be quiet, rest

θρασύς brave, strong

καταλαμβάνω seize, understand, catch, overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy

κοινός communal, ordinary

μέχρι as far as, until

οἴχομαι come, go, leave, be gone

οὐπω no longer

πλεονεκτέω be greedy, take advantage

πρόσεμι approach, draw near; add ~ion

προσίημι be allowed near

στρατεία expedition, campaign

στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier, mercenary ~strategy

συγκαλέω call together ~gallo

συχνός long; many; extensive

χορεύω dance

χωρίον area; downwards

ἦν· οἱ γὰρ αἰὲν τοῦτ' ἔχοντες ἐδόκουν ἐγκρατεῖς εἶναι καὶ πάντων Μοσσυνοίκων, καὶ ἔφασαν τούτους οὐ δικαίως ἔχειν τοῦτο, ἀλλὰ κοινὸν ὃν καταλαβόντας πλεονεκτεῖν.

Ἐΐποντο δ' αὐτοῖς καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων τινές, οὐ ταχθέντες ὑπὸ τῶν στρατηγῶν, ἀλλὰ ἀρπαγῆς ἕνεκεν. οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι προσιόντων τέως μὲν ἡσύχαζον· ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγγὺς ἐγένοντο τοῦ χωρίου, ἐκδραμόντες τρέπονται αὐτούς, καὶ ἀπέκτειναν συχνούς τῶν βαρβάρων καὶ τῶν ξυναναβάντων Ἑλλήνων τινάς, καὶ ἐδίωκον μέχρι οὗ εἶδον τοὺς Ἑλληνας βοηθοῦντας· εἶτα δὲ ἀποτραπόμενοι ᾤχοντο, καὶ ἀποτεμόντες τὰς κεφαλὰς τῶν νεκρῶν ἐπεδείκνυσαν τοῖς Ἑλλησι καὶ τοῖς ἑαυτῶν πολεμίοις, καὶ ἅμα ἐχόρευον νόμῳ τινὶ ᾄδοντες. οἱ δὲ Ἑλληνες μάλα ἤχθοντο ὅτι τοὺς τε πολεμίους ἐπεποιήκεσαν θρασυτέρους καὶ ὅτι οἱ ἐξελθόντες Ἑλληνες σὺν αὐτοῖς ἐπεφεύγεσαν μάλα ὄντες συχνοί· ὁ οὖπω πρόσθεν ἐπεποιήκεσαν ἐν τῇ στρατείᾳ. Ξενοφῶν δὲ ξυγκαλέσας τοὺς Ἑλληνας εἶπεν· «Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, μὴδὲν ἀθυμήσητε ἕνεκα τῶν



ἦν· οἱ γὰρ αἰὲ τοῦτ' ἔχοντες ἐδόκουν |firm, εἶναι καὶ  
|powerful  
πάντων Μοσσυνοίκων, καὶ ἔφασαν τούτους οὐ δικαίως  
ἔχειν τοῦτο, ἀλλὰ |communal, |seize, understand, |be greedy, take  
|ordinary |catch, overtake; |advantage  
| (mp) happen  
Εἶποντο δ' αὐτοῖς καὶ τῶν |Greek τινές, οὐ ταχθέντες  
ὑπὸ τῶν στρατηγῶν, ἀλλὰ |seizure; rape ἔνεκεν. οἱ  
δὲ πολέμοι προσιόντων τέως μὲν |be quiet, rest ἐπεὶ δ'  
|near ἐγένοντο τοῦ |area; , |run out τρέπονται  
|downwards  
αὐτούς, καὶ ἀπέκτειναν |long; many; ex-|non-Greek καὶ τῶν  
|tensive  
ξυναναβάντων |Greek τινάς, καὶ ἐδίωκον |as far as, ὕ  
εἶδον τοὺς |Greek βοηθοῦντας· |then, ὧς |divert from  
|there-  
ᾤχοντο, καὶ |cut off, sever τὰς |fore, next κεφαλὰς τῶν νεκρῶν  
|display, exhibit τοῖς |Greek καὶ τοῖς ἐαυτῶν πολεμίοις, καὶ  
ἄμα |dance νόμῳ τινὶ ᾄδοντες. οἱ δὲ |Greek μάλα  
ἤχθοντο ὅτι τοὺς τε πολεμίους ἐπεποιήκεσαν |brave, strong  
καὶ ὅτι οἱ ἐξελθόντες |Greek σὺν αὐτοῖς ἐπεφεύγεσαν  
μάλα ὄντες |long; many; no longer ὥσθεν ἐπεποιήκεσαν ἐν τῇ  
|extensive  
|expedition, Ξενοφῶν δὲ συγκαλέω?: ἄλλῃ |Greek εἶπεν·  
|campaign |together; or  
«Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, συγκαλέω?: ἄλλῃ  
|together |be disheartened -κα τῶν

any time being acknowledged as the masters of all the other Mossynoecians. The present holders (so it was explained) had no right to its possession; for the sake of self-aggrandisement they had seized what was really common property.

Some of the Hellenes followed the attacking party, not under the orders of the generals, but for the sake of plunder. As they advanced, the enemy for a while kept quiet; but as they got near the place, they made a sortie and routed them, killing several of the barbarians as well as some of the Hellenes who had gone up with them; and so pursued them until they saw the Hellenes advancing to the rescue. Then they turned round and made off, first cutting off the heads of the dead men and flaunting them in the face of the Hellenes and of their own private foes, dancing the while and singing in a measured strain. But the Hellenes were much vexed to think that their foes had only been rendered bolder, while the Hellenes who had formed part of the expedition had turned tail and fled, in spite of their numbers; a thing which had not happened previously during the whole expedition. So Xenophon called a meeting of the Hellenes and spoke as follows: «Soldiers, do not in any wise

*vocabulary*

ἀμελέω disregard; (impers.) of course  
 ἀπολείπω leave behind, fail ~eclipse  
 ἀπολιμπάνω leave behind, fail  
 ἀριστάω eat lunch ~aristocrat  
 ἄτακτος disorderly  
 βάρβαρος non-Greek  
 δηλώω show, disclose  
 Ἑλλήν Greek  
 ἐπίσταμαι know how, understand  
 ~station  
 εὐζωνος well-girded ~zone  
 εὐώνυμος honored; left-hand  
 ἐφίστημι set; (mp) come/be near,  
 direct, stop ~station  
 θύω (ō) rush; sacrifice ~θύω

καλλιερέω have good signs  
 κατατρέχω overrun; trash talk  
 κρείσσων more powerful; better  
 λίθος (f) stone ~monolith  
 λόχος ambush, band, childbirth ~lie  
 μείων less, smaller  
 μεταξύ between  
 ὀπλίτης -ου (ī, m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
 infantryman ~hoplite  
 ὄρθιος shrill; steep, straight  
 τάξις -εως (f) arrangement, military  
 unit  
 τοξότης -ου (m, 1) archer ~toxic  
 ὑπολείπω leave as a leftover; leave a  
 person behind ~eclipse  
 ὕστεραίῳς the next; later

γεγενημένων· ἵστε γὰρ ὅτι καὶ ἀγαθὸν οὐ μείον τοῦ κακοῦ  
γεγένηται. πρῶτον μὲν γὰρ ἐπίστασθε ὅτι οἱ μέλλοντες  
ἡμῖν ἡγεῖσθαι τῷ ὄντι πολέμιοί εἰσιν οἷσπερ καὶ ἡμᾶς  
ἀνάγκη· ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων οἱ ἀμελήσαντες  
τῆς ξὺν ἡμῖν τάξεως καὶ ἱκανοὶ ἡγησάμενοι εἶναι ξὺν  
τοῖς βαρβάροις ταῦτά πράττειν ἅπερ σὺν ἡμῖν δίκην  
δεδώκασιν· ὥστε αὐτοὶς ἦττον τῆς ἡμετέρας τάξεως  
ἀπολείπονται. ἀλλ' ὑμᾶς δεῖ παρασκευάζεσθαι ὅπως καὶ  
τοῖς φίλοις οὖσι τῶν βαρβάρων δόξητε κρείττους αὐτῶν  
εἶναι καὶ τοῖς πολεμίοις δηλώσητε ὅτι οὐχ ὁμοίοις ἀνδράσι  
μαχοῦνται νῦν τε καὶ ὅτε τοῖς ἀτάκτοις ἐμάχοντο.»

Ταύτην μὲν οὖν τὴν ἡμέραν οὕτως ἔμειναν· τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ  
θύσαντες ἐπεὶ ἐκαλλιερήσαντο, ἀριστήσαντες, ὀρθίους  
τοὺς λόχους ποιησάμενοι, καὶ τοὺς βαρβάρους ἐπὶ τὸ  
εὐώνυμον κατὰ ταῦτά ταξάμενοι ἐπορεύοντο τοὺς τοξότας  
μεταξὺ τῶν λόχων ὀρθίων ἔχοντες, ὑπολειπομένου δὲ  
μικρὸν τοῦ στόματος τῶν ὀπλιτῶν. ἦσαν γὰρ τῶν  
πολεμίων οἱ εὐζωνοὶ κατατρέχοντες τοῖς λίθοις ἔβαλλον.

γεγεννημένων· ἵστε γὰρ ὅτι καὶ ἀγαθὸν οὐ |less, οὐ κακοῦ  
 |smaller  
 γεγένηται. πρῶτον μὲν γὰρ ἐπίστασθε ὅτι οἱ μέλλοντες  
 ἡμῖν ἡγεῖσθαι τῷ ὄντι πολέμοι εἰσιν οἷσπερ καὶ ἡμᾶς  
 ἀνάγκη· ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ τῶν |Greek οἱ |disregard  
 τῆς ξὺν ἡμῖν τάξεως καὶ ἱκανοὶ ἡγησάμενοι εἶναι ξὺν  
 τοῖς |non-Greek ταῦτα πράττειν ἅπερ σὺν ἡμῖν δίκην  
 δεδώκασιν· ὥστε αὖθις ἦττον τῆς ἡμετέρας τάξεως  
 ἀπολείφονται. ἀλλ' ὑμᾶς δεῖ παρασκευάζεσθαι ὅπως καὶ  
 τοῖς φίλοις οὖσι τῶν |non-Greek δόξῃτε κρείττους αὐτῶν  
 εἶναι καὶ τοῖς πολεμίοις |show, ὅτι οὐχ ὁμοίοις ἀνδράσι  
 |disclose  
 μαχοῦνται νῦν τε καὶ ὅτε τοῖς |disorderly ἐμάχοντο.»

Ταύτην μὲν οὖν τὴν ἡμέραν οὕτως ἔμειναν· τῇ δὲ |the next; later

|rush; sacrifice εἰ |have good signs , |eat lunch , |shrill; steep,  
 |straight

τοὺς |ambush, band, ἄμενοι, καὶ τοὺς |non-Greek ἐπὶ τὸ  
 |childbirth

|honored; left-hand ἅτὰ ταξάμενοι ἐπορεύοντο τοὺς |archer

|between τῶν |ambush, |shrill; steep, ντες, |leave (food, person)  
 |band, |straight

μικρὸν τοῦ |child- |hoplite, heavy ἦσαν γὰρ τῶν  
 |birth |infantryman

πολεμίων οἱ |well-girded |overrun; trash τοῖς |stone ἔβαλλον.  
 |talk

be cast down by what has happened, be sure that good no less than evil will be the result; for to begin with, you now know certainly that those who are going to guide us are in very deed hostile to those with whom necessity drives us to quarrel; and, in the next place, some of our own body, these Hellenes who have made so light of orderly array and conjoint action with ourselves, as though they must needs achieve in the company of barbarians all they could with ourselves, have paid the penalty and been taught a lesson, so that another time they will be less prone to leave our ranks. But you must be prepared to show these friendly barbarians that you are of a better sort, and prove to the enemy that battle with the undisciplined is one thing, but with men like yourselves another.”

Accordingly they halted, as they were, that day. Next day they sacrificed and finding the victims favourable, they breakfasted, formed the companies into columns, and with their barbarians arranged in similar order on their left, began their march. Between the companies were the archers only slightly retired behind the front of the heavy infantry, on account of the enemy's active light troops, who ran down and kept up volleys of stones. These were

*vocabulary*

**ἄκρον** crest, extremity ~acute  
**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme ~acute  
**ἀναστέλλω** repel, suppress  
**ἀντιτάσσω** set against  
**ἄνω** (ἄ) accomplish, pass, waste;  
 upwards, out to sea  
**βάδην** step by step ~basis  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**ἐγγύς** near  
**Ἑλλήν** Greek  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**ἐντεῦθεν** thence  
**ἐξακοντίζω** hurl forth  
**κοινός** communal, ordinary  
**μητρόπολις** -εως (f) mother city  
**μόλις** with difficulty, barely  
**οἰκοδομέω** build, build a house

**ὁμός** same ~homoerotic  
**ὁμόσε** to the same spot ~homoerotic  
**ὁμοῦ** together  
**ὁμόω** unite ~homoerotic  
**ὀπλίτης** -ου (ī, m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
 infantryman ~hoplite  
**πάλλω** shake, brandish ~Pallas  
**παχύς** thick, stout, clotted ~pachyderm  
**πελταστής** -οῦ (m, 1) light troops  
 ~pelt  
**προσδοκάω** expect  
**προτεροῖος** previous to  
**τοξότης** -ου (m, 1) archer ~toxic  
**υφίημι** lower; admit; slack off ~jet  
**χωρέω** withdraw, give way to (+dat)  
 ~heir  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

τούτους ἀνέστελλον οἱ τοξόται καὶ πελτασταί. οἱ δ' ἄλλοι βάδην ἐπορεύοντο πρῶτον μὲν ἐπὶ τὸ χωρίον ἀφ' οὗ τῇ προτεραίᾳ οἱ βάρβαροι ἐτρέφθησαν καὶ οἱ ξὺν αὐτοῖς· ἐνταῦθα γὰρ οἱ πολέμοι ἦσαν ἀντιτεταγμένοι. τοὺς μὲν οὖν πελταστὰς ἐδέξαντο οἱ βάρβαροι καὶ ἐμάχοντο, ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἐγγὺς ἦσαν οἱ ὀπλίται, ἐτρέποντο. καὶ οἱ μὲν πελτασταὶ εὐθὺς εἶποντο διώκοντες ἄνω πρὸς τὴν πόλιν, οἱ δὲ ὀπλίται ἐν τάξει εἶποντο. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἄνω ἦσαν πρὸς ταῖς Μητροπόλεως οἰκίαις, ἐνταῦθα οἱ πολέμοι ὁμοῦ δὴ πάντες γενόμενοι ἐμάχοντο καὶ ἐξηκόντιζον τοῖς παλτοῖς, καὶ ἄλλα δόρατα ἔχοντες παχέα μακρά, ὅσα ἀνὴρ ἂν φέροι μόλις, τούτοις ἐπειρῶντο ἀμύνασθαι ἐκ χειρός.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐχ ὑφίεντο οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἀλλὰ ὁμόσε ἐχώρουν, ἔφευγον οἱ βάρβαροι καὶ ἐντεῦθεν, λιπόντες ἅπαντες τὸ χωρίον. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς αὐτῶν ὁ ἐν τῷ μόνσσυνι τῷ ἐπ' ἄκρου ὠκοδομημένῳ, ὃν τρέφουσι πάντες κοινῇ αὐτοῦ μένοντα καὶ φυλάττουσιν, οὐκ ἤθελεν ἐξελθεῖν, οὐδὲ ὁ ἐν τῷ πρότερον αἰρεθέντι χωρίῳ, ἀλλ' αὐτοῦ σὺν τοῖς



τούτους |repel, suppress οἱ |archer καὶ |light troops οἱ δ' ἄλλοι  
 |step by step ρεύοντο πρῶτον μὲν ἐπὶ τὸ |area; downwards ἤ  
 |previous to οἱ |non-Greek ἐτρέφθησαν καὶ οἱ ξὺν αὐτοῖς·  
 |there, here ἄρ οἱ πολέμοι ἦσαν |set against τοὺς  
 μὲν οὖν |light troops ἐδέξαντο οἱ |non-Greek καὶ ἐμάχοντο,  
 ἐπειδὴ δὲ |near ἦσαν οἱ |hoplite, heavy infantryman ἔποντο. καὶ οἱ μὲν  
 |light troops εὐθὺς εἶποντο διώκοντες ἄνω πρὸς τὴν πόλιν,  
 οἱ δὲ |hoplite, heavy infantryman ἴξει εἶποντο. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἄνω ἦσαν πρὸς  
 ταῖς |mother city οἰκίαις, |there, here ἱ πολέμοι ὁμοῦ δὴ  
 πάντες γενόμενοι ἐμάχοντο καὶ |hurl forth τοῖς |shake, brandish  
 καὶ ἄλλα δόρατα ἔχοντες |thick, stout, clotted ἰρά, ὅσα ἀνὴρ ἀν  
 φέροι |with difficulty, barely ἰς ἐπειρῶντο ἀμύνασθαι ἐκ χειρός.  
 Ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐχ |lower; admit; slack off |Greek , ἀλλὰ |to the same |withdraw, give way to  
 ἔφευγον οἱ |non-Greek καὶ |thence , λιπόντες ἅπαντες τὸ  
 |area; downwards ρασιλεὺς αὐτῶν ὁ ἐν τῷ μόσσυνι τῷ ἐπ'  
 ἄκρου |build, build a house ὃν τρέφουσι πάντες κοινῇ αὐτοῦ  
 μένοντα καὶ φυλάττουσιν, οὐκ ἤθελεν ἐξελεῖν, οὐδὲ ὁ ἐν  
 τῷ πρότερον αἰρεθέντι |area; downwards' οὐ σὺν τοῖς

held in check by the archers and peltasts; and steadily step by step the mass marched on, first to the position from which the barbarians and those with them had been driven two days back, and where the enemy were now drawn up to meet them. Thus it came to pass that the barbarians first grappled with the peltasts and maintained the battle until the heavy infantry were close, when they turned and fled. The peltasts followed without delay, and pursued them right up to their city, while the heavy troops in unbroken order followed. As soon as they were up at the houses of the capital, there and then the enemy, collecting all together in one strong body, fought valiantly, and hurled their javelins, or else clenched their long stout spears, almost too heavy for a man to wield, and did their best to ward off the attack at close quarters.

But when the Hellenes, instead of giving way, kept massing together more thickly, the barbarians fled from this place also, and in a body deserted the fortress. Their king, who sat in his wooden tower or mossyn, built on the citadel (there he sits and there they maintain him, all at the common cost, and guard him narrowly), refused to come forth, as did also those in the fortress first taken, and so were burnt to a cinder where they were,

*vocabulary*

ἄκρατος (αἶ) pure, unmixed ~crater  
 ἀμφορεύς -ος (m) amphora  
 ἀπόκειμαι be stored up, put aside  
 ἀριστάω eat lunch ~aristocrat  
 ἄρτος bread, loaf  
 δελφίς -νος (m) dolphin  
 διαρπάζω make prey of ~harpoon  
 διαφυή natural break, joint  
 ἐκὼν willingly, on purpose; giving in  
 too easily  
 ἔλαιον oil, olive oil ~olive  
 Ἑλλήν Greek  
 ἐνταῦθα there, here  
 ἔπω (mid) follow, accompany; (act,  
 uncommon) handle, take care of  
 εὐπρόσδοος accessible  
 εὐώδης fragrant  
 ἔψω boil, be boiling  
 ζειά type of grain  
 ἡδύς sweet, pleasant ~hedonism

θησαυρός treasury ~treasure  
 καθάπερ exactly as  
 καλάμη straw, stubble  
 κάρουον nut, kernel  
 κατακαίω burn down ~caustic  
 κεράννυμι (ῥ) mix ~crater  
 νάττω trample, press down  
 νέομαι go; come home ~nostalgia  
 νέω spin; swim ~neuro  
 ὀπόσος as many as, how many, how  
 great  
 ὀπτάω roast, bake  
 περυσινός last year's  
 πλατύς extensive, wide  
 προσχωρέω go to, join, support  
 πρόσω forward, in the future; far  
 σίτος grain, bread, food ~parasite  
 στέαρ -τος (n) tallow ~stearic  
 ταριχεύω preserve, embalm  
 τέμαχος -εος (n, 3) slice  
 χωρίον area; downwards

μοσσύνοις κατεκαύθησαν.

Οἱ δὲ Ἑλληνες διαρπάζοντες τὰ χωρία ἠΰρισκον  
θησαυροὺς ἐν ταῖς οἰκίαις ἄρτων νενημένων περυσινῶν,  
ὥς ἔφασαν οἱ Μοσσύνοικοι, τὸν δὲ νέον σῖτον ξὺν τῇ  
καλάμῃ ἀποκείμενον· ἦσαν δὲ ζειαὶ αἱ πλείσται. καὶ  
δελφίνων τεμάχη ἐν ἀμφορεῦσιν ἠΰρίσκετο τεταριχευμένα  
καὶ στέαρ ἐν τεύχεσι τῶν δελφίνων, ᾧ ἐχρῶντο οἱ  
Μοσσύνοικοι καθάπερ οἱ Ἑλληνες τῷ ἐλαίῳ· κάρυα δὲ ἐπὶ  
τῶν ἀνώγειων ἦν πολλὰ τὰ πλατέα οὐκ ἔχοντα διαφυγὴν  
οὐδεμίαν. τούτων καὶ πλείστῳ σίτῳ ἐχρῶντο ἔψοντες  
καὶ ἄρτους ὀπτῶντες. οἶνος δὲ ἠΰρίσκετο ὥς ἄκρατος μὲν  
ὀξύς ἐφαίνετο εἶναι ὑπὸ τῆς αὐστηρότητος, κερασθεὶς δὲ  
εὐώδης τε καὶ ἡδύς.

Οἱ μὲν δὴ Ἑλληνες ἀριστήσαντες ἐνταῦθα ἐπορεύοντο  
εἰς τὸ πρόσω, παραδόντες τὸ χωρίον τοῖς ξυμμαχήσασιν  
τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων. ὅποσα δὲ καὶ ἄλλα παρήσαν χωρία  
τῶν ξὺν τοῖς πολεμίοις ὄντων, τὰ εὐπροσοδάτα οἱ μὲν  
ἔλειπον, οἱ δὲ ἐκόντες προσεχώρουν. τὰ δὲ πλείστα

μοσσύνους |burn down

Οἱ δὲ |Greek |make prey of τὰ χωρία ἡύρισκον

|treasury ἐν ταῖς οἰκίαις ἄρτων νενημένων |last year's

ὥς ἔφασαν οἱ Μοσσύνοικοι, τὸν δὲ νέον σῖτον ξὺν τῇ

|straw, stubble |be stored up, |type of grain ἔϊσται. καὶ  
|put aside

|dolphin |slice ἐν |amphora ἡύρίσκετο |preserve, embalm

καὶ |tallow ἐν τεύχεσι τῶν |dolphin , ᾧ ἐχρῶντο οἱ

Μοσσύνοικοι |exactly as οἱ |Greek τῷ |oil |nut, kernel ἔπι

τῶν ἀνώγειν ἦν πολλὰ τὰ |extensive, wide ἔχοντα |natural  
|break,  
οὐδεμίαν. τούτων καὶ πλείστῳ σίτῳ ἐχρῶντο |joint  
ἐψόντες

καὶ ἄρτους |roast, bake . οἶνος δὲ ἡύρίσκετο ὅς |pure μὲν

ὀξύς ἐφαίνετο εἶναι ὑπὸ τῆς αὐστηρότητος, |mix δὲ

|fragrant τε καὶ ἡδύς.

Οἱ μὲν δὲ |Greek |eat lunch ἐνταῦθα ἐπορεύοντο

εἰς τὸ πρόσω, παραδόντες τὸ χωρίον τοῖς ξυμμαχήσασι

τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων. |as/how many/great ἅλα παρήσαν χωρία

τῶν ξὺν τοῖς πολεμίοις ὄντων, τὰ |accessible οἱ μὲν

ἔλειπον, οἱ δὲ |willingly |go to, join, support ἅ δὲ πλείστα

their mossyns, themselves, and all.

The Hellenes, pillaging and ransacking these places, discovered in the different houses treasures and magazines of loaves, pile upon pile, «the ancestral stores,” as the Mossynoecians told them; but the new corn was laid up apart with the straw-stalk and ear together, and this was for the most part spelt. Slices of dolphin were another discovery, in narrow-necked jars, all properly salted and pickled; and there was blubber of dolphin in vessels, which the Mossynoecians used precisely as the Hellenes use oil. Then there were large stores of nuts on the upper floor, the broad kind without a division. This was also a chief article of food with them — boiled nuts and baked loaves. Wine was also discovered. This, from its rough, dry quality, tasted sharp when drunk pure, but mixed with water was sweet and fragrant.

The Hellenes breakfasted and then started forward on their march, having first delivered the stronghold to their allies among the Mossynoecians. As for the other strongholds belonging to tribes allied with their foes, which they passed en route, the most accessible were either deserted by their inhabitants or gave in their adhesion voluntarily. The following description will apply to the majority of them: the cities were on

*vocabulary*

ἀναβοάω shout out

ἀνθέμιον flower

ἀπαλός soft, delicate

ἀπέχω ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some distance

βάρβαρος non-Greek

γελάω laugh, smile, laugh at

διαλέγω go through, debate ~legion

διέρχομαι pierce, traverse

Ἑλλήν Greek

ἐμφανής visible

ἐπιδείκνυμι (ὑ) display, exhibit

ἐρημία wilderness, solitude

εὐδαίμων blessed with a good genius

ἐφθός boiled

ἐφθός boiled

ἐφθόω boil

ἐφίστημι set; (mp) come/be near, direct, stop ~station

κάρυον nut, kernel

κοῖλος hollow ~hollow

λευκός white ~light

μείων less, smaller

μῆκος -ους (n, 3) length, stature

νώτον back of the body; rear of an army; top of a box

ὀγδοήκοντα eighty ~octopus

ὅπου where

ὀρχέομαι dance

πλάτος -εος (n, 3) width

ποικίλος ornamented; various

σιτευτός (ι) fed, fattened

στάδιον 200 meters (pl also masc)

στάδιος (adj) standing upright, firm; (pl noun) 200 meters

στίζω tattoo

στρατεύω make an expedition, war, campaign ~strategy

συγγίγνομαι associate with, meet, have sex ~genus

σφόδρα very much

τοιόσδε such

ὕψηλός high

χωρίζω divide; distinguish, pull down

χωρίον area; downwards

τοιάδε ἦν τῶν χωρίων. ἀπεῖχον αἱ πόλεις ἀπ' ἀλλήλων  
 στάδια ὀγδοήκοντα, αἱ δὲ πλέον αἱ δὲ μείον· ἀναβοώντων  
 δὲ ἀλλήλων ξυνήκουον εἰς τὴν ἑτέραν ἐκ τῆς ἑτέρας  
 πόλεως· οὕτως ὑψηλὴ τε καὶ κοίλῃ ἡ χώρα ἦν. ἐπεὶ  
 δὲ πορευόμενοι ἐν τοῖς φίλοις ἦσαν, ἐπεδείκνυσαν αὐτοῖς  
 παῖδας τῶν εὐδαιμόνων σιτευτούς, τεθραμμένους καρύοις  
 ἐφθοῖς, ἀπαλοὺς καὶ λευκοὺς σφόδρα καὶ οὐ πολλοῦ  
 δέοντας ἴσους τὸ μῆκος καὶ τὸ πλάτος εἶναι, ποικίλους δὲ  
 τὰ νῶτα καὶ τὰ ἔμπροσθεν πάντα, ἐστιγμένους ἀνθήμα.  
 ἐξήτουν δὲ καὶ ταῖς ἐταίραις ὥς ἦγον οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐμφανῶς  
 ξυγγίγνεσθαι· νόμος γὰρ ἦν οὗτός σφισι. λευκοὶ δὲ πάντες  
 οἱ ἄνδρες καὶ αἱ γυναῖκες.

Τούτους ἔλεγον οἱ στρατευσάμενοι βαρβαρωτάτους  
 διελθεῖν καὶ πλείστον τῶν Ἑλληνικῶν νόμων  
 κεχωρισμένους. ἔν τε γὰρ ὅχλῳ ὄντες ἐποιοῦν ἅπερ  
 ἂν ἄνθρωποι ἐν ἐρημίᾳ ποιήσειαν, μόνοι τε ὄντες ὅμοια  
 ἔπραττον ἅπερ ἂν μετ' ἄλλων ὄντες, διελέγοντό τε αὐτοῖς  
 καὶ ἐγέλων ἐφ' ἑαυτοῖς καὶ ὠρχοῦντο ἐφιστάμενοι ὅπου



|such ἦν τῶν χωρίων. |ward off, drive off, refrain, ἀλλήλων  
|be at some distance  
στάδια |eighty , αἱ δὲ πλέον αἱ δὲ |less, |shout out  
|smaller  
δὲ ἀλλήλων ξυνήκουον εἰς τὴν ἑτέραν ἐκ τῆς ἑτέρας  
πόλεως· οὕτως |high τε καὶ |hollow ἡ χώρα ἦν. ἐπεὶ  
δὲ πορευόμενοι ἐν τοῖς φίλοις ἦσαν, |display, exhibit αὐτοῖς  
παῖδας τῶν |blessed with |fed, fattened .εθραμμένους |nut, kernel  
|good genius  
ἐφθοῖς, |soft, καὶ λευκοὺς σφόδρα καὶ οὐ πολλοῦ  
|delicate  
δέοντας ἴσους τὸ |length, καὶ τὸ |width εἶναι, |ornamented ἔ  
|stature  
τὰ |back καὶ τὰ ἔμπροσθεν πάντα, |tattoo |flower  
ἐζήτουν δὲ καὶ ταῖς ἐταίραις ὥς ἦγον οἱ |Greek |visible  
|συγγίγνομαι?: associate with, meet, have sex; or ἐνκοὶ δὲ πάντες  
|συγγίγνομαι?: associate with, meet, have sex  
οἱ ἄνδρες καὶ αἱ γυναῖκες.

Τούτους ἔλεγον οἱ |make an expedition, βαρβαρωτάτους  
|war, campaign  
|pierce, καὶ πλείστον τῶν Ἑλληνικῶν νόμων  
|traverse  
|divide; distinguish, ἐν τε γὰρ ὄχλῳ ὄντες ἐποιοῦν ἅπερ  
|pull down  
ἂν ἄνθρωποι ἐν |wilderness, ἥσειαν, μόνοι τε ὄντες ὅμοια  
|solitude  
ἔπραττον ἅπερ ἂν μετ' ἄλλων ὄντες, |go through, debate οἷς  
καὶ |laugh, ἐφ' ἑαυτοῖς καὶ |dance |set; (mp)|where  
|smile |come/be near,  
|direct, stop

an average ten miles apart, some more, some less; but so elevated is the country and intersected by such deep clefts that if they chose to shout across to one another, their cries would be heard from one city to another. When, in the course of their march, they came upon a friendly population, these would entertain them with exhibitions of fatted children belonging to the wealthy classes, fed up on boiled chestnuts until they were as white as white can be, of skin plump and delicate, and very nearly as broad as they were long, with their backs variegated and their breasts tattooed with patterns of all sorts of flowers. They sought after the women in the Hellenic army, and would fain have laid with them openly in broad daylight, for that was their custom. The whole community, male and female alike, were fair-complexioned and white-skinned.

It was agreed that this was the most barbaric and outlandish people that they had passed through on the whole expedition, and the furthest removed from the Hellenic customs, doing in a crowd precisely what other people would prefer to do in solitude, and when alone behaving exactly as others would behave in company, talking to themselves and laughing at their own expense, standing still and then again capering about, wherever they might chance to be, without rhyme or reason, as if their sole business were to show

*vocabulary*

**ἀποδείκνυμι** (ō) show, point out;  
appoint; (mid) declare

**βίος** life ~biology

**Ἕλλην** Greek

**ἐντεῦθεν** thence

**ἐπιδείκνυμι** (ō) display, exhibit

**ἐπιμένω** wait, stay ~remain

**ἐρυμνός** fortified, impregnable

**θύω** (ō) rush; sacrifice ~θύω

**καταθύω** sacrifice, offer

**μάντις** -ος (m) seer ~mantis

**ξένιος** of hospitality ~xenophobe

**ὀκτώ** eight ~octopus

**ὀνίνημι** help, please, be available

**οὐδαμῇ** nowhere

**προσβάλλω** hit, attack, approach;

attach, offer ~ballistic

**προσίημι** be allowed near

**σιδήρεος** of iron ~siderite

**σταθμός** cottage; post

**στρατιά** army ~strategy

**ὑπήκοος** heeding, subject

**φίλιος** friendly

**χρήζω** need ~chresard

**χωρίον** area; downwards

τύχοιεν, ὥσπερ ἄλλοις ἐπιδεικνύμενοι.

### 5.5

Διὰ ταύτης τῆς χώρας οἱ Ἕλληνες, διὰ τε τῆς πολεμίας καὶ τῆς φιλίας, ἐπορεύθησαν ὁκτὼ σταθμούς, καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς Χάλυβας. οὗτοι ὀλίγοι τε ἦσαν καὶ ὑπήκοοι τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων, καὶ ὁ βίος ἦν τοῖς πλείστοις αὐτῶν ἀπὸ σιδηρείας.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς Τιβαρηνοὺς. ἡ δὲ τῶν Τιβαρηνῶν χώρα πολὺ ἦν πεδινωτέρα καὶ χωρία εἶχεν ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ ἥττον ἐρυμνά. καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἔχρηζον πρὸς τὰ χωρία προσβάλλειν καὶ τὴν στρατιὰν ὀνηθῆναί τι, καὶ τὰ ξένια ἃ ἦκε παρὰ Τιβαρηνῶν οὐκ ἐδέχοντο, ἀλλ' ἐπιμεῖναι κελεύσαντες ἔστε βουλεύσαιντο ἐθύοντο. καὶ πολλὰ καταθυσάντων τέλος ἀπεδείξαντο οἱ μάντις πάντες γνώμην ὅτι οὐδαμῇ προσίοιντο οἱ θεοὶ τὸν πόλεμον. ἐντεῦθεν δὴ τὰ ξένια ἐδέξαντο, καὶ ὥς διὰ φιλίας πορευόμενοι δύο ἡμέρας ἀφίκοντο εἰς Κοτύωρα πόλιν

τύχοιεν, ὥσπερ ἄλλοις |display, exhibit

## 5.5

Διὰ ταύτης τῆς χώρας οἱ |Greek , διά τε τῆς πολεμίας

καὶ τῆς |friendly, ἐπορεύθησαν |eight |cottage; post καὶ

ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς Χάλυβας. οὗτοι ὀλίγοι τε ἦσαν καὶ

|heeding, τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων, καὶ ὁ |life ἦν τοῖς πλείστοις  
|subject

αὐτῶν ἀπὸ |of iron

|thence ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς Τιβαρηνοὺς. ἡ δὲ τῶν

Τιβαρηνῶν χώρα πολὺ ἦν πεδινωτέρα καὶ |area; downwards

ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ ἦττον |fortified . καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ |need

πρὸς τὰ |area; |hit, attack, approach; `at-army |help, please,  
|down- |tach, offer |be available  
wards

τι, καὶ τὰ |of hospitality παρὰ Τιβαρηνῶν οὐκ ἔδέχοντο,

ἀλλ' |wait, stay κελεύσαντες ἔστε βουλεύσαιντο |rush; sacrifice

καὶ πολλὰ |sacrifice, offer τέλος |show, point out;|seer  
|appoint; (mid) de-  
clare

πάντες γνώμην ὅτι |nowhere |be allowed near ' θεοὶ τὸν

πόλεμον. |thence δὴ τὰ |of hospitality το, καὶ ὥς διὰ |friendly

πορευόμενοι δύο ἡμέρας ἀφίκοντο εἰς Κοτύωρα πόλιν

off to the rest of the world.

### 5.5

Through this country, friendly or hostile as the chance might be, the Hellenes marched, eight stages in all, and reached the Chalybes. These were a people few in number, and subject to the Mossynoecians. Their livelihood was for the most part derived from mining and forging iron.

Thence they came to the Tibarenians. The country of the Tibarenians was far more level, and their fortresses lay on the seaboard and were less strong, whether by art or nature. The generals wanted to attack these places, so that the army might get some pickings, and they would not accept the gifts of hospitality which came in from the Tibarenians, but bidding them wait till they had taken counsel, they proceeded to offer sacrifice. After several abortive attempts, the seers at last pronounced an opinion that the gods in no wise countenanced war. Then they accepted the gifts of hospitality, and marching

*vocabulary*

**ἄγων** -ος (m, 3) gathering place  
 ~agony  
**ἄποικος** abroad, colonizing  
**ἀσθενέω** be weak, sick  
**ἄχρι** as far as (+gen); until  
**γυμνικός** of gymnastics  
**δηιόω** be inimical, hurt, tear, kill  
**Ἑλλην** Greek  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**ἑξακόσιοι** 600  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**θύω** (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω  
**κατάβασις** -εως (f) way down  
**μέχρι** as far as, until  
**μυρίος** (ῥ) 10,000 ~myriad  
**ὀκτώ** eight ~octopus  
**παρασάγγης** -ου (m, 1) Persian unit,

ca. 5 km  
**πεζεύω** go by land  
**πομπή** a sending, expedition ~pomp  
**προηγορέω** speak for  
**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)  
**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm;  
 (pl noun) 200 meters  
**σταθμός** cottage; post  
**στρατιά** army ~strategy  
**τεσσαράκοντα** forty ~trapezoid  
**τετταράκοντα** forty  
**φορέω** frequentative of φέρω, to carry  
 ~bear  
**φόρον** forum  
**φόρος** tribute, revenue  
**χίλιοι** (ι) thousand ~kilo-  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

Ἑλληνίδα, Σινωπέων ἄποικον, οὖσαν δ' ἐν τῇ Τιβαρηνῶν χώρα.

Μέχρι ἐνταῦθα ἐπέξευσεν ἡ στρατιά. πλῆθος τῆς καταβάσεως τῆς ὁδοῦ ἀπὸ τῆς ἐν Βαβυλῶνι μάχης ἄχρι εἰς Κοτύωρα σταθμοὶ ἑκατὸν εἴκοσι δύο, παρασάγγαι ἑξακόσιοι καὶ εἴκοσι, στάδιοι μύριοι καὶ ὀκτακισχίλιοι καὶ ἑξακόσιοι, χρόνου πλῆθος ὀκτὼ μῆνες. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τετταράκοντα πέντε. ἐν δὲ ταύταις πρῶτον μὲν τοῖς θεοῖς ἔθυσαν, καὶ πομπὰς ἐποίησαν κατὰ ἔθνος ἕκαστοι τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ ἀγῶνας γυμνικούς. τὰ δ' ἐπιτήδει' ἐλάμβανον τὰ μὲν ἐκ τῆς Παφλαγονίας, τὰ δ' ἐκ τῶν χωρίων τῶν Κοτυωριτῶν· οὐ γὰρ παρείχον ἀγοράν, οὐδ' εἰς τὸ τεῖχος τοὺς ἀσθενοῦντας ἐδέχοντο.

Ἐν τούτῳ ἔρχονται ἐκ Σινώπης πρέσβεις, φοβούμενοι περὶ τῶν Κοτυωριτῶν τῆς τε πόλεως ἣν γὰρ ἐκείνων καὶ φόρον ἐκείνοις ἔφερον καὶ περὶ τῆς χώρας, ὅτι ἤκουον δηουμένην. καὶ ἐλθόντες εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον ἔλεγον· προηγόρει δὲ Ἑκατώνυμος δεινὸς νομιζόμενος



Ἑλληνίδα, Σινωπέων |abroad, , οὕσαν δ' ἐν τῇ Τιβαρηνῶν  
|colonizing  
χώρα.

|as far as,|there, here |go by land ἡ στρατιά. πλῆθος τῆς  
|until  
|way down τῆς ὁδοῦ ἀπὸ τῆς ἐν Βαβυλῶνι μάχης |as far as (+gen);  
|until  
εἰς Κοτύωρα |cottage; post .πτόν εἴκοσι δύο, |ca. 5 km

|600 καὶ εἴκοσι, στάδιοι μύριοι καὶ ὀκτακισχίλιοι καὶ

|600 , χρόνου πλῆθος |eight μῆνες. |there, here ᾤμειναν

ἡμέρας τετταράκοντα πέντε. ἐν δὲ ταύταις πρῶτον

μὲν τοῖς θεοῖς |rush; sacrifice |a sending, ποίησαν κατὰ ἔθνος  
|expedition

ἕκαστοι τῶν |Greek καὶ |gathering |of gymnastics τὰ δ'  
|place

|fit, suitable ἄλμβανον τὰ μὲν ἐκ τῆς Παφλαγονίας, τὰ δ' ἐκ

τῶν |area; downwards τυωριτῶν· οὐ γὰρ παρείχον ἀγοράν,

οὐδ' εἰς τὸ τεῖχος τοὺς ἀσθενοῦντας ἐδέχοντο.

Ἐν τούτῳ ἔρχονται ἐκ Σινώπης πρέσβεις, φοβούμενοι

περὶ τῶν Κοτυωριτῶν τῆς τε πόλεως ἦν γὰρ ἐκείνων καὶ

φόρον ἐκείνοις ἔφερον καὶ περὶ τῆς χώρας, ὅτι ἤκουον

δηουμένην. καὶ ἐλθόντες εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον ἔλεγον·

|speak for δὲ Ἑκατόνυμος δεινὸς νομιζόμενος

through what was now recognised as a friendly country, in two days reached Cotyora, a Hellenic city, and a colony of Sinope, albeit situated in the territory of the Tibarenians.

Here they halted forty-five days, during which they first of all sacrificed to the gods, and instituted processions, each set of the Hellenes according to their several tribes, with gymnastic contests. Provisions they got in meanwhile, partly from Paphlagonia, partly from the estates of the Cotyorites, for the latter would neither provide them a market nor receive their sick within their walls.

Meanwhile ambassadors arrived from Sinope, full of fears, not only for the Cotyorites and their city, which belonged to Sinope, and brought in tribute, but also for the territory which, as they had heard, was being pillaged. Accordingly they came to the camp and made

*vocabulary*

**ἄποικος** abroad, colonizing  
**ἀφαιρέω** take away ~heresy  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**δασμός** portion, tax, tribute  
**Ἕλληγ** Greek  
**ἔνιοι** some  
**ἐπαινέω** concur, praise, advise

**παρέρχομαι** pass, escape  
**πώποτε** never  
**σκηνέω** camp  
**σκηνόω** camp  
**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
mercenary ~strategy  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

εἶναι λέγειν· «Ἐπεμψεν ἡμᾶς, ὦ ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, ἢ τῶν Σινωπέων πόλις ἐπαινέσοντάς τε ὑμᾶς ὅτι νικᾶτε Ἕλληνες ὄντες βαρβάρους, ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ ξυνησθησομένους ὅτι διὰ πολλῶν τε καὶ δεινῶν, ὡς ἡμεῖς ἠκούσαμεν, πραγμάτων σεσωσμένοι πάρεστε. ἀξιοῦμεν δὲ Ἕλληνες ὄντες καὶ αὐτοὶ ὑφ' ὑμῶν ὄντων Ἑλλήνων ἀγαθὸν μὲν τι πάσχειν, κακὸν δὲ μηδέν· οὐδὲ γὰρ ἡμεῖς ὑμᾶς οὐδὲν πώποτε ὑπήρξαμεν κακῶς ποιοῦντες. Κοτυωρίται δὲ οὗτοι εἰσὶ μὲν ἡμέτεροι ἄποικοι, καὶ τὴν χώραν ἡμεῖς αὐτοῖς ταύτην παραδεδώκαμεν βαρβάρους ἀφελόμενοι· διὸ καὶ δασμὸν ἡμῖν φέρουσιν οὗτοι τεταγμένον καὶ Κερασούντιοι καὶ Τραπεζούντιοι· ὥστε ὅ τι ἂν τούτους κακὸν ποιήσητε ἢ Σινωπέων πόλις νομίζει πάσχειν. νῦν δὲ ἀκούομεν ὑμᾶς εἰς τε τὴν πόλιν βία παρεληλυθότας ἐνίοις σκηνοῦν ἐν ταῖς οἰκίαις καὶ ἐκ τῶν χωρίων βία λαμβάνειν ὧν ἂν δέησθε οὐ πείθοντας. ταῦτ' οὖν οὐκ ἀξιοῦμεν· εἰ δὲ ταῦτα ποιήσετε, ἀνάγκη ἡμῖν καὶ Κορύλαν καὶ Παφλαγόνας καὶ ἄλλον ὅντινα ἂν δυνώμεθα

εἶναι λέγειν· «Ἐπεμψεν ἡμᾶς, ὧ ἄνδρες |soldier,  
|mercenary  
ἡ τῶν Σινωπέων πόλις |concur τε ὑμᾶς ὅτι  
νικᾶτε |Greek ὄντες |non-Greek , ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ  
ξυνησθησομένους ὅτι διὰ πολλῶν τε καὶ δεινῶν, ὥς  
ἡμεῖς ἠκούσαμεν, πραγμάτων σεσωσμένοι πάρεστε.  
ἀξιούμεν δὲ |Greek ὄντες καὶ αὐτοὶ ὑφ' ὑμῶν ὄντων  
|Greek ἀγαθὸν μὲν τι πάσχειν, κακὸν δὲ μηδέν·  
οὐδὲ γὰρ ἡμεῖς ὑμᾶς οὐδὲν |never ὑπῆρξαμεν κακῶς  
ποιοῦντες. Κοτυωρίται δὲ οὗτοι εἰσὶ μὲν ἡμέτεροι |abroad,  
|colonizing  
καὶ τὴν χώραν ἡμεῖς αὐτοῖς ταύτην παραδεδώκαμεν  
|non-Greek |take away διὸ καὶ |portion,  
|tax, tribute  
οὗτοι τεταγμένον καὶ Κερασούντιοι καὶ Τραπεζούντιοι·  
ὥστε ὅ τι ἂν τούτους κακὸν ποιήσητε ἡ Σινωπέων πόλις  
νομίζει πάσχειν. νῦν δὲ ἀκούομεν ὑμᾶς εἰς τε τὴν πόλιν βίᾳ  
|pass, escape |some σκηνοῦν ἐν ταῖς οἰκίαις καὶ ἐκ τῶν  
|area; downwards , βάνειν ὧν ἂν δέησθε οὐ πείθοντας. ταῦτ'  
οὖν οὐκ ἀξιούμεν· εἰ δὲ ταῦτα ποιήσετε, ἀνάγκη ἡμῖν καὶ  
Κορύλαν καὶ Παφλαγόνας καὶ ἄλλον ὅντινα ἂν δυνώμεθα

a speech. Hecatonymus, who was reported to be a clever orator, acted as their spokesman: «Soldiers,” he said, «the city of the Sinopeans has sent us to offer you, as Hellenes, our compliments and congratulations on your victories over the barbarians; and next, to express our joyful satisfaction that you have surmounted all those terrible sufferings of which we have heard, and have reached this place in safety. As Hellenes we claim to receive at your hands, as fellow-Hellenes, kindness and not harm. We have certainly not ourselves set you an example heretofore of evil treatment. Now the Cotyrites are our colonists. It was we who gave them this country to dwell in, having taken it from the barbarians; for which reason also they, with the men of Cerasus and Trapezus, pay us an appointed tribute. So that, whatever mischief you inflict on the men of Cotyora, the city of Sinope takes as personal to herself. At the present time we hear that you have made forcible entry into their city, some of you, and are quartered in the houses, besides taking forcibly from the Cotyrite estates whatever you need, by hook and by crook. Now against these things we enter protest. If you mean to go on so doing, you will drive us to make friends with Corylas and the Paphlagonians, or any one else we can find.”

To

*vocabulary*

**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some distance

**βάρβαρος** non-Greek

**διασώζω** preserve through

**ἐνθάδε** here, hither

**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable

**ἔρωτάω** ask about something

**ἡγεμῶν** -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide, chief ~hegemony

**καίπερ** even if

**ξένιος** of hospitality ~xenophobe

**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle

~hoplite

**ὅποι** to which place

**ὅποῖος** whatever kind

**στρατιά** army ~strategy

**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier, mercenary ~strategy

**τιμάω** (i) honor, exalt

**ὔβρις** -εως (f) pride, insolence, outrage

**ὑπήκοος** heeding, subject

**φιλία** friendship ~philanthropy

**φίλιος** friendly

**ὠνέομαι** buy

φίλον ποιείσθαι.»

Πρὸς ταῦτα ἀναστὰς Ξενοφῶν ὑπὲρ τῶν στρατιωτῶν εἶπεν· «Ἡμεῖς δέ, ὦ ἄνδρες Σινωπεῖς, ἤκομεν ἀγαπῶντες ὅτι τὰ σώματα διεσωσάμεθα καὶ τὰ ὄπλα· οὐ γὰρ ἦν δυνατὸν ἅμα τε χρήματα ἄγειν καὶ φέρειν καὶ τοῖς πολεμίοις μάχεσθαι. καὶ νῦν ἐπεὶ εἰς τὰς Ἑλληνίδας πόλεις ἦλθομεν, ἐν Τραπεζοῦντι μὲν παρείχον γὰρ ἡμῖν ἀγοράν ὠνούμενοι εἶχομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, καὶ ἀνθ' ὧν ἐτίμησαν ἡμᾶς καὶ ξένια ἔδωκαν τῇ στρατιᾷ, ἀντετιμῶμεν αὐτούς, καὶ εἴ τις αὐτοῖς φίλος ἦν τῶν βαρβάρων, τούτων ἀπειχόμεθα· τοὺς δὲ πολεμίους αὐτῶν ἐφ' οὓς αὐτοὶ ἠγοῦντο κακῶς ἐποιοῦμεν ὅσον ἐδυνάμεθα. ἐρωτᾶτε δὲ αὐτοὺς ὁποίων τινῶν ἡμῶν ἔτυχον· πάρεισι γὰρ ἐνθάδε οὓς ἡμῖν ἠγεμόνας διὰ φιλίαν ἢ πόλιν ξυνέπεμψεν.

«Ὅποι δ' ἂν ἐλθόντες ἀγοράν μὴ ἔχωμεν, ἅν τε εἰς βάρβαρον γῆν ἅν τε εἰς Ἑλληνίδα, οὐχ ὕβρει ἀλλὰ ἀνάγκῃ λαμβάνομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. καὶ Καρδούχους καὶ Ταόχους καὶ Χαλδαίους καίπερ βασιλέως οὐχ ὑπηκόους ὄντας



φίλον ποιέισθαι.»

Πρὸς ταῦτα ἀναστὰς Ξενοφῶν ὑπὲρ τῶν <sup>|soldier,</sup>  
<sup>|mercenary</sup>  
 εἶπεν· «Ἡμεῖς δέ, ὦ ἄνδρες Σινωπεῖς, ἥκομεν ἀγαπῶντες  
 ὅτι τὰ σώματα <sup>|preserve</sup> καὶ τὰ <sup>|tool</sup> οὐ γὰρ ἦν  
<sup>|through</sup>  
 δυνατὸν ἅμα τε χρήματα ἄγειν καὶ φέρειν καὶ τοῖς  
 πολεμίοις μάχεσθαι. καὶ νῦν ἐπεὶ εἰς τὰς Ἑλληνίδας  
 πόλεις ἦλθομεν, ἐν Τραπεζοῦντι μὲν παρείχον γὰρ ἡμῖν  
 ἀγοράν <sup>|buy</sup> εἶχομεν τὰ <sup>|fit, suitable</sup>, καὶ ἀνθ' ὧν  
<sup>|honor</sup> ἡμᾶς καὶ <sup>|of hospitality</sup> τῇ <sup>|army</sup> ἀντετιμῶμεν  
 αὐτούς, καὶ εἴ τις αὐτοῖς φίλος ἦν τῶν <sup>|non-Greek</sup>, τούτων  
<sup>|ward off, drive off, refrain,</sup> πολεμίους αὐτῶν ἐφ' οὓς αὐτοὶ  
<sup>|be at some distance</sup>  
 ἡγοῖντο κακῶς ἐποιοῦμεν ὅσον ἐδυνάμεθα. <sup>|ask</sup> δὲ  
 αὐτοὺς <sup>|whatever kind</sup> ἡμῶν ἔτυχον· πάρεισι γὰρ <sup>|here,</sup>  
<sup>|hither</sup>  
 οὓς ἡμῖν <sup>|leader</sup> διὰ φιλίαν ἢ πόλιν ξυνέπεμψεν.  
 «<sup>|to which place</sup> ἐλθόντες ἀγοράν μὴ ἔχωμεν, ἂν τε εἰς  
<sup>|non-Greek</sup> γῆν ἂν τε εἰς Ἑλληνίδα, οὐχ <sup>|hubris</sup> ἰλλὰ ἀνάγκη  
 λαμβάνομεν τὰ <sup>|fit, suitable</sup> καὶ Καρδούχους καὶ Ταόχους  
 καὶ Χαλδαίους <sup>|even if</sup> βασιλέως οὐχ <sup>|heeding,</sup>  
<sup>|subject</sup> ὄντας

meet these charges Xenophon, on behalf of the soldiers, rose and said: «As to ourselves, men of Sinope, having got so far, we are well content to have saved our bodies and our arms. Indeed it was impossible at one and the same moment to keep our enemies at bay and to despoil them of their goods and chattels. And now, since we have reached Hellenic cities, how has it fared with us? At Trapezus they gave us a market, and we paid for our provisions at a fair market price. In return for the honour they did us, and the gifts of hospitality they gave the army, we requited them with honour. Where the barbarian was friendly to them, we stayed our hands from injury; or under their escort, we did damage to their enemies to the utmost of our power. Ask them, what sort of people they found us. They are here, some of them, to answer for themselves. Their fellow-citizens and the state of Trapezus, for friendship's sake, have sent them with us to act as our guides.

”But wherever we come, be it foreign or Hellenic soil, and find no market for provisions, we are wont to help ourselves, not out of insolence but from necessity. There have been tribes like the Carduchians, the Taochians, the Chaldaeans, which, albeit they were not subject to the great king, yet were no less

*vocabulary*

**αἰτιάομαι** blame ~etiology  
**αἷτιος** blameworthy; the cause  
 ~etiology  
**αἰτίος** blameworthy; the cause  
 ~etiology  
**ἀνοίγνυμι** (ῥ) open  
**ἀρμοστής** -οῦ (m, 1) governor  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**βίαιος** by force  
**δαπανάω** spend, consume, waste  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**καίπερ** even if  
**κάμνω** toil, be tired, acquire by toil; be  
 troubled; be sick

**κλείω** tell of; close  
**κτάομαι** acquire, possess  
**μάκρων** -ος (m, 3) longhead (ethnic  
 term)  
**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless  
**παρέρχομαι** pass, escape  
**προσφέρω** present; resemble; add  
**πύλη** gate ~Thermopylae  
**σκηνέω** camp  
**σκηνόω** camp  
**στέγη** roof, ceiling, chamber  
**ὕμέτερος** (ῥ) yours  
**φοβερός** frightful, afraid  
**φρουρέω** keep watch  
**χωρίον** area; downwards

ὅμως καὶ μάλα φοβεροὺς ὄντας πολεμίους ἐκτησάμεθα διὰ τὸ ἀνάγκην εἶναι λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἐπεὶ ἀγορὰν οὐ παρεῖχον. Μάκρωνας δὲ καίπερ βαρβάρους ὄντας, ἐπεὶ ἀγορὰν οἶαν ἐδύναντο παρεῖχον, φίλους τε ἐνομίζομεν εἶναι καὶ βία οὐδὲν ἐλαμβάνομεν τῶν ἐκείνων. Κοτυωρίτας δέ, οὓς ὑμετέρους φατὲ εἶναι, εἴ τι αὐτῶν εἰλήφαμεν, αὐτοὶ αἵτιοί εἰσιν· οὐ γὰρ ὡς φίλοι προσεφέροντο ἡμῖν, ἀλλὰ κλείσαντες τὰς πύλας οὔτε εἴσω ἐδέχοντο οὔτε ἔξω ἀγορὰν ἔπεμπον· ἡτιῶντο δὲ τὸν παρ' ὑμῶν ἀρμοστήν τούτων αἷτιον εἶναι.

«Ὁ δὲ λέγεις βία παρελθόντας σκηνοῦν, ἡμεῖς ἡξιούμεν τοὺς κάμνοντας εἰς τὰς στέγας δέξασθαι· ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐκ ἀνέωγον τὰς πύλας, ἥ ἡμᾶς ἐδέχετο αὐτὸ τὸ χωρίον ταύτῃ εἰσελθόντες ἄλλο μὲν οὐδὲν βίαιον ἐποιήσαμεν, σκηνοῦσι δ' ἐν ταῖς στέγαις οἱ κάμνοντες τὰ αὐτῶν δαπανῶντες, καὶ τὰς πύλας φρουροῦμεν, ὅπως μὴ ἐπὶ τῷ ὑμετέρῳ ἀρμοστῇ ὦσιν οἱ κάμνοντες ἡμῶν, ἀλλ' ἐφ' ἡμῖν ἢ κομίσασθαι ὅταν βουλώμεθα. οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι, ὡς ὁράτε, σκηνοῦμεν

|anyway, ...nevertheless |frightful, |less |afraid ὄντας πολεμίους ἐκτησάμεθα

διὰ τὸ ἀνάγκην εἶναι λαμβάνειν τὰ |fit, suitable, ἐπεὶ

ἀγορὰν οὐ παρείχον. |longhead (ethnic term) |even if |non-Greek

ὄντας, ἐπεὶ ἀγορὰν οἶαν ἐδύναντο παρείχον, φίλους

τε ἐνομίζομεν εἶναι καὶ βία οὐδὲν ἐλαμβάνομεν τῶν

ἐκείνων. Κοτυωρίτας δέ, οὓς |yours φατὲ εἶναι, εἴ

τι αὐτῶν εἰλήφαμεν, αὐτοὶ |blameworthy; |the cause οὐ γὰρ ὡς φίλοι

|present; resem- |ἡμῖν, ἀλλὰ |tell of; close τὰς |gate οὔτε εἴσω  
|ble; add

ἐδέχοντο οὔτε ἔξω ἀγορὰν ἔπεμπον· |blame δὲ τὸν παρ'

ὑμῶν |governor τούτων αἴτιον εἶναι.

«Ὁ δὲ λέγεις βία |pass, escape σκηνοῦν, ἡμεῖς ἡξιούμεν

τοὺς |toil, acquire, |eis τὰς |roof, ceiling, |ασθαι· ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐκ  
|be tired |chamber

ἀνέωγον τὰς |gate, ἥ ἡμᾶς ἐδέχετο αὐτὸ τὸ |area; downwards

εἰσελθόντες ἄλλο μὲν οὐδὲν |by force ποιήσαμεν, σκηνοῦσι

δ' ἐν ταῖς |roof, ceiling, |toil, acquire, τὰ αὐτῶν |spend, con-, καὶ  
|chamber |be tired |sume, waste

τὰς |gate |keep watch, ὅπως μὴ ἐπὶ τῷ |yours |governor

ᾧσιν οἱ |toil, acquire, ἡμῶν, ἀλλ' ἐφ' ἡμῖν ἡ κομίσασθαι ὅταν  
|be tired

βουλώμεθα. οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι, ὡς ὁράτε, σκηνοῦμεν

formidable than independent. These we had to bring over by our arms. The necessity of getting provisions forced us; since they refused to offer us a market. Whereas some other folk, like the Macrones, in spite of their being barbarians, we regarded as our friends, simply because they did provide us with the best market in their power, and we took no single thing of theirs by force. But, to come to these Cotyorites, whom you claim to be your people, if we have taken aught from them, they have themselves to blame, for they did not deal with us as friends, but shut their gates in our faces. They would neither welcome us within nor furnish us with a market without. The only justification they alleged was that your governor had authorised this conduct.

«As to your assertion,” he continued, turning to Hecatonymus, «that we have got in by force and have taken up quarters, this is what we did. We requested them to receive our sick and wounded under cover; and when they refused to open their gates, we walked in where the place itself invited us. All the violence we have committed amounts to this, that our sick folk are quartered under cover, paying for their expenses, and we keep a sentry at the gates, so that our sick and wounded may not lie at the mercy of your governor, but we may have it in our power to remove them whenever we like.

*vocabulary*

ἀλέξω ward off; aid  
 ἀπειλέω vow, threaten, boast  
 δῆλος visible, conspicuous  
 Ἕλληγν Greek  
 ἐνθάδε here, hither  
 ἐπιδείκνυμι (ῥ) display, exhibit  
 ἐπιθαλάσσιος coastal  
 ἐπιθυμέω (ῥ) wish, covet  
 ξενίζω be host, treat as a guest

~xenophobe  
 ξένιος of hospitality ~xenophobe  
 παρέρχομαι pass, escape  
 πολλαπλάσιος many times more  
 συμπράσσω cooperate  
 σύμπρεσβυς fellow ambassador  
 ὑμέτερος (ῥ) yours  
 ὑπαίθριος in open air  
 χαλεπαίνω be violent, rage  
 χωρίον area; downwards

ὑπαίθριοι ἐν τῇ τάξει, παρεσκευασμένοι, ἂν μὲν τις εὖ ποιῇ, ἀντ' εὖ ποιεῖν, ἂν δὲ κακῶς, ἀλέξασθαι. ἃ δὲ ἠπειλήσας ὥς, ἦν ὑμῖν δοκῇ, Κορύλαν καὶ Παφλαγόνας ξυμμάχους ποιήσεσθε ἐφ' ἡμᾶς, ἡμεῖς δέ, ἦν μὲν ἀνάγκη ᾗ, πολεμήσομεν καὶ ἀμφοτέροις· ἤδη γὰρ καὶ ἄλλοις πολλαπλασίοις ὑμῶν ἐπολεμήσαμεν· ἂν δὲ δοκῇ ἡμῖν καὶ φίλον ποιεῖσθαι τὸν Παφλαγόνα ἀκούομεν δὲ αὐτὸν καὶ ἐπιθυμεῖν τῆς ὑμετέρας πόλεως καὶ χωρίων τῶν ἐπιθαλαττίων, πειρασόμεθα ξυμπράττοντες αὐτῷ ὧν ἐπιθυμῇ φίλοι γίνεσθαι.»

Ἐκ τούτου μάλα μὲν δῆλοι ἦσαν οἱ ξυμπρέσβεις τῷ Ἑκατωνύμῳ χαλεπαίνοντες τοῖς εἰρημένοις, παρελθὼν δ' αὐτῶν ἄλλος εἶπεν ὅτι οὐ πόλεμον ποιησόμενοι ἤκοιεν ἀλλὰ ἐπιδείζοντες ὅτι φίλοι εἰσὶ. «καὶ ξενίοις, ἦν μὲν ἔλθητε πρὸς τὴν Σινωπέων πόλιν, ἐκεῖ δεξόμεθα, νῦν δὲ τοὺς ἐνθάδε κελεύσομεν διδόναι ἃ δύνανται· ὁρῶμεν γὰρ πάντα ἀληθῆ ὄντα ἃ λέγετε.» ἐκ τούτου ξενία τε ἔπεμπον οἱ Κοτυωρίται καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐξένιζον



|in open air ἐν τῇ τάξει, παρεσκευασμένοι, ἂν μὲν τις εὖ  
 ποιῇ, ἀντ' εὖ ποιεῖν, ἂν δὲ κακῶς, |ward off; aid ἃ δὲ  
 ἠπειλήσας ὥς, ἦν ὑμῖν δοκῇ, Κορύλαν καὶ Παφλαγόνας  
 ξυμμάχους ποιήσεσθε ἐφ' ἡμᾶς, ἡμεῖς δέ, ἦν μὲν ἀνάγκη  
 ᾗ, πολεμήσομεν καὶ ἀμφοτέροις· ἤδη γὰρ καὶ ἄλλοις  
 |many times more ὑμῶν ἐπολεμήσαμεν· ἂν δὲ δοκῇ ἡμῖν  
 καὶ φίλον ποιεῖσθαι τὸν Παφλαγόνα ἀκούομεν δὲ αὐτὸν  
 καὶ |wish, covet τῆς |yours πόλεως καὶ |area; downwards  
 |coastal , πειρασόμεθα |συμπράσσω?: cooperate; or ὦν  
 |wish, covet φίλοι γίνεσθαι.» |συμπράσσω?: cooperate  
 Ἐκ τούτου μάλα μὲν |visible, ᾗ, ... οἱ |fellow τῷ  
 |conspicuous |ambassador  
 Ἐκατωνύμῳ |be violent, rage τοῖς εἰρημένοις, |pass, escape δ'  
 αὐτῶν ἄλλος εἶπεν ὅτι οὐ πόλεμον ποιησόμενοι ἤκοιεν  
 ἀλλὰ |display, ὅτι φίλοι εἰσί. «καὶ |of hospitality μὲν  
 |exhibit  
 ἔλθητε πρὸς τὴν Σινωπέων πόλιν, ἐκεῖ δεξόμεθα, νῦν δὲ  
 τοὺς |here, κελεύσομεν διδόναι ἃ δύνανται· ὁρῶμεν γὰρ  
 |hither  
 πάντα ἀληθῆ ὄντα ἃ λέγετε.» ἐκ τούτου |of hospitality , ἵπον  
 οἱ Κοτυωρίται καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ τῶν |Greek |be host

The rest of us, you observe, are camping under the canopy of heaven, in regular rank and file, and we are ready to requite kindness with kindness, but to repel evil vigorously. And as for your threat," he said, once again turning to the spokesman, «that you will, if it suits you, make alliance with Corylas and the Paphlagonians to attack us, for our part, we have no objection to fighting both sets of you, if so be we must; we have already fought others many times more numerous than you. Besides, 'if it suits us,' as you put it, to make the Paphlagonian our friend (report says that he has a hankering after your city and some other places on the seaboard), we can enhance the value of our friendship by helping to win for him what he covets."

Thereupon the ambassadors showed very plainly their annoyance with Hecatonymus, on account of the style of his remarks, and one of them stepped forward to explain that their intention in coming was not at all to raise a war, but on the contrary to demonstrate their friendliness. «And if you come to Sinope itself," the speaker continued, «we will welcome you there with gifts of hospitality. Meanwhile we will enjoin upon the citizens of this place to give you what they can; for we can see that every word of what you say is true." Thereupon the Cotyrorites sent gifts of hospitality, and the generals of the Hellenes entertained the ambassadors of the Sinopeans. Many

*vocabulary*

**ἀναπυνθάνομαι** study closely  
**ἀπολογέομαι** defend one's conduct  
**ἀρκέω** satisfy; ward off, defend; suffice  
**διαλέγω** go through, debate ~legion  
**εἴτε** if, whenever; either/or  
**ἐκάτερος** each of two  
**Ἕλλην** Greek  
**ἐμπειρος** experienced

**εὖνοος** kindly; favorable  
**πορεία** gait, march  
**προσδέω** bind also; need also  
**στρατιά** army ~strategy  
**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
 mercenary ~strategy  
**ὕστεραῖος** the next; later  
**φιλικός** friendly  
**χρήσιμος** useful

τοὺς τῶν Σινωπέων πρέσβεις, καὶ πρὸς ἀλλήλους πολλὰ τε καὶ φιλικὰ διελέγοντο τά τε ἄλλα καὶ περὶ τῆς λοιπῆς πορείας ἀνεπυνθάνοντο ὧν ἑκάτεροι ἐδέοντο.

## 5.6

Ταύτῃ μὲν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ τοῦτο τὸ τέλος ἐγένετο. τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ ξυνέλεξαν οἱ στρατηγοὶ τοὺς στρατιώτας. καὶ ἐδόκει αὐτοῖς περὶ τῆς λοιπῆς πορείας παρακαλέσαντας τοὺς Σινωπέας βουλεύεσθαι. εἴτε γὰρ πεζῇ δέοι πορεύεσθαι, χρήσιμοι ἂν ἐδόκουν εἶναι οἱ Σινωπεῖς· ἔμπειροι γὰρ ἦσαν τῆς Παφλαγονίας· εἴτε κατὰ θάλατταν, προσδεῖν ἐδόκει Σινωπέων· μόνοι γὰρ ἂν ἐδόκουν ἱκανοὶ εἶναι πλοῖα παρασχεῖν ἀρκούντα τῇ στρατιᾷ. καλέσαντες οὖν τοὺς πρέσβεις ξυνεβουλεύοντο, καὶ ἡξίουσαν Ἑλληνας ὄντας Ἑλλησι τούτῳ πρῶτον καλῶς δέχεσθαι τῷ εὖνους τε εἶναι καὶ τὰ κάλλιστα συμβουλεύειν.

Ἀναστὰς δὲ Ἑκατόννυμος πρῶτον μὲν ἀπελογήσατο περὶ οὗ εἶπεν ὡς τὸν Παφλαγόνα φίλον ποιήσوينτο, ὅτι οὐχ ὡς

τοὺς τῶν Σινωπέων πρέσβεις, καὶ πρὸς ἀλλήλους πολλὰ  
 τε καὶ |friendly |go through, debate ἄλλα καὶ περὶ τῆς λοιπῆς  
 |gait, |study closely ὧν |each of two. ὕέοντο.  
 |march

5.6

Ταύτῃ μὲν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ τοῦτο τὸ τέλος ἐγένετο. τῇ δὲ  
 |the next; later ἔλεξαν οἱ στρατηγοὶ τοὺς |soldier, καὶ  
 |mercenary  
 ἐδόκει αὐτοῖς περὶ τῆς λοιπῆς |gait, παρακαλέσαντας  
 |march  
 τοὺς Σινωπέας βουλευέσθαι. |if, whenever; τεξῇ δέοι  
 |either/or  
 πορεύεσθαι, |useful ἂν ἐδόκουν εἶναι οἱ Σινωπεῖς·  
 |experienced ἄρ ἦσαν τῆς Παφλαγονίας· |if, whenever;  
 |either/or  
 θάλατταν, |bind also; need also Σινωπέων· μόνοι γὰρ ἂν  
 ἐδόκουν ἱκανοὶ εἶναι πλοῖα παρασχεῖν |satisfy; ward ὀff, defend;  
 |suffice  
 |army καλέσαντες οὖν τοὺς πρέσβεις ξυμβουλεύοντο,  
 καὶ ἡξίουν |Greek ὄντας |Greek τούτῳ πρῶτον καλῶς  
 δέχεσθαι τῷ εὖνους τε εἶναι καὶ τὰ κάλλιστα ξυμβουλεύειν.  
 Ἀναστὰς δὲ Ἑκατόννυμος πρῶτον μὲν |defend one's conduct·  
 οὗ εἶπεν ὡς τὸν Παφλαγόνα φίλον ποιήσονται, ὅτι οὐχ ὡς

and friendly were the topics of conversation; freely flowed the talk on things in general; and, in particular, both parties were able to make inquiries and satisfy their curiosity concerning the remaining portion of the march.

## 5.6

Such was the conclusion of that day. On the following day the generals summoned an assembly of the soldiers, when it was resolved to invite the men of Sinope, and to take advice with them touching the remainder of the journey. In the event of their having to continue it on foot, the Sinopeans through their acquaintance with Paphlagonia would be useful to them; while, if they had to go by sea, the services of the same people would be at a premium; for who but they could furnish ships sufficient for the army? Accordingly, they summoned their ambassadors, and took counsel with them, begging them, on the strength of the sacred ties which bind Hellenes to Hellenes, to inaugurate the good reception they had spoken of, by present kindness and their best advice.

Hecatonymus rose and wished at once to offer an apology with regard to what he had said about the possibility of making friends with the Paphlagonians. «The words were not intended,” he

*vocabulary*

βάρβαρος non-Greek

βέλτιστος best, noblest

εἰσβολή -ωβόλης invasion, an entrance  
~ballistic

ἐκάτερος each of two

Ἕλληγν Greek

ἐμπειρος experienced

ἔξειμι go forth; is possible ~ion

ἐπαινέω concur, praise, advise

ἐπεύχομαι exult (over); pray ~vow

καταράομαι (αἶα) curse

κέρας -τος (n, 3) horn; military unit  
~ceratopsia

ὅμως anyway, nevertheless

πορίζω bring about, provide

στέλλω prepare, send, furl ~apostle

ὕψηλός high

τοῖς Ἑλλησι πολεμησόντων σφῶν εἴποι, ἀλλ' ὅτι ἐξὸν τοῖς βαρβάροις φίλους εἶναι τοὺς Ἑλληνας αἰρήσονται. ἐπεὶ δὲ ξυμβουλεύειν ἐκέλευον, ἐπευξάμενος εἶπεν ὧδε. «Εἰ μὲν ξυμβουλεύοιμι ἃ βέλτιστά μοι εἶναι δοκεῖ, πολλά μοι καὶ ἀγαθὰ γένοιτο· εἰ δὲ μή, τάναντία. αὐτὴ γὰρ ἡ ἱερὰ ξυμβουλὴ λεγομένη εἶναι δοκεῖ μοι παρεῖναι· νῦν γὰρ δὴ ἂν μὲν εὖ ξυμβουλεύσας φανῶ, πολλοὶ ἔσονται οἱ ἐπαινοῦντές με, ἂν δὲ κακῶς, πολλοὶ ἔσεσθε οἱ καταρώμενοι.

«Πράγματα μὲν οὖν οἶδ' ὅτι πολὺ πλείω ἔξομεν, ἐὰν κατὰ θάλατταν κομίζησθε· ἡμᾶς γὰρ δεῖσει τὰ πλοῖα πορίζειν· ἣν δὲ κατὰ γῆν στέλλησθε, ὑμᾶς δεῖσει τοὺς μαχομένους εἶναι. ὅμως δὲ λεκτέα ἃ γιγνώσκω· ἔμπειρος γάρ εἰμι καὶ τῆς χώρας τῆς Παφλαγόνων καὶ τῆς δυνάμεως. ἔχει γὰρ ἀμφοτέρω, καὶ πεδία κάλλιστα καὶ ὄρη ὑψηλότατα. καὶ πρῶτον μὲν οἶδα εὐθὺς ἢ τὴν εἰσβολὴν ἀνάγκη ποιεῖσθαι· οὐ γὰρ ἔστιν ἄλλη ἢ ἢ τὰ κέρατα τοῦ ὄρους τῆς ὁδοῦ καθ' ἑκάτερά ἐστιν ὑψηλά, ἃ κρατεῖν κατέχοντες καὶ πάνυ ὀλίγοι δύναιτ' ἂν· τούτων δὲ κατεχομένων οὐδ' ἂν οἱ



τοῖς |Greek πολεμησόντων σφῶν εἴποι, ἀλλ' ὅτι |go forth;  
|is possible  
|non-Greek φίλους εἶναι τοὺς |Greek αἰρήσονται. ἐπεὶ  
δὲ συμβουλεύειν ἐκέλευον, |exult (over); pray...εν ὧδε. «Εἰ  
μὲν συμβουλεύοιμι ἂ |best, μοι εἶναι δοκεῖ, πολλά μοι  
|noblest  
καὶ ἀγαθὰ γένοιτο· εἰ δὲ μή, τάναντία. αὐτὴ γὰρ ἡ ἱερὰ  
συμβουλή λεγομένη εἶναι δοκεῖ μοι παρεῖναι· νῦν γὰρ δὴ ἂν  
μὲν εὖ συμβουλεύσας φανῶ, πολλοὶ ἔσονται οἱ |concur  
με, ἂν δὲ κακῶς, πολλοὶ ἔσεσθε οἱ |curse  
«Πράγματα μὲν οὖν οἶδ' ὅτι πολὺ πλείω ἔξομεν, ἐὰν κατὰ  
θάλατταν κομίζησθε· ἡμᾶς γὰρ δεήσει τὰ πλοῖα |bring  
|about,  
|provide  
ἣν δὲ κατὰ γῆν |prepare, send, furl... δεήσει τοὺς μαχομένους  
εἶναι. |anyway, nevertheless, ἡ γινώσκω· |experienced, ἵρ εἰμι καὶ  
τῆς χώρας τῆς Παφλαγόνων καὶ τῆς δυνάμεως. ἔχει γὰρ  
ἀμφοτέρω, καὶ πεδία κάλλιστα καὶ ὄρη |high . καὶ  
πρῶτον μὲν οἶδα εὐθὺς ἥ τὴν |invasion, ἀνάγκη ποιεῖσθαι·  
|entrance  
οὐ γὰρ ἔστιν ἄλλη ἢ ἡ τὰ |horn; τοῦ ὄρους τῆς ὁδοῦ  
|military  
|unit  
καθ' |each of two τιν |high , ἃ κράτεῖν κατέχοντες καὶ πάν  
ὀλίγοι δύναιντ' ἂν· τούτων δὲ κατεχομένων οὐδ' ἂν οἱ

said, «to convey a threat, as though they were minded to go to war with the Hellenes, but as meaning rather: albeit we have it in our power to be friendly with the barbarians, we will choose the Hellenes.” Then, being urged to aid them by some advice, with a pious ejaculation, he commenced: «If I bestow upon you the best counsel I am able, God grant that blessings in abundance may descend on me; but if the contrary, may evil betide me! ‘Sacred counsel,’ as the saying goes—well, sirs, if ever the saying held, it should hold I think to-day; when, if I be proved to have given you good counsel, I shall not lack panegyrists, or if evil, your imprecations will be many-tongued.

”As to trouble, I am quite aware, we shall have much more trouble if you are conveyed by sea, for we must provide the vessels; whereas, if you go by land, all the fighting will evolve on you. Still, let come what may, it behoves me to state my views. I have an intimate acquaintance with the country of the Paphlagonians and their power. The country possesses the two features of hill and vale, that is to say, the fairest plains and the highest mountains. To begin with the mountains, I know the exact point at which you must make your entry. It is precisely where the horns of a mountain tower over both sides of the road. Let the merest handful of men occupy these and they can hold the pass with ease; for when that is done not all the enemies in the world could effect a passage.

*vocabulary*

**ἄβατος** untrodden; impassable  
**ἄδύνατος** unable; impossible  
**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not  
 needing ~Sp. sin  
**αὐτως** just so, merely; in vain ~after  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**δείκνυμι** (ὄ) show, point out  
**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis  
**διέρχομαι** pierce, traverse  
**εὖρος** -εος (n, 3) width; (caps) the east  
 wind  
**ἵππειος** of horses ~hippo  
**κλέπτω** steal  
**κρείσσω** more powerful; better  
**μείων** less, smaller

**μυριάς** -δος (ὄ, f, 3) countless, myriad  
**ὀπισθεν** behind, hereafter  
**παντάπασι** altogether; yes, certainly  
**παραγίγνομαι** be beside, attend  
 ~genus  
**πλέθρον** 30 meters or its square  
 ~plethora  
**πορεία** gait, march  
**στάδιον** 200 meters (pl also masc)  
**στάδιος** (adj) standing upright, firm;  
 (pl noun) 200 meters  
**συμπέμπω** send with ~pomp  
**τρίπλεθος** 100 m wide  
**φθάζω** do first, outstrip  
**φθάνω** (ᾱ) do first, outstrip  
**ὡσαύτως** in the same way

πάντες ἄνθρωποι δύναιντ' ἂν διελθεῖν. ταῦτα δὲ καὶ δείξαμι ἅν, εἴ μοί τινα βούλοισθε συμπέμψαι.

«Ἐπειτα δὲ οἶδα καὶ πεδία ὄντα καὶ ἱππείαν ἦν αὐτοὶ οἱ βάρβαροι νομίζουσι κρείττω εἶναι ἀπάσης τῆς βασιλέως ἱππείας. καὶ νῦν οὗτοι οὐ παρεγένοντο βασιλεῖ καλοῦντι, ἀλλὰ μείζον φρονεῖ ὁ ἄρχων αὐτῶν.

«Ἦν δὲ καὶ δυνηθῆτε τά τε ὄρη κλέψαι ἢ φθάσαι λαβόντες καὶ ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ κρατῆσαι μαχόμενοι τοὺς τε ἱππέας τούτων καὶ πεζῶν μυριάδας πλέον ἢ δώδεκα, ἥξετε ἐπὶ τοὺς ποταμούς, πρῶτον μὲν τὸν Θερμώδοντα, εὖρος τριῶν πλέθρων, ὃν χαλεπὸν οἶμαι διαβαίνειν ἄλλως τε καὶ πολεμίων πολλῶν ἔμπροσθεν ὄντων, πολλῶν δὲ ὄπισθεν ἐπομένων· δεύτερον δὲ Ἴριν, τρίπλεθρον ὡσαύτως· τρίτον δὲ Ἄλυν, οὐ μείον δυοῖν σταδίοιν, ὃν οὐκ ἂν δύναισθε ἄνευ πλοίων διαβῆναι· πλοῖα δὲ τίς ἔσται ὁ παρέχων; ὥς δ' αὕτως καὶ ὁ Παρθένιος ἄβατος· ἐφ' ὃν ἔλθοιτε ἅν, εἰ τὸν Ἄλυν διαβαίητε. ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν οὐ χαλεπὴν ὑμῖν εἶναι νομίζω τὴν πορείαν ἀλλὰ παντάπασιν ἀδύνατον. ἂν δὲ

πάντες ἄνθρωποι δύναιτ' ἂν | pierce, . . . ταῦτα δὲ καὶ  
|traverse

|show ἂν, εἴ μοί τινα βούλοισθε | συμπέμπω?: send with; or  
| συμπέμπω?: send with

«Ἐπειτα δὲ οἶδα καὶ πεδία ὄντα καὶ | of horses ἦν αὐτοὶ οἱ

|non-Greek νομίζουσι κρείττω εἶναι ἀπάσης τῆς βασιλέως

|of horses καὶ νῦν οὗτοι οὐ |be beside, attend ἱσιλεῖ καλοῦντι,

ἀλλὰ μείζον φρονεῖ ὁ ἄρχων αὐτῶν.

«Ἦν δὲ καὶ δυνηθῆτε τά τε ὄρη |steal ἢ φθάσαι λαβόντες

καὶ ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ κρατῆσαι μαχόμενοι τοὺς τε ἱππέας

τούτων καὶ πεζῶν |countless, πλέον ἢ δώδεκα, ἥξετε ἐπὶ  
|myriad

τοὺς ποταμούς, πρῶτον μὲν τὸν Θερμώδοντα, |width; (caps) the  
|east wind

τριῶν |30 me-, ὃν χαλεπὸν οἶμαι |pass over, cross ὥς τε καὶ  
|ters or its  
|square

πολεμίων πολλῶν ἔμπροσθεν ὄντων, πολλῶν δὲ |behind,  
|hereafter

ἐπομένων· δεύτερον δὲ Ἴριν, |100 m wide |in the same way. ν

δὲ Ἄλυν, οὐ |less, ὕνοιν σταδίου, ὃν οὐκ ἂν δύναισθε  
|smaller

|away from; not |pass over, cross ἵα δὲ τίς ἔσται ὁ παρέχων; ὡς  
|having; not  
|needing

ὁ |just so, merely; Παρθένιος |untrodden; ὅς ὃν ἔλθοιτε ἂν, εἰ  
|in vain |impassable

τὸν Ἄλυν διαβαίητε. ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν οὐ χαλεπὴν ὑμῖν εἶναι

νομίζω τὴν |gait, ἀλλὰ |altogether; yes, |unable; . . . ἂν δὲ  
|march |certainly |impossible

I could point out the whole with my finger, if you like to send any one with me to the scene.

«So much for the mountain barrier. But the next thing I know is that there are plains and a cavalry which the barbarians themselves hold to be superior to the entire cavalry of the great king. Why, only the other day these people refused to present themselves to the summons of the king; their chief is too proud for that.

«But now, supposing you were able to seize the mountain barrier, by stealth, or expedition, before the enemy could stop you; supposing further, you were able to win an engagement in the plain against not only their cavalry but their more than one hundred and twenty thousand infantry—you will only find yourself face to face with rivers, a series of them. First the Thermodon, three hundred feet broad, which I take it will be difficult to pass, especially with a host of foes in front and another following behind. Next comes the Iris river, three hundred feet broad; and thirdly, the Halys, at least two furlongs broad, which you could not possibly cross without vessels, and who is going to supply you with vessels? In the same way too the Parthenius is impassable, which you will reach if you cross the Halys. For my part, then, I consider the land-journey, I will not say difficult, but absolutely impossible for you. Whereas if you go by sea,

*vocabulary***ἀπορία** difficulty, bottleneck ~pierce**ἀριθμός** number**Ἑλλήν** Greek**ἐνθάδε** here, hither**ἐνθένδε** hence**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable**εὐδηλος** very clear**καταλείπω** leave behind, abandon

~eclipse

**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon**ὅπου** where**παραπλέω** sail past ~float**πορεία** gait, march**πρόξενος** public/foreign agent, patron**ὑποπτέω** guess, observe, be

suspicious of

**φίλιος** friendly**ψηφίζω** count, vote

πλήγτε, ἔστιν ἐνθένδε μὲν εἰς Σινώπην παραπλευσαι, ἐκ Σινώπης δὲ εἰς Ἡράκλειαν· ἐξ Ἡρακλείας δὲ οὔτε πεζῇ οὔτε κατὰ θάλατταν ἀπορία· πολλὰ γὰρ καὶ πλοῖά ἐστιν ἐν Ἡρακλείᾳ.»

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτ' ἔλεξεν, οἱ μὲν ὑπώπτενον φιλίας ἔνεκα τῆς Κορύλα λέγειν· καὶ γὰρ ἦν πρόξενος αὐτῷ· οἱ δὲ καὶ ὥς δῶρα ληψόμενον διὰ τὴν ξυμβουλήν ταύτην· οἱ δὲ ὑπώπτενον καὶ τούτου ἔνεκα λέγειν ὥς μὴ πεζῇ ἰόντες τὴν Σινωπέων τι χώραν κακὸν ἐργάζωντο. οἱ δ' οὖν Ἕλληνες ἐψηφίσαντο κατὰ θάλατταν τὴν πορείαν ποιεῖσθαι.

Μετὰ ταῦτα Ξενοφῶν εἶπεν· «ᾧ Σινωπεῖς, οἱ μὲν ἄνδρες ἥρηνται πορείαν ἣν ὑμεῖς ξυμβουλευέτε· οὕτω δὲ ἔχει· εἰ μὲν μέλλει πλοῖα ἔσεσθαι ἱκανὰ ὥς ἀριθμῶ ἓνα μὴ καταλείπεσθαι ἐνθάδε, ἡμεῖς ἂν πλέοιμεν· εἰ δὲ μέλλοιμεν οἱ μὲν καταλείψεσθαι οἱ δὲ πλεύσεσθαι, οὐκ ἂν ἐμβαίημεν εἰς τὰ πλοῖα. γινώσκομεν γὰρ ὅτι ὅπου μὲν ἂν κρατῶμεν, δυναίμεθ' ἂν καὶ σώζεσθαι καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἔχειν· εἰ δέ που ἥττους τῶν πολεμίων ληφθησόμεθα, εὖδηλον δὴ ὅτι



πλήγτε, ἔστιν |hence μὲν εἰς Σινώπην |sail past , ἐκ  
 Σινώπης δὲ εἰς Ἡράκλειαν· ἐξ Ἡρακλείας δὲ οὔτε πεζῇ  
 οὔτε κατὰ θάλατταν |difficulty, .πολλὰ γὰρ καὶ πλοῖα ἔστιν  
 |bottleneck  
 ἐν Ἡρακλείᾳ.»

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτ' ἔλεξεν, οἱ μὲν |guess, ob-|friendly ἕνεκα τῆς  
 |serve, be  
 Κορύλα λέγειν· καὶ γὰρ ἦν |suspicious of  
 |public/foreign τῷ· οἱ δὲ καὶ  
 |agent, patron  
 ὥς δῶρα ληψόμενον διὰ τὴν ξυμβουλὴν ταύτην· οἱ δὲ  
 |guess, observe. ἰ τούτου ἕνεκα λέγειν ὥς μὴ πεζῇ ἰόντες τὴν  
 |be suspicious of  
 Σινωπέων τι χώραν κακὸν ἐργάζονται. οἱ δ' οὖν |Greek

|count, vote κατὰ θάλατταν τὴν |gait, ποιεῖσθαι.  
 |march

Μετὰ ταῦτα Ξενοφῶν εἶπεν· «ὦ Σινωπεῖς, οἱ μὲν ἄνδρες  
 ἤρηνται |gait, ἦν ὑμεῖς ξυμβουλευέτε· οὕτω δὲ ἔχει·  
 |march  
 εἰ μὲν μέλλει πλοῖα ἔσεσθαι ἱκανὰ ὥς |number ἓνα μὴ  
 καταλείπεσθαι |here, , ἡμεῖς ἂν πλέοιμεν· εἰ δὲ μέλλοιμεν  
 |hither  
 οἱ μὲν |leave behind, οἱ δὲ πλεύσεσθαι, οὐκ ἂν ἐμβαίημεν  
 |abandon  
 εἰς τὰ πλοῖα. γινώσκουμεν γὰρ ὅτι |where, μὲν ἂν κρατῶμεν,  
 δυναίμεθ' ἂν καὶ σώζεσθαι καὶ τὰ |fit, suitable ἔχειν· εἰ δέ που  
 ἥττους τῶν πολεμίων ληφθησόμεθα, |very clear ἢ ὅτι

you can coast along from here to Sinope, and from Sinope to Heraclea. From Heraclea onwards there is no difficulty, whether by land or by sea; for there are plenty of vessels at Heraclea.”

After he had finished his remarks, some of his hearers thought they detected a certain bias in them. He would not have spoken so, but for his friendship with Corylas, whose official representative he was. Others guessed he had an itching palm, and that he was hoping to receive a present for his «sacred advice.” Others again suspected that his object was to prevent their going by foot and doing some mischief to the country of the Sinopeans. However that might be, the Hellenes voted in favour of continuing the journey by sea.

After this Xenophon said: «Sinopeans, the army has chosen that method of procedure which you advise, and thus the matter stands. If there are sure to be vessels enough to make it impossible for a single man to be left behind, go by sea we will; but if part of us are to be left while part go by sea, we will not set foot on board the vessels. One fact we plainly recognise, strength is everything to us. So long as we have the mastery, we shall be able to protect ourselves and get provisions; but if we are once caught at the mercy of our foes, it is

*vocabulary***ἀνδράποδον** -ς slave ~androgynous**Ἑλλήν** Greek**θύω** (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω**καταλογίζομαι** count**κατοικίζω** colonize**μάντις** -ος (m) seer ~mantis**οἶχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone**ὀπλίτης** -ου (ι, m, 1) hoplite, heavy  
infantryman ~hoplite**πελταστής** -οῦ (m, 1) light troops

~pelt

**περιοικέω** dwell around**προσκτάομαι** get, win as well**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
mercenary ~strategy**σφενδονήτης** -ου (m, 1) slinger**τοξότης** -ου (m, 1) archer ~toxic**τριβή** business; practical thing**τρίβω** (ι) rub; (mid) be worn out  
~tribulation

ἐν ἀνδραπόδων χώρα ἐσόμεθα.»

Ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα οἱ πρέσβεις ἐκέλευον πέμπειν πρέσβεις. καὶ πέμπουσι Καλλίμαχον Ἀρκάδα καὶ Ἀρίστωνα Ἀθηναῖον καὶ Σαμόλαν Ἀχαιόν. καὶ οἱ μὲν ὥχοντο.

Ἐν δὲ τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ Ξενοφῶντι, ὀρώντι μὲν ὀπλίτας πολλοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων, ὀρώντι δὲ πελταστὰς πολλοὺς καὶ τοξότας καὶ σφενδονήτας καὶ ἱππέας δὲ καὶ μάλα ἤδη διὰ τὴν τριβὴν ἱκανούς, ὄντας δ' ἐν τῷ Πόντῳ, ἔνθα οὐκ ἂν ἀπ' ὀλίγων χρημάτων τοσαύτη δύναμις παρεσκευάσθη, καλὸν αὐτῷ ἐδόκει εἶναι χώραν καὶ δύναμιν τῇ Ἑλλάδι προσκτήσασθαι πόλιν κατοικίσαντας. καὶ γενέσθαι ἂν αὐτῷ ἐδόκει μεγάλη, καταλογιζομένῳ τό τε αὐτῶν πλῆθος καὶ τοὺς περιουκοῦντας τὸν Πόντον. καὶ ἐπὶ τούτοις ἐθύετο πρὶν τι ἐῖπεῖν τῶν στρατιωτῶν Σιλανὸν παρακάλεσας τὸν Κύρου μάντιν γενόμενον τὸν Ἀμπρακιώτην.

ἐν |slave χώρα ἐσόμεθα.»

Ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα οἱ πρέσβεις ἐκέλευον πέμπειν  
πρέσβεις. καὶ πέμπουσι Καλλίμαχον Ἀρκάδα καὶ  
Ἀρίστωνα Ἀθηναῖον καὶ Σαμόλαν Ἀχαιόν. καὶ οἱ μὲν  
|come, go

Ἐν δὲ τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ Ξενοφῶντι, ὀρώντι μὲν  
|hoplite, heavy |λούς τῶν |Greek , ὀρώντι δὲ |light troops  
|infantryman  
πολλούς καὶ |archer καὶ |slinger καὶ ἱππέας  
δὲ καὶ μάλα ἤδη διὰ τὴν τριβὴν ἱκανούς, ὄντας δ'  
ἐν τῷ Πόντῳ, ἔνθα οὐκ ἂν ἀπ' ὀλίγων χρημάτων  
τοσαύτη δύναμις παρεσκευάσθη, καλὸν αὐτῷ ἐδόκει  
εἶναι χώραν καὶ δύναμιν τῇ Ἑλλάδι |get, win as well  
πόλιν |colonize . καὶ γενέσθαι ἂν αὐτῷ ἐδόκει  
μεγάλη, |count τό τε αὐτῶν πλῆθος καὶ τοὺς  
|dwell around τὸν Πόντον. καὶ ἐπὶ τούτοις |rush; sacrifice  
τινι εἰπεῖν τῶν |soldier, Σιλανὸν παρακαλέσας  
|mercenary  
τὸν Κύρου |seer γενόμενον τὸν Ἀμπρακιώτην.

plain, we shall be reduced to slavery.”

On hearing this the ambassadors bade them send an embassy, which they did, to wit, Callimachus the Arcadian, and Ariston the Athenian, and Samolas the Achaean.

So these set off, but meanwhile a thought shaped itself in the mind of Xenophon, as there before his eyes lay that vast army of Hellene hoplites, and that other array of peltasts, archers, and slingers, with cavalry to boot, and all in a state of thorough efficiency from long practice, hardened veterans, and all collected in Pontus, where to raise so large a force would cost a mint of money. Then the idea dawned upon him: how noble an opportunity to acquire new territory and power for Hellas, by the founding of a colony—a city of no mean size, moreover, said he to himself, as he reckoned up their own numbers—and besides themselves a population planted on the shores of Pontus. Thereupon he summoned Silanus the Ambraciot, the soothsayer of Cyrus above mentioned, and before breathing a syllable to any of the soldiers, he consulted the victims by sacrifice.

*vocabulary*

ἀληθεύω speak truth; be true  
 ἀπόπλοος sailing away  
 ἄπορος impassable, difficult  
 βέλτιστος best, noblest  
 δαρεικός Persian coin  
 διασώζω preserve through  
 ἐκπλέω sail away ~float  
 ἐκπορίζω provide; invent  
 ἐκφέρω carry off ~bear  
 ἔμπορος passenger; merchant ~pierce  
 ἐξαίφνης suddenly  
 ἐπειδὴν when, after  
 ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable  
 θύω (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω

θώραξ -ηκος (m) breastplate ~thorax  
 καταμένω stay; not change  
 κινδυνεύω encounter danger; (+inf)  
 there is a danger that  
 μισθός reward, wages  
 οἴκαδε homeward ~economics  
 οἰκίζω colonize, settle  
 ὀνίνημι help, please, be available  
 περιποιέω preserve; obtain  
 στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
 στρατιά army ~strategy  
 στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
 mercenary ~strategy  
 τρισχίλιοι 3000 ~kilo-

Ὁ δὲ Σιλανὸς δεδιὼς μὴ γένηται ταῦτα καὶ καταμείνῃ που ἡ στρατιά, ἐκφέρει εἰς τὸ στράτευμα λόγον ὅτι Ξενοφῶν βούλεται καταμείναι τὴν στρατιὰν καὶ πόλιν οἰκίσαι καὶ ἑαυτῷ ὄνομα καὶ δύναμιν περιποιήσασθαι. αὐτὸς δ' ὁ Σιλανὸς ἐβούλετο ὅτι τάχιστα εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα ἀφικέσθαι· οὓς γὰρ παρὰ Κύρου ἔλαβε τρισχιλίους δαρειακοὺς ὅτε τὰς δέκα ἡμέρας ἡγήθευσε θνόμενος Κύρῳ, διεσεσώκει. τῶν δὲ στρατιωτῶν, ἐπεὶ ἤκουσαν, τοῖς μὲν ἐδόκει βέλτιστον εἶναι καταμείναι, τοῖς δὲ πολλοῖς οὐ.

Τιμασίῳν δὲ ὁ Δαρδανεὺς καὶ Θώραξ ὁ Βοιώτιος πρὸς ἐμπόρους τινὰς παρόντας τῶν Ἡρακλεωτῶν καὶ Σινωπέων λέγουσιν ὅτι εἰ μὴ ἐκποριοῦσι τῇ στρατιᾷ μισθὸν ὥστε ἔχειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐκπλέοντας, ὅτι κινδυνεύσει μείναι τοσαύτη δύναμις ἐν τῷ Πόντῳ· «Βούλεται γὰρ Ξενοφῶν καὶ ἡμᾶς παρακαλεῖ, ἐπειδὴν ἔλθῃ τὰ πλοῖα, τότε εἰπεῖν ἐξαίφνης τῇ στρατιᾷ· Ἄνδρες, νῦν μὲν ὁρώμεν ὑμᾶς ἀπόρους ὄντας καὶ ἐν τῷ ἀπόπλῳ ἔχειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια καὶ ὥς οἴκαδε ἀπελθόντας ὀνήσαι



Ὁ δὲ Σιλανὸς δεδιὼς μὴ γένηται ταῦτα καὶ |stay; not change  
 ἡ στρατιά, |carry off εἰς τὸ |army λόγον ὅτι Ξενοφῶν  
 βούλεται |stay; not change, |army καὶ πόλιν |colonize, |αι  
 |settle  
 ἑαυτῷ ὄνομα καὶ δύναμιν |preserve; obtain αὐτὸς δ' ὁ  
 Σιλανὸς ἐβούλετο ὅτι τάχιστα εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα ἀφικέσθαι·  
 οὓς γὰρ παρὰ Κύρου ἔλαβε |3000 |Persian coin ἕτε τὰς  
 δέκα ἡμέρας |speak |rush; sacrifice ἔρω, |preserve τῶν  
 |truth; be |through  
 |true  
 δὲ στρατιωτῶν, ἐπεὶ ἤκουσαν, τοῖς μὲν ἐδόκει |best,  
 |noblest  
 εἶναι |stay; not change ὅς δὲ πολλοῖς οὕ.

Τιμασίῳ δὲ ὁ Δαρδανεύς καὶ |breastplate Βοιώτιος  
 πρὸς |passenger; |merchant τινὰς παρόντας τῶν Ἡρακλεωτῶν  
 καὶ Σινωπέων λέγουσιν ὅτι εἰ μὴ |provide; |invent τῇ  
 |army |reward, |wages ὥστε ἔχειν τὰ |fit, suitable |sail away  
 ὅτι |encounter danger; (+inf) αὐτῇ δύναμις ἐν τῷ Πόντῳ·  
 |there is a danger that  
 «Βούλεται γὰρ Ξενοφῶν καὶ ἡμᾶς παρακαλεῖ, |when,  
 |after  
 ἔλθῃ τὰ πλοῖα, τότε εἰπεῖν |suddenly τῇ |army Ἄνδρες,  
 νῦν μὲν ὁρῶμεν ὑμᾶς |impassable, |difficult καὶ ἐν τῷ |sailing away  
 ἔχειν τὰ |fit, suitable καὶ ὥς |homeward ἐλθόντας |help, please,  
 |be available

But Silanus, in apprehension lest these ideas might embody themselves, and the army be permanently halted at some point or other, set a tale going among the men, to the effect that Xenophon was minded to detain the army and found a city in order to win himself a name and acquire power, Silanus himself being minded to reach Hellas with all possible speed, for the simple reason that he had still got the three thousand darics presented to him by Cyrus on the occasion of the sacrifice when he hit the truth so happily about the ten days. Silanus's story was variously received, some few of the soldiers thinking it would be an excellent thing to stay in that country; but the majority were strongly averse.

The next incident was that Timasion the Dardanian, with Thorax the Boeotian, addressed themselves to some Heracleot and Sinopean traders who had come to Cotyora, and told them that if they did not find means to furnish the army with pay sufficient to keep them in provisions on the homeward voyage, all that great force would most likely settle down permanently in Pontus. «Xenophon has a pet idea,” they continued, «which he urges upon us. We are to wait until the ships come, and then we are suddenly to turn round to the army and say: ‘Soldiers, we now see the straits we are in, unable to keep ourselves in provisions on the return voyage, or to make our friends at home a little present

*vocabulary*

ἀπαγγέλλω announce, order, promise  
 ~angel  
 ἐκλέγω pick, single out  
 ἐκπλέω sail away ~float  
 ἔμπορος passenger; merchant ~pierce  
 ἔνθεν thence, whence  
 ἐντίθημι load; mp: take to heart  
 ~thesis  
 ἐξαίφνης suddenly  
 ἐπιπίπτω fall upon, attack  
 ἡδομαι be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism  
 θύω (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω  
 θώραξ -ηκος (m) breastplate ~thorax  
 κυζικηνός unit of currency  
 κύκλος circle, wheel ~cycle  
 μισθοφορά payment of wages  
 μονή staying, delaying

νουμηνία new moon  
 οἴκαδε homeward ~economics  
 οἰκέω inhabit ~economics  
 οἴκοι at home ~economics  
 οἰκουμένη inhabited  
 ὅπη wherever, however  
 ὅποι to which place  
 προσέχω direct to; think about  
 στρατιά army ~strategy  
 στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
 mercenary ~strategy  
 σύλλογος meeting  
 ὑπισχνέομαι promise, agree to do  
 ~ischemia  
 φυγὰς -δος (m, 3) exile, refugee  
 ~fugitive  
 φυγή flight, means of escape ~fugitive

τι τοὺς οἴκοι· εἰ δὲ βούλεσθε τῆς κύκλω χώρας περὶ τὸν Πόντον οἰκουμένης ἐκλεξάμενοι ὅποι ἂν βούλησθε κατασχεῖν, καὶ τὸν μὲν ἐθέλοντα ἀπιέναι οἴκαδε, τὸν δ' ἐθέλοντα μένειν αὐτοῦ, πλοῖα δ' ὑμῖν πάρεστιν, ὥστε ὅπη ἂν βούλησθε ἐξαίφνης ἂν ἐπιπέσοιτε.»

Ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα οἱ ἔμποροι ἀπήγγελλον ταῖς πόλεσι· ξυνέπεμψε δ' αὐτοῖς Τιμασίων Δαρδανεὺς Εὐρύμαχόν τε τὸν Δαρδανέα καὶ Θώρακα τὸν Βοιώτιον ταῦτ' ἐροῦντας. Σινωπεῖς δὲ καὶ Ἡρακλεῶται ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες πέμπουσι πρὸς τὸν Τιμασίωνα καὶ κελεύουσι προστατεῦσαι λαβόντα χρήματα ὅπως ἐκπλεύσῃ ἡ στρατιά. ὁ δὲ ἄσμενος ἀκούσας ἐν ξυλλόγῳ τῶν στρατιωτῶν ὄντων λέγει τάδε. «Οὐ δεῖ προσέχειν μονῇ, ὦ ἄνδρες, οὐδὲ τῆς Ἑλλάδος οὐδὲν περὶ πλείονος ποιεῖσθαι. ἀκούω δέ τινας θίεσθαι ἐπὶ τούτῳ οὐδ' ὑμῖν λέγοντας. ὑπισχνοῦμαι δὲ ὑμῖν, ἂν ἐκπλέητε, ἀπὸ νουμηνίας μισθοφορὰν παρέξειν κυζικηνὸν ἐκάστῳ τοῦ μηνός· καὶ ἄξω ὑμᾶς εἰς τὴν Τρωάδα, ἔνθεν καί εἰμι φυγὰς, καὶ ὑπάρξει ὑμῖν ἡ ἐμὴ

τι τοὺς |at home ἰ δὲ βούλεσθε τῆς |circle, χώρας περὶ  
 |wheel  
 τὸν Πόντον οἰκουμένης |pick, single |to which place ἔλθῃσθε  
 |out  
 κατασχεῖν, καὶ τὸν μὲν ἐθέλοντα ἀπιέναι |homeward ἔν δ'  
 ἐθέλοντα μένειν αὐτοῦ, πλοῖα δ' ὑμῖν πάρεστιν, ὥστε |wherever,  
 |however  
 ἂν βούλησθε |suddenly ἂν |fall upon, attack

Ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα οἱ |passenger; announce, or- ταῖς πόλεσι·  
 |merchant |der, promise  
 ξυνέπεμψε δ' αὐτοῖς Τιμασίῳ Δαρδανεὺς Εὐρύμαχόν τε  
 τὸν Δαρδανέα καὶ |breastplate ὃν Βοιώτιον ταῦτα ἐροῦντας.  
 Σινωπεῖς δὲ καὶ Ἡρακλεῶται ταῦτα ἀκούσαντες πέμπουσι  
 πρὸς τὸν Τιμασίωνα καὶ κελεύουσι προστατεῦσαι  
 λαβόντα χρήματα ὅπως |sail away ἡ στρατιά. ὁ δὲ  
 |be pleased, enjoy- ἰς ἐν |meeting τῶν |soldier, ὄντων  
 |mercenary  
 λέγει τάδε. «Οὐ δεῖ |direct to; staying, ἤ ἀνδρες, οὐδὲ τῆς  
 |think about |delaying  
 Ἑλλάδος οὐδὲν περὶ πλείονος ποιεῖσθαι. ἀκούω δέ τινας  
 |rush; sacrifice τούτῳ οὐδ' ὑμῖν λέγοντας. |promise, agree δὲ  
 ὑμῖν, ἂν |sail away , ἀπὸ |new moon |payment of wages, ἔξειν  
 |unit of currency ἵπτω τοῦ μηνός· καὶ ἄξω ὑμᾶς εἰς τὴν  
 Τρωάδα, ἔνθεν καὶ εἰμι φηγάς, καὶ ὑπάρξει ὑμῖν ἡ ἐμὴ

at the end of our journey. But if you like to select some place on the inhabited seaboard of the Black Sea which may take your fancy and there put in, this is open to you to do. Those who like to go home, go; those who care to stay here, stay. You have got vessels now, so that you can make a sudden pounce upon any point you choose.’” The merchants went off with this tale and reported it to every city they came to in turn, nor did they go alone, but Timasion the Dardanian sent a fellow-citizen of his own, Eurymachus, with the Boeotian Thorax, to repeat the same story. So when it reached the ears of the men of Sinope and the Heracleots, they sent to Timasion and pressed him to accept of a gratuity, in return for which he was to arrange for the departure of the troops. Timasion was only too glad to hear this, and he took the opportunity when the soldiers were convened in meeting to make the following remarks: «Soldiers,” he said, «do not set your thoughts on staying here; let Hellas, and Hellas only, be the object of your affection, for I am told that certain persons have been sacrificing on this very question, without saying a word to you. Now I can promise you, if you once leave these waters, to furnish you with regular monthly pay, dating from the first of the month, at the rate of one cyzicene a head per month. I will bring you to the Troad, from which part I am an exile, and my own state is at

*vocabulary***ἄφθονος** ungrudging, plentiful**βάρβαρος** non-Greek**γέλοιος** laughable; joking**ἐκπλέω** sail away ~float**ἐκὼν** willingly, on purpose; giving in too easily**ἐμπειρος** experienced**ἐνθεν** thence, whence**ἐνοικέω** dwell in**ἐντίθημι** load; mp: take to heart

~thesis

**εὐδαίμων** blessed with a good genius**θώραξ** -ηχος (m) breastplate ~thorax**καθάπερ** exactly as**μαστεύω** crave**μισθοφορά** payment of wages**οἴκαδε** homeward ~economics**σιγάω** (ι) be silent**στρατηγία** office of command, strategy  
~strategy**ὑπισχνέομαι** promise, agree to do

~ischemia

πόλις· ἐκόντες γάρ με δέξονται. ἡγήσομαι δὲ αὐτὸς ἐγὼ ἔνθεν πολλὰ χρήματα λήψεσθε. ἔμπειρος δέ εἰμι τῆς Αἰολίδος καὶ τῆς Φρυγίας καὶ τῆς Τρωάδος καὶ τῆς Φαρναβάζου ἀρχῆς πάσης, τὰ μὲν διὰ τὸ ἐκεῖθεν εἶναι, τὰ δὲ διὰ τὸ ξυνεστρατεῦσθαι ἐν αὐτῇ σὺν Κλεάρχῳ τε καὶ Δερκυλίδᾳ.»

Ἄναστὰς αὖτις Θώραξ ὁ Βοιώτιος, ὃς περὶ στρατηγίας Ξενοφῶντι ἐμάχετο, ἔφη, εἰ ἐξέλθοιεν ἐκ τοῦ Πόντου, ἔσεσθαι αὐτοῖς Ξερρόνησον χώραν καλὴν καὶ εὐδαίμονα ὥστε τῷ βουλομένῳ ἐνοικεῖν, τῷ δὲ μὴ βουλομένῳ ἀπιέναι οἴκαδε. γελοῖον δὲ εἶναι ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι οὔσης χώρας πολλῆς καὶ ἀφθόνου ἐν τῇ βαρβάρων μαστεύειν. «ἔστε δ' ἄν,» ἔφη, «ἐκεῖ γένησθε, καὶ γὰρ καθάπερ Τιμασίων ὑπισχνοῦμαι ὑμῖν τὴν μισθοφοράν.» ταῦτα δὲ ἔλεγεν εἰδὼς ἃ Τιμασίωνι οἱ Ἡρακλεῶται καὶ οἱ Σινωπεῖς ὑπισχνοῦντο ὥστε ἐκπλεῖν.

Ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἐν τούτῳ ἐσίγα. ἀναστὰς δὲ Φιλήσιος καὶ Λύκων οἱ Ἀχαιοὶ ἔλεγον ὡς δεινὸν εἶη ἰδίᾳ μὲν Ξενοφῶντα



πόλις· |willingly γάρ με δέξονται. ήγήσομαι δὲ αὐτὸς  
 ἐγὼ ἔνθεν πολλὰ χρήματα λήψεσθε. |experienced ἵέ εἰμι  
 τῆς Αἰολίδος καὶ τῆς Φρυγίας καὶ τῆς Τρωάδος καὶ τῆς  
 Φαρναβάζου ἀρχῆς πάσης, τὰ μὲν διὰ τὸ ἐκείθεν εἶναι, τὰ  
 δὲ διὰ τὸ ξυνεστρατεῦσθαι ἐν αὐτῇ σὺν Κλεάρχῳ τε καὶ  
 Δερκυλίδᾳ.»

Ἀναστὰς αὖθις |breastplate Βοιώτιος, ὃς περὶ στρατηγίας  
 Ξενοφῶντι ἐμάχετο, ἔφη, εἰ ἐξέλθοιεν ἐκ τοῦ Πόντου,  
 ἔσεσθαι αὐτοῖς Χερρόνησον χώραν καλὴν καὶ |blessed with a  
 |good genius ὥστε τῷ βουλομένῳ |dwell in , τῷ δὲ μὴ βουλομένῳ ἀπιέναι  
 |homeward |laughable; ἵέ εἶναι ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι οὔσης χώρας  
 |joking πολλῆς καὶ |ungrudging, τῇ |non-Greek |crave . «ἔστε  
 |plentiful δ' ἄν,» ἔφη, «ἐκεῖ γένησθε, καὶ γὰρ |exactly as Τιμασίων  
 |promise, agree ὑμῖν τὴν |payment of wages ταῦτα δὲ ἔλεγεν  
 εἰδὼς ἃ Τιμασίῳ οἱ Ἡρακλεῶται καὶ οἱ Σινωπεῖς  
 |promise, agree ὥστε |sail away

Ὁ δὲ Ξενοφὼν ἐν τούτῳ |be silent Ἀναστὰς δὲ Φιλήσιος καὶ  
 Λύκων οἱ Ἀχαιοὶ ἔλεγον ὥς δεινὸν εἶη ἰδίᾳ μὲν Ξενοφῶντα

your service. They will receive me with open arms. I will be your guide personally, and I will take you to places where you will get plenty of money. I know every corner of the Aeolid, and Phrygia, and the Troad, and indeed the whole satrapy of Pharnabazus, partly because it is my birthplace, partly from campaigns in that region with Clearchus and Dercylidas.”

No sooner had he ceased than up got Thorax the Boeotian. This was a man who had a standing battle with Xenophon about the generalship of the army. What he said was that, if they once got fairly out of the Euxine, there was the Chersonese, a beautiful and prosperous country, where they could settle or not, as they chose. Those who liked could stay; and those who liked could return to their homes; how ridiculous then, when there was so much territory in Hellas and to spare, to be poking about in the land of the barbarian. «But until you find yourselves there,” he added, «I, no less than Timasion, can guarantee you regular pay.” This he said, knowing what promises had been made Timasion by the men of Heraclea and Sinope to induce them to set sail.

Meanwhile Xenophon held his peace. Then up got Philesius and Lycon, two Achaeans: «It was monstrous,” they said, «that Xenophon should be privately persuading people to stop

*vocabulary*

**ἀμείνων** comparative of ἀγαθός, noble  
**ἀναγκάζω** force, compel  
**ἄπειρος** untested; infinite  
**ἀπείρων** boundless  
**ἀπορέω** be confused, distressed  
**ἄπτω** set on fire; attach; mid: touch,  
 seize ~haptic  
**διαβάλλω** throw across; slander  
 ~ballistic  
**διανοέω** have in mind  
**δόλος** trick, bait  
**ἐκφέρω** carry off ~bear  
**ἐπιβουλεύω** plot, plan, harm

~volunteer

**ἐπιβουλή** a plot, scheme ~volunteer  
**θύω** (ϋ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω  
**καταμένω** stay; not change  
**κοινός** communal, ordinary  
**κοινώω** make common; cooperate  
**μάντις** -ος (m) seer ~mantis  
**μονή** staying, delaying  
**ὅποῖος** whatever kind  
**ὅπόσος** as many as, how many, how  
 great  
**παντάπασι**ν altogether; yes, certainly  
**σκοπέω** behold, consider  
**στρατιά** army ~strategy

πείθειν τε καταμένειν καὶ θύεσθαι ὑπὲρ τῆς μονῆς μὴ  
 κοινούμενον τῇ στρατιῷ, εἰς δὲ τὸ κοινὸν μηδὲν ἀγορεύειν  
 περὶ τούτων. ὥστε ἠναγκάσθη ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἀναστήναι  
 καὶ εἰπεῖν τάδε. «Ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες, θύομαι μὲν ὡς ὁράτε  
 ὅποσα δύναμαι καὶ ὑπὲρ ὑμῶν καὶ ὑπὲρ ἐμαυτοῦ ὅπως  
 ταῦτα τυγχάνω καὶ λέγων καὶ νοῶν καὶ πράττων ὅποια  
 μέλλει ὑμῖν τε κάλλιστα καὶ ἄριστα ἔσεσθαι καὶ ἐμοί. καὶ  
 νῦν ἐθυόμην περὶ αὐτοῦ τούτου, εἰ ἄμεινον εἴη ἄρχεσθαι  
 λέγειν εἰς ὑμᾶς καὶ πράττειν περὶ τούτων ἢ παντάπασιν  
 μηδὲ ἄπτεσθαι τοῦ πράγματος. Σιλανὸς δέ μοι ὁ μάντις  
 ἀπεκρίνατο τὸ μὲν μέγιστον, τὰ ἱερὰ καλὰ εἶναι· ἦδει  
 γὰρ καὶ ἐμὲ οὐκ ἄπειρον ὄντα διὰ τὸ αἰεὶ παρεῖναι τοῖς  
 ἱεροῖς· ἔλεξε δὲ ὅτι ἐν τοῖς ἱεροῖς φαίνοιτό τις δόλος καὶ  
 ἐπιβουλὴ ἐμοί, ὡς ἄρα γιγνώσκων ὅτι αὐτὸς ἐπεβούλευε  
 διαβάλλειν με πρὸς ὑμᾶς. ἐξήνεγκε γὰρ τὸν λόγον ὡς ἐγὼ  
 πράττειν ταῦτα διανοοίμην ἥδη οὐ πείσας ὑμᾶς. ἐγὼ δὲ εἰ  
 μὲν εἰώρων ἀποροῦντας ὑμᾶς, τοῦτ' ἂν ἐσκόπουν ἀφ' οὗ ἂν  
 γένοιτο ὥστε λαβόντας ὑμᾶς πόλιν τὸν μὲν βουλόμενον

πείθειν τε |stay; not change ἢ |rush; sacrifice τῆς |staying, ἢ  
 |delaying  
 |make common; ἡ |army , εἰς δὲ τὸ |communal, ἐν ἀγορεύειν  
 |cooperate |ordinary  
 περὶ τούτων. ὥστε |force, compel ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἀναστῆναι  
 καὶ εἰπεῖν τάδε. «Ἐγὼ, ὦ ἄνδρες, |rush; sacrifice ἵς ὁράτε  
 |as/how many/great αἱ ὑπὲρ ὑμῶν καὶ ὑπὲρ ἑμαντοῦ ὅπως  
 ταῦτα τυγχάνω καὶ λέγων καὶ νοῶν καὶ πράττων |whatever kind  
 μέλλει ὑμῖν τε κάλλιστα καὶ ἄριστα ἔσεσθαι καὶ ἐμοί. καὶ  
 νῦν |rush; sacrifice ἂν αὐτοῦ τούτου, εἰ |better εἴη ἄρχεσθαι  
 λέγειν εἰς ὑμᾶς καὶ πράττειν περὶ τούτων ἢ |altogether;  
 |yes, certainly  
 μηδὲ ἄπτεσθαι τοῦ πράγματος. Σιλανὸς δέ μοι ὁ |seer  
 ἀπεκρίνατο τὸ μὲν μέγιστον, τὰ ἱερὰ καλὰ εἶναι· ἥδει  
 γὰρ καὶ ἐμὲ οὐκ ἄπειρον ὄντα διὰ τὸ ἀεὶ παρῆναι τοῖς  
 ἱεροῖς· ἔλεξε δὲ ὅτι ἐν τοῖς ἱεροῖς φαίνοιτό τις |trick, bait...  
 |a plot, scheme ἡ, ὥς ἄρα γιγνώσκων ὅτι αὐτὸς |plot, plan, harm  
 |throw across; εἰς πρὸς ὑμᾶς. |carry off γὰρ τὸν λόγον ὥς ἐγὼ  
 |slander  
 πράττειν ταῦτα διανοοίμην ἤδη οὐ πείσας ὑμᾶς. ἐγὼ δὲ εἰ  
 μὲν ἐώρων |be confused, ὑμᾶς, τοῦτ' ἂν |behold, ἀφ' οὗ ἂν  
 |distressed |consider  
 γένοιτο ὥστε λαβόντας ὑμᾶς πόλιν τὸν μὲν βουλόμενον

there, and consulting the victims for that end, without letting the army into the secret, or breathing a syllable in public about the matter.” When it came to this, Xenophon was forced to get up, and speak as follows: «Sirs, you are well aware that my habit is to sacrifice at all times; whether in your own behalf or my own, I strive in every thought, word, and deed to be directed as is best for yourselves and for me. And in the present instance my sole object was to learn whether it were better even so much as to broach the subject, and so take action, or to have absolutely nothing to do with the project. Now Silanus the soothsayer assured me by his answer of what was the main point: ‘the victims were favourable.’ No doubt Silanus knew that I was not unversed myself in his lore, as I have so often assisted at the sacrifice; but he added that there were symptoms in the victims of some guile or conspiracy against me. That was a happy discovery on his part, seeing that he was himself conspiring at the moment to traduce me before you; since it was he who set the tale going that I had actually made up my mind to carry out these projects without procuring your consent. Now, for my part, if I saw that you were in any difficulties, I should set myself to discover how you might capture a city, on the understanding of course that all who wished might

*vocabulary*

**ἀναπαύω** cause to cease ~pause

**ἀπαλλαξείω** wish to get rid of

**ἀπαλλάσσω** free from, remove; be freed, depart

**ἀπολείπω** leave behind, fail ~eclipse

**ἀπολιμπάνω** leave behind, fail

**ἀποπλέω** sail away ~float

**ἀσφαλής** safe, easy, steady, careful

**διάνοια** a thought; intelligence

**διασπάω** tear apart ~spatula

**ἐκπλέω** sail away ~float

**ἐκπορεύω** bring/go out

**ἔντιμος** (ἱ) honored

**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable

**κτάομαι** acquire, possess

**μισθός** reward, wages

**νουμηνία** new moon

**οἰκεῖος** household, familiar, proper

**οἰκειόω** adopt, adapt

**ὁμός** same ~homoerotic

**ὁμοῦ** together

**ὁμόω** unite ~homoerotic

**ὁπόσος** as many as, how many, how great

**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near; add ~ion

**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy

**σωτηρία** saving, preservation

**τροφή** food, upkeep ~atrophy

**ὑπισχνέομαι** promise, agree to do ~ischemia

**ὠφελέω** help, be useful

ἀποπλεῖν ἤδη, τὸν δὲ μὴ βουλόμενον, ἐπεὶ κτήσαιο ἱκανὰ ὥστε καὶ τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ οἰκείους ὠφελῆσαί τι. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁρῶ ὑμῖν καὶ τὰ πλοῖα πέμποντας Ἡρακλεώτας καὶ Σινωπέας ὥστε ἐκπλεῖν, καὶ μισθὸν ὑπισχνουμένους ὑμῖν ἄνδρας ἀπὸ νουμηνίας, καλὸν μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι σωζομένους ἔνθα βουλόμεθα μισθὸν τῆς σωτηρίας λαμβάνειν, καὶ αὐτὸς τε παύομαι ἐκείνης τῆς διανοίας, καὶ ὅπόσοι πρὸς ἐμὲ προσῆσαν λέγοντες ὡς χρὴ ταῦτα πράττειν, ἀναπαύεσθαι φημι χρῆναι. οὕτω γὰρ γιγνώσκω· ὁμοῦ μὲν ὄντες πολλοὶ ὥσπερ νυνὶ δοκεῖτε ἂν μοι καὶ ἔντιμοι εἶναι καὶ ἔχειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια· ἐν γὰρ τῷ κρατεῖν ἐστὶ καὶ τὸ λαμβάνειν τὰ τῶν ἡττόνων· διασπασθέντες δ' ἂν καὶ κατὰ μικρὰ γενομένης τῆς δυνάμεως οὔτ' ἂν τροφήν δύναισθε λαμβάνειν οὔτε χαίροντες ἂν ἀπαλλάξαιτε. δοκεῖ οὖν μοι ἅπερ ὑμῖν, ἐκπορεύεσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα, καὶ ἐάν τις μέντοι ἀπολιπὼν ληφθῇ πρὶν ἐν ἀσφαλεῖ εἶναι πᾶν τὸ στράτευμα, κρίνεσθαι αὐτὸν ὡς ἀδικοῦντα.

«Καὶ ὅτω δοκεῖ,» ἔφη, «ταῦτα, ἀράτω τὴν χεῖρα.»



|sail away ἤδη, τὸν δὲ μὴ βουλόμενον, ἐπεὶ κτήσαιοτο ἱκανὰ  
 ὥστε καὶ τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ οἰκείους |help, be useful. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁρῶ  
 ὑμῖν καὶ τὰ πλοῖα πέμποντας Ἡρακλεώτας καὶ Σινωπέας  
 ὥστε |sail away, καὶ |reward, |promise, agree ὑμῖν ἄνδρας  
 ἀπὸ |new moon, καλὸν μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι σωζομένους ἔνθα  
 βουλόμεθα |reward, τῆς σωτηρίας λαμβάνειν, καὶ αὐτός  
 |wages  
 τε παύομαι ἐκείνης τῆς |a thought; intelli-|as/how many/great ᾧ  
 |genge  
 |approach λέγοντες ὡς χρή ταῦτα πράττειν, |cause to cease  
 φημι χρῆναι. οὕτω γὰρ γινώσκω· ὁμοῦ μὲν ὄντες  
 πολλοὶ ὥσπερ νυνὶ δοκεῖτε ἂν μοι καὶ |honored εἶναι καὶ  
 ἔχειν τὰ |fit, suitable ἐν γὰρ τῷ κρατεῖν ἐστὶ καὶ τὸ  
 λαμβάνειν τὰ τῶν ἡττόνων· |tear apart ὃ ἂν καὶ κατὰ  
 μικρὰ γενομένης τῆς δυνάμεως οὐτ' ἂν |food, δύναισθε  
 |upkeep  
 λαμβάνειν οὔτε χαίροντες ἂν ἀπαλλάξαιτε. δοκεῖ οὖν μοι  
 ἅπερ ὑμῖν, ἐκπορεύεσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα, καὶ ἐάν τις  
 μέντοι ἀπολιπὼν ληφθῇ πρὶν ἐν |safe, easy, ι |pân τὸ  
 |steady, careful  
 |army, κρίνεσθαι αὐτὸν ὡς ἀδικοῦντα.

«Καὶ ὅτω δοκεῖ,» ἔφη, «ταῦτα, ἀράτω τὴν χεῖρα.»

sail away at once, leaving those who did not wish, to follow at a later date, with something perhaps in their pockets to benefit their friends at home. Now, however, as I see that the men of Heraclea and Sinope are to send you ships to assist you to sail away, and more than one person guarantees to give you regular monthly pay, it is, I admit, a rare chance to be safely piloted to the haven of our hopes, and at the same time to receive pay for our preservation. For myself I have done with that dream, and to those, who came to me to urge these projects, my advice is to have done with them. In fact, this is my view. As long as you stay together united as to-day, you will command respect and procure provisions; for might certainly exercises a right over what belongs to the weaker. But once broken up, with your force split into bits, you will neither be able to get subsistence, nor indeed will you get off without paying dearly for it. In fact, my resolution coincides precisely with yours. It is that we should set off for Hellas, and if any one stops behind, or is caught deserting before the whole army is in safety, let him be judged as an evil-doer. Pray let all who are in favour of this proposition hold up their hands."

They all held them up; only

*vocabulary***αἵητος** of Hephaestus**ἀνακοινῶ** communicate, impart**ἀνατείνω** lift, reach out, threaten**ἀνέχω** raise; mid: endure, submit**ἀπειλέω** vow, threaten, boast**ἀποδιδράσκω** escape**βασιλεύω** be king**βοάω** shout**ἐκπλέω** sail away ~float**ἐκπλήσσω** panic, be knocked out

~plectrum

**ἐνταῦθα** there, here**ἐντεῦθεν** thence**ἐπιχειρέω** do, try, attack ~chiral**ἐπιψηφίζω** put to a vote**θώραξ** -ηκος (m) breastplate ~thorax**κράτιστος** best**μεταμέλομαι** (impers.+dat.) cause

regret to; (mp) regret

**μισθοφορά** payment of wages**οὔπω** no longer**παραλαμβάνω** receive, undertake,  
associate with**στρατιά** army ~strategy**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
mercenary ~strategy**ὑπέχω** promise; hold out one's hand;  
submit to**ὑποστρατηγέω** be a lieutenant**ψεύδω** be false, deceive; (mid) to lie  
~pseudo-

ἀνέτειναν ἅπαντες. ὁ δὲ Σιλανὸς ἐβόα, καὶ ἐπεχείρει λέγειν ὥς δίκαιον εἶη ἀπιέναι τὸν βουλόμενον. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται οὐκ ἠνείχοντο, ἀλλ' ἠπείλουν αὐτῷ ὅτι εἰ λήψονται ἀποδιδράσκοντα, τὴν δίκην ἐπιθήσοιεν. ἐντεῦθεν ἐπεὶ ἔγνωσαν οἱ Ἡρακλεῶται ὅτι ἐκπλεῖν δεδογμένον εἶη καὶ Ξενοφῶν αὐτὸς ἐπεψηφικῶς εἶη, τὰ μὲν πλοῖα πέμπουσι, τὰ δὲ χρήματα ἃ ὑπέσχοντο Τιμασίῳνι καὶ Θώρακι ἐψευσμένοι ἦσαν τῆς μισθοφορᾶς. ἐνταῦθα δὲ ἐκπεπληγμένοι ἦσαν καὶ ἐδεδέσαν τὴν στρατιὰν οἱ τὴν μισθοφορὰν ὑπεσχημένοι. παραλαβόντες οὖν οὗτοι καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους στρατηγούς οἷς ἀνεκεκοίνωντο ἃ πρόσθεν ἔπραττον, πάντες δ' ἦσαν πλὴν Νέωνος τοῦ Ἀσιναίου, ὃς Χειρισόφῳ ὑπεστρατήγει, Χειρίσοφος δὲ οὐπω παρῆν, ἔρχονται πρὸς Ξενοφῶντα, καὶ λέγουσιν ὅτι μεταμέλοι αὐτοῖς, καὶ δοκοίη κράτιστον εἶναι πλεῖν εἰς Φᾶσιν, ἐπεὶ πλοῖα ἔστι, καὶ κατασχεῖν τὴν Φασιανῶν χώραν. Αἰήτου δὲ υἱοῦς ἐτύγχανε βασιλεύων αὐτῶν. Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι οὐδὲν ἂν τούτων εἴποι εἰς τὴν στρατιάν·

|lift, reach ἵπαντες. ὁ δὲ Σιλανὸς |shout, καὶ |do, try, attack  
|out, threaten

λέγειν ὡς δίκαιον εἶη ἀπιέναι τὸν βουλόμενον. οἱ

δὲ |soldier, οὐκ |raise; , ἀλλ' |vow, threaten, boast  
|mercenary |endure

εἰ λήψονται |escape , τὴν δίκην ἐπιθήσοιεν.

|thence ἐπεὶ ἔγνωσαν οἱ Ἡρακλεῶται ὅτι |sail away

δεδογμένον εἶη καὶ Ξενοφῶν αὐτὸς |put to a vote εἶη, τὰ μὲν

πλοῖα πέμπουσι, τὰ δὲ χρήματα ἃ |promise Τιμασίῳ

καὶ |breast- |be false, deceive; ἐν τῇς |payment οἱ|there, here  
|plate (mid) to lie |wages

δὲ |panic, be knocked ἦσαν καὶ ἐδεδίσαν τὴν |army οἱ τὴν  
|out

|payment οἱ|promise . |receive, undertake, ἵν' οὗτοι καὶ  
|wages |associate with

τοὺς ἄλλους στρατηγούς οἷς |communicate, ἃ πρόσθεν  
|impart

ἔπραττον, πάντες δ' ἦσαν πλὴν Νέωνος τοῦ Ἀσιναίου,

ὃς Χειρισόφῳ |be a lieutenant , Χειρίσοφος δὲ |no longer ρῆν,

ἔρχονται πρὸς Ξενοφῶντα, καὶ λέγουσιν ὅτι μεταμέλοι

αὐτοῖς, καὶ δοκοίη |best εἶναι πλεῖν εἰς Φᾶσιν,

ἐπεὶ πλοῖα ἔστι, καὶ κατασχεῖν τὴν Φασιανῶν χώραν.

|of Hephaestus ὅς ἐτύγχανε |be king αὐτῶν. Ξενοφῶν δὲ

ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι οὐδὲν ἂν τούτων εἴποι εἰς τὴν |army

Silanus began shouting and vainly striving to maintain the right of departure for all who liked to depart. But the soldiers would not suffer him, threatening him that if he were himself caught attempting to run away they would inflict the aforesaid penalty. After this, when the Heracleots learned that the departure by sea was resolved upon, and that the measure itself emanated from Xenophon, they sent the vessels indeed; but as to the money which they had promised to Timasion and Thorax as pay for the soldiers, they were not as good as their word, in fact they cheated them both. Thus the two who had guaranteed regular monthly pay were utterly confounded, and stood in terror of the soldiers. What they did then, was to take to them the other generals to whom they had communicated their former transactions (that is to say, all except Neon the Asniaean, who, as lieutenant-general, was acting for Cheirisophus during his continued absence). This done they came in a body to Xenophon and said that their views were changed. As they had now got the ships, they thought it best to sail to the Phasis, and seize the territory of the Phasians (whose present king was a descendant of Aeetes). Xenophon's reply was curt:—Not one syllable would he have to say himself to the army in this matter, «But,” he added, «if you like, you can summon an assembly

*vocabulary*

**ἄγορανόμος** (αἶ) market clerk  
**ἀναπεῖθω** (aor, plupf) seduce,  
 persuade; (mp, pf, aor ppl) trust, obey,  
 be confident in  
**ἀναπυνθάνομαι** study closely  
**ἀποδείκνυμι** (ō) show, point out;  
 appoint; (mid) declare  
**αὐτόματος** self-willed, accidental  
 ~after  
**διανοέω** have in mind  
**ἐκκλησιάζω** convene  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**ἐξαπατάω** trick, cheat ~apatosaurus  
**ἐτοῖμος** ready; fulfilled

**καταλεύω** stone to death  
**καταφεύγω** resort to, flee to, appeal to  
 ~fugitive  
**κῆρυξ** -κος (m) henchman, functionary  
**κύκλος** circle, wheel ~cycle  
**λοχαγός** (ᾱ) captain  
**ξυνάγω** assemble; join in battle  
**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
 mercenary ~strategy  
**συλλέγω** collect, assemble ~legion  
**σύλλογος** meeting  
**συντρέχω** rush together  
**ταράσσω** mess things up ~trachea  
**φοβερός** frightful, afraid

«ὕμεις δὲ ξυλλέξαντες,» ἔφη, «εἰ βούλεσθε, λέγετε.»  
 ἐνταῦθα ἀποδείκνυται Τιμασίων ὁ Δαρδανεὺς γνώμην οὐκ  
 ἐκκλησιάζειν ἀλλὰ τοὺς αὐτοῦ ἕκαστον λοχαγούς πρῶτον  
 πειρᾶσθαι πείθειν. καὶ ἀπελθόντες ταῦτ' ἐποιοῦν.

## 5.7

Ταῦτα οὖν οἱ στρατιῶται ἀνεπύθοντο ταραττόμενα.  
 καὶ ὁ Νέων λέγει ὡς Ξενοφῶν ἀναπεπεικῶς τοὺς  
 ἄλλους στρατηγούς διανοεῖται ἄγειν τοὺς στρατιώτας  
 ἔξαπατήσας πάλιν εἰς Φᾶσιν. ἀκούσαντες δ' οἱ  
 στρατιῶται χαλεπῶς ἔφερον, καὶ ξύλλογοι ἐγίνοντο καὶ  
 κύκλοι ξυνίσταντο καὶ μάλα φοβεροὶ ἦσαν μὴ ποιήσειαν  
 οἷα καὶ τοὺς τῶν Κόλχων κήρυκας ἐποίησαν καὶ τοὺς  
 ἀγορανόμους· ὅσοι μὴ εἰς τὴν θάλατταν κατέφυγον  
 κατελεύσθησαν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἠσθάνετο Ξενοφῶν, ἔδοξεν  
 αὐτῷ ὡς τάχιστα ξυναγαγεῖν αὐτῶν ἀγοράν, καὶ μὴ  
 ἐᾶσαι ξυλλεγῆναι αὐτομάτους· καὶ ἐκέλευσε τὸν κήρυκα  
 ξυλλέξει ἀγοράν. οἱ δ' ἐπεὶ τοῦ κήρυκος ἤκουσαν,  
 ξυνέδραμον καὶ μάλα ἐτοίμως. ἐνταῦθα Ξενοφῶν τῶν μὲν



«ὕμεις δὲ <sup>|collect, assemble</sup> » ἔφη, «εἰ βούλεσθε, λέγετε.»

<sup>|there, here</sup> <sup>|show, point out; ap-  
|point; (mid) declare</sup> σίων ὁ Δαρδανεύς γνώμην οὐκ

<sup>|convene</sup> ἀλλὰ τοὺς αὐτοῦ ἕκαστον <sup>|captain</sup> πρῶτον

πειρᾶσθαι πείθειν. καὶ ἀπελθόντες ταῦτ' ἐποιοῦν.

## 5.7

Ταῦτα οὖν οἱ <sup>|soldier, mercenary</sup> ἀνεπύθοντο <sup>|mess things up</sup>

καὶ ὁ Νέων λέγει ὡς Ξενοφῶν <sup>|</sup> (aor, plupf) seduce, persuade; (mp, pf, aor ppl) trust, obey, be confident

ἄλλους στρατηγούς διανοεῖται ἄγειν <sup>|in</sup> τοὺς <sup>|soldier, mercenary</sup>

<sup>|trick, cheat</sup> πάλιν εἰς Φᾶσιν. ἀκούσαντες δ' οἱ

<sup>|soldier, mercenary</sup> χαλεπῶς ἔφερον, καὶ <sup>|meeting</sup> ἐγίγνοντο καὶ

<sup>|circle, wheel</sup> ξυνίσταντο καὶ μάλα <sup>|frightful, afraid</sup> ἦσαν μὴ ποιήσειαν

οἶα καὶ τοὺς τῶν Κόλχων <sup>|henchman,   
|functionary</sup> τοίησαν καὶ τοὺς

<sup>|market clerk</sup> ὅσοι μὴ εἰς τὴν θάλατταν <sup>|resort to, flee to, appeal to</sup>

<sup>|stone to death</sup> ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσθάνετο Ξενοφῶν, ἔδοξεν

αὐτῷ ὡς τάχιστα <sup>|join</sup> αὐτῶν ἀγοράν, καὶ μὴ

ἐᾶσαι ξυλλεγῆναι <sup>|self-willed, accidental</sup> καὶ ἐκέλευσε τὸν <sup>|henchman,   
|functionary</sup>

<sup>|collect, assemble</sup> ἀγοράν. οἱ δ' ἐπεὶ τοῦ <sup>|henchman,   
|functionary</sup>

<sup>|rush together</sup> καὶ μάλα <sup>|ready; fulfilled</sup> <sup>|there, here</sup> ἐνοφῶν τῶν μὲν

and have your say.” Thereupon Timasion the Dardanian set forth as his opinion: — It were best to hold no parliament at present, but first to go and conciliate, each of them, his own officers. Thus they went away and proceeded to execute their plans.

### 5.7

Presently the soldiers came to learn what was in course of agitation, and Neon gave out that Xenophon had persuaded the other generals to adopt his views, and had a plan to cheat the soldiers and take them back to the Phasis. The soldiers were highly indignant; meetings were held; little groups gathered ominously; and there seemed an alarming probability that they would repeat the violence with which they had lately treated the heralds of the Colchians and the clerks of the market; when all who did not save themselves by jumping into the sea were stoned to death. So Xenophon, seeing what a storm was brewing, resolved to anticipate matters so far as to summon a meeting of the men without delay, and thus prevent their collecting of their own accord, and he ordered the herald to announce an assembly. The voice of the herald was no sooner heard than they rushed with great readiness to the place of meeting.

*vocabulary*

ἄνισχυς weak

βάρβαρος non-Greek

βορέας -οῦ (m, 1) north, north wind

δήπου perhaps; is it not so?

διαβάλλω throw across; slander

~ballistic

ἔμπαλιν backwards, on the contrary

ἐνθεν thence, whence

ἐνθένδε hence

ἐνταῦθα there, here

ἐντεῦθεν thence

ἐντίθημι load; mp: take to heart

~thesis

ἐξαπατάω trick, cheat ~apatosaurus

ἐπίσταμαι know how, understand

~station

ἐσπέρα evening, west

ἐφίστημι set; (mp) come/be near,

direct, stop ~station

κατηγορέω accuse; indicate

νότος south, south wind

ὅθεν whence

ὅπου where

πλέος full

πλόος -ῶ course, voyage ~float

πνέω breathe, blow ~apnea

στρατηγῶν οὐ κατηγόρει, ὅτι ἦλθον πρὸς αὐτόν, λέγει δὲ ὦδε.

«Ἀκούω τινὰ διαβάλλειν, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἐμὲ ὡς ἐγὼ ἄρα ἐξαπατήσας ὑμᾶς μέλλω ἄγειν εἰς Φᾶσιν. ἀκούσατε οὖν μου πρὸς θεῶν, καὶ ἐὰν μὲν ἐγὼ φαίνωμαι ἀδικεῖν, οὐ χρή με ἐνθένδε ἀπελθεῖν πρὶν ἂν δῶ δίκην· ἂν δ' ὑμῖν φαίνωνται ἀδικεῖν οἱ ἐμὲ διαβάλλοντες, οὕτως αὐτοῖς χρησθε ὥσπερ ἄξιον. ὑμεῖς δέ,» ἔφη, «ἵστε δήπου ὅθεν ἥλιος ἀνίσχει καὶ ὅπου δύεται, καὶ ὅτι ἐὰν μὲν τις εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα μέλλῃ ἰέναι, πρὸς ἐσπέραν δεῖ πορεύεσθαι· ἣν δέ τις βούληται εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους, τοῦμπαλιν πρὸς ἔω. ἔστιν οὖν ὅστις τοῦτο ἂν δύναιτο ὑμᾶς ἐξαπατήσαι ὡς ἥλιος ἔνθεν μὲν ἀνίσχει, δύεται δὲ ἐνταῦθα, ἔνθα δὲ δύεται, ἀνίσχει δ' ἐντεῦθεν; ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ τοῦτό γε ἐπίστασθε ὅτι βορέας μὲν ἔξω τοῦ Πόντου εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα φέρει, νότος δὲ εἴσω εἰς Φᾶσιν, καὶ λέγεται, ὅταν βορρᾶς πνέῃ, ὡς καλοὶ πλοῖ εἰσιν εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα.

«Τοῦτ' οὖν ἔστιν ὅπως τις ἂν ὑμᾶς ἐξαπατήσαι ὥστε

στρατηγῶν οὐ <sup>|accuse;</sup>  
<sup>|indicate</sup> , ὅτι ἦλθον πρὸς αὐτόν, λέγει δὲ  
ὥδε.

«Ἀκούω τινὰ <sup>|throw across;</sup>  
<sup>|slander</sup> ὦ ἄνδρες, ἐμὲ ὡς ἐγὼ ἄρα  
<sup>|trick, cheat</sup> ὑμᾶς μέλλω ἄγειν εἰς Φᾶσιν. ἀκούσατε οὖν  
μου πρὸς θεῶν, καὶ ἐὰν μὲν ἐγὼ φαίνομαι ἀδικεῖν, οὐ  
χρή με <sup>|hence</sup> ἀπελθεῖν πρὶν ἂν δῶ δίκην· ἂν δ' ὑμῖν  
φαίνωνται ἀδικεῖν οἱ ἐμὲ <sup>|throw across;</sup>  
<sup>|slander</sup> οὕτως αὐτοῖς  
χρησθε ὥσπερ ἄξιον. ὑμεῖς δέ,» ἔφη, «ἴστε <sup>|per-</sup>  
<sup>|haps; is</sup> ἥλιος <sup>|weak</sup> καὶ <sup>|where</sup> δύεται, καὶ ὅτι ἐὰν <sup>|it not</sup>  
<sup>|so?</sup> <sup>|μέν</sup> τις εἰς  
τὴν Ἑλλάδα μέλλῃ ἰέναι, πρὸς <sup>|evening, west</sup> πορεύεσθαι·  
ἣν δέ τις βούληται εἰς τοὺς <sup>|non-Greek</sup> , <sup>|backwards, on,</sup>  
<sup>|the contrary</sup> ἔω. ἔστιν οὖν ὅστις τοῦτο ἂν δύναιτο ὑμᾶς <sup>|trick, cheat</sup> ὥς  
ἥλιος ἔνθεν μὲν <sup>|weak</sup> , δύεται δὲ <sup>|there, here</sup> ἵθα δὲ δύεται,  
<sup>|weak</sup> δ' <sup>|thence</sup> , ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ τοῦτό γε ἐπίστασθε ὅτι  
<sup>|north,</sup> μὲν ἔξω τοῦ Πόντου εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα φέρει, <sup>|south,</sup>  
<sup>|north</sup> <sup>|south</sup>  
<sup>|wind</sup> <sup>|wind</sup> οὐδ' εἰσω εἰς Φᾶσιν, καὶ λέγεται, ὅταν βορρᾶς <sup>|breathe, blow</sup>  
καλοὶ πλοῖ εἰσιν εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα.

«Τοῦτ' οὖν ἔστιν ὅπως τις ἂν ὑμᾶς <sup>|trick, cheat</sup> ὥστε

Then Xenophon, without accusing the generals of having come to him, made the following speech:

«I Hear that a charge is brought against me. It is I apparently who am going to cheat you and carry you off to Phasis. I beg you by all that is holy to listen to me; and if there be found any guilt in me, let me not leave this place till I have paid the penalty of my misdoing; but if my accusers are found guilty, treat them as they deserve. I presume, sirs, you know where the sun rises and where he sets, and that he who would go to Hellas must needs journey towards the sunset; whereas he who seeks the land of the barbarian must contrariwise fix his face towards the dawn. Now is that a point in which a man might hope to cheat you? Could any one make you believe that the sun rises here and sets there, or that he sets here and rises there? And doubtless you know this too, that it is Boreas, the north wind, who bears the mariner out of Pontus towards Hellas, and the south wind inwards towards the Phasis, whence the saying—‘He would be a clever fellow who could befool you into embarking with a south wind blowing.’

*vocabulary***ἀποβαίνω** leave, get off; turn out

~basis

**ἀσφάλεια** safeguard**βιάζω** use force on, violate**βιάω** use force against, overcome**γαλήνη** stillness of wind or sea**γοητεύω** bewitch**δήπου** perhaps; is it not so?**ἐγγύς** near**ἐλάχιστος** smallest, shortest, fewest**ἐμβαίνω** step on, board ~basis**ἐμβιβάζω** put aboard**ἐμποδών** getting in the way**ἐξαπατάω** trick, cheat ~apatosaurus**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee**ἡλίθιος** idle, vain, foolish**καίτοι** and yet; and in fact; although**κωλύω** (ὤ) hinder, prevent**μυρίος** (ὀ) 10,000 ~myriad**νότος** south, south wind**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle

~hoplite

**οὐχοῦν** not so?; and so**παρίημι** dangle; pass over, allow ~jet**πνέω** breathe, blow ~apnea**τιμάω** (ἰ) honor, exalt**τιμόω** honor, exalt**ὕμέτερος** (ὤ) yours**φθονέω** envy

ἐμβαίνειν ὅποτεν νότος πνέῃ; ἀλλὰ γὰρ ὅποτεν γαλήνη ἦ ἐμβιβῶ. οὐκοῦν ἐγὼ μὲν ἐν ἐνὶ πλοίῳ πλεύσομαι, ὑμεῖς δὲ τοῦλάχιστον ἐν ἑκατόν. πῶς ἂν οὖν ἐγὼ ἢ βιασαίμην ὑμᾶς ξὺν ἐμοὶ πλεῖν μὴ βουλομένους ἢ ἑξαπατήσας ἄγοιμι; ποιῶ δ' ὑμᾶς ἑξαπατηθέντας καὶ γοητευθέντας ὑπ' ἐμοῦ ἦκειν εἰς Φᾶσιν· καὶ δὴ ἀποβαίνομεν εἰς τὴν χώραν· γνώσεσθε δήπου ὅτι οὐκ ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι ἐστέ· καὶ ἐγὼ μὲν ἔσομαι ὁ ἐξηπατηκὼς εἷς, ὑμεῖς δὲ οἱ ἐξηπατημένοι ἐγγὺς μυρίων ἔχοντες ὅπλα. πῶς ἂν οὖν ἀνὴρ μᾶλλον δοίῃ δίκην ἢ οὕτω περὶ αὐτοῦ τε καὶ ὑμῶν βουλευόμενος;

«Ἄλλ' οὗτοί εἰσιν οἱ λόγοι ἀνδρῶν καὶ ἡλιθίων κάμοι φθονούντων, ὅτι ἐγὼ ὑφ' ὑμῶν τιμῶμαι. καίτοι οὐ δικαίως γ' ἂν μοι φθονοῖεν· τίνα γὰρ αὐτῶν ἐγὼ κωλύω ἢ λέγειν εἴ τίς τι ἀγαθὸν δύναται ἐν ὑμῖν, ἢ μάχεσθαι εἴ τις ἐθέλει ὑπὲρ ὑμῶν τε καὶ ἑαυτοῦ, ἢ ἐργηγορέναι περὶ τῆς ὑμετέρας ἀσφαλείας ἐπιμελούμενον; τί γάρ, ἄρχοντας αἰρουμένων ὑμῶν ἐγὼ τινι ἐμποδὼν εἰμι; παρήμι, ἀρχέτω· μόνον ἀγαθόν τι ποιῶν ὑμᾶς φανέσθω.



|step on, board ἔταν |south, |breathe, blow , ἀρ ὀπόταν |stillness ὁφ  
|south  
|wind or sea

|put |not so?; and so ν ἐν ἐνὶ πλοίῳ πλεύσομαι, ὑμεῖς δὲ  
|aboard

|smallest, short- ν ἑκατόν. πῶς ἂν οὖν ἐγὼ ἢ βιασαίμην ὑμᾶς  
|est, fewest

ξὺν ἐμοὶ πλεῖν μὴ βουλομένους ἢ |trick, cheat ἵγοιμι; ποιῶ

δ' ὑμᾶς |trick, cheat καὶ |bewitch ὑπ' ἐμοῦ ἥκειν

εἰς Φᾶσιν· καὶ δὴ |leave, get off; εἰς τὴν χώραν· γνώσεσθε  
|turn out

|perhaps; 'is οὐκ ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι ἐστέ· καὶ ἐγὼ μὲν ἔσομαι  
|it not so?

ὁ |trick, cheat εἷς, ὑμεῖς δὲ οἱ |trick, cheat |near μυρίων

ἔχοντες |tool . πῶς ἂν οὖν ἀνὴρ μᾶλλον δοίῃ δίκην ἢ οὕτω

περὶ αὐτοῦ τε καὶ ὑμῶν βουλευόμενος;

«Ἄλλ' οὗτοί εἰσιν οἱ λόγοι ἀνδρῶν καὶ |idle, vain, foolish

|envy , ὅτι ἐγὼ ὑφ' ὑμῶν τιμῶμαι. |and yet; and in fact; al-  
|though

δικαίως γ' ἂν μοι |envy τίνα γὰρ αὐτῶν ἐγὼ |hinder,  
|prevent

ἢ λέγειν εἴ τίς τι ἀγαθὸν δύναται ἐν ὑμῖν, ἢ μάχεσθαι

εἴ τις ἐθέλει ὑπὲρ ὑμῶν τε καὶ ἑαυτοῦ, ἢ ἐγρηγορέναι

περὶ τῆς |yours |safeguard |take care of, τί γάρ,  
|oversee

ἄρχοντας αἰρουμένων ὑμῶν ἐγὼ τινι |getting in the way

|dangle; pass χέτω· μόνον ἀγαθόν τι ποιῶν ὑμᾶς φαινέσθω.  
|over, allow

That sounds all very well, you think, only I may get you on board during a calm. Granted, but I shall be on board my one ship, and you on board another hundred at least, and how am I to constrain you to voyage with me against your will, or by what cajolery shall I carry you off? But I will imagine you so far befooled and bewitched by me, that I have got you to the Phasis; we proceed to disembark on dry land. At last it will come out, that wherever you are, you are not in Hellas, and the inventor of the trick will be one sole man, and you who have been caught by it will number something like ten thousand with swords in your hands. I do not know how a man could better ensure his own punishment than by embarking on such a policy with regards to himself and you.

«Nay, these tales are the invention of silly fellows who are jealous of the honour you bestow on me. A most uncalled-for jealousy! Do I hinder any of them from speaking any word of import in his power? of striking a blow in your behalf and his own, if that is his choice? or, finally, of keeping his eyes and ears open to secure your safety? What is it? In your choice of leaders do I stand in the way of any one, is that it? Let him step forward, I yield him place; he shall be your general; only he must prove that he has your good at heart.

«For myself,

*vocabulary*

ἀγοράζω do commerce ~agora  
 αἰσχρός shameful  
 ἄλις in plenty; enough ~helix  
 ἀποφαίνω display, declare  
 ἀρκέω satisfy; ward off, defend; suffice  
 ἀφύλακτος unguarded ~phylactery  
 βαρβαρικός non-Greek  
 ἐγγύς near  
 ἐξαπατάω trick, cheat ~apatosaurus  
 ἔπειμι lie upon; approach ~ion  
 ἐπίσταμαι know how, understand  
 ~station  
 ἐφίστημι set; (mp) come/be near,

direct, stop ~station  
 ἱερεῖον animal victim ~hieroglyph  
 καταμανθάνω examine, observe  
 κάτειμι go down, disembark ~ion  
 λοχαγός (ᾱ) captain  
 ὅθεν whence  
 πορθέω sack, ravage, plunder  
 πωλέω sell  
 στρατιά army ~strategy  
 στρατιώτης -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
 mercenary ~strategy  
 ὑποδείκνυμι (υῶ) show, trace out  
 φίλιος friendly  
 χωρίον area; downwards

«Ἀλλὰ γὰρ ἐμοὶ μὲν ἀρκεῖ περὶ τούτων τὰ εἰρημμένα· εἰ δέ τις ὑμῶν ἢ αὐτὸς ἐξαπατηθῆναι ἂν οἶται ταῦτα ἢ ἄλλον ἐξαπατῆσαι ταῦτα, λέγων διδασκέτω. ὅταν δὲ τούτων ἄλις ἔχητε, μὴ ἀπέλθῃτε πρὶν ἂν ἀκούσῃτε οἶον ὁρῶ ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ ἀρχόμενον πρᾶγμα· ὃ εἰ ἔπεισι καὶ ἔσται οἶον ὑποδείκνυσιν, ὥρα ἡμῖν βουλευέσθαι ὑπὲρ ἡμῶν αὐτῶν μὴ κάκιστοί τε καὶ αἰσχιστοὶ ἄνδρες ἀποφαινόμεθα καὶ πρὸς θεῶν καὶ πρὸς ἀνθρώπων καὶ φίλων καὶ πολεμίων.» ἀκούσαντες δὲ ταῦτα οἱ στρατιῶται ἐθαύμασάν τε ὅτι εἴη καὶ λέγειν ἐκέλευον. ἐκ τούτου ἄρχεται πάλιν· «Ἐπίστασθέ που ὅτι χωρία ἦν ἐν τοῖς ὅρεσι βαρβαρικά, φίλια τοῖς Κερασουντίοις, ὅθεν κατιόντες τινὲς καὶ ἱερεῖα ἐπώλουν ἡμῖν καὶ ἄλλα ὧν εἶχον, δοκοῦσι δέ μοι καὶ ὑμῶν τινες εἰς τὸ ἐγγυτάτω χωρίον τούτων ἐλθόντες ἀγοράσαντές τι πάλιν ἀπελθεῖν. τοῦτο καταμαθὼν Κλεάρετος ὁ λοχαγὸς ὅτι καὶ μικρὸν εἴη καὶ ἀφύλακτον διὰ τὸ φίλιον νομίζειν εἶναι, ἔρχεται ἐπ' αὐτοὺς τῆς νυκτὸς ὥς πορθήσων, οὐδενὶ ἡμῶν εἰπών. διενενόητο

«Ἀλλὰ γὰρ ἐμοὶ μὲν |satisfy; ward off, defend; suffice ὦν τὰ εἰρημμένα· εἰ δέ  
 τις ὑμῶν ἢ αὐτὸς |trick, cheat ἂν οἶεται ταῦτα ἢ ἄλλον  
 |trick, cheat ταῦτα, λέγων διδασκέτω. ὅταν δὲ τούτων  
 |in plenty; enough ἔτέλθητε πρὶν ἂν ἀκούσητε οἶον ὁρῶ ἐν τῇ  
 |army ἀρχόμενον πρᾶγμα· ὃ εἰ |lie upon; approach οἶον  
 |show, trace out, ὥρα ἡμῖν βουλεύεσθαι ὑπὲρ ἡμῶν αὐτῶν  
 μὴ κάκιστοί τε καὶ |shameful ἄνδρες |display, declare καὶ  
 πρὸς θεῶν καὶ πρὸς ἀνθρώπων καὶ φίλων καὶ πολεμίων.»  
 ἀκούσαντες δὲ ταῦτα οἱ |soldier, mercenary ἐθαύμασάν τε ὅ  
 τι εἴη καὶ λέγειν ἐκέλευον. ἐκ τούτου ἄρχεται πάλιν·  
 «Ἐπίστασθέ που ὅτι |area; downwards ὅς ὄρεσι |non-Greek ,  
 |friendly ὡς Κερασούντιοις, |when go down, disembark |animal  
 |sell ἡμῖν καὶ ἄλλα ὧν εἶχον, δοκοῦσι δέ μοι καὶ  
 ὑμῶν τινες εἰς τὸ |near |area; downwards ἐλθόντες  
 |do commerce τι πάλιν ἀπελθεῖν. τοῦτο |examine, observe  
 Κλεάρετος ὁ |captain ὅτι καὶ μικρὸν εἴη καὶ |unguarded  
 διὰ τὸ |friendly ὁμίζειν εἶναι, ἔρχεται ἐπ' αὐτοὺς τῆς νυκτὸς  
 ὥς |sack , οὐδενὶ ἡμῶν εἰπών. διενενόητο

I have done; but for yourselves, if any of you conceive either that he himself could be the victim of a fraud, or that he could victimise any one else in such a thing as this, let him open his lips and explain to us how. Take your time, but when you have sifted the matter to your hearts' content, do not go away without suffering me to tell you of something which I see looming. If it should burst upon us and prove in fact anything like what it gives signs of being now, it is time for us to take counsel for ourselves and see that we do not prove ourselves to be the worst and basest of men in the sight of gods and men, be they friends or be they foes." The words moved the curiosity of the soldiers. They marvelled what this matter might be, and bade him explain. Thereupon he began again: «You will not have forgotten certain places in the hills—barbaric fastnesses, but friendly to the Cerasuntines—from which people used to come down and sell us large cattle and other things which they possessed, and if I mistake not, some of you went to the nearest of these places and made purchases in the market and came back again. Clearetus the captain learnt of this place, that it was but a little one and unguarded. Why should it be guarded since it was friendly? so the folk thought. Thus he stole upon it in the dead of night, and meant to sack it without

*vocabulary*

ἀποπλέω sail away ~float  
 ἀποχωρέω go away from, retreat  
 γεραιός old ~geriatric  
 δεῦρο here, come here!  
 εἰσβαίνω enter, board ~basis  
 ἐντίθημι load; mp: take to heart  
 ~thesis  
 ἐξορμάω veer off course ~hormone  
 ἰσχυρός (ῶ) strong, forceful, violent  
 καταλαμβάνω seize, understand, catch,  
 overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy  
 κοινός communal, ordinary  
 μηκέτι no more

οἴχομαι come, go, leave, be gone  
 ὅπόσος as many as, how many, how  
 great  
 οὐπω no longer  
 παίω hit  
 παραπλέω sail past ~float  
 στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
 συνίστημι unite; confront in battle  
 ~station  
 σύσκηνος roommate  
 συχνός long; many; extensive  
 φθάνω (ᾱ) do first, outstrip  
 χρήζω need ~chresard  
 χωρίον area; downwards

δέ, εἰ λάβοι τόδε τὸ χωρίον, εἰς μὲν τὸ στράτευμα  
 μηκέτι ἐλθεῖν, εἰσβάς δὲ εἰς πλοῖον ἐν ᾧ ἐτύγχανον  
 οἱ ξύσκηνοι αὐτοῦ παραπλέοντες, καὶ ἐνθέμενος εἴ τι  
 λάβοι, ἀποπλέων οἴχεσθαι ἔξω τοῦ Πόντου. καὶ ταῦτα  
 ξυνωμολόγησαν αὐτῷ οἱ ἐκ τοῦ πλοίου σύσκηνοι, ὥς  
 ἐγὼ νῦν αἰσθάνομαι. παρακαλέσας οὖν ὁπόσους ἔπειθεν  
 ἦγεν ἐπὶ τὸ χωρίον. πορευόμενον δ' αὐτὸν φθάνει ἡμέρα  
 γενομένη, καὶ ξυστάντες οἱ ἄνθρωποι ἀπὸ ἰσχυρῶν τόπων  
 βάλλοντες καὶ παίοντες τὸν τε Κλεάρετον ἀποκτείνουσι  
 καὶ τῶν ἄλλων συχνούς, οἱ δέ τινες καὶ εἰς Κερασοῦντα  
 αὐτῶν ἀποχωροῦσι.

«Ταῦτα δ' ἦν ἐν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἣ ἡμεῖς δεῦρο ἐξωρμῶμεν πεζῇ·  
 τῶν δὲ πλεόντων ἔτι τινὲς ἦσαν ἐν Κερασοῦντι, οὗπω  
 ἀνηγμένοι. μετὰ τοῦτο, ὥς οἱ Κερασούντιοι λέγουσιν,  
 ἀφικνοῦνται τῶν ἐκ τοῦ χωρίου τρεῖς ἄνδρες τῶν  
 γεραιτέρων πρὸς τὸ κοινὸν τὸ ἡμέτερον χρήζοντες ἐλθεῖν.  
 ἐπεὶ δ' ἡμᾶς οὐ κατέλαβον, πρὸς τοὺς Κερασουντίους  
 ἔλεγον ὅτι θαυμάζοιεν τί ἡμῖν δόξειεν ἐλθεῖν ἐπ' αὐτούς.



δέ, εἰ λάβοι τόδε τὸ |area; downwards` τὸ |army  
 |no more ἐλθεῖν, |enter, |δὲ εἰς πλοῖον ἐν ᾧ ἐτύγχανον  
 |board  
 οἱ ξύσκηνοι αὐτοῦ |sail past , καὶ |load; mp: ἴ τι  
 |take to heart  
 λάβοι, |sail away |come, go ἔξω τοῦ Πόντου. καὶ ταῦτα  
 ξυνωμολόγησαν αὐτῷ οἱ ἐκ τοῦ πλοίου |roommate , ὥς  
 ἐγὼ νῦν αἰσθάνομαι. παρακαλέσας οὖν |as/how many/great  
 ἦγεν ἐπὶ τὸ |area; downwards ἴμενον δ' αὐτὸν |be first ἡμέρα  
 γενομένη, καὶ |unite; confront ἰνθρωποι ἀπὸ |strong, force- ὡν  
 |in battle |ful, violent  
 βάλλοντες καὶ |hit τὸν τε Κλεάρετον ἀποκτείνουσι  
 καὶ τῶν ἄλλων |long; many; δέ τινες καὶ εἰς Κερασοῦντα  
 |extensive  
 αὐτῶν |go away from, .  
 |retreat  
 «Ταῦτα δ' ἦν ἐν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἣ ἡμεῖς |here, |veer off course.. ἐξῆ  
 |come  
 τῶν δὲ πλεόντων ἔτι τινὲς ἦσαν |here!  
 ἐν Κερασοῦντι, |no longer  
 ἀνηγμένοι. μετὰ τοῦτο, ὥς οἱ Κερασούντιοι λέγουσιν,  
 ἀφικνοῦνται τῶν ἐκ τοῦ |area; downwards ἄνδρες τῶν  
 |old πρὸς τὸ |communal, ἡμέτερον |need ἐλθεῖν.  
 |ordinary  
 ἐπεὶ δ' ἡμᾶς οὐ |seize, understand, `catch, `s Κερασουντίους  
 |overtake; (mp) happen  
 ἔλεγον ὅτι θανμάζοιεν τί ἡμῖν δόξειεν ἐλθεῖν ἐπ' αὐτούς.

saying a word to any of us. His design was, if he took the place, not to return again to the army, but to mount a vessel which, with his messmates on board her, was sailing past at the time, and stowing away what he had seized, to set sail and begone beyond the Euxine. All this had been agreed upon and arranged with his comrades on board the vessel, as I now discover. Accordingly, he summoned to his side all whom he could persuade, and set off at their head against the little place. But dawn overtook him on his march. The men collected out of their strongholds, and whether from a distance or close quarters, made such a fight that they killed Clearetus and a good many of the rest, and only a few of them got safe back to Cerasus. x«These things took place on the day on which we started to come hither on foot; while some of those who were to go by sea were still at Cerasus, not having as yet weighed anchor. After this, according to what the Cerasuntines state, there arrived three inhabitants of the place which had been attacked; three elderly men, seeking an interview with our public assembly. Not finding us, they addressed themselves to the men of Cerasus, and told them, they were astonished that we should have thought it right to attack them;

*vocabulary*

**ἀναιρέω** take up ~heresy  
**ἀποφεύγω** avoid, escape, go free  
**ἄχθομαι** be burdened with  
**βάρβαρος** non-Greek  
**Ἑλλήν** Greek  
**ἐνθάδε** here, hither  
**ἐξαίφνης** suddenly  
**ἐξωθεν** from outside  
**ἐχθω** (mp) be hated ~external  
**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism  
**θάπτω** bury ~epitaph  
**θόρυβος** noise, clamor  
**καταλεύω** stone to death

**κοινός** communal, ordinary  
**κοινόω** make common; cooperate  
**λίθος** (f) stone ~monolith  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
 ~hoplite  
**ὅποι** to which place  
**παίω** hit  
**παρακελεύομαι** recommend,  
 encourage  
**προσθέω** run to  
**συγκάθημαι** live together  
**τάχα** quickly, soon; perhaps  
 ~tachometer

ἐπεὶ μέντοι σφείς λέγειν, ἔφασαν, ὅτι οὐκ ἀπὸ κοινοῦ γένοιτο τὸ πρᾶγμα, ἥδεσθαί τε αὐτοὺς καὶ μέλλειν ἐνθάδε πλεῖν, ὥς ἡμῖν λέξαι τὰ γενόμενα καὶ τοὺς νεκροὺς κελεύειν αὐτοὺς θάπτειν λαβόντας.

«Τῶν δ' ἀποφυγόντων τινὰς Ἑλλήνων τυχεῖν ἔτι ὄντας ἐν Κερασούντι· αἰσθόμενοι δὲ τοὺς βαρβάρους ὅποι ἴοιεν αὐτοί τε ἐτόλμησαν βάλλειν τοῖς λίθοις καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις παρεκελεύοντο. καὶ οἱ ἄνδρες ἀποθνήσκουσι τρεῖς ὄντες οἱ πρέσβεις καταλευσθέντες. ἐπεὶ δὲ τοῦτο ἐγένετο, ἔρχονται πρὸς ἡμᾶς οἱ Κερασούντιοι καὶ λέγουσι τὸ πρᾶγμα· καὶ ἡμεῖς οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἀκούσαντες ἠχθόμεθά τε τοῖς γεγενημένοις καὶ ἐβουλευόμεθα ξὺν τοῖς Κερασουντίοις ὅπως ἂν ταφείησαν οἱ τῶν Ἑλλήνων νεκροί. συγκαθήμενοι δ' ἔξωθεν τῶν ὅπλων ἐξαίφνης ἀκούομεν θορύβου πολλοῦ Παῖε παῖε, βάλλε βάλλε, καὶ τάχα δὴ ὀρώμεν πολλοὺς προσθέοντας λίθους ἔχοντας ἐν ταῖς χερσί, τοὺς δὲ καὶ ἀναιρουμένους. καὶ οἱ μὲν Κερασούντιοι, ὥς ἂν καὶ ἐορακότες τὸ παρ' ἑαυτοῖς

ἐπεὶ μέντοι σφέϊς λέγειν, ἔφασαν, ὅτι οὐκ ἀπὸ κοινοῦ  
γένοιτο τὸ πρᾶγμα, |ἡδομαι?: be 'pleased, 'enjoy; or|here,  
|ἡδομαι?: be pleased, enjoy |hither  
πλεῖν, ὥς ἡμῖν λέξαι τὰ γενόμενα καὶ τοὺς νεκροὺς  
κελεύειν αὐτοὺς |bury λαβόντας.

«Τῶν δ' |avoid, escape, go τινὰς |Greek τυχεῖν ἔτι ὄντας  
|free  
ἐν Κερασσοῦντι· αἰσθόμενοι δὲ τοὺς |non-Greek |to which place  
ἴοιεν αὐτοί τε ἐτόλμησαν βάλλειν τοῖς |stone καὶ τοῖς  
ἄλλοις παρεκελεύοντο. καὶ οἱ ἄνδρες ἀποθνήσκουσι  
τρεῖς ὄντες οἱ πρέσβεις |stone to death ἐπεὶ δὲ  
τοῦτο ἐγένετο, ἔρχονται πρὸς ἡμᾶς οἱ Κερασσοῦντιοι καὶ  
λέγουσι τὸ πρᾶγμα· καὶ ἡμεῖς οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἀκούσαντες  
ἡχθόμεθά τε τοῖς γεγενημένοις καὶ ἐβουλευόμεθα ξὺν  
τοῖς Κερασσουντίοις ὅπως ἂν |bury οἱ τῶν |Greek  
νεκροί. |live together δ' |from outside |tool |suddenly  
ἀκούομεν |noise, πολλοῦ Παῖε |hit , βάλλε βάλλε, καὶ  
|clamor  
|quickly, 'soon; ὡμεν πολλοὺς |run to |stone ἔχοντας  
|perhaps  
ἐν ταῖς χερσί, τοὺς δὲ καὶ |take up καὶ οἱ μὲν  
Κερασσοῦντιοι, ὥς ἂν καὶ ἐορακότες τὸ παρ' ἑαυτοῖς

however, when, as the Cerasuntines assert, they had assured them that the occurrence was not authorised by public consent, they were pleased, and proposed to sail here, not only to state to us what had occurred, but to offer that those who were interested should take up and bury the bodies of the slain.

«But among the Hellenes still at Cerasus were some of those who had escaped. They found out in which direction the barbarians were minded to go, and not only had the face themselves to pelt them with stones, but vociferously encouraged their neighbours to do the same. The three men — ambassadors, mark you — were slain, stoned to death. After this occurrence, the men of Cerasus came to us and reported the affair, and we generals, on being informed, were annoyed at what had taken place, and took counsel with the Cerasuntines how the dead bodies of the Hellenes might be buried. While seated in conclave outside the camp, we suddenly were aware of a great hubbub. We heard cries: ‘Cut them down!’ ‘Shoot them!’ ‘Stone them!’ and presently we caught sight of a mass of people racing towards us with stones in their hands, and others picking them up. The Cerasuntines, naturally enough, considering the incident they had lately witnessed, retired in

*vocabulary*

**ἀγορανόμος** (αᾶ) market clerk  
**ἄγριος** wild, savage ~agriculture  
**ἀναιρέω** take up ~heresy  
**ἀνακράζω** yell, scream  
**ἀποχωρέω** go away from, retreat  
**δρόμος** running, racing ground  
 ~hippodrome  
**ἔλαφος** (f) deer  
**ἐμπίπτω** fall into; attack ~petal  
**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand  
 ~station  
**ἐπιτυγχάνω** meet, attain  
**ἔρωτάω** ask about something  
**ἐφίστημι** set; (mp) come/be near,

direct, stop ~station  
**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider  
 ~theater  
**κατάστασις** -εως (f) establishment  
**λίθος** (f) stone ~monolith  
**λύσσα** battle rage  
**ναός** (ᾶ) temple, shrine ~nostalgia  
**νέω** spin; swim ~neuro  
**νή** yea  
**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless  
**πνίγω** (ι) strangle; stew; (p) drown  
**σαφής** clear, understandable  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**στρατιά** army ~strategy  
**ὕς** pig ~sow

πρᾶγμα, δείσαντες ἀποχωροῦσι πρὸς τὰ πλοῖα. ἦσαν δὲ νῆ Δία καὶ ἡμῶν οἳ ἔδεισαν. ἐγὼ γε μὴν ἦλθον πρὸς αὐτοὺς καὶ ἡρώτων ὅ τι ἐστὶ τὸ πρᾶγμα. τῶν δὲ ἦσαν μὲν οἳ οὐδὲν ᾔδεσαν, ὅμως δὲ λίθους εἶχον ἐν ταῖς χερσίν. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰδότι τινὶ ἐπέτυχον, λέγει μοι ὅτι οἱ ἀγορανόμοι δεινότατα ποιοῦσι τὸ στράτευμα. ἐν τούτῳ τις ὄρᾳ τὸν ἀγορανόμον Ζήλαρχον πρὸς τὴν θάλατταν ἀποχωροῦντα, καὶ ἀνέκραγεν· οἳ δὲ ὡς ἤκουσαν, ὥσπερ ἡ σὺς ἀγρίου ἢ ἐλάφου φανέντος ἵενται ἐπ' αὐτόν.

«Οἳ δ' αὖ Κερασούντιοι ὡς εἶδον ὀρμῶντας καθ' αὐτούς, σαφῶς νομίζοντες ἐπὶ σφᾶς ἵεσθαι, φεύγουσι δρόμῳ καὶ ἐμπίπτουσιν εἰς τὴν θάλατταν. ξυνεισέπεσον δὲ καὶ ἡμῶν αὐτῶν τινες, καὶ ἐπνίγετο ὅστις νεῖν μὴ ἐτύγχανεν ἐπιστάμενος. καὶ τούτους τί δοκεῖτε; ἡδίκουν μὲν οὐδέν, ἔδεισαν δὲ μὴ λύττα τις ὥσπερ κυσὶν ἡμῖν ἐμπεπτώκοι.

«Εἰ οὖν ταῦτα τοιαῦτα ἔσται, θεάσασθε οἷα ἡ κατάστασις ἡμῖν ἔσται τῆς στρατιᾶς. ὑμεῖς μὲν οἳ πάντες οὐκ ἔσεσθε κύριοι οὔτε ἀνελεῖσθαι πόλεμον ᾧ ἂν βούλησθε



πρᾶγμα, δείσαντες |go away from, retreat πρὸς τὰ πλοῖα. ἦσαν  
 δὲ νῆ Δία καὶ ἡμῶν οἱ ἔδεισαν. ἐγὼ γε μὴν ἦλθον πρὸς  
 αὐτοὺς καὶ |ask ὅ τι ἐστὶ τὸ πρᾶγμα. τῶν δὲ ἦσαν  
 μὲν οἱ οὐδὲν ᾔδεσαν, |anyway, |stone |neverthe-  
 ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰδότι τινὶ |meet, |less, λέγει μοι ὅτι οἱ |market clerk  
 δεινότατα ποιοῦσι τὸ |army . ἐν τούτῳ τις ὄρᾳ τὸν  
 |market clerk Ζήλαρχον πρὸς τὴν θάλατταν |go away from,,  
 καὶ |yell, scream οἱ δὲ ὡς ἤκουσαν, ὥσπερ ἡ |pig ἀγρίου ἢ  
 |deer φανέντος ἵενται ἐπ' αὐτόν.

«Οἱ δ' αὖ Κερασούντιοι ὡς εἶδον ὀρμῶντας καθ' αὐτούς,  
 |clear, under- |ζοντες ἐπὶ σφᾶς ἵεσθαι, φεύγουσι |running καὶ  
 |standable ἐμπίπτουσιν εἰς τὴν θάλατταν. ξυνεισέπεσον δὲ καὶ  
 ἡμῶν αὐτῶν τινες, καὶ |strangle; stēw; (p)|spin; swim ἵγχανεν  
 |drown ἐπιστάμενος. καὶ τούτους τί δοκεῖτε; ἡδίκουν μὲν οὐδέν,  
 ἔδεισαν δὲ μὴ |battle rage ὥσπερ κυσὶν ἡμῖν |fall into; attack  
 «Εἰ οὖν ταῦτα τοιαῦτα ἔσται, θεάσασθε οἷα ἡ |establishment  
 ἡμῖν ἔσται τῆς |army ὑμεῖς μὲν οἱ πάντες οὐκ ἔσεσθε  
 κύριοι οὔτε |take up πόλεμον ᾧ ἂν βούλησθε

terror to their vessels, and, upon my word, some of us did not feel too comfortable. All I could do was to go to them and inquire what it all meant. Some of them had not the slightest notion, although they had stones in their hands, but chancing on some one who was better informed, I was told by him that 'the clerks of the market were treating the army most scandalously.' Just then some one got sight of the market clerk, Zelarchus, making his way off towards the sea, and lifted up his voice aloud, and the rest responding to the cry as if a wild boar or a stag had been started, they rushed upon him.

«The Cerasuntines, seeing a rush in their direction, thought that, without a doubt, it was directed against themselves, and fled with all speed and threw themselves into the sea, in which proceeding they were imitated by some few of our own men, and all who did not know how to swim were drowned. But now, what do you think of their case, these men of Cerasus? They had done no wrong. They were simply afraid that some madness had seized us, like that to which dogs are liable.

«I Say then, if proceedings like this are to be the order of the day, you had better consider what the ultimate condition of the army is like to be. As a body you will not have it

*vocabulary*

**ἀγορανόμος** (αἶ) market clerk  
**ἄδικος** unfair; obstinate, bad  
**ἄκριτος** indiscriminate, endless ~critic  
**ἀποπλέω** sail away ~float  
**ἀσφαλής** safe, easy, steady, careful  
**αὐθαίρετος** self-selected, self-incurred  
**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish  
 ~practice  
**Ἑλλην** Greek

**ιδιώτης** -ου (m, 1) private; a layman  
**ἰσχύς** -ος (f) strength; body of troops  
**κατακαίνω** kill  
**κατακτείνω** kill, slay  
**καταλεύω** stone to death  
**καταλύω** unyoke; destroy ~loose  
**οἶχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone  
**σκέπτομαι** look, look at, watch  
 ~skeptical  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy

οὔτε καταλῦσαι, ἰδίᾳ δὲ ὁ βουλόμενος ἄξει στράτευμα ἐφ' ὃ τι ἂν θέλῃ. καὶν τινες πρὸς ὑμᾶς ἴωσι πρέσβεις εἰρήνης δεόμενοι ἢ ἄλλου τινός, κατακτείναντες τούτους οἱ βουλόμενοι ποιήσουσιν ὑμᾶς τῶν λόγων μὴ ἀκοῦσαι τῶν πρὸς ὑμᾶς ἰόντων. ἔπειτα δὲ οὓς μὲν ἂν ὑμεῖς πάντες ἔλῃσθε ἄρχοντας, ἐν οὐδεμιᾷ χώρᾳ ἔσονται, ὅστις δὲ ἂν ἐαυτὸν ἔλῃται στρατηγὸν καὶ ἐθέλῃ λέγειν 'Βάλλε βάλλε, ' οὗτος ἔσται ἱκανὸς καὶ ἄρχοντα κατακανεῖν καὶ ἰδιώτην ὃν ἂν ὑμῶν ἐθέλῃ ἄκριτον, ἣν ὧσιν οἱ πεισόμενοι αὐτῷ, ὥσπερ καὶ νῦν ἐγένετο.

«Οἷα δὲ ὑμῖν καὶ διαπεπράχασιν οἱ αὐθαίρετοι οὗτοι στρατηγοὶ σκέψασθε. Ζήλαρχος μὲν ὁ ἀγορανόμος εἰ μὲν ἀδικεῖ ὑμᾶς, οἴχεται ἀποπλέων οὐ δοὺς ὑμῖν δίκην· εἰ δὲ μὴ ἀδικεῖ, φεύγει ἐκ τοῦ στρατεύματος δείσας μὴ ἀδίκως ἄκριτος ἀποθάνῃ. οἱ δὲ καταλεύσαντες τοὺς πρέσβεις διεπράξαντο ὑμῖν μόνοις μὲν τῶν Ἑλλήνων εἰς Κερασοῦντα μὴ ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι, ἂν μὴ σὺν ἰσχύι ἀφικνησθε· τοὺς δὲ νεκροὺς οὓς πρόσθεν αὐτοὶ οἱ

οὔτε |unyoke;  
|destroy , ἰδία δὲ ὁ βουλόμενος ἄξει |army  
ἐφ' ὃ τι ἂν θέλῃ. κἄν τινες πρὸς ὑμᾶς ἴωσι πρέσβεις  
εἰρήνης δεόμενοι ἢ ἄλλου τινός, |kill, slay τούτους  
οἱ βουλόμενοι ποιήσουσιν ὑμᾶς τῶν λόγων μὴ ἀκούσαι  
τῶν πρὸς ὑμᾶς ἰόντων. ἔπειτα δὲ οὓς μὲν ἂν ὑμεῖς πάντες  
ἔλθῃτε ἄρχοντας, ἐν οὐδεμιᾷ χώρᾳ ἔσονται, ὅστις δὲ ἂν  
ἑαυτὸν ἔλθῃ στρατηγὸν καὶ ἐθέλῃ λέγειν 'Βάλλε βάλλε,  
' οὗτος ἔσται ἱκανὸς καὶ ἄρχοντα |kill καὶ |private; a layman  
ὃν ἂν ὑμῶν ἐθέλῃ |indiscriminate, ἵσιν οἱ πεισόμενοι αὐτῷ,  
|endless  
ὥσπερ καὶ νῦν ἐγένετο.

«Οἷα δὲ ὑμῖν καὶ |travel over, ac- οἱ |self-selected, οὔτοι  
|comply |self-incurred  
στρατηγοὶ |look, look at, watch...ρχος μὲν ὁ |market clerk εἰ  
μὲν ἀδικεῖ ὑμᾶς, |come, go |sail away οὐ δοὺς ὑμῖν δίκην·  
εἰ δὲ μὴ ἀδικεῖ, φεύγει ἐκ τοῦ |army δείσας μὴ  
|unfair; |indiscriminate, ἰάνῃ. οἱ δὲ |stone to death τοὺς  
|obstinate, |endless  
|bad πρέσβεις |travel over, ac- ὑμῖν μόνοις μὲν τῶν |Greek  
|comply  
εἰς Κερασοῦντα μὴ |safe, easy, μ, ἂν μὴ σὺν |strength; body of  
|steady, careful |troops  
ἀφικνήσθε· τοὺς δὲ νεκροὺς οὓς πρόσθεν αὐτοὶ οἱ

in your power to undertake war against whom you like, or to conclude peace. But in private any one who chooses will conduct the army on any quest which takes his fancy. And when ambassadors come to you to demand peace, or whatever it may be, officious people will put them to death and prevent your hearing the proposals which brought them to you. The next step will be that those whom you as a body may choose as generals will be of no account; but any one who likes to elect himself general, and will adopt the formula 'Shoot him! shoot him!' will be competent to cut down whomsoever he pleases untried, be it general or private soldier, if only he have sufficient followers, as was the case just now.

But just consider what these self-appointed generals have achieved for you. Zelarchus, the clerk of the market, may possibly have done you a wrong; if so, he has sailed off and is gone without paying you any penalty; or he may be guiltless, in which case we have driven him from the army in terror of perishing unjustly without a trial. While those who stoned the ambassadors have contrived so cleverly that we alone of all Hellenes cannot approach Cerasus safely without a strong force, and the corpses which the very men who slew them themselves invited us to bury, we

*vocabulary*

**ἀναιρέω** take up ~heresy  
**ἀνομία** lawlessness  
**ἀσεβής** profane  
**ἀσφαλής** safe, easy, steady, careful  
**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish  
 ~practice  
**ἐξαμαρτάνω** miss; err, do wrong  
**ἐπαινέω** concur, praise, advise  
**ἔπαινος** (noun) praise  
**ἐρυμνός** fortified, impregnable  
**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism  
**θάπτω** bury ~epitaph  
**θαρρέω** be of good heart  
**θαρσέω** be of good heart

**θάρσος** boldness, over-boldness  
**θύω** (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω  
**κατακαίνω** kill  
**κηρύκειον** scepter; tax, fee  
**κῆρυξ** -κος (m) henchman, functionary  
**παῦλα** rest, pause  
**σκηνέω** camp  
**σκηνόω** camp  
**σκοπάω** watch, observe  
**σκοπέω** behold, consider  
**ὑπερδέξιος** lying above, over  
**φίλιος** friendly  
**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch  
 ~phylactery

κατακανόντες ἐκέλευον θάπτειν, τούτους διεπράξαντο  
μηδὲ ζῆν κηρυκείῳ ἔτι ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι ἀνελέσθαι. τίς  
γὰρ ἐθελήσει κήρυξ ἶναι κήρυκας ἀπεκτονώς; ἀλλ' ἡμεῖς  
Κερασούντιων θάψαι αὐτοὺς ἐδεήθημεν.

«Εἰ μὲν οὖν ταῦτα καλῶς ἔχει, δοξάτω ὑμῖν, ἵνα ὡς  
τοιούτων ἐσομένων καὶ φυλακὴν ἰδίᾳ ποιήσῃ τις καὶ τὰ  
ἐρυμνὰ ὑπερδέξια πειρᾶται ἔχων σκηνοῦν. εἰ μέντοι ὑμῖν  
δοκεῖ θηρίων ἀλλὰ μὴ ἀνθρώπων εἶναι τὰ τοιαῦτα ἔργα,  
σκοπεῖτε παῦλάν τινα αὐτῶν· εἰ δὲ μή, πρὸς Διὸς πῶς ἢ  
θεοῖς θύσομεν ἡδέως ποιοῦντες ἔργα ἀσεβῆ, ἢ πολεμίοις  
πῶς μαχοῦμεθα, ἢν ἀλλήλους κατακαίνωμεν; πόλις δὲ  
φιλία τίς ἡμᾶς δέξεται, ἥτις ἂν ὁρᾷ τοσαύτην ἀνομίαν  
ἐν ἡμῖν; ἀγορὰν δὲ τίς ἄξει θαρρῶν, ἢν περὶ τὰ μέγιστα  
τοιαῦτα ἐξαμαρτάνοντες φαινόμεθα; οὐ δὲ δὴ πάντων  
οἰόμεθα τεύξεσθαι ἐπαίνου, τίς ἂν ἡμᾶς τοιούτους ὄντας  
ἐπαιnéσειεν; ἡμεῖς μὲν γὰρ οἶδ' ὅτι πονηροὺς ἂν φαίμεν  
εἶναι τοὺς τὰ τοιαῦτα ποιοῦντας.»

Ἐκ τούτου ἀνιστάμενοι πάντες ἔλεγον τοὺς μὲν τούτων



|kill ἐκέλευον |bury , τούτους |travel over, ac-  
|comply

μηδὲ ξύν |scepter; tax, fee |safe, easy, steady|take up . τίς  
|careful

γὰρ ἐθελήσει |henchman, ... |henchman, ...τεκτονός; ἀλλ' ἡμεῖς  
|functionary |functionary

Κερασούντιων |bury αὐτοὺς ἐδεήθημεν.

«Εἰ μὲν οὖν ταῦτα καλῶς ἔχει, δοξάτω ὑμῖν, ἵνα ὡς

τοιούτων ἐσομένων καὶ |guard, ἰδίᾳ ποιήσῃ τις καὶ τὰ  
|prison,  
|watch

|fortified |lying πειράται ἔχων σκηνοῦν. εἰ μέντοι ὑμῖν  
|above,  
|over  
δοκεῖ θηρίων ἀλλὰ μὴ ἀνθρώπων εἶναι τὰ τοιαῦτα ἔργα,

σκοπεῖτε |rest, τινα αὐτῶν· εἰ δὲ μή, πρὸς Διὸς πῶς ἢ  
|pause

θεοῖς |rush; sac-|sweet ποιῶντες ἔργα |profane ἢ πολεμίοις  
|rifice

πῶς μαχούμεθα, ἣν ἀλλήλους |kill , πόλις δὲ

|friendly. ἰς ἡμᾶς δέξεται, ἥτις ἂν ὁρᾷ τοσαύτην |lawlessness

ἐν ἡμῖν; ἀγορὰν δὲ τίς ἄξει θαρρῶν, ἣν περὶ τὰ μέγιστα

τοιαῦτα |miss; err, do wrong ῥαινώμεθα; οὐ δὲ δὴ πάντων

οἰόμεθα τεύξεσθαι |(noun) praise. ἂν ἡμᾶς τοιούτους ὄντας

|concur , ἡμεῖς μὲν γὰρ οἶδ' ὅτι πονηροὺς ἂν φαίμεν

εἶναι τοὺς τὰ τοιαῦτα ποιῶντας.»

Ἐκ τούτου ἀνιστάμενοι πάντες ἔλεγον τοὺς μὲν τούτων

cannot now pick up with safety even under a flag of truce. Who indeed would care to carry a flag of truce, or go as a herald with the blood of heralds upon his hands? All we could do was to implore the Cerasuntines to bury them.

«If then you approve of such doings, have a resolution passed to that effect, so that, with a prospect of like occurrences in the future, a man may privately set up a guard and do his best to fix his tent where he can find a strong position with a commanding site. If, however, these seem to you to be the deeds rather of wild beasts than of human beings, bethink you of some means by which to stay them; or else, in heaven's name, how shall we do sacrifice to the gods gladly, with impious deeds to answer for? or how shall we, who lay the knife to each other's throats, give battle to our enemies? What friendly city will receive us when they see rampant lawlessness in our midst? Who will have the courage to afford us a market, when we prove our worthlessness in these weightiest concerns? and what becomes of the praise we expect to win from the mouths of men? who will vouchsafe it to us, if this is our behaviour? Should we not ourselves bestow the worst of names on the perpetrators of like deeds?"

After this they rose, and, as one man, proposed that the ringleaders in

*vocabulary*

**ἀνομία** lawlessness  
**γαυλικός** bucket; merchant ship  
**δικαστής** -οῦ (m, 1) judge, juror  
**ἔξιμι** go forth; is possible ~ion  
**ἔξεστι** it is allowed/possible  
**ἐξίημι** send forth, allow forth ~jet  
**καθαίρω** clean  
**καθαρισμός** cleansing, purification  
**καταμελέω** pay attention to  
**κατηγορέω** accuse; indicate  
**κατηγορία** accusation  
**λοχαγός** (ἄ) captain  
**μάντις** -ος (m) seer ~mantis  
**μείωμα** fine  
**μηκέτι** no more  
**μνᾶ** mina  
**ὅπου** where  
**ὀφλισκάνω** lose; incur debt  
**παίω** hit

**παραινέω** recommend, exhort, warn  
**παρέρχομαι** pass, escape  
**πλήσσω** hit ~plectrum  
**ποιόω** make of a certain quality  
**ποῦ** where?  
**ρίγέω** (ι) shudder with fear; be  
 flustered ~frigid  
**ῥίγος** -ους (n, 3) miserable, cold  
 ~frigid  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**συμβουλευέω** give advice; (mid) consult  
 ~volunteer  
**ὕβριζω** insult, treat outrageously  
**ὕπέχω** promise; hold out one's hand;  
 submit to  
**φάσκω** declare, promise, think ~fame  
**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch  
 ~phylactery  
**χιών** χιόνος (f, 3) snow

ἄρξαντας δοῦναι δίκην, τοῦ δὲ λοιποῦ μηκέτι ἐξεῖναι ἀνομίας ἄρξαι· ἐὰν δέ τις ἄρξῃ, ἄγεσθαι αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ θανάτῳ· τοὺς δὲ στρατηγούς εἰς δίκας πάντας καταστήσαι· εἶναι δὲ δίκας καὶ εἴ τι ἄλλο τις ἠδίκητο ἐξ οὗ Κῦρος ἀπέθανε· δικαστὰς δὲ τοὺς λοχαγούς ἐποίησαντο. παραινοῦντος δὲ Ξενοφώντος καὶ τῶν μάντεων συμβουλευόντων ἔδοξε καθῆραι τὸ στράτευμα. καὶ ἐγένετο καθαρμός.

## 5.8

Ἦδοξε δὲ καὶ τοὺς στρατηγούς δίκην ὑποσχεῖν τοῦ παρεληλυθότος χρόνου. καὶ διδόντων Φιλήσιος μὲν ὠφλε καὶ Ξανθικλῆς τῆς φυλακῆς τῶν γαυλικῶν χρημάτων τὸ μείωμα εἴκοσι μνᾶς, Σοφαίνετος δέ, ὅτι αἰρεθεὶς[...] κατημέλει, δέκα μνᾶς. Ξενοφώντος δὲ κατηγορήσάν τινες φάσκοντες παῖεσθαι ὑπ' αὐτοῦ καὶ ὡς ὑβρίζοντος τὴν κατηγορίαν ἐποιοῦντο. καὶ ὁ Ξενοφὼν ἐκέλευσεν εἰπεῖν τὸν πρῶτον λέξαντα ποῦ καὶ ἐπλήγη. ὁ δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο· «Ὅπου καὶ ῥίγῃ ἀπωλλύμεθα καὶ χιῶν πλείστη ἦν.»

ἄρξαντας δοῦναι δίκην, τοῦ δὲ λοιποῦ ὅπου ἔξεῖναι  
 ἀνομίας ἄρξαι· ἐὰν δέ τις ἄρξη, ἄγεσθαι αὐτοὺς  
 ἐπὶ θανάτῳ· τοὺς δὲ στρατηγοὺς εἰς δίκας πάντας  
 καταστήσαι· εἶναι δὲ δίκας καὶ εἴ τι ἄλλο τις ἠδίκητο  
 ἐξ οὗ Κῦρος ἀπέθανε· |judge, δὲ τοὺς |captain  
 |juror  
 ἐποιήσαντο. |recommend, ex- δὲ Ξενοφῶντος καὶ τῶν  
 |hort, warn  
 |seer |give advice; (mid) ἔδοξε |clean τὸ |army  
 |consult  
 καὶ ἐγένετο |cleansing,  
 |purification

5.8

Ἔδοξε δὲ καὶ τοὺς στρατηγοὺς δίκην |promise τοῦ  
 |pass, escape χρόνου. καὶ διδόντων Φιλήσιος μὲν |lose;  
 καὶ Ξανθικλῆς τῆς |guard, τῶν |bucket; mer- |incur  
 |prison, |chant ship |debt  
 τὸ |fine εἴκοσι |mina, Σοφαίνετος δέ, ὅτι αἰρεθεῖς[...]  
 |pay attention to τό ... |mina Ξενοφῶντος δὲ |accuse; indicate τινες  
 |declare, |hit ὑπ' αὐτοῦ καὶ ὥς |insult τὴν  
 |promise,  
 |think  
 |accusation |make of a cer- καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐκέλευσεν εἰπεῖν  
 |tain quality  
 τὸν πρῶτον λέξαντα ποῦ καὶ |hit ὁ δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο·  
 «|where καὶ ῥίγει ἀπωλλύμεθα καὶ |snow πλείστη ἦν.»

these matters should be punished; and that for the future, to set an example of lawlessness should be forbidden. Every such ringleader was to be prosecuted on the capital charge; the generals were to bring all offenders to the bar of justice; prosecutions for all other misdemeanours committed since the death of Cyrus were to be instituted; and they ended by constituting the officers into a board of dicasts; and upon the strong representation of Xenophon, with the concurrence of the soothsayers, it was resolved to purify the army, and this purification was made.

### 5.8

It was further resolved that the generals themselves should undergo a judicial examination in reference to their conduct in past time. In course of investigation, Philesius and Xanthicles respectively were condemned to pay a sum of twenty minae, to meet a deficiency to that amount incurred during the guardianship of the cargoes of the merchantmen. Sophaenetus was fined ten minae for inadequate performance of his duty as one of the chief officers selected. Against Xenophon a charge was brought by certain people, who asserted that they had been beaten by him, and framed the indictment as one of personal outrage with violence. Xenophon got up and demanded that the first speaker should state «where and when it was he had received these blows.” The other, so challenged, answered, «When we were perishing of cold and there was a great depth of snow.” Xenophon said: «Upon

*vocabulary*

**αἰτέω** ask for ~etiology  
**ἀναγιγνώσκω** recognize, read, understand, persuade  
**ἀναγκάζω** force, compel  
**ἀπαγορεύω** forbid; fail, be worn out  
**ἀπαιτέω** demand to have returned  
**ἄρνημαι** get, win  
**διαδίδωμι** distribute, send out  
**διαρρίπτω** mess up something  
**διάρριψις** scattering  
**ἐγγίγνομαι** live in ~genus  
**ἐκγίγνομαι** be born; be by birth ~genus  
**ἐλεύθερος** not enslaved  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**ἐπέρομαι** ask as well; ask then  
**ἐπιλείπω** fail, not work ~eclipse  
**ἔρομαι** ask a question, ask about, go searching through  
**ἡμίονος** (f) mule ~hemisphere  
**κάμνω** toil, be tired, acquire by toil; be troubled; be sick

**κόπος** beating; toil, fatigue  
**μεθύω** be soaked, drunk ~mead  
**ναί** yea  
**ὁμολογέω** agree with/to  
**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless  
**ὄνομαι** blame ~name  
**ὄνος** (f) donkey ~onager  
**ὀπλιτεύω** (l) be hvy. infantry  
**ὀσφραίνομαι** catch scent of  
**παιδικός** childlike; a darling ~pediatrician  
**παίω** hit  
**πελτάζω** be lt. infantry ~pelt  
**πλήσσω** hit ~plectrum  
**πόνος** toil, suffering ~osteopenia  
**πότερος** which, whichever of two  
**σίτος** grain, bread, food ~parasite  
**σκεῦος** -εος (n, 3) thing, tool, vessel  
**σύσκηνος** roommate  
**ὕβριζω** insult, treat outrageously  
**ὔβρις** -εως (f) pride, insolence, outrage  
**ὑβριστος** wanton, outrageous  
**χειμών** -ος (m, 3) winter, storm

Ὁ δὲ εἶπεν· «Ἀλλὰ μὴν χειμῶνός γε ὄντος οἴου λέγεις, σίτου δὲ ἐπιλελοιπότος, οἴνου δὲ μὴδ' ὀσφραίνεσθαι παρόν, ὑπὸ δὲ πόνων πολλῶν ἀπαγορευόντων, πολεμίων δὲ ἐπομένων, εἰ ἐν τοιούτῳ καιρῷ ὕβριζον, ὁμολογῶ καὶ τῶν ὄνων ὑβριστότερος εἶναι, οἷς φασιν ὑπὸ τῆς ὕβρεως κόπον οὐκ ἐγγίγνεσθαι. ὅμως δὲ καὶ λέξον,» ἔφη, «ἐκ τίνος ἐπλήγης. πότερον ἦτουν τί σε καὶ ἐπεὶ μοι οὐκ ἐδίδους ἔπαιον; ἀλλ' ἀπήτουν; ἀλλὰ περὶ παιδικῶν μαχόμενος; ἀλλὰ μεθύων ἐπαρήνησα;» ἐπεὶ δὲ τούτων οὐδὲν ἔφησεν, ἐπήρετο αὐτὸν εἰ ὀπλιτεύοι. οὐκ ἔφη· πάλιν εἰ πελτάζοι. οὐδὲ τοῦτ' ἔφη, ἀλλ' ἡμίονον ἐλαύνειν ταχθεὶς ὑπὸ τῶν συσκήνων ἐλεύθερος ὢν. ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἀναγινώσκει αὐτὸν καὶ ἤρετο· «Ἡ σὺ εἰ ὁ τὸν κάμνοντα ἀγαγών;»

«Ναὶ μὰ Δεῦ,» ἔφη· «σὺ γὰρ ἠνάγκαζες· τὰ δὲ τῶν ἐμῶν συσκήνων σκευὴ διέρριψας.»

«Ἀλλ' ἡ μὲν διάρριψις,» ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, «τοιαύτη τις ἐγένετο. διέδωκα ἄλλοις ἄγειν καὶ ἐκέλευσα πρὸς ἐμέ



Ὁ δὲ εἶπεν· «Ἄλλὰ μὴν |winter, γε ὄντος οὔου λέγεις,  
 |storm  
 σίτου δὲ |fail, not work , οἴνου δὲ μῆδ' |catch scent of  
 παρόν, ὑπὸ δὲ |toil, suffering ὧν |forbid; fail, be, πολεμίων  
 |worn out  
 δὲ ἐπομένων, εἰ ἐν τοιούτῳ καιρῷ |insult , |agree with/to  
 καὶ τῶν ὄνων |wanton, εἶναι, οἷς φασιν ὑπὸ τῆς  
 |outrageous  
 |hubris |beating; ... ἐγγίγνεσθαι. ὅμως δὲ καὶ λέξον,» ἔφη,  
 |toil, fatigue  
 «ἐκ τίνος |hit . |which, ἵτουν τί σε καὶ ἐπεὶ μοι  
 |whichever  
 οὐκ ἐδίδους |hit , ἀλλ' |demand , τὸ λὰ περὶ παιδικῶν  
 |have returned  
 μαχόμενος; ἀλλὰ |be soaked, drunk ῖσα;» ἐπεὶ δὲ τούτων  
 οὐδὲν ἔφησεν, |ask as well; ὑτόν εἰ |be hvy. infantry ῖκ ἔφη·  
 |ask then  
 πάλιν εἰ |be lt. infantry ῖδὲ τοῦτ' ἔφη, ἀλλ' |mule ἐλαύνειν  
 ταχθεῖς ὑπὸ τῶν |roommate |not enslaved ῖν. |there, here ῖ ἡ  
 |read αὐτόν καὶ ἤρετο· «Ἥ σὺ εἰ ὁ τὸν |toil, acquire,  
 |be tired  
 ἀγαγών;»

«Ναὶ μὰ Δί,» ἔφη· «σὺ γὰρ |force, τὰ δὲ τῶν ἐμῶν  
 |compel  
 |roommate |thing, |mess up something  
 |tool,  
 |vessel  
 «Ἄλλ' ἡ μὲν |scattering ,» ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, «τοιαύτη τις  
 ἐγένετο. |distribute, ῖνδὲ ῖρειν καὶ ἐκέλευσα πρὸς ἐμὲ

my word, with weather such as you describe, when our provisions had run out, when the wine could not even be smelt, when numbers were dropping down dead beat, so acute was the suffering, with the enemy close on our heels; certainly, if at such a season as that I was guilty of outrage, I plead guilty to being a more outrageous brute than the ass, which is too wanton, they say, to feel fatigue. Still, I wish you would tell us," said he, «what led to my striking you. Did I ask you for something and, on your refusing it to me, did I proceed to beat you? Was it a debt, for which I demanded payment? or a quarrel about some boy or other? Was I the worse for liquor, and behaving like a drunkard?" When the man met each of these questions with a negative, he questioned him further: «Are you a heavy infantry soldier?" «No," said he. «A peltast, then?" «No, nor yet a peltast"; but he had been ordered by his messmates to drive a mule, although he was a free man. Then at last he recognised him, and inquired: «Are you the fellow who carried home the sick man?" «Yes, I am," said he, «thanks to your driving; and you made havoc of my messmates' kit." «Havoc!" said Xenophon: «Nay, I distributed it; some to one man, some to another to carry, and bade them bring the things safely to me; and when I

*vocabulary*

**ἀναγκάζω** force, compel  
**ἀνακράζω** yell, scream  
**ἀπάγω** lead away, back ~demagogue  
**ἀποδείκνυμι** (ō) show, point out;  
 appoint; (mid) declare  
**ἀπολαμβάνω** receive, recover, take  
 aside, cut off ~epilepsy  
**βόθρος** pit, grotto, trench  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**ἐπαινέω** concur, praise, advise  
**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand  
 ~station  
**ἐφέπω** drive, meet, follow ~sequel  
**ἐφίστημι** set; (mp) come/be near,  
 direct, stop ~station  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch,  
 overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy  
**καταλείπω** leave behind, abandon

~eclipse  
**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon  
**κατορύσσω** bury  
**μηκέτι** no more  
**ὀπισθοφύλαξ** rear guard ~phylactery  
**ὅπόσος** as many as, how many, how  
 great  
**ὀρύσσω** dig  
**οὐκοῦν** not so?; and so  
**παίζω** play ~pediatrician  
**παίω** hit  
**προπέμπω** send, send ahead ~pomp  
**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near; add  
 ~ion  
**σχέλος** -εος (n, 3) leg ~scoliosis  
**συγκάμπτω** bend  
**σύμφημι** assent, concede  
**σῶς** safe, alive

ἀπαγαγεῖν, καὶ ἀπολαβὼν ἅπαντα σῶα ἀπέδωκά σοι,  
ἐπεὶ καὶ σὺ ἐμοὶ ἀπέδειξας τὸν ἄνδρα.»

«Οἶον δὲ τὸ πρᾶγμα ἐγένετο ἀκούσατε,» ἔφη· «καὶ γὰρ ἄξιον. ἀνὴρ κατελείπετο διὰ τὸ μηκέτι δύνασθαι πορεύεσθαι. καὶ ἐγὼ τὸν μὲν ἄνδρα τοσοῦτον ἐγίγνωσκον ὅτι εἰς ἡμῶν εἴη· ἡνάγκασα δὲ σὲ τοῦτον ἄγειν, ὥς μὴ ἀπόλοιτο· καὶ γάρ, ὥς ἐγὼ οἶμαι, πολέμοι ἡμῖν ἐφείποντο.» συνέφη τοῦτο ὁ ἄνθρωπος. «Οὐκοῦν,» ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, «ἐπεὶ προύπεμψά σε, καταλαμβάνω αὐτὸς σὺν τοῖς ὀπισθοφύλαξι προσιῶν βόθρον ὀρύττοντα ὥς κατορύζοντα τὸν ἄνθρωπον, καὶ ἐπιστὰς ἐπήνουν σε. ἐπεὶ δὲ παρεστηκότων ἡμῶν συνέκαμψε τὸ σκέλος ἀνὴρ, ἀνέκραγον οἱ παρόντες ὅτι ζῇ ἀνὴρ, σὺ δ' εἶπας· “Ὀπόσα γε βούλεται· ὥς ἔγωγε αὐτὸν οὐκ ἄξω. ” ἐνταῦθα ἔπαισά σε· ἀληθῆ λέγεις· ἔδοξας γάρ μοι εἰδότι εὐοκέναι ὅτι ἔζη.»

«Τί οὖν;» ἔφη, «ἤττόν τι ἀπέθανεν,  
ἐπεὶ ἐγὼ σοι ἀπέδειξα αὐτόν;»

|lead away, back |receive, recover, ντα σῶα ἀπέδωκά σοι,  
|take aside, cut off

ἐπεὶ καὶ σὺ ἐμοὶ |show, point out; ἀρ-<sup>α</sup>.»  
|point; (mid) declare

«Οἶον δὲ τὸ πρᾶγμα ἐγένετο ἀκούσατε,» ἔφη· «καὶ

γὰρ ἄξιον. ἀνὴρ κατελείπετο διὰ τὸ |no more δύνασθαι

πορεύεσθαι. καὶ ἐγὼ τὸν μὲν ἄνδρα τοσοῦτον ἐγίγνωσκον

ὅτι εἰς ἡμῶν εἴη· |force, δὲ σὲ τοῦτον ἄγειν, ὥς  
|compel

μὴ ἀπόλοιτο· καὶ γάρ, ὥς ἐγὼ οἶμαι, πολέμιοι ἡμῖν

|ἐφάπτω?: drive, |assent, τοῦτο ὁ ἄνθρωπος. «|not so?; and so,  
|meet, follow; or |concede

ἐφάπτω?: drive, |send, send ahead, |seize, understand, catch, overtake;  
|meet, follow, «ἐπεὶ |send, send ahead, |seize, understand, catch, overtake;  
(mp) happen

σὺν τοῖς |rear guard |approach |pit, |dig ὥς

|bury τὸν ἄνθρωπον, καὶ ἐπιστὰς |concur σε.  
|grotto,  
|trench

ἐπεὶ δὲ παρεστηκότων ἡμῶν |bend τὸ |leg ἀνὴρ,

|yell, scream οἱ παρόντες ὅτι ζῇ ἀνὴρ, σὺ δ' εἶπας· |as/how many/great

γε βούλεται· ὥς ἐγώ γε αὐτὸν οὐκ ἄξω. ᾽ |there, here-<sup>ται</sup>σά

σε· ἀληθῆ λέγεις· ἔδοξας γάρ μοι εἰδότει εἰκέναι ὅτι ἔζη.»

«Τί οὖν;» ἔφη, «ἡττόν τι ἀπέθανεν,

ἐπεὶ ἐγὼ σοι |show, point out; ἀ-<sup>ι</sup>τόν;»  
|point; (mid) declare

got them back I delivered them all safely to you, and you, on your side, had rendered an account to me of the man.

«Let me tell you,” he continued, turning to the court, «what the circumstances were; it is worth hearing.

«A Man was left behind from inability to proceed farther; I recognised the poor fellow sufficiently to see that he was one of ours, and I forced you, sir, to carry him to save his life. For if I am not much mistaken, the enemy were close at our heels?” The fellow assented to this. «Well then,” said Xenophon, «after I had sent you forward, I overtook you again, as I came up with the rearguard; you were digging a trench with intent to bury the man; I pulled up and said something in commendation; as we stood by the poor fellow twitched his leg, and the bystanders all cried out, ‘Why, the man’s alive!’ Your remark was: ‘Alive or not as he likes, I am not going to carry him’ Then I struck you. Yes! you are right, for it looked very much as if you knew him to be alive.”

«Well,” said he, «was he any the less dead when I reported him to you?”

«Nay,” retorted Xenophon, «by the same token we

*vocabulary*

**ἀνακράζω** yell, scream  
**ἀρπάζω** carry off, seize ~harpoon  
**ἀταξία** disorder  
**βιάζω** use force on, violate  
**βλακεύω** (ᾱ) be lazy  
**ἐκτείνω** stretch out ~tend  
**ἰσχυρός** (υ) strong, forceful, violent  
**καθέζομαι** act: set, seat; pass: sit  
 down, sit up  
**καταμανθάνω** examine, observe  
**κατορύσσω** bury  
**μαλακίζομαι** weaken, feminize  
**μόλις** with difficulty, barely  
**ὁμολογέω** agree with/to

**ὅπου** where

**παίζω** play ~pediatrician  
**παίω** hit  
**πεῖρα** an attempt  
**πείρω** pierce, run through ~pierce  
**πλεονεκτέω** be greedy, take advantage  
**πλήσσω** hit ~plectrum  
**πότε** when?  
**προθέω** run from, lead to the fray  
**προΐημι** send forth, abandon  
**σκέλος** -εος (n, 3) leg ~scoliosis  
**συσκευάζω** pack up  
**συχνός** long; many; extensive  
**χειμών** -ος (m, 3) winter, storm

«Καὶ γὰρ ἡμεῖς,» ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, «πάντες ἀποθανούμεθα· τούτου οὖν ἕνεκα ζώντας ἡμᾶς δεῖ κατορυχθῆναι;» Τούτον μὲν ἀνέκραγον ὡς ὀλίγας παῖσειν.

Ἄλλους δ' ἐκέλευε λέγειν διὰ τί ἕκαστος ἐπλήγη. ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐκ ἀνίσταντο, αὐτὸς ἔλεγεν·

«Ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες, ὁμολογῶ παῖσαι δὴ ἄνδρας ἕνεκεν ἀταξίας ὅσοις σώζεσθαι μὲν ἥρκει δι' ὑμῶν ἐν τάξει τε ἰόντων καὶ μαχομένων ὅπου δέοι, αὐτοὶ δὲ λιπόντες τὰς τάξεις προθέοντες ἀρπάζειν ἤθελον καὶ ὑμῶν πλεονεκτεῖν. εἰ δὲ τοῦτο πάντες ἐποιούμεν, ἅπαντες ἂν ἀπωλόμεθα. ἤδη δὲ καὶ μαλακιζόμενόν τινα καὶ οὐκ ἐθέλοντα ἀνίστασθαι ἀλλὰ προϊέμενον αὐτὸν τοῖς πολεμίοις καὶ ἔπαισα καὶ ἐβιασάμην πορεύεσθαι. ἐν γὰρ τῷ ἰσχυρῷ χειμῶνι καὶ αὐτὸς ποτε ἀναμένων τινὰς συσκευαζομένους καθεζόμενος συχνὸν χρόνον κατέμαθον ἀναστὰς μόλις καὶ τὰ σκέλη ἐκτείνας. ἐν ἐμαυτῷ οὖν πείραν λαβὼν ἐκ τούτου καὶ ἄλλον, ὅποτε ἴδοιμι καθήμενον καὶ βλακεύοντα,



«Καὶ γὰρ ἡμεῖς,» ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, «πάντες  
ἀποθανούμεθα· τούτου οὖν ἕνεκα ζῶντας ἡμᾶς δεῖ  
|bury ,» Τοῦτον μὲν |yell, scream ὥς ὀλίγας  
παίσειεν.

Ἄλλους δ' ἐκέλευε λέγειν διὰ τί ἕκαστος |hit ἐπεὶ δὲ  
οὐκ ἀνίσταντο, αὐτὸς ἔλεγεν·

«Ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες, |agree with/to ἴσαι δὴ ἄνδρας ἕνεκεν  
ἀταξίας ὅσοις σῶζεσθαι μὲν ἥρκει δι' ὑμῶν ἐν τάξει τε  
ἰόντων καὶ μαχομένων |where ἴεοι, αὐτοὶ δὲ λιπόντες τὰς  
τάξεις |run from, lead|carry off, seîze ἴον καὶ ὑμῶν |be greedy, take  
|to the fray |advantage  
εἰ δὲ τοῦτο πάντες ἐποιοῦμεν, ἅπαντες ἂν ἀπωλόμεθα.

ἤδη δὲ καὶ |weaken, feminize τινα καὶ οὐκ ἐθέλοντα  
ἀνίστασθαι ἀλλὰ |send forth, abandon τοῖς πολεμίοις καὶ

ἔπαισα καὶ |βιάζω?: use force on; or ῥαι. ἐν γὰρ τῷ |strong, forceful, vio-  
|βιάζω?: use force on |lent

|winter, καὶ αὐτός ποτε ἀναμένων τινὰς |pack up  
|storm

|act: set, seat;|long; many; ῥον |examine, ἀναστὰς |with difficulty,  
|pass: sit down,|extensive |observe |barely  
|sit up  
|τα |leg |stretch out ἐν ἐμαυτῷ οὖν πείραν λαβὼν ἐκ τούτου

καὶ ἄλλον, ὅποτε ἴδοιμι καθήμενον καὶ |be lazy

shall all one day be dead, but that is no reason why meantime we should all be buried alive?" Then there was a general shout: «If Xenophon had given the fellow a few more blows, it might have been better.»

The others were now called upon to state the grounds on which they had been beaten in each case; but when they refused to get up, he proceeded to state them himself.

«I Confess, sirs, to having struck certain men for failure in discipline. These were men who were quite content to owe their safety to us. Whilst the rest of the world marched on in rank and did whatever fighting had to be done, they preferred to leave the ranks, and rush forward to loot and enrich themselves at our expense. Now, if this conduct were to be the rule, general ruin would be the result. I do not deny that I have given blows to this man or the other who played the poltroon and refused to get up, helplessly abandoning himself to the enemy; and so I forced them to march on. For once in the severe wintry weather I myself happened to sit down for a long time, whilst waiting for a party who were getting their kit together, and I discovered how difficult it was to get up again and stretch one's legs. After this personal experience, whenever I saw any one else seated in slack and lazy

*vocabulary*

**ἀνδρίζομαι** be manly  
**ἄπλῶς** single; simple ~haploid  
**ἀπολείπω** leave behind, fail ~eclipse  
**ἀπολιμπάνω** leave behind, fail  
**ἀποπήγνυμι** (ῥ) freeze, congeal  
**ἀποσήπομαι** rot off  
**γονεύς** -ος (m) parent  
**δάκτυλος** finger, toe  
**διδάσκαλος** teacher  
**ἐνθυμέομαι** (ῥ) take to heart  
**ἔξειμι** go forth; is possible ~ion  
**ἡσυχία** peace and quiet  
**θαρρέω** be of good heart  
**θαρσέω** be of good heart  
**θερμασία** warmth, heat  
**θρασύς** brave, strong  
**ἰατρός** (ᾱ) physician  
**καίω** burn ~caustic  
**κινέω** (i) set in motion, move, remove

~kinetic

**κολάζω** punish  
**κωλύω** (ῥ) hinder, prevent  
**λόγχη** spear point; lot  
**ὀπίσθεν** behind, hereafter  
**παίζω** play ~pediatrician  
**παίω** hit  
**πύξ** with the fist ~pugilist  
**ῥαστώνη** mild temperament; ease, a break  
**τέμνω** cut, sacrifice, solemnize  
 ~tonsure  
**ὔβρις** -εως (f) pride, insolence, outrage  
**ὕγρότης** -τος (f, 3) moisture, suppleness  
**ὕπέχω** promise; hold out one's hand; submit to  
**ὑπουργός** serving, serviceable  
**ὕποχέω** spread under

ἤλαννον· τὸ γὰρ κινεῖσθαι καὶ ἀνδρίζεσθαι παρείχε  
 θερμασίαν τινὰ καὶ ὑγρότητα, τὸ δὲ καθῆσθαι καὶ ἡσυχίαν  
 ἔχειν ἐώρων ὑπουργὸν ὃν τῷ τε ἀποπήγνυσθαι τὸ αἷμα  
 καὶ τῷ ἀποσήπessθαι τοὺς τῶν ποδῶν δακτύλους, ἅπερ  
 πολλοὺς καὶ ὑμεῖς ἴστε παθόντας.

«Ἄλλον δέ γε ἴσως ἀπολειπόμενόν που διὰ ῥαστώνην  
 καὶ κωλύοντα καὶ ὑμᾶς τοὺς πρόσθεν καὶ ἡμᾶς τοὺς  
 ὀπισθεν πορεύεσθαι ἔπαισα πύξ, ὅπως μὴ λόγχῃ ὑπὸ  
 τῶν πολεμίων παίοιτο. καὶ γὰρ οὖν νῦν ἔξεστιν αὐτοῖς  
 σωθεῖσιν, εἴ τι ὑπ' ἐμοῦ ἔπαθον παρὰ τὸ δίκαιον, δίκην  
 λαβεῖν. εἰ δ' ἐπὶ τοῖς πολεμίοις ἐγένοντο, τί μέγα ἂν  
 οὕτως ἔπαθον ὅτου δίκην ἂν ἡξίουں λαμβάνειν; ἀπλοῦς  
 μοι, ἔφη, ὁ λόγος· εἰ μὲν ἐπ' ἀγαθῷ ἐκόλασά τινα, ἀξιῶ  
 ὑπέχειν δίκην οἷαν καὶ γονεῖς υἱοῖς καὶ διδάσκαλοι παισί·  
 καὶ γὰρ οἱ ἱατροὶ καίουσι καὶ τέμνουσιν ἐπ' ἀγαθῷ· εἰ δὲ  
 ὕβρει νομίζετέ με ταῦτα πράττειν, ἐνθυμήθητε ὅτι νῦν ἐγὼ  
 θαρρῶ σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς μᾶλλον ἢ τότε καὶ θρασύτερός εἰμι  
 νῦν ἢ τότε καὶ οἶνον πλείω πίνω, ἀλλ'

ἤλαυνον· τὸ γὰρ |move, remove καὶ |be manly παρεῖχε  
 |warmth, heat. νὰ καὶ |moisture, suppleness, τὸ δὲ καθῆσθαι καὶ |peace and quiet  
 ἔχειν ἑώρων |serving, serviceable ὃν τῷ τε |freeze, congeal τὸ αἶμα  
 καὶ τῷ |rot off τοὺς τῶν ποδῶν |finger, toe, ἅπερ  
 πολλοὺς καὶ ὑμεῖς ἴστε παθόντας.

«Ἄλλον δέ γε ἴσως ἀπολειπόμενόν που διὰ |mild temperament;  
 |ease, a break καὶ |hinder, prevent καὶ ὑμᾶς τοὺς πρόσθεν καὶ ἡμᾶς τοὺς  
 |behind, hereafter πορεύεσθαι ἔπαισα |with the fist, μὴ |spear point;  
 τῶν πολεμίων |hit καὶ γὰρ οὖν νῦν ἔξεστιν |lot αὐτοῖς  
 σωθεῖσιν, εἴ τι ὑπ' ἐμοῦ ἔπαθον παρὰ τὸ δίκαιον, δίκην  
 λαβεῖν. εἰ δ' ἐπὶ τοῖς πολεμίοις ἐγένοντο, τί μέγα ἂν  
 οὕτως ἔπαθον ὅτου δίκην ἂν ἠξίουں λαμβάνειν; ἀπλοῦς  
 μοι, ἔφη, ὁ λόγος· εἰ μὲν ἐπ' ἀγαθῷ |punish τινα, ἀξιῶ  
 ὑπέχειν δίκην οἷαν καὶ |parent υἱοῖς καὶ |teacher παισί·  
 καὶ γὰρ οἱ |physician |burn καὶ |cut, sacrifice, solemnize, π' ἀγαθῷ· εἰ δὲ  
 |hubris ὁμίζετε με ταῦτα πράττειν, |take to heart ὅτι νῦν ἐγὼ  
 θαρρῶ σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς μᾶλλον ἢ τότε καὶ |brave, strong εἰμι  
 νῦν ἢ τότε καὶ οἶνον πλείω πίνω, ἀλλ'

mood, I tried to spur him on. The mere movement and effort to play the man caused warmth and moisture, whereas it was plain that sitting down and keeping quiet helped the blood to freeze and the toes to mortify, calamities which really befell several of the men, as you yourselves are aware.

«I Can imagine a third case, that of some straggler stopping behind, merely to rest for rest's sake, and hindering you in front and us behind alike from pressing on the march. If he got a blow with the fist from me it saved him a thrust with the lance from the enemy. In fact, the opportunity they enjoy to-day of taking vengeance on me for any treatment which I put upon them wrongfully, is derived from their salvation then; whereas, if they had fallen into the enemy's hands, let them ask themselves for what outrage, however great, they could expect to get satisfaction now. My defence," he continued, «is simple: if I chastised any one for his own good, I claim to suffer the same penalties as parents pay their children or masters their boys. Does not the surgeon also cauterise and cut us for our good? But if you really believe that these acts are the outcome of wanton insolence, I beg you to observe that although to-day, thank God! I am heartier than formerly, I wear a bolder front now than then, and I drink more wine, yet I never strike

*vocabulary*

ἀποδύω strip off, dump  
 ἀσπίς -δος (f) shield ~spit  
 ἀτακτέω be undisciplined  
 γοῦν at least then  
 διαμάχομαι fight hard, contend  
 ἔξιμι go forth; is possible ~ion  
 ἐξουσία authority, office  
 ἐπικουρέω fight in another's cause  
 ~cereal  
 ἐπιφέρω bestow, impute ~bear  
 εὐδία fair weather  
 κάμνω toil, be tired, acquire by toil; be  
 troubled; be sick  
 καταδικάζω give judgment  
 κυβερνήτης -ου (m, 1) steersman,  
 governor ~govern  
 νεῦμα -τος (n, 3) nod, command

ξίφος -εος (n, 3) sword  
 ὅμως anyway, nevertheless  
 παίω hit  
 πρύμνα stern  
 πρῶρεύς -ος (m) bow officer  
 πύκτης -οῦς (m) boxer  
 σκοπᾶω watch, observe  
 σκοπέω behold, consider  
 συνεπιτρίβω (ι) destroy utterly  
 σωφρονέω be sane, moderate  
 τοιγάρ therefore  
 ὑβρίζω insult, treat outrageously  
 ὕβριστος wanton, outrageous  
 χαλεπαίνω be violent, rage  
 χειμών -ος (m, 3) winter, storm  
 ψῆφος (f) pebble, vote, decree, sentence

ὅμως οὐδένα παίω· ἐν εὐδία γὰρ ὁρῶ ὑμᾶς. ὅταν δὲ χειμῶν ἦ καὶ θάλαττα μεγάλη ἐπιφέρηται, οὐχ ὁρᾶτε ὅτι καὶ νεύματος μόνον ἔνεκα χαλεπαίνει μὲν πρωρεὺς τοῖς ἐν πρήρᾳ, χαλεπαίνει δὲ κυβερνήτης τοῖς ἐν πρύμνῃ; ἱκανὰ γὰρ ἐν τῷ τοιούτῳ καὶ μικρὰ ἀμαρτηθέντα πάντα συνεπιτρίψαι. ὅτι δὲ δικαίως ἔπαιον αὐτοὺς καὶ ὑμεῖς κατεδικάσατε· ἔχοντες ξίφη, οὐ ψήφους, παρέστατε, καὶ ἐξῆν ὑμῖν ἐπικουρεῖν αὐτοῖς, εἰ ἐβούλεσθε· ἀλλὰ μὰ Δία οὔτε τούτοις ἐπεκουρεῖτε οὔτε σὺν ἐμοὶ τὸν ἀτακτοῦντα ἐπαίετε. τοιγαροῦν ἐξουσίαν ἐποιήσατε τοῖς κακοῖς αὐτῶν ὑβρίζειν ἑῶντες αὐτούς. οἶμαι γάρ, εἰ ἐθέλετε σκοπεῖν, τοὺς αὐτοὺς εὐρήσετε καὶ τότε κακίστους καὶ νῦν ὑβριστοτάτους.

«Βοῖσκος γοῦν ὁ πύκτης ὁ Θετταλὸς τότε μὲν διεμάχετο ὥς κάμνων ἀσπίδα μὴ φέρειν, νῦν δέ, ὥς ἀκούω, Κοτυωριτῶν πολλοὺς ἤδη ἀποδέδυκεν. ἦν οὖν σωφρονῆτε, τοῦτον τᾶναντία ποιήσετε ἢ τοὺς κύνας ποιοῦσι· τοὺς μὲν γὰρ κύνας τοὺς χαλεποὺς τὰς μὲν



|anyway, <sup>never</sup>-|hit *ἐν εὐδία γὰρ ὀρώ ὑμᾶς. ὅταν δὲ*  
|theless

|winter, <sup>η</sup> καὶ θάλαττα μεγάλη |bestow, *, οὐχ ὀράτε*  
|storm |impute

ὅτι καὶ |nod, command. *οὐν ἔνεκα* |be violent, rage <sup>ο</sup> |bow officer

*τοῖς ἐν πρήρᾳ,* |be violent, rage <sup>ο</sup> |steersman, *τοῖς ἐν* |stern *,*  
|governor

*ἱκανὰ γὰρ ἐν τῷ τοιούτῳ καὶ μικρὰ ἀμαρτηθέντα πάντα*

|destroy utterly *. ὅτι δὲ δικαίως* |hit *αὐτοὺς καὶ ὑμεῖς*

|give judgment *ἔχοντες* |sword *οὐ* |pebble, vote, *δεΐντατε, καὶ*  
|cree, sentence

*ἐξῆν ὑμῖν* |fight in an- *ὑποῖς, εἰ ἐβούλεσθε· ἀλλὰ μὰ Δία*  
|other's cause

*οὔτε τούτοις ἐπεκουρεῖτε οὔτε σὺν ἐμοὶ τὸν* |be undisciplined

|hit *. τοιγαροῦν* |authority, *ἐποιήσατε τοῖς κακοῖς*  
|office

*αὐτῶν* |insult *ἑῶντες αὐτούς. οἶμαι γάρ, εἰ ἐθέλετε*

*σκοπεῖν, τοὺς αὐτοὺς εὐρήσετε καὶ τότε κακίστους καὶ νῦν*

|wanton,  
|outrageous

«Βοῖσκος |at least|boxer *ὁ Θετταλὸς τότε μὲν* |fight hard, contend  
|then

*ὥς* |toil, *ac-*|shield *μὴ φέρειν, νῦν δέ, ὥς ἀκούω,*  
|quire, *be*

*Κοτυωριτῶν πολλοὺς ἤδη* |strip off, dump *ἦν οὖν*

|be sane, moderate *ἵτον τάναντία ποιήσετε ἢ τοὺς κύνας*

*ποιούσι· τοὺς μὲν γὰρ κύνας τοὺς χαλεποὺς τὰς μὲν*

a soul; no, for I see that you have reached smooth water. When storm arises, and a great sea strikes the vessel amidships, a mere shake of the head will make the look-out man furious with the crew in the forecastle, or the helmsman with the men in the stern sheets, for at such a crisis even a slight slip may ruin everything. But I appeal to your own verdict, already recorded, in proof that I was justified in striking these men. You stood by, sirs, with swords, not voting tablets, in your hands, and it was in your power to aid the fellows if you liked; but, to speak the honest truth, you neither aided them nor did you join me in striking the disorderly. In other words, you enabled any evilly-disposed person among them to give rein to his wantonness by your passivity. For if you will be at pains to investigate, you will find that those who were then most cowardly are the ringleaders to-day in brutality and outrage.

”There is Boiscus the boxer, a Thessalian, what a battle he fought then to escape carrying his shield! so tired was he, and to-day I am told he has stripped several citizens of Cotyora of the clothes on their backs. If then you are wise, you will treat this personage in a way the contrary to that in which men treat dogs. A savage dog is tied up on the

*vocabulary*

**ἀπερύχω** (ὑ) keep off ~serve

**ἀπεχθάνομαι** become hated ~external

**ἀπέχθομαι** be hated, incur hatred  
~external

**ἀπορέω** be confused, distressed

**ἀσθενέω** be weak, sick

**δάω** learn ~didactic

**δεύω** moisten; lack

**ἐπαινέω** concur, praise, advise

**ἐπικουρέω** fight in another's cause  
~cereal

**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism

**περιγίγνομαι** surpass; survive; attain  
~genus

**σιωπάω** be silent

**σωφρονέω** be sane, moderate

**τιμάω** (ι) honor, exalt

**χειμών** -ος (m, 3) winter, storm

ἡμέρας διδέασι, τὰς δὲ νύκτας ἀφιασι, τοῦτον δέ, ἣν σωφρονῆτε, τὴν νύκτα μὲν δήσετε, τὴν δὲ ἡμέραν ἀφήσετε.

«Ἄλλὰ γάρ,» ἔφη, «θαυμάζω ὅτι εἰ μὲν τινι ὑμῶν ἀπηχθόμην, μέμνησθε καὶ οὐ σιωπᾶτε, εἰ δέ τῳ ἢ χεიმῶνα ἐπεκούρησα ἢ πολέμιον ἀπήρυξα ἢ ἀσθενοῦντι ἢ ἀποροῦντι συνεξεπόρισά τι, τούτων δὲ οὐδεὶς μέμνηται, οὐδ' εἴ τινα καλῶς τι ποιοῦντα ἐπήνεσα οὐδ' εἴ τινα ἄνδρα ὄντα ἀγαθὸν ἐτίμησα ὥς ἐδυνάμην, οὐδὲν τούτων μέμνησθε. ἀλλὰ μὴν καλὸν τε καὶ δίκαιον καὶ ὅσιον καὶ ἥδιον τῶν ἀγαθῶν μᾶλλον ἢ τῶν κακῶν μεμνήσθαι.»

Ἐκ τούτου μὲν δὴ ἀνίσταντο καὶ ἀνεμύμνησκον. καὶ περιεγένετο ὥστε καλῶς ἔχειν.

ἡμέρας διδέασι, τὰς δὲ νύκτας ἀφιαῖσι, τοῦτον δέ, ἦν  
 |be sane, moderate|, νύκτα μὲν δήσετε, τὴν δὲ ἡμέραν  
 ἀφήσετε.

«Ἄλλὰ γάρ,» ἔφη, «θανμάζω ὅτι εἰ μὲν τινι ὑμῶν  
 ἀπηχθόμην, μέμνησθε καὶ οὐ |be silent| εἰ δέ τῳ ἢ  
 |winter, |fight in an- ἢ πολέμιον |keep off ἢ ἀσθενοῦντι ἢ  
 |storm |other's cause  
 |be confused, συνεξεπόρισά τι, τούτων δὲ οὐδεὶς μέμνηται,  
 |distressed  
 οὐδ' εἴ τινα καλῶς τι ποιοῦντα |concur οὐδ' εἴ τινα  
 ἄνδρα ὄντα ἀγαθὸν |honor ὥς ἐδυνάμην, οὐδὲν τούτων  
 μέμνησθε. ἀλλὰ μὴν καλὸν τε καὶ δίκαιον καὶ ὅσιον καὶ  
 |sweet τῶν ἀγαθῶν μᾶλλον ἢ τῶν κακῶν μεμνήσθαι.»

Ἐκ τούτου μὲν δὴ ἀνίσταντο καὶ ἀνεμύμνησκον. καὶ  
 |surpass; sur- ὥστε καλῶς ἔχειν.  
 |vive; attain

day and loosed at night, but if you are wise you will tie this fellow up at night and only let him loose in the day.

«But really,” he added, «it does surprise me with what keenness you remember and recount the times when I incurred the hatred of some one; but some other occasions when I eased the burden of winter and storm for any of you, or beat off an enemy, or helped to minister to you in sickness and want, not a soul of you remembers these. Or when for any noble deed done by any of you I praised the doer, and according to my ability did honour to this brave man or that; these things have slipped from your memories, and are clean forgotten. Yet it were surely more noble, just, and holy, sweeter and kindlier to treasure the memory of good rather than of evil.”

He ended, and then one after another of the assembly got up and began recalling incidents of the kind suggested, and things ended not so unpleasantly after all.